

Foreword

Congratulations on choosing a SUBARU vehicle. This Owner's Manual has all the information necessary to keep your SUBARU in excellent condition and to properly maintain the emission control system for minimizing emission pollutants. We urge you to read this manual carefully so that you may understand your vehicle and its operation. For information not found in this Owner's Manual, such as details concerning repairs or adjustments, we recommend that you contact the SUBARU dealer from whom you purchased your SUBARU or the nearest SUBARU dealer.

The information, specifications and illustrations found in this manual are those in effect at the time of printing. FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD. reserves the right to change specifications and designs at any time without prior notice and without incurring any obligation to make the same or similar changes on vehicles previously sold. This Owner's Manual applies to all models and covers all equipment, including factory installed options. Some explanations, therefore may be for equipment not installed in your vehicle.

Please leave this manual in the vehicle at the time of resale. The next owner will need the information found herein.

NOTE: "SUBARU dealer" means an authorized SUBARU dealer and/or repairer.

FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD., TOKYO, JAPAN

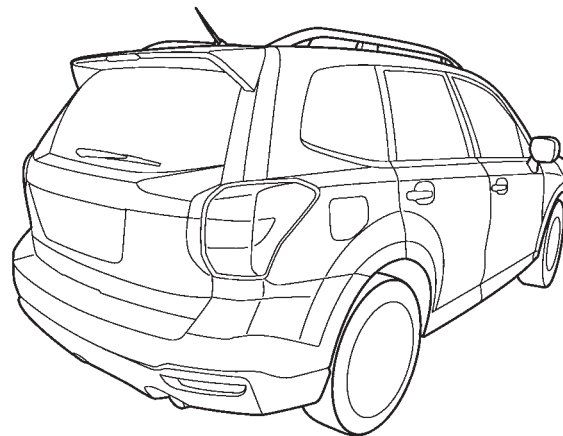
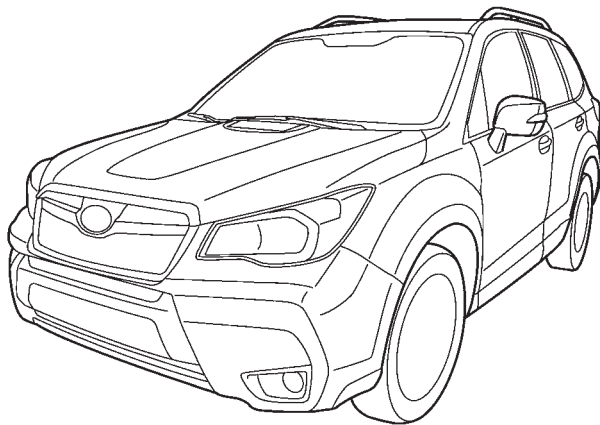


SUBARU is a registered trademark of FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD.

© Copyright 2013 FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD.

This manual uses recycled paper.

This manual describes the following vehicle types.



Warranties

All warranty information, including details of coverage and exclusions, is in the "Warranty and Service Booklet". Please read these warranties carefully.

■ Models with HID headlights



CAUTION

High Intensity Discharge (HID) headlights contain mercury. For that reason, it is necessary to remove HID headlights before vehicle disposal. Once removed, please reuse, recycle or dispose of the HID headlights as hazardous waste.

How to use this Owner's Manual

■ Using your Owner's Manual

Before you operate your vehicle, carefully read this manual. To protect yourself and extend the service life of your vehicle, follow the instructions in this manual. Failure to observe these instructions may result in serious injury and damage to your vehicle.

This manual is composed of fourteen chapters. Each chapter begins with a brief table of contents, so you can usually tell at a glance if that chapter contains the information you want.

Chapter 1: Seat, seatbelt and SRS airbags

This chapter informs you how to use the seat and seatbelt and contains precautions for the SRS airbags.

Chapter 2: Keys and doors

This chapter informs you how to operate the keys, locks and windows.

Chapter 3: Instruments and controls

This chapter informs you about the operation of instrument panel indicators and how to use the instruments and other switches.

Chapter 4: Climate control

This chapter informs you how to operate the climate control.

Chapter 5: Audio

This chapter informs you how to operate your audio system.

Chapter 6: Interior equipment

This chapter informs you how to operate interior equipment.

Chapter 7: Starting and operating

This chapter informs you how to start and operate your SUBARU.

Chapter 8: Driving tips

This chapter informs you how to drive your SUBARU in various conditions and explains some safety tips on driving.

Chapter 9: In case of emergency

This chapter informs you what to do if you have a problem while driving, such as a flat tire or engine overheating.

Chapter 10: Appearance care

This chapter informs you how to keep your SUBARU looking good.

Chapter 11: Maintenance and service

This chapter informs you when you need to take your SUBARU to the dealer for scheduled maintenance and informs you how to keep your SUBARU running properly.

Chapter 12: Specifications

This chapter informs you about dimension and capacities of your SUBARU.

Chapter 13: Supplement

This chapter informs you of supplementary information complied with some countries' requirements.

Chapter 14: Index

This is an alphabetical listing of all that's in this manual. You can use it to quickly find something you want to read.

■ Safety warnings

You will find a number of WARNINGS, CAUTIONs and NOTEs in this manual.

These safety warnings alert you to potential hazards that could result in injury to you or others.

Please read these safety warnings as well as all other portions of this manual carefully in order to gain a better understanding of how to use your SUBARU vehicle safely.



WARNING

A WARNING indicates a situation in which serious injury or death could result if the warning is ignored.



CAUTION

A CAUTION indicates a situation in which injury or damage to your vehicle, or both, could result if the caution is ignored.

NOTE

A NOTE gives information or suggestions how to make better use of your vehicle.

■ Safety symbol



000013

You will find a circle with a slash through it in this manual. This symbol means "Do not", "Do not do this", or "Do not let this happen", depending upon the context.

■ Abbreviation list

You may find several abbreviations in this manual. The meanings of the abbreviations are shown in the following list.

Abbreviation	Meaning
A/C	Air conditioner
A/ELR	Automatic/Emergency locking retractor
ABS	Anti-lock brake system
ALR	Automatic locking retractor
AWD	All-wheel drive
CVT	Continuously variable transmission
CVTF	Continuously variable transmission fluid
EBD	Electronic brake force distribution
ELR	Emergency locking retractor
GPS	Global positioning system
HID	High intensity discharge
INT	Intermittent
LED	Light emitting diode
LHD	Left-hand drive
MPW	Maximum permissible weight
MT	Manual transmission
OBD	On-board diagnostics

Abbreviation	Meaning
Rear MPAW	Maximum permissible rear axle weight
RHD	Right-hand drive
RON	Research octane number
SI-DRIVE	SUBARU Intelligent Drive
SRS	Supplemental restraint system

Vehicle symbols

There are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.

Mark	Name
	WARNING
	CAUTION
	Read these instructions carefully
	Wear eye protection
	Battery fluid contains sulfuric acid
	Keep children away
	Keep flames away
	Prevent explosions

Safety precautions when driving

■ Seatbelt and SRS airbag



WARNING

- All persons in the vehicle should fasten their seatbelts **BEFORE** the vehicle starts to move. Otherwise, the possibility of serious injury becomes greater in the event of a sudden stop or accident.
- To obtain maximum protection in the event of an accident, the driver and all passengers in the vehicle should always wear seatbelts when the vehicle is moving. The SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) airbag does not do away with the need to fasten seatbelts. In combination with the seatbelts, it offers the best combined protection in case of a serious accident.
Not wearing a seatbelt increases the chance of severe injury or death in a crash even when the vehicle has the SRS airbag.
- The SRS airbags deploy with

considerable speed and force. Occupants who are out of proper position when the SRS airbag deploys could suffer very serious injuries. Because the SRS airbag needs enough space for deployment, the driver should always sit upright and well back in the seat as far from the steering wheel as practical while still maintaining full vehicle control and the front passenger should move the seat as far back as possible and sit upright and well back in the seat.

For instructions and precautions, carefully read the following sections.

- For the seatbelt system, refer to “Seatbelts” 1-13.
- For the SRS airbag system, refer to “*SRS airbag (Supplemental Restraint System airbag)” 1-40.

■ Child safety



WARNING

- Never hold a child on your lap or in your arms while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a collision, because the child will be caught between the passenger and objects inside the vehicle.
- While riding in the vehicle, infants and small children should always be placed in the REAR seat in an infant or a child restraint system which is appropriate for the child's age, height and weight. If a child is too big for a child restraint system, the child should sit in the REAR seat and be restrained using the seatbelts. According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating positions. Never allow a child to stand up or kneel on the seat.
- Put children in the REAR seat properly restrained at all times in a child restraint device or in a seatbelt. The SRS airbag deploys

with considerable speed and force and can injure or even kill children, especially if they are not restrained or improperly restrained. Because children are lighter and weaker than adults, their risk of being injured from deployment is greater.

- NEVER INSTALL A REARWARD FACING CHILD SEAT IN THE FRONT SEAT. DOING SO RISKS SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH TO THE CHILD BY PLACING THE CHILD'S HEAD TOO CLOSE TO THE SRS AIRBAG.
- Always turn the child safety locks to the “LOCK” position when children sit on the rear seat. Serious injury could result if a child accidentally opens the door and falls out. Refer to “Child safety locks” 2-22.
- Always lock the passengers' windows using the lock switch when children are riding in the vehicle. Failure to follow this procedure could result in injury to a child operating the power window. Refer to “Windows” 2-22.
- Never leave unattended children, adults or animals in the vehicle.

They could accidentally injure themselves or others through inadvertent operation of the vehicle. Also, on hot or sunny days, the temperature in a closed vehicle could quickly become high enough to cause severe or possibly fatal injuries to them.

- When leaving the vehicle, close all windows and lock all doors.
- In models with power rear gate, when it operates, the rear gate moves with remarkable force. It is possible to be injured if anyone is caught in or hit by the rear gate so be sure to obey the following cautions.
 - Check that there are no children around the rear gate before operating the power rear gate.
 - Do not allow children to operate the power rear gate.

For instructions and precautions, carefully read the following sections.

- For the seatbelt system, refer to “Seatbelts” ¶1-13.
- For the child restraint system, refer to “Child restraint systems” ¶1-23.
- For the SRS airbag system, refer to

“*SRS airbag (Supplemental Restraint System airbag)” ¶1-40.

■ Engine exhaust gas (carbon monoxide)



WARNING

- Never inhale engine exhaust gas. Engine exhaust gas contains carbon monoxide, a colorless and odorless gas which is dangerous, or even lethal, if inhaled.
- Always properly maintain the engine exhaust system to prevent engine exhaust gas from entering the vehicle.
- Never run the engine in a closed space, such as a garage, except for the brief time needed to drive the vehicle in or out of it.
- Avoid remaining in a parked vehicle for a lengthy time while the engine is running. If that is unavoidable, then use the ventilation fan to force outside air into the vehicle.
- Always keep the front ventilator inlet grille free from snow, leaves or other obstructions to ensure that the ventilation system al-

ways works properly.

- If at any time you suspect that exhaust fumes are entering the vehicle, have the problem checked and corrected as soon as possible. If you must drive under these conditions, drive only with all windows fully open.
- Keep the rear gate closed while driving to prevent exhaust gas from entering the vehicle.

■ Drinking and driving



WARNING

Drinking and then driving is very dangerous. Alcohol in the bloodstream delays your reaction and impairs your perception, judgment and attentiveness. If you drive after drinking – even if you drink just a little – it will increase the risk of being involved in a serious or fatal accident, injuring or killing yourself, your passengers and others. In addition, if you are injured in the accident, alcohol may increase the severity of that injury.

Please don't drink and drive.

Drunken driving is one of the most frequent causes of accidents. Since alcohol affects all people differently, you may have consumed too much alcohol to drive safely even if the level of alcohol in your blood is below the legal limit. The safest thing you can do is never drink and drive.

■ Drugs and driving

WARNING

There are some drugs (over the counter and prescription) that can delay your reaction time and impair your perception, judgment and attentiveness. If you drive after taking them, it may increase your, your passengers' and other persons' risk of being involved in a serious or fatal accident.

If you are taking any drugs, check with your doctor or pharmacist or read the literature that accompanies the medication to determine if the drug you are taking can impair your driving ability. Do not drive after taking any medications that can make you drowsy or otherwise affect your ability to safely operate a motor vehicle. If you have a medical condition that requires you to take drugs, please consult with your doctor.

Never drive if you are under the influence of any illicit mind-altering drugs. For your own health and well-being, we urge you not to take illegal drugs in the first place and to seek treatment if you are addicted to those drugs.

■ Driving when tired or sleepy

WARNING

When you are tired or sleepy, your reaction will be delayed and your perception, judgment and attentiveness will be impaired. If you drive when tired or sleepy, your, your passengers' and other persons' chances of being involved in a serious accident may increase.

Please do not continue to drive but instead find a safe place to rest if you are tired or sleepy. On long trips, you should make periodic rest stops to refresh yourself before continuing on your journey. When possible, you should share the driving with others.

■ Modification of your vehicle

CAUTION

Your vehicle should not be modified. Modification could affect its performance, safety or durability, and may even violate governmental regulations. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from modification may not be covered under warranties.

■ Car phone/cell phone and driving

CAUTION

Do not use a car phone/cell phone while driving; it may distract your attention from driving and can lead to an accident. If you use a car phone/cell phone, pull off the road and park in a safe place before using your phone. In some countries, only hands-free phones may legally be used while driving.

■ Driving vehicles equipped with navigation system



WARNING

Do not allow the monitor to distract your attention from driving. Also, do not operate the controls of the navigation system while driving. The loss of attention to driving could lead to an accident. If you wish to operate the controls of the navigation system, first take the vehicle off the road and stop it in a safe place.

■ Driving with pets

Unrestrained pets can interfere with your driving and distract your attention from driving. In a collision or sudden stop, unrestrained pets or cages can be thrown around inside the vehicle and hurt you or your passengers. Besides, the pets can be hurt under these situations. It is also for their own safety that pets should be properly restrained in your vehicle. Restraining a pet with a special traveling harness which can be secured to the rear seat with a seatbelt or use a pet carrier which can be secured to the rear seat by routing a seatbelt through the carrier's

handle. Never restrain pets or pet carriers in the front passenger's seat. For further information, consult your veterinarian, local animal protection society or pet shop.

■ Tire pressures

Check and, if necessary, adjust the pressure of each tire (including the spare) at least once a month and before any long journey.

Check the tire pressure when the tires are cold. Use a pressure gauge to adjust the tire pressures to the values shown on the tire placard.

For detailed information, refer to "Tires and wheels" 11-32.



WARNING

Driving at high speeds with excessively low tire pressures can cause the tires to deform severely and to rapidly become hot. A sharp increase in temperature could cause tread separation, and destruction of the tires. The resulting loss of vehicle control could lead to an accident.

■ On-road and off-road driving

This vehicle is classified as a utility vehicle. Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. Your vehicle has a higher ground clearance and higher center of gravity, making it more likely to roll over than ordinary passenger cars. It also handles and maneuvers differently from other passenger cars. For this reason, please read carefully the following section and follow the instructions and precautions in order to prevent serious injury or death due to loss of control, rollover and other accidents. Refer to "On-road and off-road driving" 8-10.

EU Battery directive 2006/66/EC

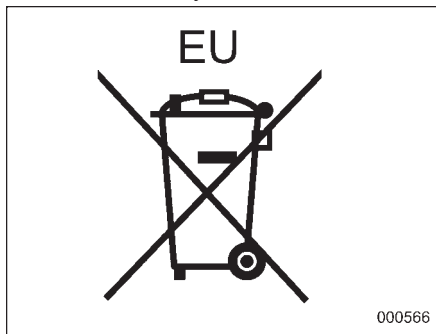
Followings are the symbol of EU Battery Directive 2006/66/EC.

This directive applies to the collection of batteries, recycling of disposed batteries and accumulators, and batteries not disposed of in landfills because they could be hazardous to the environment.

In your vehicle, there are some batteries that do not have the 2006/66/EC EU Battery directive symbol.

Please check and obey all local laws and regulations for the disposal of batteries or accumulations.

The following devices utilize batteries that do not have the symbol:



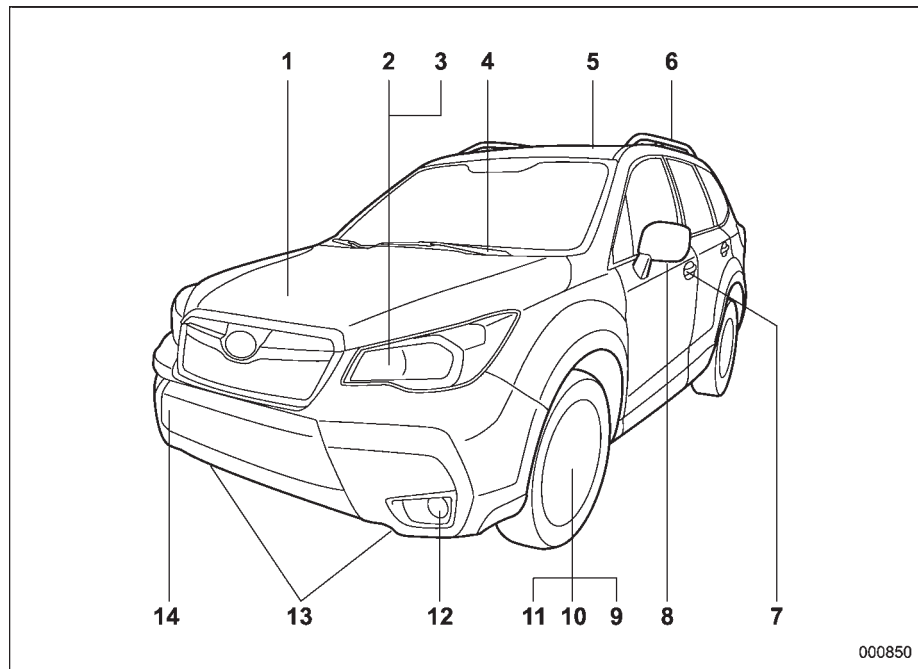
- Keys (if equipped): CR1620
- Access keys (if equipped): CR1632

Table of contents

<i>Seat, seatbelt and SRS airbags</i>	1
<i>Keys and doors</i>	2
<i>Instruments and controls</i>	3
<i>Climate control</i>	4
<i>Audio</i>	5
<i>Interior equipment</i>	6
<i>Starting and operating</i>	7
<i>Driving tips</i>	8
<i>In case of emergency</i>	9
<i>Appearance care</i>	10
<i>Maintenance and service</i>	11
<i>Specifications</i>	12
<i>Supplement</i>	13
<i>Index</i>	14

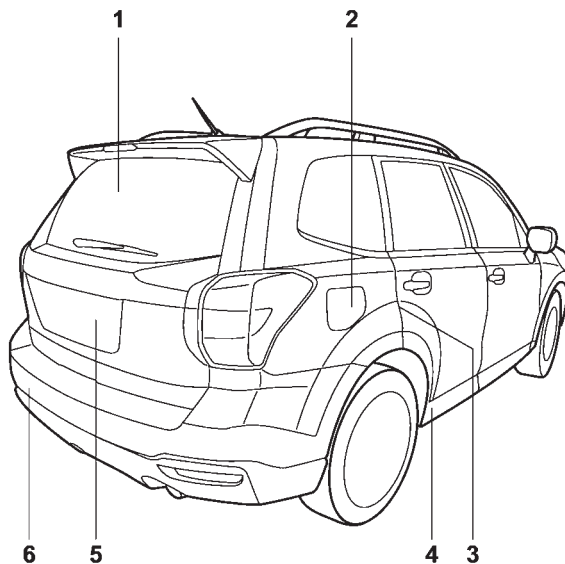
Illustrated index

■ Exterior



- 1) Engine hood (page 11-10)
- 2) Headlight switch (page 3-90)
- 3) Replacing bulbs (page 11-47)
- 4) Wiper switch (page 3-100)
- 5) Sunroof (page 2-32)
- 6) Roof rails (page 8-18)
- 7) Door locks (page 2-4)
- 8) Outside mirror (page 3-105)
- 9) Tire pressure (page 11-33)
- 10) Flat tires (page 9-5)
- 11) Tire chains (page 8-15)
- 12) Fog light switch (page 3-96)
- 13) Tie-down hooks (page 9-12)
- 14) Towing hook (page 9-12)

000850

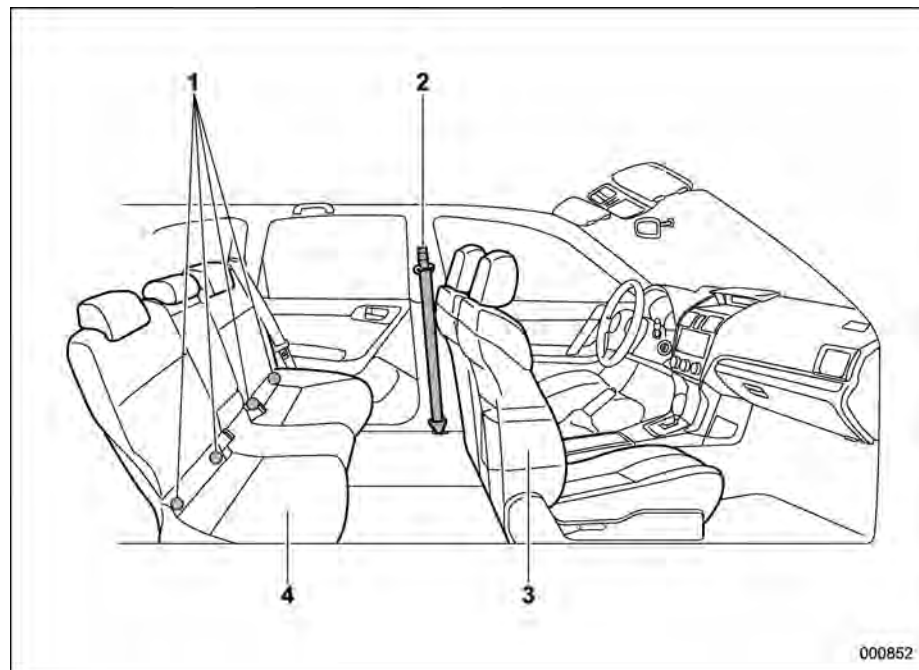


- 1) Rear window defogger (page 3-106)
- 2) Fuel filler lid and cap (page 7-4)
- 3) Child safety locks (page 2-22)
- 4) Tie-down hole (page 9-12)
- 5) Rear gate (page 2-25)
- 6) Towing hook (page 9-12)

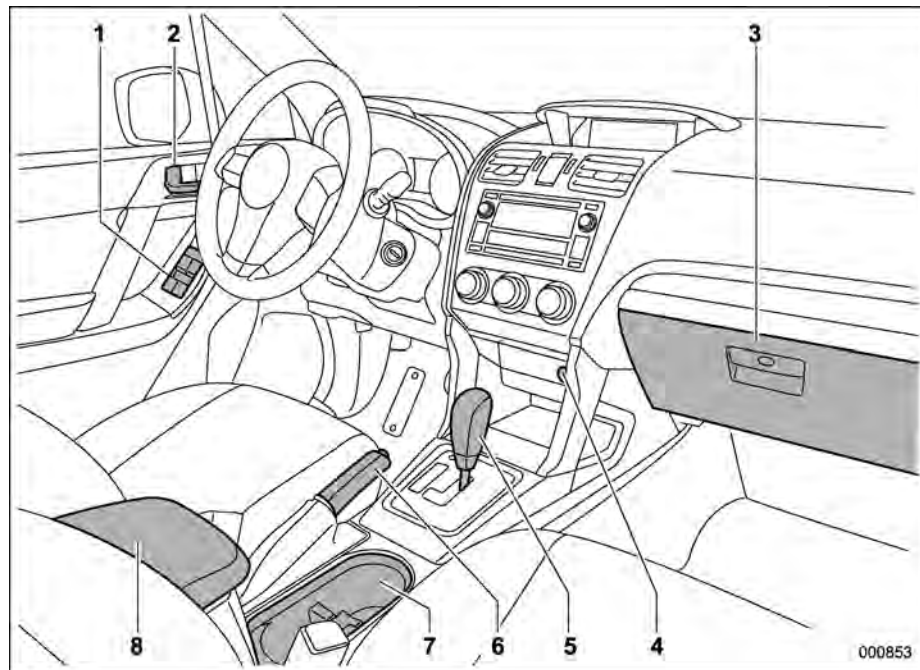
000851

■ Interior

▼ Passenger compartment area



- 1) Anchor bars for ISOFIX child restraint system (page 1-37)
- 2) Seatbelt (page 1-13)
- 3) Front seat (page 1-2)
- 4) Rear seat (page 1-7)

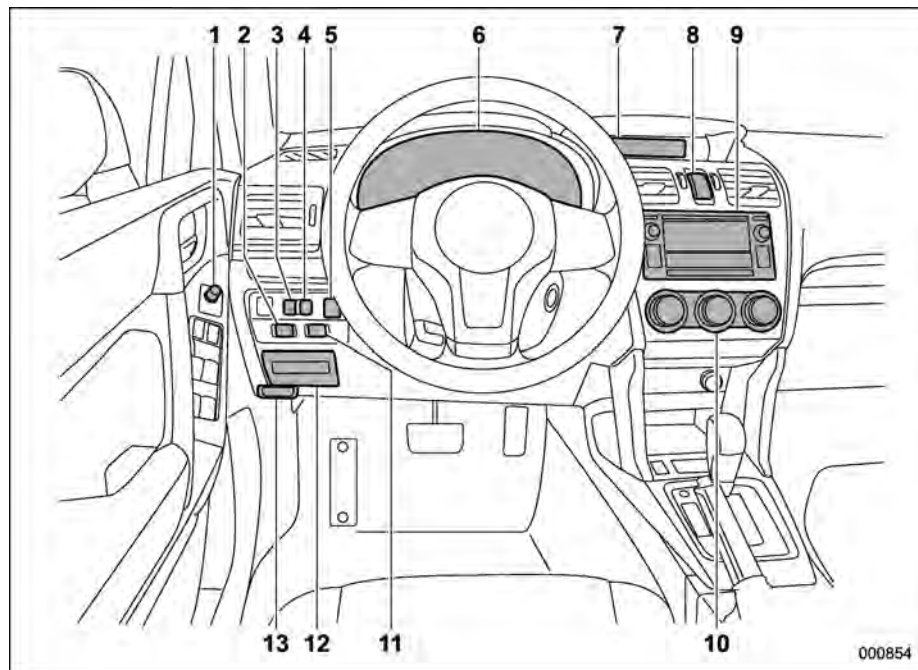


- 1) Power windows (page 2-22)
- 2) Door locks (page 2-4)
- 3) Glove box (page 6-5)
- 4) Front power supply socket (page 6-9)
- 5) Shift lever (MT) (page 7-13)/Select lever (CVT) (page 7-16)
- 6) Parking brake lever (page 7-36)
- 7) Cup holder (page 6-7)
- 8) Center console (page 6-6)

000853

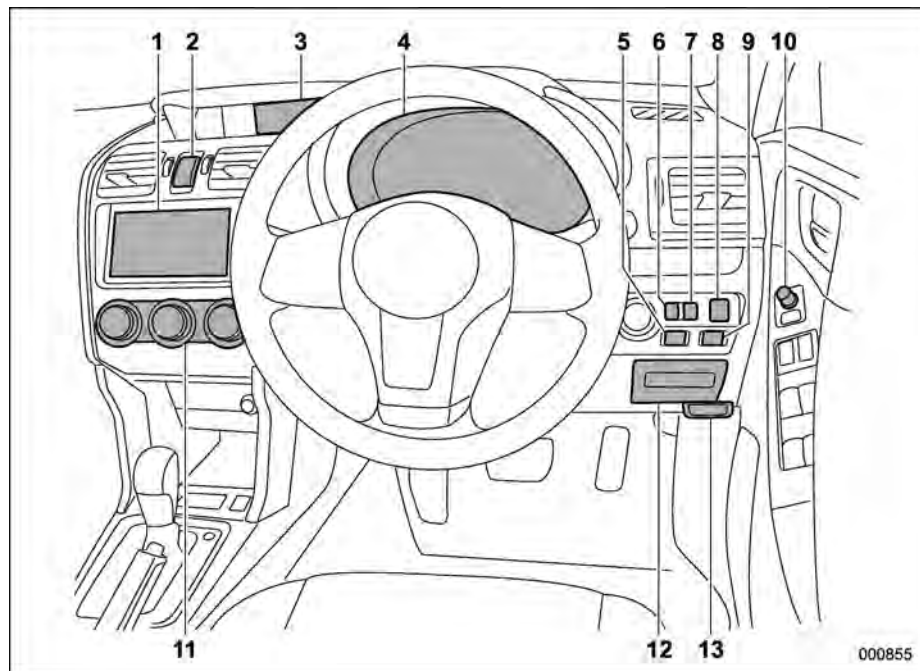
■ Instrument panel

▼ Left-hand drive models



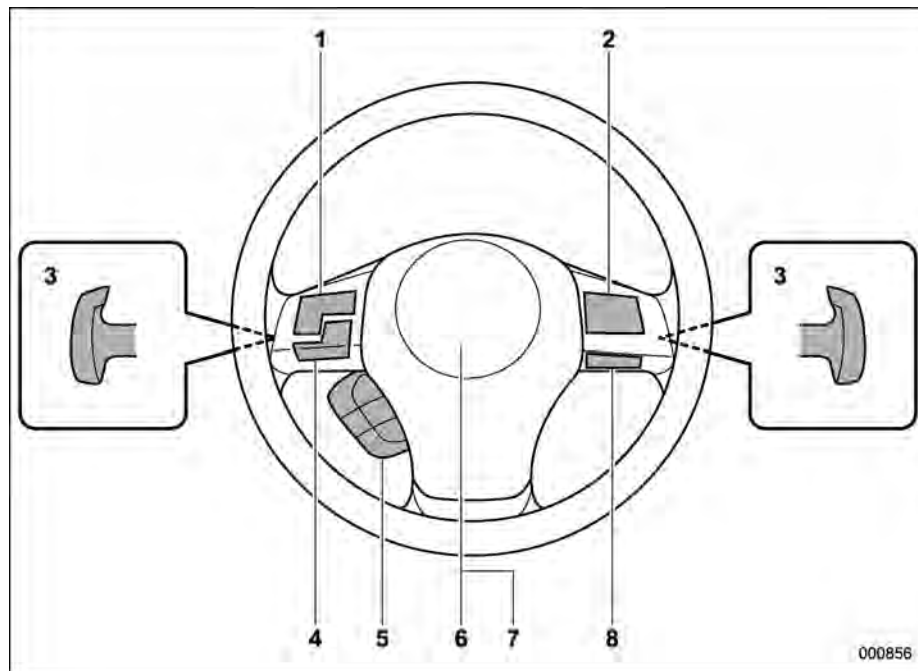
- 1) Outside mirror switch (page 3-105)
- 2) Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch (models with power rear gate) (page 7-32)
- 3) Illumination brightness control (page 3-93)
- 4) Headlight beam leveler (page 3-94)
- 5) Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch (models without power rear gate) (page 7-32)/Memory switch (models with power rear gate) (page 2-29)
- 6) Combination meter (page 3-8)
- 7) Information display (page 3-34)/Multi function display (page 3-40)
- 8) Hazard warning flasher switch (page 3-8)
- 9) Audio (page 5-1)
- 10) Climate control (page 4-1)
- 11) Power rear gate switch (page 2-27)
- 12) Fuse box (page 11-46)
- 13) Hood lock release (page 11-10)

▼ Right-hand drive models



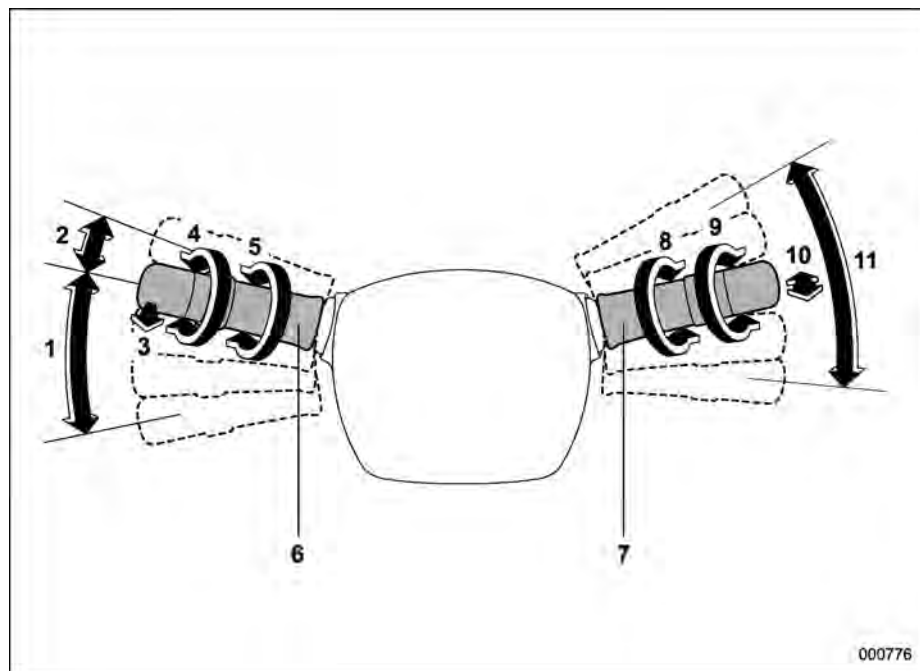
- 1) Audio (page 5-1)
- 2) Hazard warning flasher switch (page 3-8)
- 3) Information display (page 3-34)/Multi function display (page 3-40)
- 4) Combination meter (page 3-8)
- 5) Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch (models with power rear gate) (page 7-32)
- 6) Illumination brightness control (page 3-93)
- 7) Headlight beam leveler (page 3-94)
- 8) Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch (models without power rear gate) (page 7-32)/Memory switch (models with power rear gate) (page 2-29)
- 9) Power rear gate switch (page 2-27)
- 10) Outside mirror switch (page 3-105)
- 11) Climate control (page 4-1)
- 12) Fuse box (page 11-46)
- 13) Hood lock release (page 11-10)

■ Steering wheel



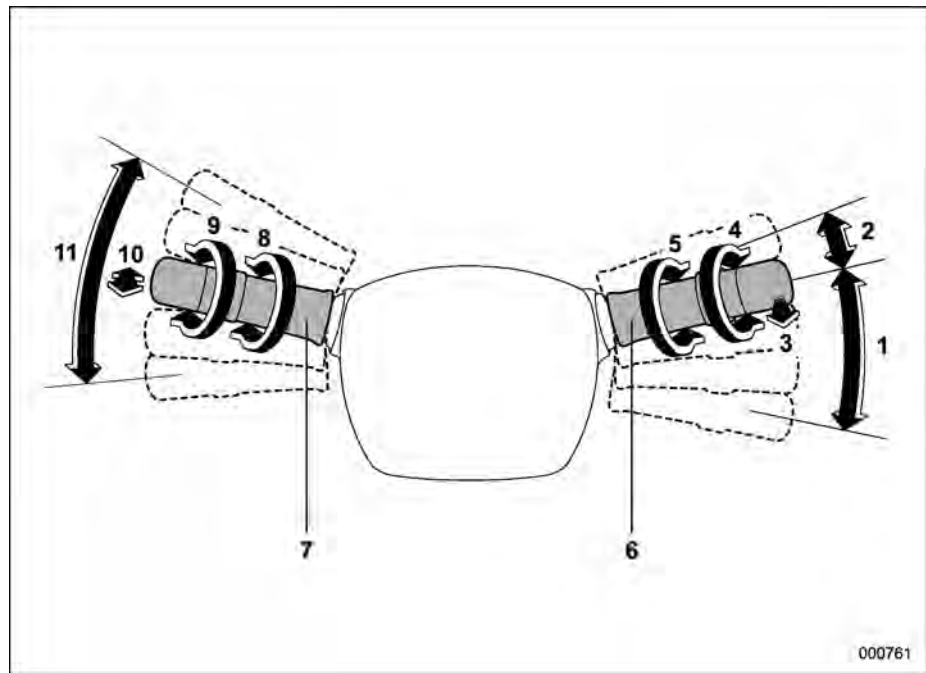
■ Light control and wiper control levers/switches

▼ Australia and South Africa models



- 1) Windshield wiper (page 3-100)
- 2) Mist (page 3-100)
- 3) Windshield washer (page 3-102)
- 4) Rear window wiper and washer switch (page 3-103)
- 5) Wiper intermittent time control switch (page 3-102)/Sensor sensitivity control (page 3-101)
- 6) Wiper control lever (page 3-98)
- 7) Light control switch (page 3-89)
- 8) Fog light switch (page 3-96)
- 9) Headlight ON/OFF/AUTO (page 3-90)
- 10) Headlight flasher High/Low beam change (page 3-91)
- 11) Turn signal (page 3-92)

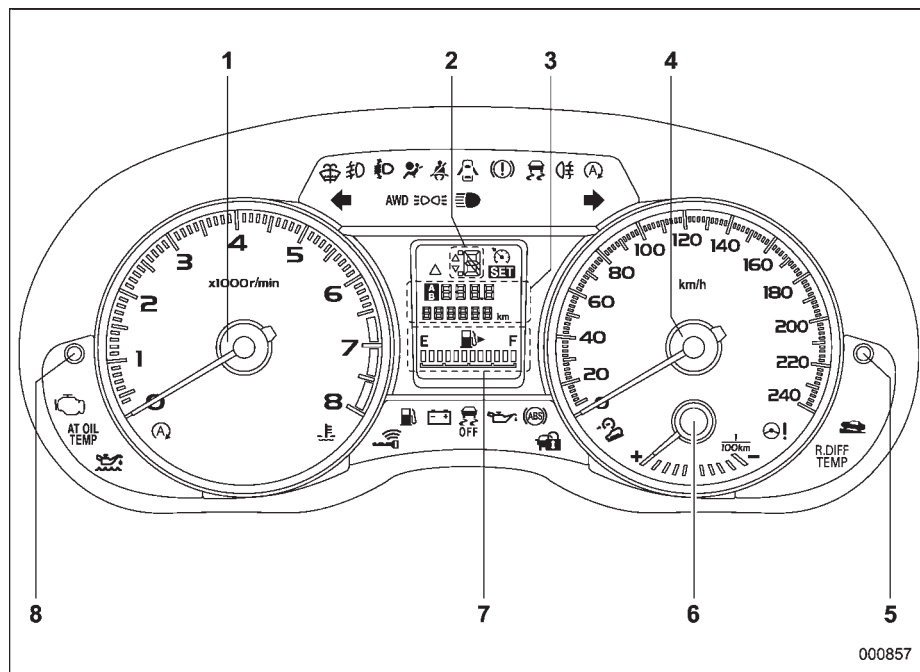
▼ Others



- 1) Windshield wiper (page 3-100)
- 2) Mist (page 3-100)
- 3) Windshield washer (page 3-102)
- 4) Rear window wiper and washer switch (page 3-103)
- 5) Wiper intermittent time control switch (page 3-102)/Sensor sensitivity control (page 3-101)
- 6) Wiper control lever (page 3-98)
- 7) Light control switch (page 3-89)
- 8) Fog light switch (page 3-96)
- 9) Headlight ON/OFF/AUTO (page 3-90)
- 10) Headlight flasher High/Low beam change (page 3-91)
- 11) Turn signal (page 3-92)

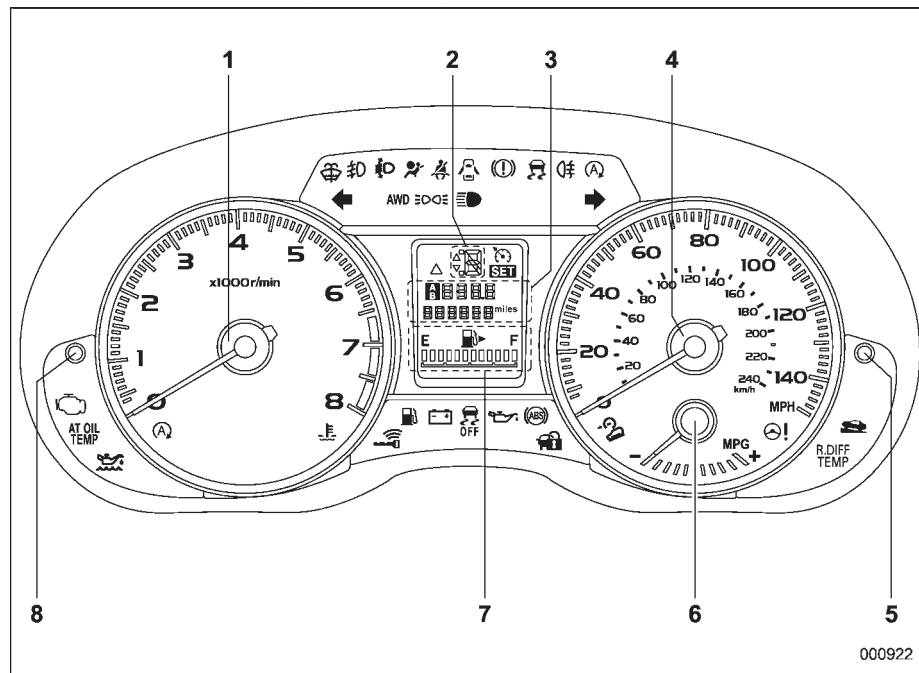
■ Combination meter

▼ Petrol engine models except U.K. models



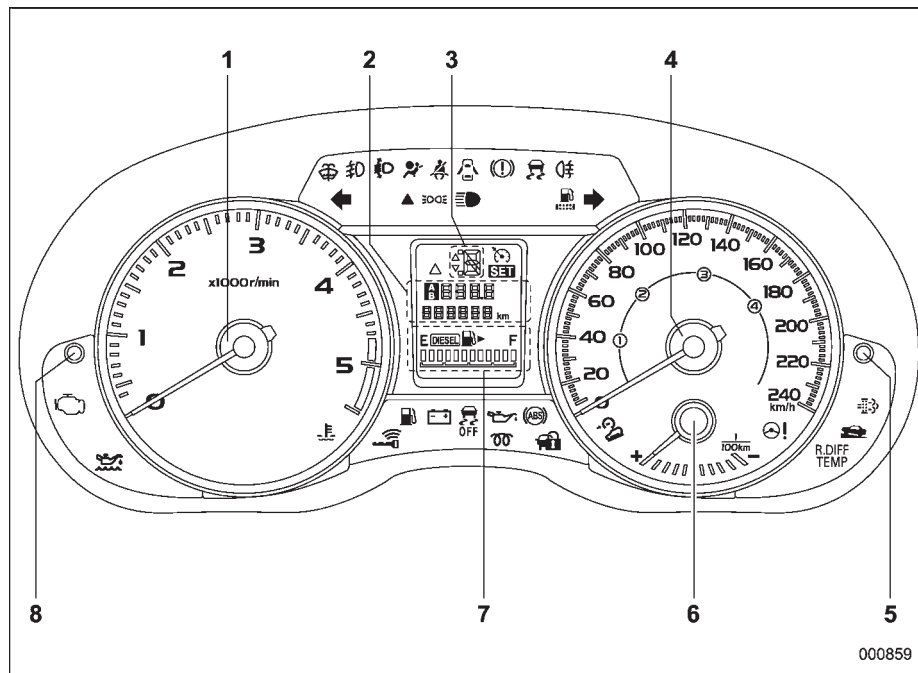
- 1) Tachometer (page 3-10)
- 2) Select lever/gear position indicator (page 3-31)
- 3) Trip meter and odometer (page 3-9)
- 4) Speedometer (page 3-9)
- 5) Information display switching knob (left-hand drive models) (page 3-34)/Trip meter A/B selection and trip meter reset knob (right-hand drive models) (page 3-10)
- 6) ECO gauge (if equipped) (page 3-11)
- 7) Fuel gauge (page 3-11)
- 8) Trip meter A/B selection and trip meter reset knob (left-hand drive models) (page 3-10)/Information display switching knob (right-hand drive models) (page 3-34)

▼ Petrol engine models (U.K. models)



- 1) Tachometer (page 3-10)
- 2) Select lever/gear position indicator (page 3-31)
- 3) Trip meter and odometer (page 3-9)
- 4) Speedometer (page 3-9)
- 5) Trip meter A/B selection and trip meter reset knob (page 3-10)
- 6) ECO gauge (if equipped) (page 3-11)
- 7) Fuel gauge (page 3-11)
- 8) Information display switching knob (page 3-34)

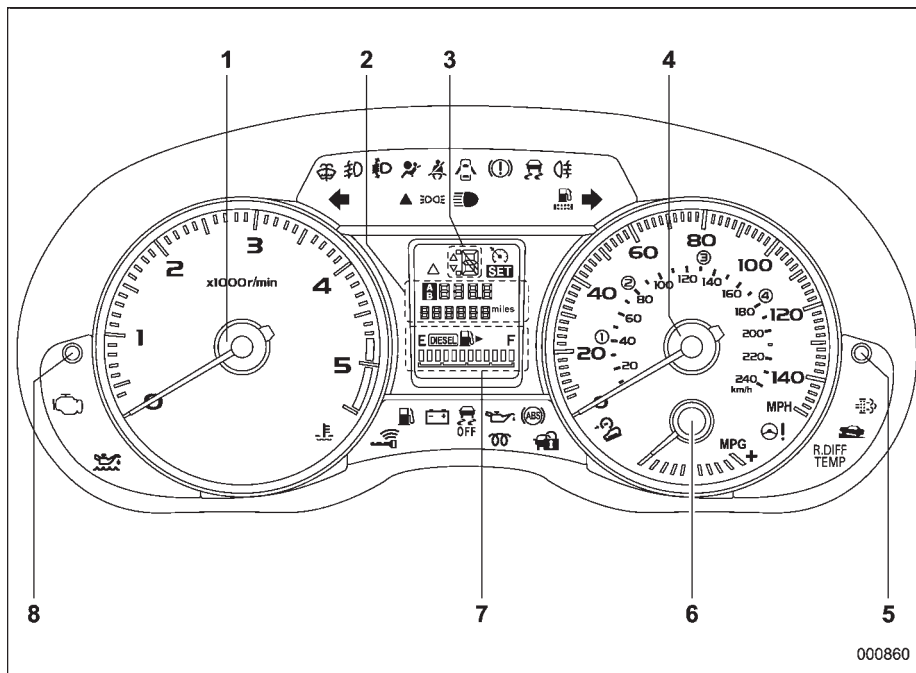
▼ Diesel engine models except U.K. models



- 1) Tachometer (page 3-10)
- 2) Trip meter and odometer (page 3-9)
- 3) Select lever/gear position indicator (page 3-31)
- 4) Speedometer (page 3-9)
- 5) Information display switching knob (left-hand drive models) (page 3-34)/Trip meter A/B selection and trip meter reset knob (right-hand drive models) (page 3-10)
- 6) ECO gauge (if equipped) (page 3-11)
- 7) Fuel gauge (page 3-11)
- 8) Trip meter A/B selection and trip meter reset knob (left-hand drive models) (page 3-10)/Information display switching knob (right-hand drive models) (page 3-34)

000859

▼ Diesel engine models (U.K. models)



- 1) Tachometer (page 3-10)
- 2) Trip meter and odometer (page 3-9)
- 3) Select lever/gear position indicator (page 3-31)
- 4) Speedometer (page 3-9)
- 5) Trip meter A/B selection and trip meter reset knob (page 3-10)
- 6) ECO gauge (if equipped) (page 3-11)
- 7) Fuel gauge (page 3-11)
- 8) Information display switching knob (page 3-34)

■ Warning and indicator lights

Mark	Name	Page
	Seatbelt warning light	3-13
	SRS airbag system warning light	3-15
ON / 	Front passenger's frontal airbag ON indicator (if equipped)	3-15
OFF / 	Front passenger's frontal airbag OFF indicator (if equipped)	3-15
	Malfunction indicator light (Check Engine light)	3-16
	Coolant temperature low indicator light/ Coolant temperature high warning light	3-17
	Charge warning light	3-18
	Oil pressure warning light	3-18
	Engine oil level warning light	3-18

Mark	Name	Page
AT OIL TEMP	AT OIL TEMP warning light (CVT models)	3-19
R.DIFF TEMP	Rear differential oil temperature warning light (if equipped)	3-19
	ABS warning light	3-20
	Brake system warning light	3-22
	Door open warning light	3-24
AWD	AWD warning light (CVT models)	3-24
	Power steering warning light (if equipped)	3-24
	Fuel filter warning light (diesel engine models)	3-32
	Preheating indicator light (diesel engine models)	3-32
	Diesel particulate filter warning light (diesel engine models)	3-33
	Over-rev warning light (yellow) (diesel engine models)	3-33

Mark	Name	Page
	Hill start assist warning light/Hill start assist OFF indicator light	3-23
	Vehicle Dynamics Control warning light/ Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light	3-20
	Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light	3-22
	Turn signal indicator lights	3-31
	High beam indicator light	3-31
	Automatic headlight beam leveler warning light (if equipped)	3-25
	Front fog light indicator light (if equipped)	3-32
	Rear fog light indicator light (if equipped)	3-32
	Access key warning light (if equipped)	3-25
	Immobilizer indicator light	3-30

Mark	Name	Page
	Headlight indicator light	3-32
	Cruise control indicator light (if equipped)	3-31
	Cruise control set indicator light (if equipped)	3-32
	X mode indicator light (if equipped)	3-32
	Hill descent control indicator light (if equipped)	3-32
	Low fuel warning light	3-23
	Windshield washer fluid warning light	3-23
	Sport (S) mode indicator light (if equipped)	3-30
	Intelligent (I) mode indicator light (if equipped)	3-30
	Sport Sharp (S#) mode indicator light (if equipped)	3-30
	Shift-up indicator light (white or black) (MT models)	3-30

Mark	Name	Page
	Auto Start Stop warning light/Auto Start Stop OFF indicator light (yellow) (if equipped)	3-34
	Auto Start Stop indicator light (green) (if equipped)	3-34

Function settings

A SUBARU dealer can change the settings of the functions shown in the following table to meet your personal requirements. We recommend that you contact the nearest SUBARU dealer for details. If your vehicle is equipped with a multi function display, the settings for some of these functions can be changed using the display. For details, refer to “Multi function display” 3-40.

Item	Function	Possible settings	Default setting
Keyless access ^{*1}	Automatic locking ^{*2}	Operation/Non-operation	Operation
	Automatic locking operation period ^{*2}	Can be set in range from 20s to 60s	30 seconds
	Door unlock selection function (driver's door unlock)	Driver's door only/All doors	All doors ^{*2} /Driver's door only ^{*3}
	Door unlock selection function (rear gate unlock)	Rear gate only/All doors	All doors ^{*2} /Rear gate only ^{*3}
	Hazard warning flashers	Operation/Non-operation	Operation
Remote keyless entry system	Automatic locking ^{*2}	Operation/Non-operation	Operation
	Automatic locking operation period ^{*2}	Can be set in range from 20s to 60s.	30 seconds
	Door unlock selection function (including models with keyless access function) ^{*2}	Operation/Non-operation	Non-operation
	Hazard warning flashers	Operation/Non-operation	Operation
Key lock-in prevention ^{*2}	Key lock-in prevention	Operation/Non-operation	Operation
Defogger and deicer system	Rear window defogger, outside mirror defogger and windshield wiper deicer	Operation for 15 minutes/ Continuous operation	Operation for 15 minutes
Dome light	Operation of dome light/map lights OFF delay timer	OFF/10s/20s/30s	30 seconds
Map lights			
Battery drainage prevention function	Battery drainage prevention function	Operation/Non-operation	Operation
Auto on/off headlights ^{*1}	Sensitivity of the operation of the auto on/off headlights	Low/Mid/High/Max	Normal

Item	Function	Possible settings	Default setting
Automatic rain sensing windshield wiper ^{*1}	Automatic adjusting mode of wiper timing	Rain-sensing mode/ vehicle speed interlocking mode	Rain-sensing mode
Reverse gear interlocked rear wiper	Reverse gear interlocked rear wiper operation	Operation/Non-operation	Operation
One-touch lane changer ^{*1}	Operation of the one-touch lane changer	Operation/Non-operation	Operation

^{*1}: If equipped

^{*2}: Not applicable to models with double locking system

^{*3}: Not applicable to models without double locking system

Front seats	1-2
Manual seat (if equipped)	1-4
Power seat (if equipped).....	1-5
Head restraint adjustment.....	1-5
Seat heater (if equipped)	1-6
Rear seats	1-7
Armrest (if equipped).....	1-8
Head restraint adjustment.....	1-8
Folding down the rear seatback.....	1-10
Reclining the seatback (if equipped)	1-12
Seatbelts	1-13
Seatbelt safety tips.....	1-13
Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR)	1-14
Automatic/Emergency Locking Retractor (A/ELR) (if equipped).....	1-14
Seatbelt warning light and chime	1-14
Fastening the seatbelt	1-15
Seatbelt maintenance	1-21
Seatbelt pretensioners	1-21
System monitors	1-22
System servicing.....	1-22
Precautions against vehicle modification	1-23

Child restraint systems	1-23
Applications for Australia models.....	1-23
Safety precautions.....	1-23
Where to place a child restraint system.....	1-25
Choosing a child restraint system	1-28
Installing child restraint systems with seatbelt	1-30
Installing a booster seat.....	1-36
Installation of child restraint systems using ISOFIX anchor bars.....	1-37
Top tether anchorages	1-39
*SRS airbag (Supplemental Restraint System airbag)	1-40
General precautions regarding SRS airbag system	1-40
Components.....	1-47
SRS airbag	1-50
System operation.....	1-54
SRS airbag system monitor.....	1-62
SRS airbag system servicing	1-63
Precautions against vehicle modification.....	1-64

Front seats

WARNING

- Never adjust the seat while driving to avoid loss of vehicle control and personal injury.
- Before adjusting the seat, make sure that cargo and the hands and feet of rear seat passengers are clear of the adjusting mechanism.
- After adjusting the seat, push it slightly to make sure it is securely locked. If the seat is not securely locked, it may move or the seatbelt may not operate properly.
- Do not put objects under the front seats. They may interfere with front seat locking and cause an accident.
- Seatbelts provide maximum restraint when the occupant sits well back and upright in the seat. To reduce the risk of sliding under the seatbelt in a collision, the front seatbacks should be always used in the upright position while the vehicle is running. If the front seatbacks are not

used in the upright position in a collision, the risk of sliding under the lap belt and of the lap belt sliding up over the abdomen will increase, and both can result in serious internal injury or death.

- The SRS airbags deploy with considerable speed and force. Occupants who are not in the proper position when the SRS airbag deploys could suffer very serious injuries. Because the SRS airbag needs enough space for deployment, the driver should always sit upright and well back in the seat as far from the steering wheel as practical while still maintaining full vehicle control and the front passenger should move the seat as far back as possible and sit upright and well back in the seat.



WARNING

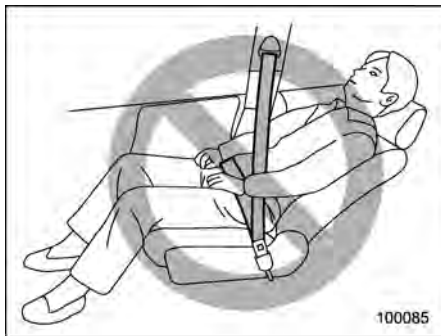
Put children in the REAR seat properly restrained at all times in a child restraint device or in a seatbelt, whichever is appropriate for the child's age, height and weight. The SRS airbag deploys with considerable speed and force and can injure or even kill children, especially if they are not restrained or improperly restrained. Because children are lighter and weaker than adults, their risk of being injured from deployment is greater.

Secure ALL types of child restraint devices (including forward facing child seats) in the REAR seats at

all times.

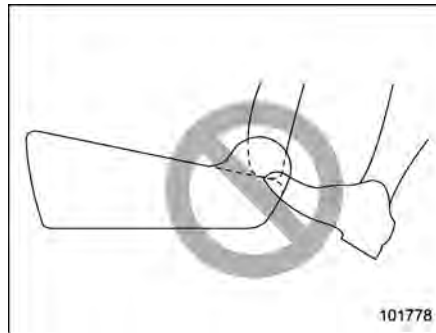
NEVER INSTALL A REARWARD FACING CHILD SEAT IN THE FRONT SEAT. DOING SO RISKS SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH TO THE CHILD BY PLACING THE CHILD'S HEAD TOO CLOSE TO THE SRS AIRBAG.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating positions. For instructions and precautions concerning child restraint systems, refer to "Child restraint systems" 1-23.



WARNING

To prevent the passenger from sliding under the seatbelt in the event of a collision, always put the seatback in the upright position while the vehicle is in motion. Also, do not place objects such as cushions between the passenger and the seatback. If you do so, the risk of sliding under the lap belt and of the lap belt sliding up over the abdomen will increase, and both can result in serious internal injury or death.



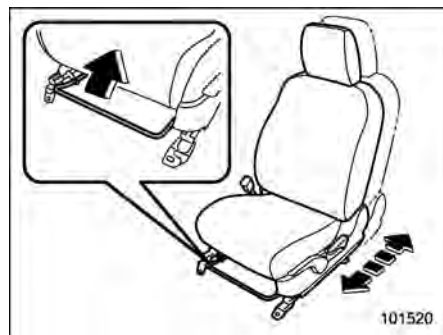
WARNING

Do not let rear passengers rest their feet between the front seatback and seat cushion. Doing so may lead to defective operation of the following systems and could result in serious injury.

- Occupant detection system (if equipped)
- SRS side airbag (if equipped)
- Seat heater (if equipped)
- Power seat (if equipped)

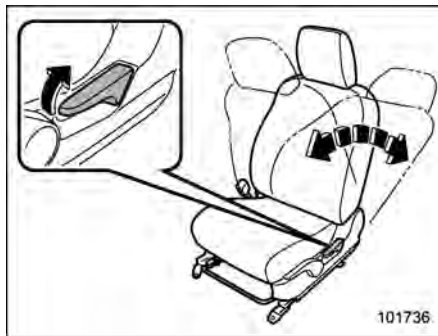
■ Manual seat (if equipped)

▼ Forward and backward adjustment



Pull the lever upward and slide the seat to the desired position. Then release the lever and try to move the seat back and forth to make sure that it is securely locked into place.

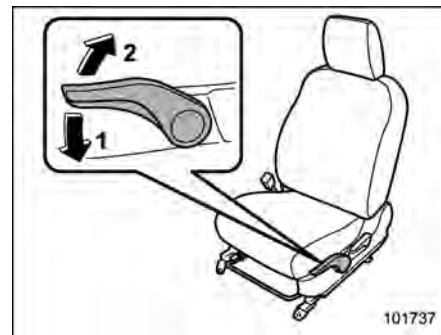
▼ Reclining the seatback



Pull the reclining lever up and adjust the seatback to the desired position. Then release the lever and make sure the seatback is securely locked into place.

The seatback placed in a reclined position can spring back upward with force when the lever is pulled. While operating the lever to return the seatback, hold the seatback lightly so that it may be raised back gradually.

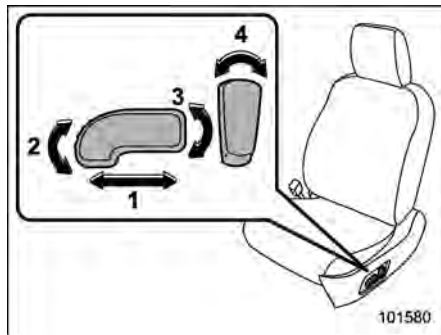
▼ Seat cushion height adjustment (driver's seat)



- 1) When the lever is pushed down, the seat is lowered.
- 2) When the lever is pulled up, the seat rises.

The height of the seat can be adjusted by moving the seat cushion adjustment lever up and down.

■ Power seat (if equipped)



- 1) **Seat position forward/backward control switch**
To adjust the seat forward or backward, move the control switch forward or backward. During forward/backward adjustment of the seat, you cannot adjust the seat cushion angle or seat cushion height.
- 2) **Seat cushion angle control switch**
To adjust the seat cushion angle, pull up or push down the front end of the control switch.
- 3) **Seat height control switch**
To adjust the seat height, pull up or push down the rear end of the control switch.
- 4) **Seatback angle (reclining) control switch**
To adjust the angle of the seatback, move the control switch.

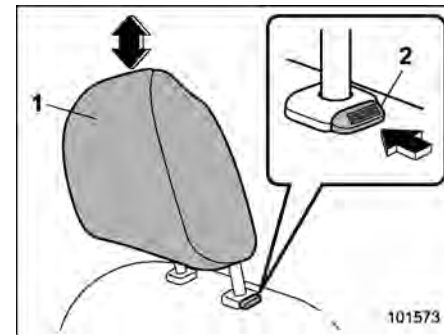
■ Head restraint adjustment

⚠ WARNING

- Never drive the vehicle with the head restraints removed because they are designed to reduce the risk of serious neck injury in the event that the vehicle is struck from the rear. Also, never install the head restraints the opposite way round. Doing so will prevent the head restraints from functioning as intended. Therefore, when you remove the head restraints, you must reinstall all head restraints correctly to protect vehicle occupants.
- All occupants, including the driver, should not operate a vehicle or sit in a vehicle's seat until the head restraints are placed in their proper positions in order to minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash.

The head restraints for the driver's seat and front passenger's seat are adjustable in the following ways.

▼ Head restraint height adjustment



- 1) Head restraint
- 2) Release button

Each head restraint should be adjusted so that the center of the head restraint is closest to the top of the occupant's ears.

To raise:

Pull the head restraint up.

To lower:

Push the head restraint down while pressing the release button on the top of the seatback.

To remove:

While pressing the release button, pull out the head restraint.

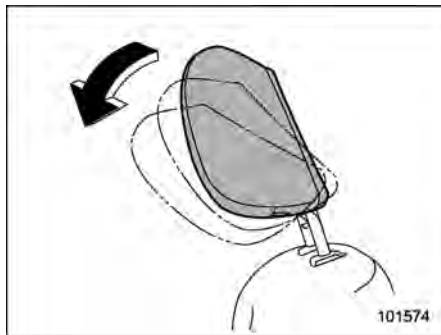
To install:

Install the head restraint into the holes that

are located on the top of the seatback until the head restraint locks. Press and hold the release button to lower the head restraint.

▼ Head restraint angle adjustment

The angle of the head restraint can be adjusted in several steps. While maintaining a suitable driving posture, adjust the head restraint to a position where the back of your head is as close to the head restraint as possible.



To tilt:

Tilt the head restraint by hand to the preferred position. A click will be audible when the head restraint is locked.

To return:

Tilt the head restraint once as far forward as it can go. The head restraint will

automatically return to the fully upright position. Then, adjust the head restraint again to the preferred angle.

Seat heater (if equipped)

The seat heater is equipped in the front seats.

The seat heater operates when the ignition switch is either in the "ACC" or "ON" position.

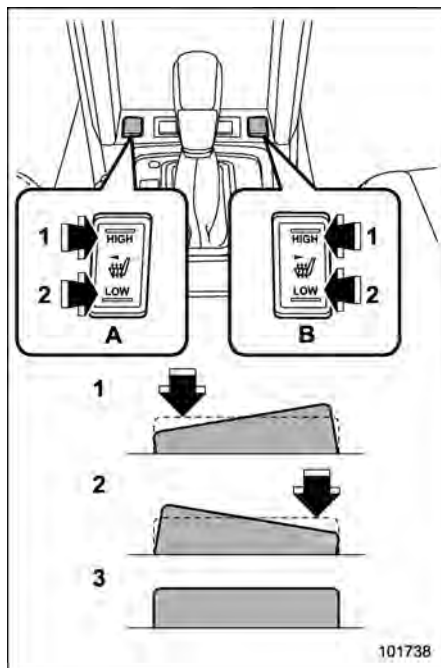


CAUTION

- There is a possibility that people with delicate skin may suffer slight burns even at low temperatures if they use the seat heater for a long period of time. When using the heater, always be sure to warn the persons concerned.
- Do not put anything on the seat which insulates against heat, such as a blanket, cushion, or similar items. This may cause the seat heater to overheat.

NOTE

Use of the seat heater for a long period of time while the engine is not running can cause battery discharge.



- 1) **HIGH** – Rapid heating
- 2) **LOW** – Normal heating
- 3) Off
- A) Left-hand side
- B) Right-hand side

To turn on the seat heater, push the “LOW” or “HIGH” position on the switch, as

desired, depending on the temperature. Selecting the “HIGH” position will cause the seat to heat up quicker.

To turn off the seat heater, lightly press the opposite side of the current position.

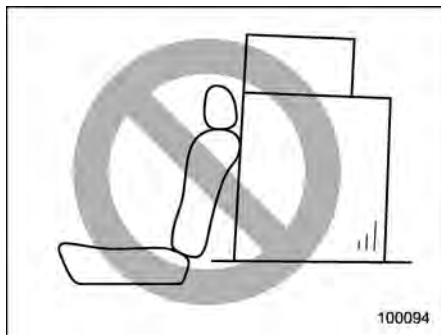
The indicator located on the switch illuminates when the seat heater is in operation. When the vehicle’s interior is warmed enough or before you leave the vehicle, be sure to turn the switch off.

Rear seats



! WARNING

Seatbelts provide maximum restraint when the occupant sits well back and upright in the seat. Do not put cushions or any other materials between occupants and seatbacks or seat cushions. If you do so, the risk of sliding under the lap belt and of the lap belt sliding up over the abdomen will increase, and both can result in serious internal injury or death.



⚠ WARNING

Never stack luggage or other cargo higher than the top of the seatback because it could tumble forward and injure passengers in the event of a sudden stop or accident.

■ Armrest (if equipped)



To lower the armrest, pull on the top edge of the armrest.

⚠ WARNING

To avoid serious injury, passengers must never be allowed to sit on the center armrest while the vehicle is in motion.

■ Head restraint adjustment

⚠ WARNING

- Never drive the vehicle with the head restraints removed because they are designed to reduce the

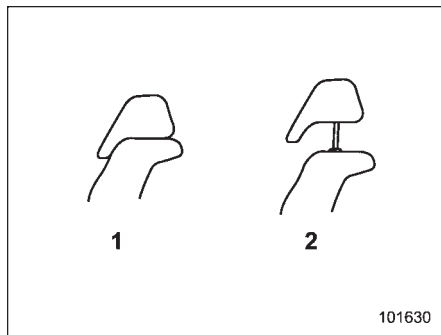
risk of serious neck injury in the event that the vehicle is struck from the rear. Therefore, when you have removed the head restraints, you must reinstall all head restraints to protect vehicle occupants.

- All occupants, including the driver, should not operate a vehicle or sit in a vehicle's seat until the head restraints are placed in their proper positions in order to minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash.

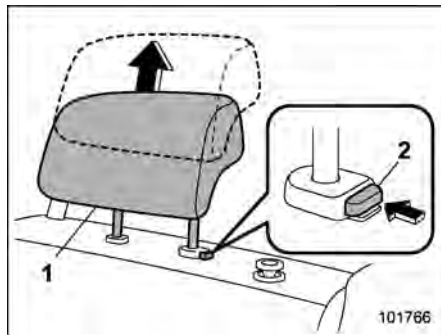
▼ Rear windows side seating position

⚠ CAUTION

The head restraint is not intended to be used at the lowest position. Before sitting on the seat, raise the head restraint to the extended position.



- 1) When not used (retracted position)
- 2) When used (extended position)



- 1) Head restraint
- 2) Release button

To raise:

Pull the head restraint up.

To lower:

Push the head restraint down while pressing the release button on the top of the seatback.

To remove:

While pressing the release button, pull out the head restraint.

To install:

Install the head restraint into the holes that are located on the top of the seatback until the head restraint locks. Press and hold the release button to lower the head restraint.

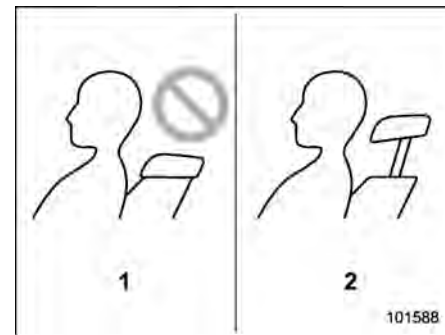
When the seats are not occupied, lower the head restraints to improve rearward visibility.

▼ Rear center seating position

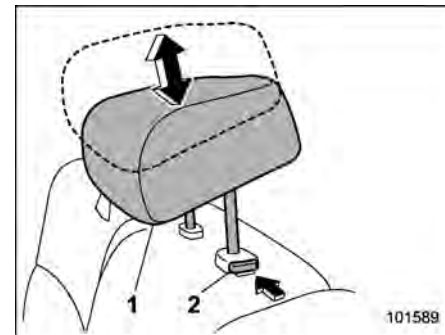


CAUTION

The head restraint is not intended to be used at the lowest position. Before sitting on the seat, raise the head restraint to the extended position.



- 1) Incorrect (retracted position)
- 2) Correct (extended position)



- 1) Head restraint
- 2) Release button

To raise:

Pull the head restraint up.

– CONTINUED –

To lower:

Push the head restraint down while pressing the release button on the top of the seatback.

To remove:

While pressing the release button, pull out the head restraint.

To install:

Install the head restraint into the holes that are located on the top of the seatback until the head restraint locks. Press and hold the release button to lower the head restraint.

When the rear center seating position is not occupied, lower the head restraint to improve rearward visibility.

■ Folding down the rear seat-back

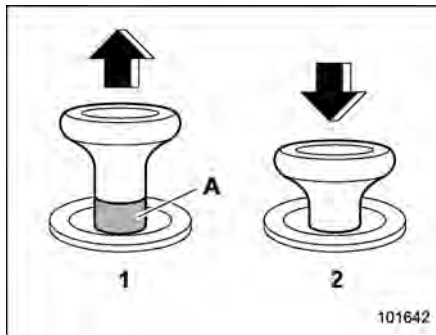


WARNING

- When you fold down the seat-back, check that there are no passengers or objects on the rear seat. Not doing so creates a risk of injury or property damage if the seatback suddenly folds down.
- Never allow passengers to ride on the folded rear seatback or in

the cargo area. Doing so may result in serious injury or death.

- Secure all objects and especially long items properly to prevent them from being thrown around inside the vehicle and causing serious injury during a sudden stop, a sudden steering maneuver or a rapid acceleration.



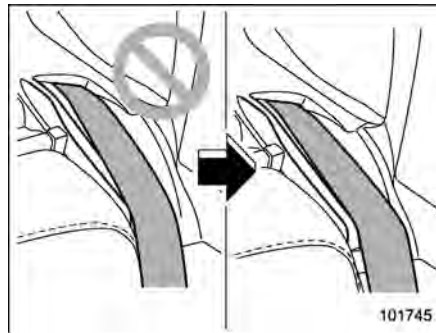
Lock release knob

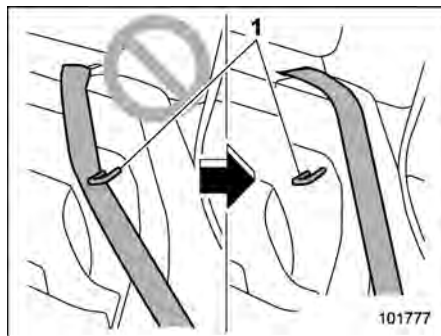
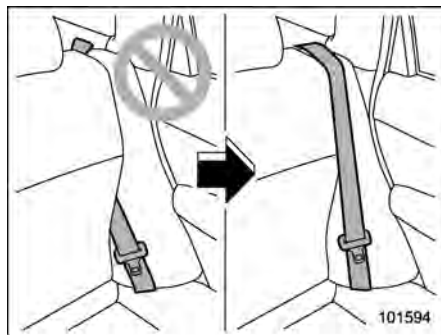
- 1) Unlocked
 - 2) Locked
- A) Unlocking marker in red



WARNING

When you return the seatback to its original position, check that the unlocking marker on the lock release knob is not visible. Also, shake the seatback slightly to confirm that it is securely fixed in place. If the seatback is not securely fixed in place, the seatback may suddenly fold down in the event of sudden braking, or objects may move out from the cargo area, which could cause serious injury or death.





1) Securing hook

**WARNING**

When the seatback is returned to its original position, observe the follow-

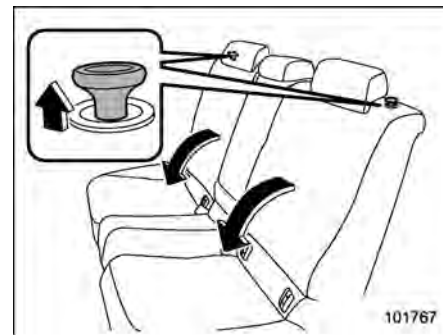
ing precautions. Failure to do so may lead to serious injury or an accident because the operation efficiency of the seatbelt is inhibited.

- Be careful to prevent the seat belt from running off the belt guide.
- The seatbelt should not be caught in the seatback and it should be fully visible.
- The seatbelt should not pass behind the securing hook for the seatback.

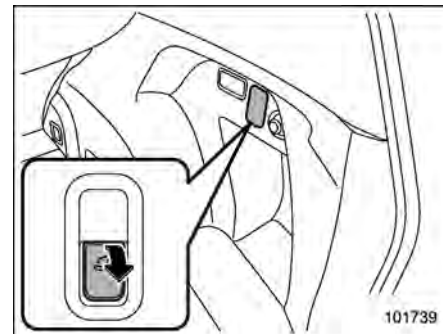
**CAUTION**

Do not hang luggage etc. on the securing hook. The possibility exists that the seatback may not be able to be fixed firmly in place. This could lead to unexpected accidents.

1. Lower the head restraints.



Release knob



Release latch on both sides of the cargo area (if equipped)

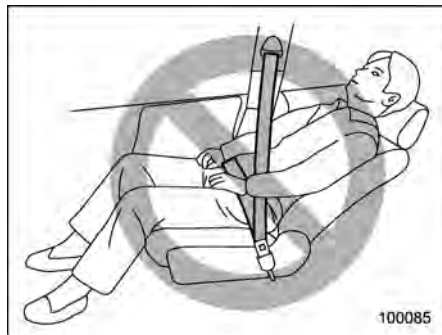
2. Unlock the seatback by pulling the lock release knob or release latch (if equipped) and then fold the seatback down.

– CONTINUED –

1-12 Seat, seatbelt and SRS airbags/Rear seats

To return the seatback to its original position, raise the seatback until it locks into place and make sure that the unlocking marker on the lock release knob is no longer visible.

■ Reclining the seatback (if equipped)



⚠ WARNING

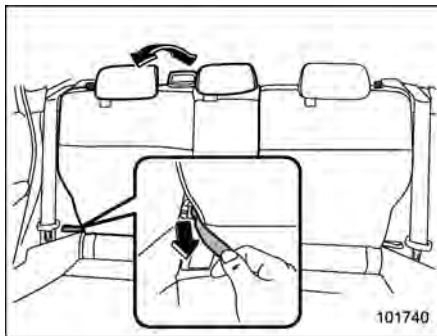
To prevent the passenger from sliding under the seatbelt in the event of a collision, always put the seatback in the upright position while the vehicle is in motion. Also, do not place objects such as cushions between the passenger and the seatback. If you do so, the risk of sliding under the lap belt and of the

lap belt sliding up over the abdomen will increase, and both can result in serious internal injury or death.

⚠ CAUTION

When using the cargo area cover, observe the following precautions.

- Be careful not to pinch your hand between the head restraint and the cargo area cover when you recline the rear seat.
- Move the front cover of the cargo area cover backward so that the cover is not damaged by the reclined seatback. Refer to "Cargo area cover" 6-14.



Pull the strap and adjust the seatback to the desired position.

Then release the strap and make sure the seatback is securely locked into place.

Seatbelts

■ Seatbelt safety tips



WARNING

- All persons in the vehicle should fasten their seatbelts **BEFORE** the vehicle starts to move. Otherwise, the possibility of serious injury becomes greater in the event of a sudden stop or accident.
- All belts should fit snugly in order to provide full restraint. Loose fitting belts are not as effective in preventing or reducing injury.
- Each seatbelt is designed to support only one person. Never use a single belt for two or more persons – even children. Otherwise, in an accident, serious injury or death could result.
- Replace all seatbelt assemblies including retractors and attaching hardware worn by occupants of a vehicle that has been in a serious accident. The entire assembly should be replaced even if damage is not obvious.

- When wearing the seatbelt, insert the tongue plate into the correct buckle. Otherwise, in an accident, serious injury or death could result.
- Do not fasten your seatbelt with a child on your knees. Otherwise, in an accident, serious injury or death could result.
- Put children in the **REAR** seat properly restrained at all times in a child restraint device or in a seatbelt, whichever is appropriate for the child's age, height and weight. The SRS airbag deploys with considerable speed and force and can injure or even kill children, especially if they are not restrained or improperly restrained. Because children are lighter and weaker than adults, their risk of being injured from deployment is greater.

Secure **ALL** types of child restraint devices (including forward facing child seats) in the **REAR** seats at all times.

NEVER INSTALL A REARWARD FACING CHILD SEAT IN THE FRONT SEAT. DOING SO RISKS SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH TO

THE CHILD BY PLACING THE CHILD'S HEAD TOO CLOSE TO THE SRS AIRBAG.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating positions. For instructions and precautions concerning the child restraint system, refer to "Child restraint systems" 1-23.

▼ Infants or small children

Use a child restraint system that is suitable for your vehicle. Refer to "Child restraint systems" 1-23.

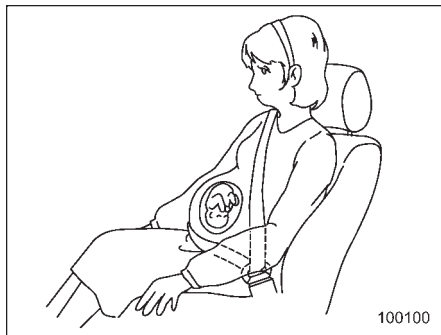
▼ Children

If a child is too big for a child restraint system, the child should sit in the rear seat and be restrained using the seatbelts. According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating positions. Never allow a child to stand up or kneel on the seat.

Seatbelts are designed under the assumption that adult-sized occupants will use them. If the shoulder portion of the belt crosses the face or neck, move the child closer to the belt buckle to help

provide a good shoulder belt fit. Care must be taken to securely place the lap belt as low as possible on the hips and not on the child's waist. If the shoulder portion of the belt cannot be properly positioned, a child restraint system should be used. Never place the shoulder belt under the child's arm or behind the child's back.

▼ Expectant mothers



Expectant mothers also need to use the seatbelts. They should consult their doctor for specific recommendations. The lap belt should be worn securely and as low as possible over the hips, not over the waist.

■ Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR)

All seatbelts in the vehicle have an Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR).

The emergency locking retractor allows normal body movement but the retractor locks automatically during a sudden stop, impact or if you pull the belt very quickly out of the retractor.

■ Automatic/Emergency Locking Retractor (A/ELR) (if equipped)

For some models, each rear passenger's seatbelt has an Automatic/Emergency Locking Retractor (A/ELR). The Automatic/Emergency Locking Retractor normally functions as an Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR). The A/ELR has an additional locking mode, "Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) mode", intended to secure a child restraint system.

First check if the ALR mode is equipped for the seatbelts of the vehicle. If the ALR mode is equipped, the seatbelts function as follows.

When a seatbelt is once drawn out completely and is then retracted even slightly, the retractor locks the seatbelt in that position and the seatbelt cannot be extended. As the belt is rewinding, clicks

will be heard which indicate the retractor functions as an ALR. When the seatbelt is retracted fully, the ALR mode is canceled and the ELR mode is restored.

For models with A/ELR seatbelts, when securing a child restraint system on the rear seats by using a seatbelt in the forward-facing direction, the seatbelt must be changed over to the Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) mode. For instructions on how to install the child restraint system using a seatbelt, refer to "Installing child restraint systems with seatbelt" 1-30.

When the child restraint system is removed, make sure that the retractor is restored to the Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) mode by allowing the seatbelt to retract fully.

■ Seatbelt warning light and chime



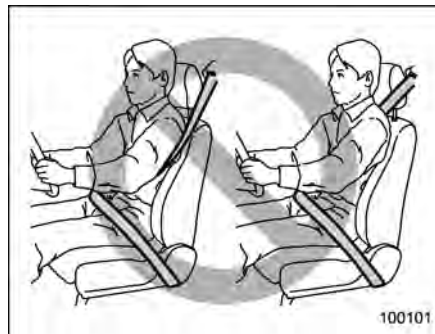
Refer to "Seatbelt warning light and chime" 3-13.

■ Fastening the seatbelt

⚠ WARNING

- Never use a belt that is twisted or reversed. In an accident, this can increase the risk or severity of injury.
- Keep the lap belt as low as possible on your hips. In a collision, this spreads the force of the lap belt over stronger hip bones instead of across the weaker abdomen.
- Seatbelts provide maximum restraint when the occupant sits well back and upright in the seat. To reduce the risk of sliding under the seatbelt in a collision, the front seatbacks should be always used in the upright position while the vehicle is running. If the front seatbacks are not used in the upright position in a collision, the risk of sliding under the lap belt and of the lap belt sliding up over the abdomen will increase, and both can result in serious internal injury or death.
- Do not put cushions or any other materials between occupants and seatbacks or seat cushions.

If you do so, the risk of sliding under the lap belt and of the lap belt sliding up over the abdomen will increase, and both can result in serious internal injury or death.



⚠ WARNING

Never place the shoulder belt under the arm or behind the back. If an accident occurs, this can increase the risk or severity of injury.

⚠ CAUTION

Metallic parts of the seatbelt can become very hot in a vehicle that

has been closed up in sunny weather; they could burn an occupant. Do not touch such hot parts until they cool.

▼ Front seatbelts

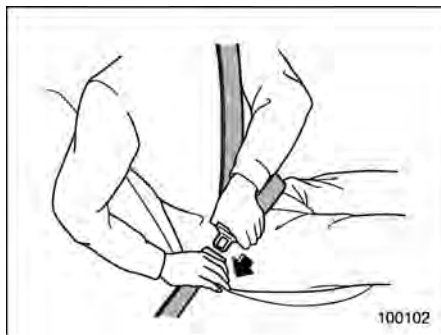
1. Adjust the seat position according to the following procedure.

Driver's seat: Adjust the seatback to the upright position. Move the seatback as far from the steering wheel as practical while still maintaining full vehicle control.

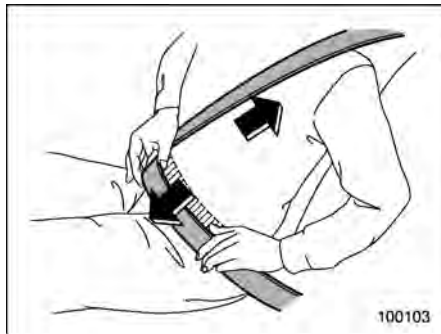
Front passenger's seat: Adjust the seatback to the upright position. Move the seat as far back as possible.

2. Sit well back in the seat.

3. Pick up the tongue plate and pull the belt out slowly. Do not let it get twisted. If the belt stops before reaching the buckle, return the belt slightly and pull it out more slowly. If the belt still cannot be unlocked, let the belt retract slightly after giving it a strong pull, then pull it out slowly again.



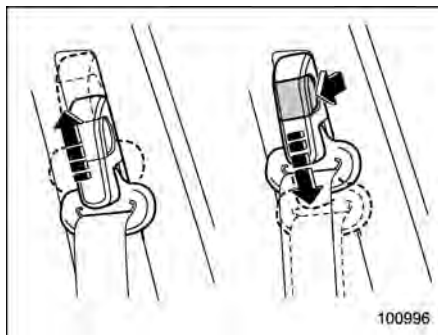
4. Insert the tongue plate into the buckle until you hear a click.



5. To make the lap part tight, pull up on the shoulder belt.

6. Place the lap belt as low as possible on your hips, not on your waist.

▽ **Adjusting the front seat shoulder belt anchor height**



The shoulder belt anchor height should be adjusted to the position best suited for the driver/front passenger. Always adjust the anchor height so that the shoulder belt passes over the middle of the shoulder without touching the neck.

To raise:

Slide the anchor up.

To lower:

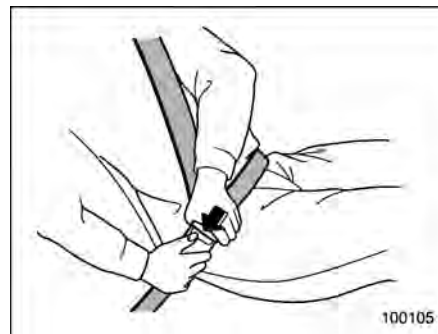
Pull the release knob and slide the anchor down.

Pull down on the anchor to make sure that it is locked in place.

⚠ WARNING

When wearing the seatbelts, make sure the shoulder portion of the webbing does not pass over your neck. If it does, adjust the seatbelt anchor to a lower position. Placing the shoulder belt over the neck may result in neck injury during sudden braking or in a collision.

▽ **Unfastening the seatbelt**

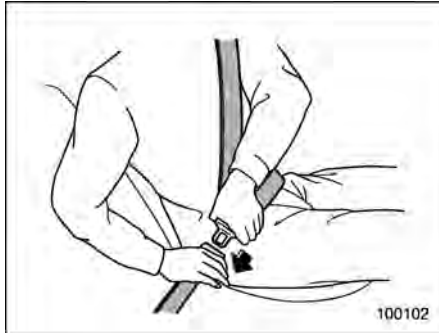


Push the button on the buckle.

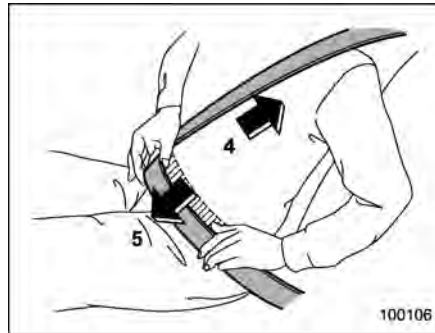
Before closing the door, make sure that the belts are retracted properly to avoid catching the belt webbing in the door.

▼ **Rear seatbelts (except rear center seatbelt)**

1. Sit well back in the seat.
2. Pick up the tongue plate and pull the belt out slowly. Do not let it get twisted. If the belt stops before reaching the buckle, return the belt slightly and pull it out more slowly. If the belt still cannot be unlocked, let the belt retract slightly after giving a strong pull on it, then pull it out slowly again.

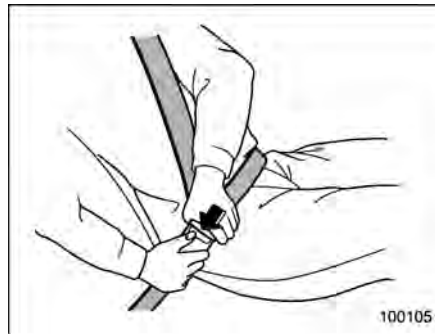


3. Insert the tongue plate into the buckle until you hear a click.



4. To make the lap part tight, pull up on the shoulder belt.
5. Place the lap belt as low as possible on your hips, not on your waist.

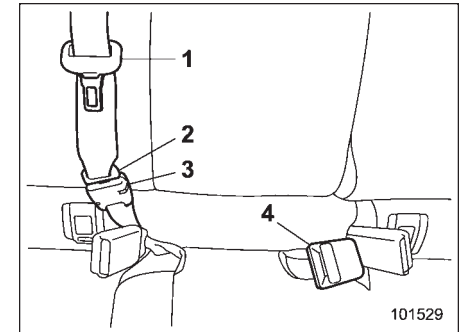
▽ **Unfastening the seatbelt**



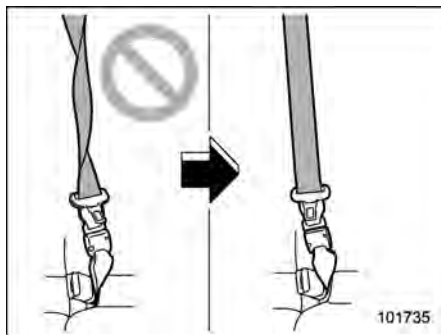
Push the button on the buckle.

Before closing the door, make sure that the belts are retracted properly to avoid catching the belt webbing in the door.

▼ **Rear center seatbelt**



- 1) Center seatbelt tongue plate
- 2) Connector (tongue)
- 3) Connector (buckle)
- 4) Center seatbelt buckle



⚠ WARNING

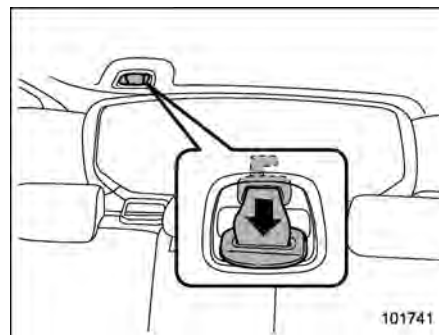
Fastening the seatbelt with the webbing twisted can increase the risk or severity of injury in an accident. When fastening the belt after it is pulled out from the retractor, especially when inserting the connector's tongue plate into the mating buckle (on right-hand side), always check that the webbing is not twisted.



⚠ WARNING

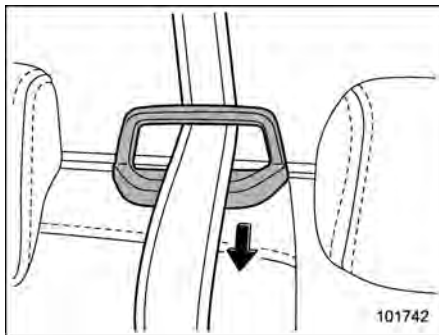
- Be sure to fasten both tongue plates to the respective buckles. If the seatbelt is used only as a shoulder belt (with the connector's tongue plate not fastened to the connector's buckle on the right-hand side), it cannot properly restrain the wearer in position in an accident, possibly resulting in serious injury or death.
- Before fastening the seatbelt, confirm that the seatbelt is routed through the belt guide. A seatbelt not routed through the belt guide can cause neck inju-

ries during sudden braking or in a collision since it may slip up on your neck.

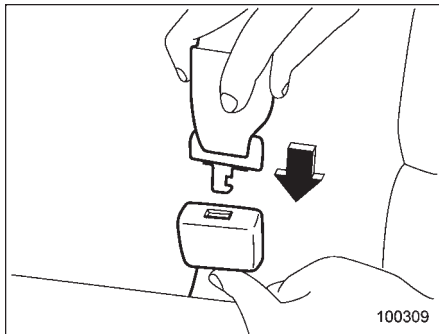


Rear center seatbelt is stowed in the recess of the ceiling above the cargo area.

1. Retrieve the connector (tongue) plate from the slot in the recess by pulling the connector (tongue) plate, then pull out the seatbelt slowly.



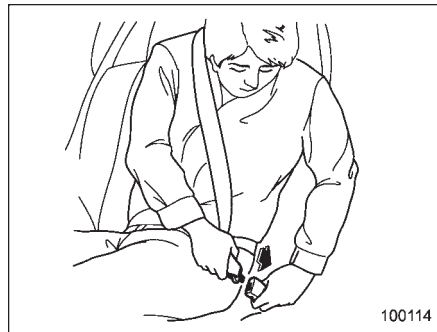
2. Pass the seatbelt through the belt guide.



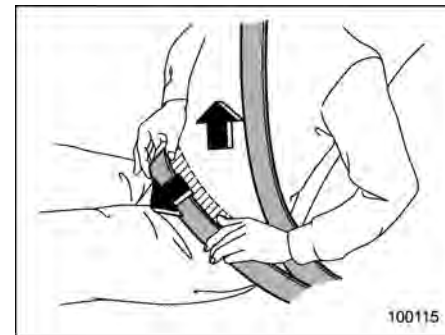
3. After confirming that the webbing is not twisted, insert the connector (tongue) attached at the webbing end into the buckle on the right-hand side until a click

is heard.

If the belt stops before reaching the buckle, return the belt slightly and pull it out more slowly. If the belt still cannot be unlocked, let the belt retract slightly after giving it a strong pull, then pull it out slowly again.



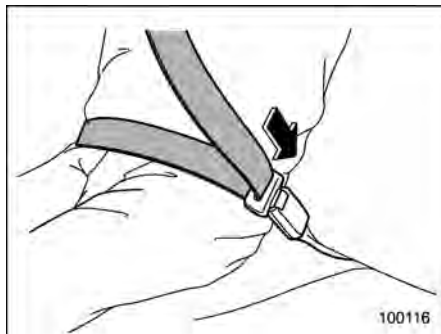
4. Insert the center seatbelt tongue plate in the center seatbelt buckle marked "CENTER" on the left-hand side until it clicks.



5. To make the lap part tight, pull up on the shoulder belt.

6. Place the lap belt as low as possible on your hips, not on your waist.

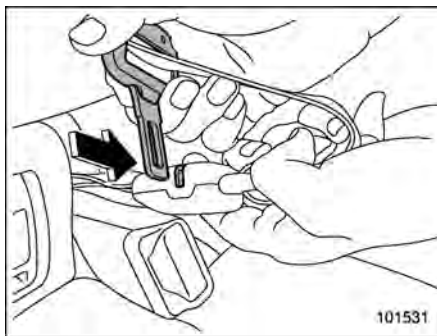
▽ **Unfastening the seatbelt**



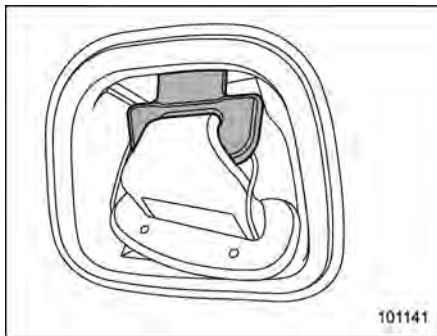
1. Push the release button of the center seatbelt buckle (on the left-hand side) to unfasten the seatbelt.

NOTE

When the seatback is folded down for greater cargo area, it is necessary to disconnect the connector.

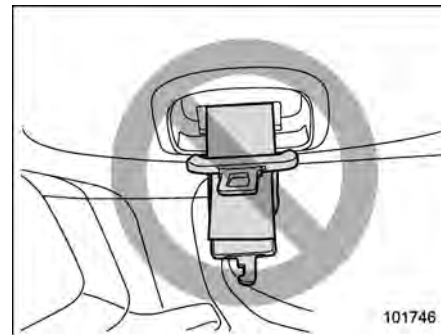


2. Insert a tongue plate or other hard pointed object into the slot in the connector (buckle) on the right-hand side and push it in. The connector (tongue) plate will then disconnect from the buckle.



3. Allow the retractor to roll up the belt.

You should hold the webbing end and guide it back into the retractor while it is rolling up. Neatly store the tongue plate in the recess and then insert the connector (tongue) plate into the slot.



CAUTION

- Do not allow the retractor to roll up the seatbelt too quickly. Otherwise, the metal tongue plates may hit against the trim, resulting in damaged trim.

- Have the seatbelt fully rolled up so that the tongue plates are neatly stored. A hanging tongue plate can swing and hit against the trim during driving, causing damage to the trim.

■ Seatbelt maintenance

To clean the seatbelts, use a mild soap and lukewarm water. Never bleach or dye the belts because this could seriously affect their strength.

Inspect the seatbelts and attachments including the webbing and all hardware periodically for cracks, cuts, gashes, tears, damage, loose bolts or worn areas. Replace the seatbelts even if only minor damage is found.



CAUTION

- Keep the belts free of polishes, oils, chemicals and particularly battery acid.
- Never attempt to make modifications or changes that will prevent the seatbelt from operating properly.

Seatbelt pretensioners

The following seatbelts have a seatbelt pretensioner.

- Driver's seatbelt
- Front passenger's seatbelt

The seatbelt pretensioners are designed to be activated in the event of an accident involving a moderate to severe frontal collision.



Front seatbelt pretensioner

If the frontal SRS airbag sensors detect a certain predetermined amount of force during a frontal collision, any seatbelt which has a seatbelt pretensioner is quickly drawn in by the pretensioner to take up the slack so that the belt more effectively restrains the seat occupant.

When a seatbelt pretensioner is activated, an operating noise will be heard and a small amount of smoke will be released. These occurrences are normal and not harmful. This smoke does not indicate a fire in the vehicle.

Once the seatbelt pretensioner has been activated, the seatbelt retractor remains locked. Consequently, the seatbelt cannot be pulled out and retracted and therefore must be replaced.

NOTE

- Seatbelt pretensioners are not designed to be activated in minor frontal impacts, in side or rear impacts or in roll-over accidents.
- The seatbelt pretensioners and frontal SRS airbags operate simultaneously. In models with front passenger's occupant detection system, even if the front passenger's frontal SRS airbag does not operate as the front passenger's seat is not occupied, the seatbelt pretensioner for the front passenger's seat will operate in combination with the driver's frontal SRS airbag/seatbelt pretensioner.
- Pretensioners are designed to function on a one-time-only basis. In the event that a pretensioner is activated, we recommend that you have the

seatbelt retractor assemblies, which are equipped with seatbelt pretensioners, replaced with genuine SUBARU parts by your authorized SUBARU dealer.

- If a seatbelt which has a seatbelt pretensioner does not retract or cannot be pulled out due to a malfunction or activation of the pretensioner, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.
- If the seatbelt retractor assembly or surrounding area has been damaged, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.
- When you sell your vehicle, we urge you to explain to the buyer that it has seatbelt pretensioners by alerting the buyer to the contents of this section.

**WARNING**

- To obtain maximum protection, the occupants should sit in an upright position with their seatbelts properly fastened. Refer to "Seatbelts" 1-13.
- Do not modify, remove or strike the seatbelt retractor assemblies equipped with seatbelt pretensioners or the surrounding area. This could result in accidental

activation of the seatbelt pretensioners or could make the system inoperative, possibly resulting in serious injury. Seatbelt pretensioners have no user-serviceable parts. For required servicing of seatbelt retractors equipped with seatbelt pretensioners, we recommend that you consult your nearest SUBARU dealer.

- When discarding seatbelt retractor assemblies equipped with seatbelt pretensioners or scrapping the entire vehicle due to collision damage or for other reasons, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer.

■ System monitors

A diagnostic system continually monitors the readiness of the seatbelt pretensioner while the vehicle is being driven. The seatbelt pretensioners share the control module with the SRS airbag system. Therefore, if any malfunction occurs in a seatbelt pretensioner, the SRS airbag system warning light will illuminate. For details, refer to "SRS airbag system monitor" 1-62.

■ System servicing**WARNING**

- When discarding a seatbelt retractor assembly or scrapping the entire vehicle damaged by a collision, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer.
- Tampering with or disconnecting the system's wiring could result in accidental activation of the seatbelt pretensioner and/or SRS airbag or could make the system inoperative, which may result in serious injury. Do not use electrical test equipment on any circuit related to the seatbelt pretensioner and SRS airbag systems. For required servicing of the seatbelt pretensioner, we recommend that you consult your nearest SUBARU dealer.

**CAUTION**

The front sub sensors are located on both the right and left sides at the front of the vehicle, and the SRS airbag control module including the impact sensors is located under the

center console. If you need service or repair in those areas or near the seatbelt pretensioner, we recommend that you have the work performed by your authorized SUBARU dealer.

NOTE

If the front part of the vehicle is damaged in an accident to the extent that the seatbelt pretensioner does not operate, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

■ Precautions against vehicle modification

We recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer if you want to install any accessory parts to your vehicle.



CAUTION

Do not perform any of the following modifications. Such modifications can interfere with proper operation of the seatbelt pretensioners.

- Attachment of any equipment (bush bar, bullbar, winches, snow plow, skid/sump plate, etc.) to the front end other than genuine

SUBARU accessory parts or parts that match the quality of genuine SUBARU accessory parts.

- Modification of the suspension system or front end structure.
- Installation of a tire of different size and construction from the tires specified on the vehicle placard attached to the driver's door pillar or specified for individual vehicle models in this Owner's Manual.

Child restraint systems

■ Applications for Australia models

Refer to the Owner's Manual supplement for the instructions of the child restraint system.

■ Safety precautions



Infants and small children should always be placed in an infant or child restraint system while riding in the vehicle. You should use an infant or child restraint system that is appropriate for the child's age and size. All child restraint systems are designed to be secured in the vehicle seats.

Children could be endangered in an

1-24 *Seat, seatbelt and SRS airbags/Child restraint systems*

accident if their child restraints are not properly secured in the vehicle. When installing the child restraint system, carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating positions.



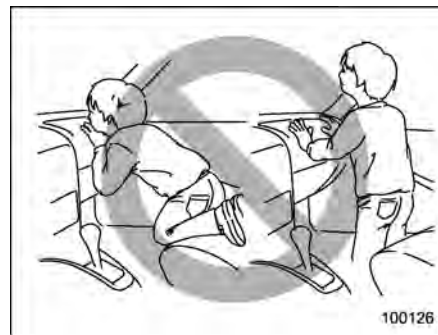
WARNING

Before installing a child restraint system, check that the unlocking marker on the seatback lock release knob cannot be seen to confirm that the rear seatback is securely locked in position. If the rear seatback is not locked securely, serious injury may result.



WARNING

Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap or in his or her arms while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a collision, because the child will be caught between the passenger and objects inside the vehicle.

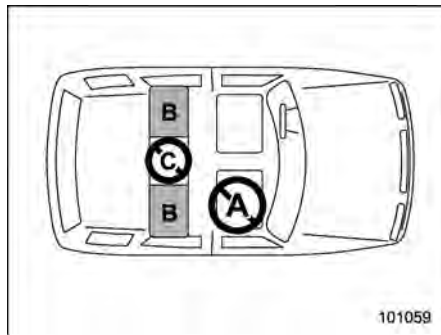


WARNING

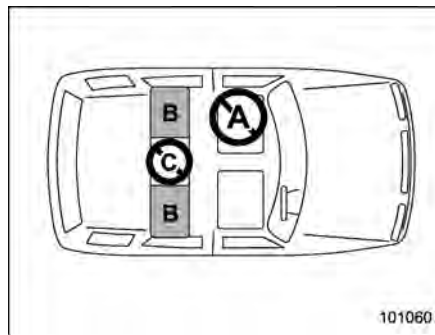
- Children should be properly restrained at all times. Never allow a child to stand up, or to kneel on any seat. Unrestrained children will be thrown forward during sudden stop or in an accident and can be injured seriously.
- Never allow a child to stand up, or to kneel on the front passenger's seat, or never hold a child on your lap or in your arms. The SRS airbag deploys with considerable force and can injure or even kill the child.

Where to place a child restraint system

The following are SUBARU's recommendations on where to place a child restraint system in your vehicle.



Left-hand drive models



Right-hand drive models

A: Front passenger's seat

Do not install a child restraint system (including a booster cushion) due to the hazard to children posed by the passenger's airbag.

B: Rear seat, window-side seating positions

Recommended positions for all types of child restraint systems.

In these positions, the following equipment is provided for installing a child restraint system.

- Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) seatbelts
- Automatic/Emergency Locking Retractor (A/ELR) seatbelts (if equipped)
- ISOFIX anchor bars

- Top tether anchorages

Some types of child restraints might not be able to be secured firmly due to projection of the seat cushion.

In this seating position, you should use only a child restraint system that has a bottom base that fits snugly against the contours of the seat cushion and can be securely retained using the seatbelt.

C: Rear seat, center seating position

Do not install a child restraint system (including a booster seat).



! WARNING

- Secure ALL types of child restraint devices (including forward facing child seats) in the

REAR seats at all times. The SRS airbag deploys with considerable speed and force and can injure or even kill children, especially if they are not restrained or improperly restrained. Because children are lighter and weaker than adults, their risk of being injured from deployment is greater. According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating positions.

- **NEVER INSTALL A REARWARD FACING CHILD SEAT IN THE FRONT PASSENGER'S SEAT. DOING SO RISKS SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH TO THE CHILD BY PLACING THE CHILD'S HEAD TOO CLOSE TO THE SRS AIRBAG.**
- Never install a child restraint system in the front passenger's seat. The force of the rapid deployment of the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child in the event of an accident.

▼ Warning label



WARNING

Warning labels are located on both sides of the front passenger's sun visor. The warning label indicates that it is forbidden to install a rearward facing child restraint system in the front passenger's seat. Details of the label on sun visor are shown in the following illustrations. The label may include information written in the language of your country.



Type A warning label



**AVERTISSEMENT
WAARSCHUWING
WARNUNG - ΠΡΟΣΟΧΗ
AVERTIZARE - ПРЕДУПРЕЖДЕНИЕ
ADVERTENCIA - AVISO**

NE JAMAIS placer de siège pour enfant dos à la route sur le siège avant à moins que l'airbag passager ne soit désactivé.
Peut provoquer la MORT OU DE TRÈS GRAVES BLESSURES.

Plaats GEEN naar achteren gericht kinderzitje op de voorstoel, tenzij de airbag van de passagier is gedeactiveerd.
Dit kan DE DOOD OF ERNSTIG LETSEL tot gevolg hebben.

Platzieren Sie einen nach hinten gerichteten Kindersitz AUF KEINEN FALL auf dem Vordersitz, falls der Beifahrer-Airbag nicht vorher deaktiviert wurde.
Es könnte zu ERNSTHAFTEN ODER SODAR TÖDLICHEN VERLETZUNGEN führen.

ΜΗΝ τοποθετείτε ένα παιδικό κάθισμα επιρριχίας όφης στην μπροστινή θέση αν δεν έχει πρώτα απενεργοποιηθεί ο επιβατικός αερόσακος.
Είναι δυνατόν να προκληθεί ΘΑΝΑΤΟΣ Ή ΣΟΒΑΡΟΣ ΤΡΑΥΜΑΤΙΣΜΟΣ.

NU plasajti scaunul auto pentru copii cu fața către spatele mașinii pe scaunul pasager față decât dacă airbag-ul pentru pasager a fost dezactivat. Pot surveni RANI GRAVE SAU CHIAI MOARTEA.

НЕ ПОСТАВЛЯЙТЕ детский сиденье на место до езды в лобном, обратном направлении, если оно оборудовано выключателем на панели не в деактивации.
Несоблюдение инструкции может привести к СМЕРТИ ИЛИ СЕРЬЕЗНОМУ ТРАВМАТИЗМУ.

NO coloque un asiento para niños orientado hacia atrás en el asiento delantero a no ser que el airbag del pasajero esté desactivado.
Puede provocar LA MUERTE O LESIONES GRAVES.

NÃO coloque uma cadeira de criança no banco da frente se o airbag do passageiro não estiver desativado.
Pode provocar a MORTE OU FERIMENTOS GRAVES. 108

101771

Type B warning label



**WARNUNG
AVVISO
AVERTISSEMENT - VAROVÁNÍ
VAROVANIE - OPOZORILO
OSTRZEŽENIE - FIGYELMEZTETÉS**

Platzieren Sie einen nach hinten gerichteten Kindersitz AUF KEINEN FALL auf dem Vordersitz, falls der Beifahrer-Airbag nicht vorher deaktiviert wurde.
Es könnte zu ERNSTHAFTEN ODER SODAR TÖDLICHEN VERLETZUNGEN führen.

NON posizionare il sedile per bambini rivolto all'indietro sul sedile anteriore a meno che l'airbag passeggero non sia disattivato.
L'inosservanza di tali disposizioni può causare MORTE O GRAVI DANNI.

NE JAMAIS placer de siège pour enfant dos à la route sur le siège avant à moins que l'airbag passager ne soit désactivé.
Peut provoquer la MORT OU DE TRÈS GRAVES BLESSURES.

Діти не встановлюйте дитяче сидіння, спрямоване назад, на передньому сидінні, якщо не вимкнути пасажирський повітряний мішок.
Недотримання цих вимог може призвести до СМЕРТІ АБО ВАЖКИХ ТРАВМ ДІТЕЙ.

NEUMIESTITE detskú sedačku otočenú chrbtom v smere jazdy na predné sedadlo, pokiaľ toto sedadlo nemá deaktivovaný airbag.
Inak môže dôjsť k VAŽNÝM, alebo až k SMRTELNÝM ZRANENIAM dieťaťa.

Otrok, obrejenega z obrazom nazaj, NE posedajte na sprednjem sedelu, razen če je zračna blazina za la sedež izklopljena.
Ču tega ne upoštevate, lahko pride do SMRTI ALI HUDE POŠKODBE.

NE umieszczaj fotelika dla dziecka na przednim siedzeniu tyłem do kierunku jazdy, chyba że poduszka powietrzna pasażera jest odłączona.
Może to spowodować ŚMIERĆ LUB POWAŻNE OBRAZENIA.

NE helyezze a gyermekülést háttal a vezetői melletti ülésre, ha a légzsák aktiválva van. EZZEL SÜLYÖS, VAGY AKAR ÉLETVESZÉLYES SÉRÜLÉST is okozhat. 109

101772

Type C warning label



WARNING

DO NOT place a rear facing child seat on the front seat.
DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY can occur.

AVERTISSEMENT

NE JAMAIS placer de siège pour enfant dos à la route sur le siège avant.
Peut provoquer la MORT OU DE TRÈS GRAVES BLESSURES.

Предупреждение

НЕ УСТАНАВЛИВАЙТЕ детское кресло на переднем сиденье в направлении, противоположном движению автомобиля. Результатом могут быть ТЯЖЕЛЫЕ ТРАВМЫ ИЛИ ЛЕТАЛЬНЫЙ ИСХОД.

警告

请勿将面向后的儿童座椅置于前排座椅上。
否则可能会发生死亡或者严重的伤害。

تحذير

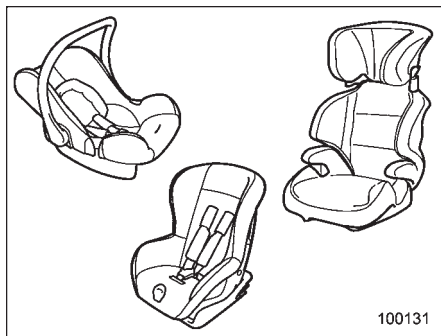
لا تضع مقعد الطفل في الأمام مواجه للخلف.
يمكن أن تحدث وفاة أو إصابات خطيرة.

110

101773

Type D warning label

■ Choosing a child restraint system



Choose a child restraint system that is appropriate for the child's size and age to provide the child with proper protection.

Also it is important that the child restraint system meets safety standards applicable to your country.

In most European countries, child restraint systems must meet the requirement of ECE regulation No. 44. It can be identified by looking for the approval label on the child restraint system or the manufacturer's statement of compliance on the box and the system.

According to the ECE regulation No. 44, child restraint systems are classified into the following five "mass groups".

Group 0: for children of a mass less than 10 kg

Group 0⁺: for children of a mass less than 13 kg

Group I: for children of mass from 9 to 18 kg

Group II: for children of mass from 15 to 25 kg

Group III: for children of mass from 22 to 36 kg

For European countries, refer to the following table for the recommended child restraint system.

Child restraint suitability for each seating position (Europe)

Front seating position:

Mass group	Suitability
0 – up to 10 kg	×
0 ⁺ – up to 13 kg	×
I – 9 to 18 kg	×
II – 15 to 25 kg	×
III – 22 to 36 kg	×

× : Not suitable for child restraint system.

Child restraint suitability for each seating position (Europe)

Rear seating position:

Mass group	Suitability	
	Outboard	Center
0 – up to 10 kg	L ₁ or U	×
0 ⁺ – up to 13 kg	L ₁ or U	×
I – 9 to 18 kg	L ₂ or UF	×
II – 15 to 25 kg	L ₃ , L ₄ or UF	×
III – 22 to 36 kg	L ₃ , L ₄ or UF	×

U: Suitable for universal category child restraint system.

UF: Suitable for forward-facing “universal” category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

× : Not suitable for child restraint system.

L₁: Childseat SUBARU Baby Safe Plus

L₂: Childseat SUBARU Duo plus

L₃: Childseat SUBARU Kid Plus

L₄: Childseat SUBARU Kidfix

1-30 **Seat, seatbelt and SRS airbags/Child restraint systems**

Child restraint suitability for each seating position (Europe)

Mass group	Size class	Fixture	Vehicle ISOFIX positions		
			Front Passenger	Rear Outboard	Rear Center
Carrycot	F	ISO/L1	NA	×	NA
	G	ISO/L2	NA	×	NA
0 – up to 10 kg	E	ISO/R1	NA	IL1	NA
0+ – up to 13 kg	E	ISO/R1	NA	IL1	NA
	D	ISO/R2	NA	IL1	NA
	C	ISO/R3	NA	IL1	NA
I – 9 to 18 kg	D	ISO/R2	NA	IL1	NA
	C	ISO/R3	NA	IL1	NA
	B	ISO/F2	NA	IL2 or IUF	NA
	B1	ISO/F2X	NA	IL2 or IUF	NA
	A	ISO/F3	NA	IL2 or IUF	NA
II – 15 to 25 kg			NA	IL3	NA
III – 22 to 36 kg			NA	IL3	NA

IUF: Suitable for ISOFIX forward child restraints systems of universal category that are approved for use in the mass group.

×: ISOFIX position not suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems in the mass group and/or this size class.

NA: There is no ISOFIX system.

IL1: Childseat G 0/1S ISOFIX and Childseat G 0/1S ISOFIX base

IL2: Childseat SUBARU Duo plus

IL3: Childseat SUBARU Kidfix

■ Installing child restraint systems with seatbelt



WARNING

- Child restraint systems and seatbelts can become hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather; they could burn a small child. Check the child restraint system before you place a child in it.
- Do not leave an unsecured child restraint system in your vehicle. Unsecured child restraint systems can be thrown around inside of the vehicle in a sudden stop, turn or accident; they can strike and injure vehicle occupants as well as result in serious injuries or death to the child.

- When you install a child restraint system, follow the manufacturer's instructions supplied with it. After installing the child restraint system, check to ensure that it is held securely in position. If it is not held tight and secure, the danger of your child or other passengers suffering personal injury in the event of an accident may be increased.

▼ Preparation for installing child restraint system

First check if the Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) is equipped for the seatbelts of the vehicle according to the following procedure.

1. For models with rear seat reclining mechanism, adjust the seatback to the upright position.
2. Draw out the seatbelt completely.
3. Retract the seatbelt even slightly and try to draw out the seatbelt again.
4. If the seatbelt is locked in that position and cannot be extended, it indicates that an ALR is equipped for the seatbelt.

When the seatbelt is retracted fully, the ALR mode is canceled and the Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) mode is restored.

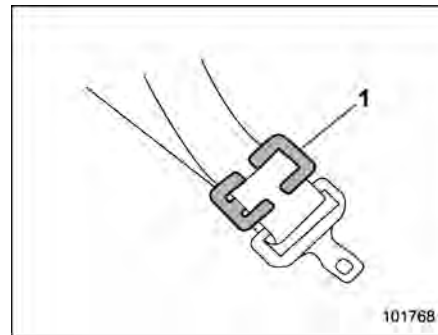
If the ALR is not equipped for the seatbelt, refer to "Models without ALR" 1-32.

If the ALR is equipped for the seatbelt, refer to "Models with ALR" 1-34.

NOTE

- For details about the ELR, refer to "Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR)" 1-14.
- For details about the ALR, refer to "Automatic/Emergency Locking Retractor (A/ELR)" 1-14.

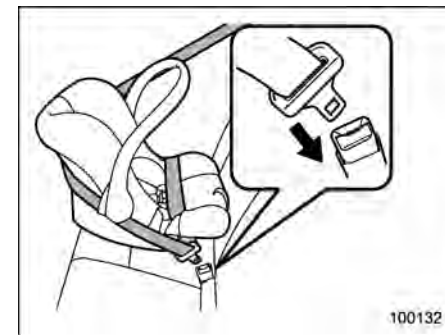
▼ Installing a rearward facing child restraint



1) Locking clip

NOTE

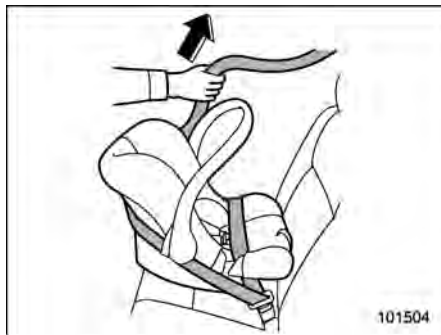
- If using the lock-off lever or the locking clip is recommended by the manufacturer's instructions supplied with the child restraint system, use the lever or clip to secure the child restraint system.
- For models with ALR: If using ALR mode is not recommended by the manufacturer's instructions supplied with the child restraint system, do not use ALR mode.



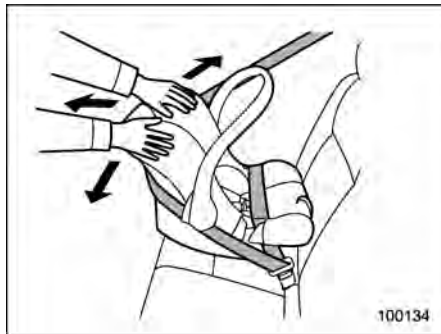
1. Place the child restraint system in the rear seating position.
2. Run the lap and shoulder belt through or around the child restraint system following the instructions provided by its manufacturer.
3. Insert the tongue plate into the buckle

– CONTINUED –

until you hear a click.



4. Take up the slack in the lap belt.



5. Push and pull the child restraint system forward and from side to side to check if it is firmly secured.

6. To remove the child restraint system,

press the release button on the seatbelt buckle.

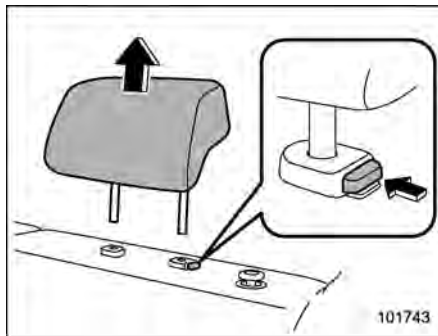


WARNING

NEVER INSTALL A REARWARD FACING CHILD SEAT IN THE FRONT PASSENGER'S SEAT. DOING SO RISKS SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH TO THE CHILD BY PLACING THE CHILD'S HEAD TOO CLOSE TO THE SRS AIRBAG.

▼ **Installing forward facing child restraint**

▽ **Models without ALR**

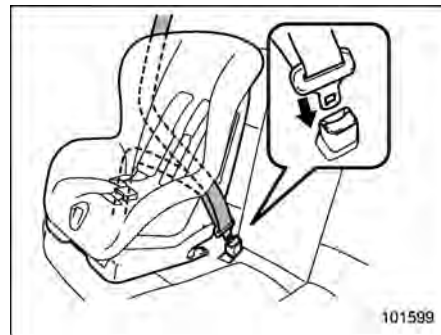


1. Remove the head restraint of the rear seating position where the child restraint

system is to be installed.

2. For models with rear seat reclining mechanism, adjust the seatback to the upright position.

3. Place the child restraint system on the seat.



4. Run the lap and shoulder belt through or around the child restraint system following the instructions provided by its manufacturer.

5. Insert the tongue plate into the buckle until you hear a click.



1) Lock-off lever

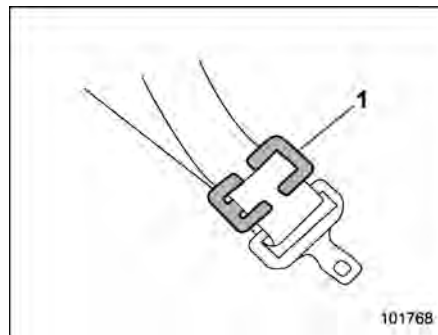
6. Release the child restraint system lock-off lever and pass the shoulder belt through the lock-off lever.

7. Take up the slack in the lap belt. At this time, to secure the child restraint system more firmly, apply your weight to push it down into the seat cushion as you tighten the seatbelt.



1) Lock-off lever

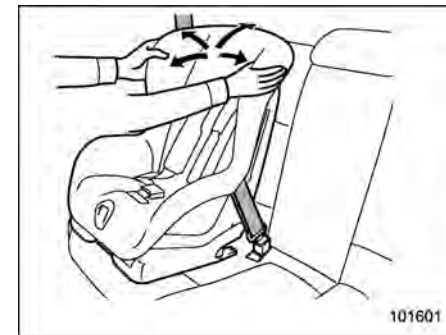
8. Lock the child restraint system lock-off lever to fix the shoulder belt.



1) Locking clip

9. If your child restraint system is not

equipped with a lock-off (a seatbelt locking feature), secure the child restraint system using a locking clip.

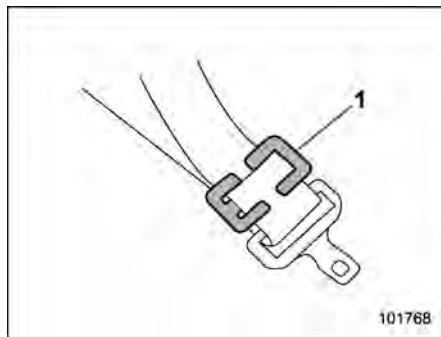


10. Before having a child sit in the child restraint system, try to move it back and forth and right and left to check if it is firmly secured. Sometimes a child restraint can be more firmly secured by pushing it down into the seat cushion and then tightening the seatbelt.

▽ **Models with ALR**



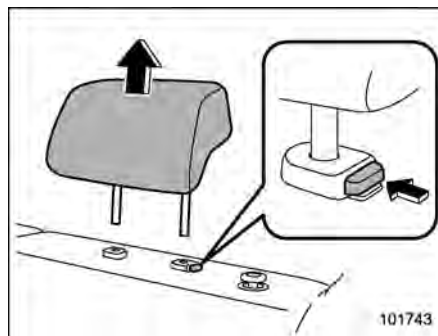
1) Lock-off lever



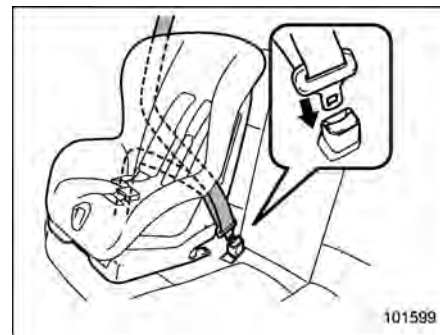
1) Locking clip

NOTE

If using ALR mode is not recommended by the manufacturer's instructions supplied with the child restraint system, use the lock-off lever or the locking clip instead of using ALR mode.



1. Remove the head restraint of the rear seating position where the child restraint system is to be installed.
2. For models with rear seat reclining mechanism, adjust the seatback to the upright position.
3. Place the child restraint system on the seat.

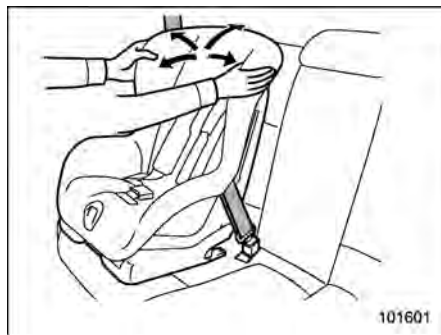


4. Run the lap and shoulder belt through or around the child restraint system following the instructions provided by its manufacturer.

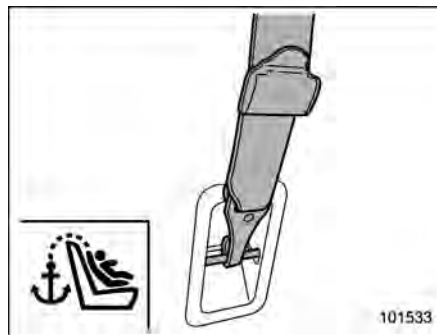
5. Insert the tongue plate into the buckle until you hear a click.



6. Take up the slack in the lap belt.
7. Pull out the seatbelt fully from the retractor to change the retractor over from the Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) to the Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) function. Then, allow the belt to rewind into the retractor. As the belt is rewinding, clicks will be heard which indicate the retractor functions as ALR.



8. Before having a child sit in the child restraint system, try to move it back and forth and right and left to check that it is firmly secured. Sometimes a child restraint can be more firmly secured by pushing it down into the seat cushion and then tightening the seatbelt.
9. Pull at the shoulder portion of the belt to confirm that it cannot be pulled out (ALR properly functioning).



10. If the child restraint system requires a top tether, latch the hook onto the top tether anchorage and tighten the top tether. For additional instructions, refer to "Top tether anchorages" 1-39.



11. To remove the child restraint system,

press the release button on the seatbelt buckle and allow the belt to retract completely. The belt will return to the ELR mode.

NOTE

When the child restraint system is no longer in use, remove it and restore the ELR function of the retractor. That function is restored by allowing the seatbelt to retract fully.

■ Installing a booster seat



1. Place the booster seat in the rear seating position and sit the child on it. The child should sit well back on the booster seat.

2. Run the lap and shoulder belt through or around the booster seat and the child following the instructions provided by its manufacturer.

3. Insert the tongue plate into the buckle until you hear a click. Take care not to twist the seatbelt.

Make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of child's shoulder and that the lap belt is positioned as low as possible on the child's hips.



4. To remove the booster seat, press the release button on the seatbelt buckle and allow the belt to retract.



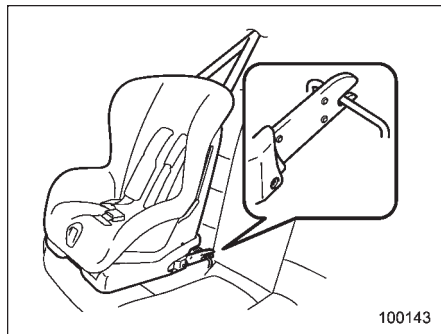
WARNING

- **Never use a belt that is twisted or reversed. In an accident, this can increase the risk or severity of injury to the child.**
- **Never place the shoulder belt under the child's arm or behind the child's back. If an accident occurs, this can increase the risk or severity of injury to the child.**
- **The seatbelt should fit snugly in order to provide full restraint. Loose fitting belts are not as**

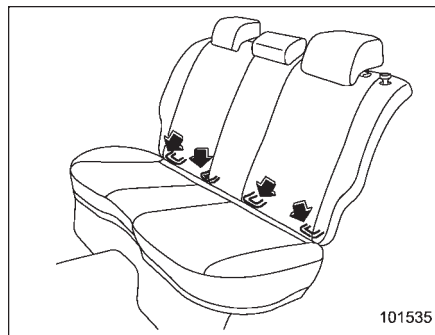
effective in preventing or reducing injury.

- **Place the lap belt as low as possible on the child's hips. High-positioned lap belt will increase the risk of sliding under the lap belt and of the lap belt sliding up over the abdomen, and both can result in serious internal injury or death.**
- **Make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of child's shoulder. Placing the shoulder belt over the neck may result in neck injury during sudden braking or in a collision.**

■ Installation of child restraint systems using ISOFIX anchor bars



Your vehicle is equipped with ISOFIX anchor bars that allow an approved ISOFIX child restraint system to be installed on the rear seat without use of a seatbelt.

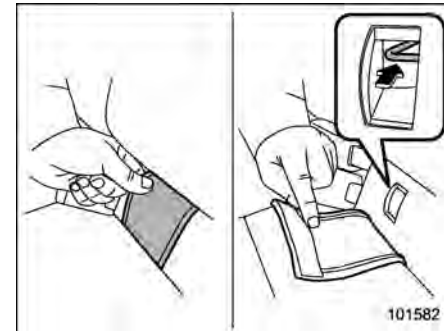


The ISOFIX anchor bars allow you to install a child restraint system only on the rear seat window-side seating positions. For each window-side seating position, two anchor bars are provided.

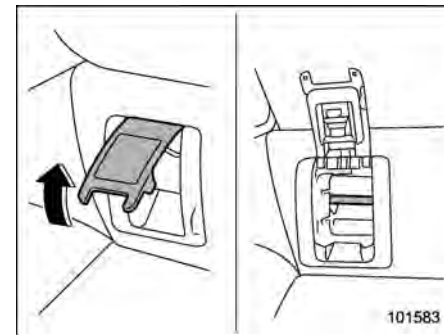


You will find the marks “” at the bottom of

the rear seat seatbacks. These marks indicate the positions of the ISOFIX anchor bars.

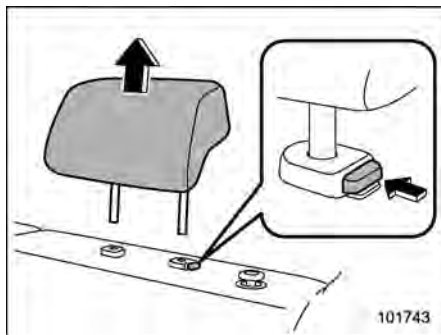


Type A



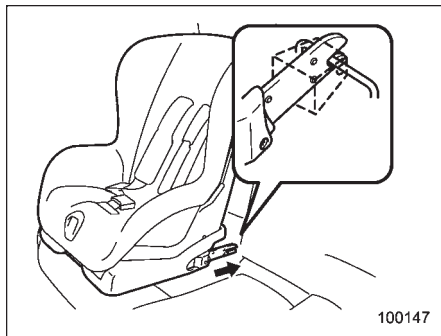
Type B

1. Open the covers.

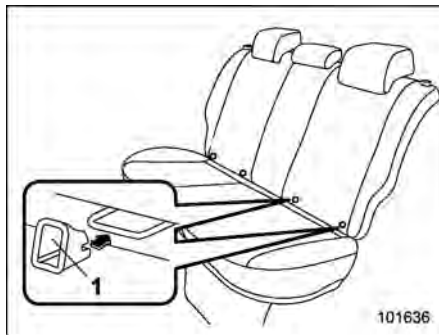


2. Remove the head restraint of the rear seating position where the child restraint system is to be installed.

3. For models with rear seat reclining mechanism, adjust the seatback to the upright position.



4. While following the instructions supplied by the child restraint system manufacturer, connect the connectors of the child restraint system to the anchor bars. When the connectors are fastened, make sure that the adjacent seatbelts are not caught.



1) Inserting aid

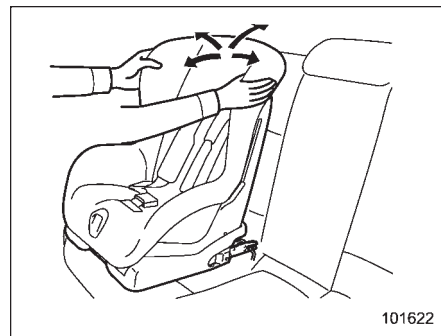
NOTE

If your child restraint system is provided with inserting aids, clip them to the two ISOFIX anchor bars (or put them between seatback and seat cushion at the two ISOFIX fastening points) before connecting the child restraint system.

Position the two connectors just in front of the two inserting aids. Then

insert the two connectors into the inserting aids to connect the connectors to the anchor bars.

The inserting aids make it easier to fit the child restraint system with ISOFIX and avoid damage to the seat.



5. Before seating a child in the child restraint system, try to move it back and forth and right and left to verify that it is held securely in position.

6. If the child restraint system requires a top tether, latch the hook onto the top tether anchorage and tighten the top tether. For additional instructions, refer to "Top tether anchorages" 1-39.

For further information, refer to the instruction manual supplied by the child restraint system manufacturer.

**CAUTION**

When you install a child restraint system, follow the manufacturer's instructions supplied with it. After installing the child restraint system, check to ensure that it is held securely in position. If it is not held tight and secure, the danger of your child suffering personal injury in the event of an accident may be increased.

NOTE

Before installing a child restraint system, ask the manufacturer of the system to confirm that it is one approved for your vehicle.

■ Top tether anchorages

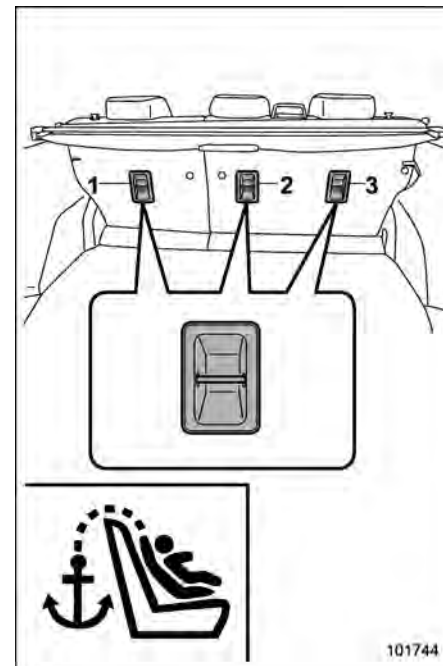
Your vehicle is provided with two or three top tether anchorages so that a child restraint system having a top tether can be installed in the rear seat. When installing a child restraint system using top tether, proceed as follows, while observing the instructions by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Since a top tether can provide additional stability by offering another connection between a child restraint system and the

vehicle, we recommend that you use a top tether whenever one is required or available.

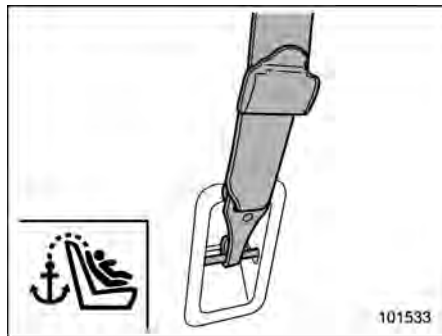
▼ Anchorage location

Anchorage locations are installed as shown in the following illustration.



- 1) For left seat
- 2) For center seat (if equipped)
- 3) For right seat

▼ To hook the top tether



1. Attach the top tether hook to the appropriate upper anchorage.
2. Tighten the top tether securely.

We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer if you have any question regarding the installation of a child restraint system.

*SRS airbag (Supplemental Restraint System airbag)

*SRS: This stands for supplemental restraint system. This name is used because the airbag system supplements the vehicle's seatbelts.

Your vehicle is equipped with a supplemental restraint system to supplement the seatbelts for the front seats and rear window-side seating positions.

The supplemental restraint system (SRS) consists of two to seven airbags. The configurations are as follows.

- **Frontal airbags** for driver and front passenger
- **Knee airbag** for driver (if equipped)
- **Side airbags** for driver and front passenger (if equipped)
- **Curtain airbags** for driver, front passenger and window-side rear passengers (if equipped)

These SRS airbags are designed only as a supplement to the primary protection provided by the seatbelt.

The system also controls seatbelt pretensioners. For operation instructions and precautions concerning the seatbelt pretensioner, refer to "Seatbelt pretensioners"

☞ 1-21.

■ General precautions regarding SRS airbag system

⚠ WARNING

- To obtain maximum protection in the event of an accident, the driver and all passengers in the vehicle should always wear seatbelts when the vehicle is moving. The SRS airbag is designed only to be a supplement to the primary protection provided by the seatbelt. It does not eliminate the need to fasten seatbelts. In combination with the seatbelts, it offers the best combined protection in case of a serious accident. Not wearing a seatbelt increases the chance of severe injury or death in a crash even when the vehicle has the SRS airbag. For instructions and precautions concerning the seatbelt system, refer to "Seatbelts" ☞ 1-13.
- For models with the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag: The SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag are designed only to be a supplement to the primary

protection provided by the seatbelt. They do not eliminate the need to fasten seatbelts. It is also important to wear your seatbelt to help avoid injuries that can result when an occupant is not seated in a proper upright position.



WARNING

The SRS airbags deploy with considerable speed and force. Occupants who are out of proper position when the SRS airbag deploys could suffer very serious injuries. Because the SRS airbag needs enough space for deployment, the driver should always sit upright and well

back in the seat as far from the steering wheel as practical while still maintaining full vehicle control and the front passenger should move the seat as far back as possible and sit upright and well back in the seat.



WARNING

- For models with the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag: Do not sit or lean unnecessarily close to either front door. The SRS side airbags are stored in both front seat seatbacks next to the door, and they provide protection by deploying rapidly (faster than the blink of an eye) in the

event of a side impact collision. However, the force of SRS side airbag deployment may cause injuries if your head or other parts of the body are too close to the SRS side airbag.

- For models with SRS curtain airbags, do not sit or lean unnecessarily close to the front or rear door on either side. Also, do not put your head, arms or hands out of the window. The curtain airbags on both sides of the cabin are stored in the roof side (between the front pillar and a point over the rear seat), and they provide protection by deploying rapidly (faster than the blink of an eye) in the event of a side impact. However, the force of its deployment may cause injuries if your head is too close to it.
 - Do not sit or lean unnecessarily close to the SRS airbag. Because the SRS airbag deploys with considerable speed – faster than the blink of an eye – and force to protect in high speed collisions, the force of an airbag can injure an occupant whose body is too close to SRS airbag.
- It is also important to wear your

seatbelt to help avoid injuries that can result when the SRS airbag contacts an occupant not in proper position such as one thrown forward during pre-accident braking.

Even when properly positioned, there remains a possibility that an occupant may suffer minor injury such as abrasions and bruises to the face or arms because of the SRS airbag deployment force.

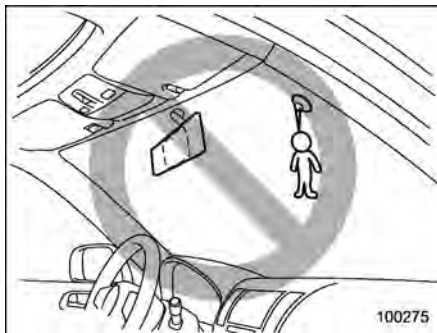


WARNING

- For models with SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbags: Do not

rest your arm on either front door or its internal trim. You could be injured in the event of SRS side airbag deployment.

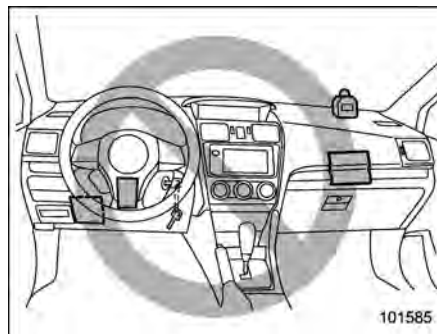
- Do not place any objects over or near the SRS airbag cover or between you and the SRS airbag. If the SRS airbag deploys, those objects could interfere with its proper operation and could be propelled inside the vehicle and cause injury.



WARNING

Do not attach accessories to the windshield, or fit an extra-wide mirror over the rear view mirror. If the

SRS airbag deploys, those objects could become projectiles that could seriously injure vehicle occupants.

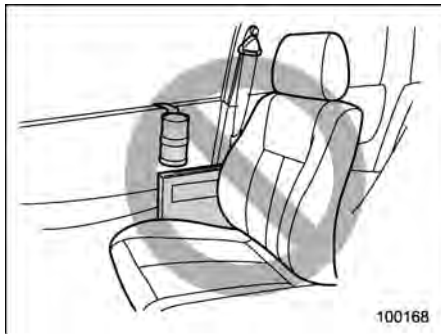


WARNING

- Do not put any objects over the steering wheel pad and dashboard. If the SRS frontal airbag deploys, these objects could interfere with its proper operation and could be propelled inside the vehicle, causing injury.
- For models with SRS knee airbag:
 - The key must not be attached to heavy, sharp or hard accessories, or another key. If the

SRS knee airbag deploys, those objects could interfere with its proper operation and could be propelled inside the vehicle and cause injury.

- Do not put any objects under the driver's side of the instrument panel. If the SRS knee airbag deploys, those objects could interfere with its proper operation and could be propelled inside the vehicle and cause injury.



100168

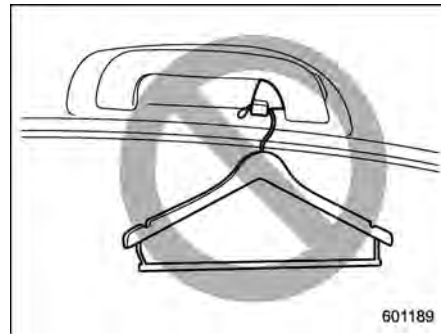


WARNING

For models with SRS side airbags and SRS curtain airbags:

- Do not attach accessories to the door trim or near either SRS side airbags and do not place objects near the SRS side airbags. In the event of SRS side airbag deployment, they could be propelled dangerously toward the vehicle's occupants and cause injuries.
- Do not attach a hands-free microphone or any other accessory to a front pillar, a center pillar, a rear pillar, the windshield, a side window, an assist grip, or any other cabin surface that would be near a deploying SRS curtain airbag. A hands-free microphone or other accessory in such a location could be propelled through the cabin with great force by the curtain airbag, or it could prevent correct deployment of the curtain airbag. In either case, the result could be serious injuries.
- Never hang or place coat hangers or other hard or pointed objects near the side windows. If such items are present when the SRS curtain airbags deploy, they could be thrown through the passenger compartment and cause serious injuries. They could also prevent proper opera-

tion of the SRS curtain airbags.



601189



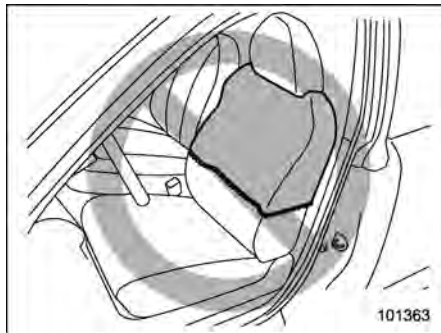
WARNING

For models with SRS curtain airbags:

Do not hang coat hangers or other hard or pointed objects on the coat hooks. If such items are hanging on the coat hooks during deployment of the SRS curtain airbags, they could cause serious injuries by coming off the coat hooks and being thrown through the cabin or by preventing deployment of the curtain airbags.

Before hanging clothing on the coat hooks, make sure there are no sharp

objects in the pockets. Hang clothing directly on the coat hooks without using hangers.



! WARNING

For models with SRS side airbags, do not put any kind of cover or clothes or other objects over either front seatback and do not attach labels or stickers to the front seat surface on or near the SRS side airbag. They could prevent proper deployment of the SRS side airbag, reducing protection available to the front seat's occupant.



! WARNING

- Put children in the REAR seat properly restrained at all times in a child restraint device or in a seatbelt, whichever is appropriate for the child's age, height and weight. The SRS airbag deploys with considerable speed and force and can injure or even kill children, especially if they are not restrained or improperly restrained. Because children are lighter and weaker than adults, their risk of being injured from deployment is greater.

Secure ALL types of child restraint devices (including for-

ward facing child seats) in the REAR seats at all times.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating positions.

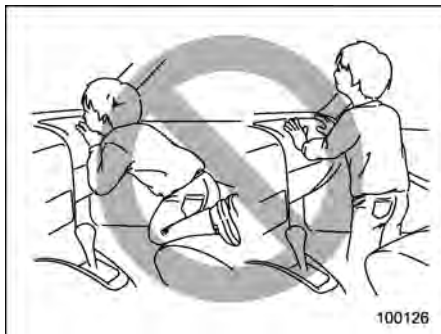
For instructions and precautions concerning the child restraint system, refer to "Child restraint systems" 1-23.



! WARNING

NEVER INSTALL A REARWARD FACING CHILD SEAT IN THE FRONT SEAT. DOING SO RISKS SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH TO THE CHILD

BY PLACING THE CHILD'S HEAD TOO CLOSE TO THE SRS AIRBAG.



⚠ WARNING

Never allow a child to stand up or kneel on the front passenger's seat. The SRS airbag deploys with considerable force and can injure or even kill the child.



⚠ WARNING

Never hold a child on your lap or in your arms. The SRS airbag deploys with considerable force and can injure or even kill the child.



⚠ WARNING

- For models with SRS side airbags and SRS curtain airbags, never allow a child to do the following.

- Kneel on any passenger's seat facing the side window
- Wrap his/her arms around the front seat seatback
- Put his/her head, arms or other parts of the body out of the window

In the event of an accident, the force of SRS side airbag and/or SRS curtain airbag deployment could injure the child seriously because his/her head, arms or other parts of the body are too close to the SRS side airbag and/or SRS curtain airbag.

- Since your vehicle is also equipped with a front passenger's SRS frontal airbag, children aged 12 and under should be placed in the rear seat anyway and should be properly restrained at all times.



CAUTION

- When the SRS airbag deploys, some smoke will be released. This smoke could cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing trouble. If you or your

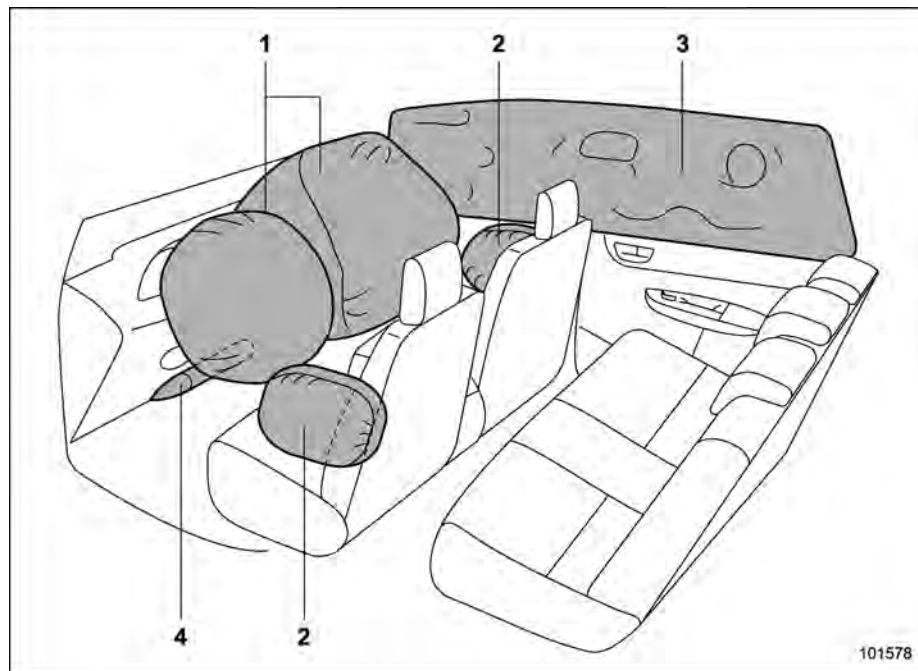
passengers have breathing problems after SRS airbag deploys, get fresh air promptly.

- A deploying SRS airbag releases hot gas. Occupants could get burned if they come into direct contact with the hot gas.

NOTE

When you sell your vehicle, we urge you to explain to the buyer that it is equipped with SRS airbags by alerting the buyer to the applicable section in this Owner's Manual.

■ Components



- 1) SRS frontal airbag
- 2) SRS side airbag (if equipped)
- 3) SRS curtain airbag (if equipped)
- 4) SRS knee airbag (if equipped)

The SRS airbags are stowed in the following locations.

Driver's SRS frontal airbag: in the center portion of the steering wheel

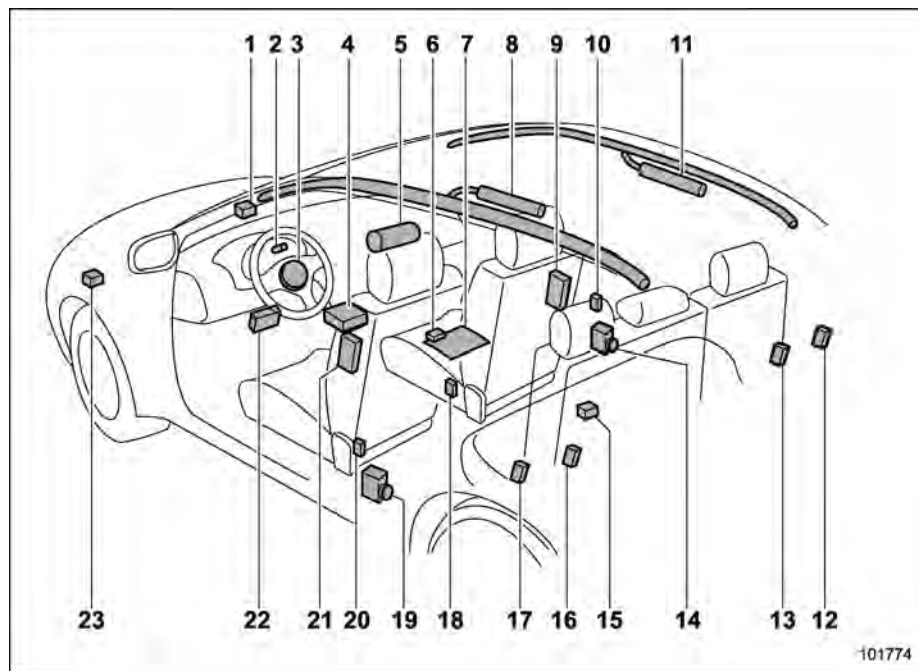
Front passenger's SRS frontal airbag: near the top of the dashboard under an "SRS AIRBAG" mark

SRS side airbag (if equipped): in the door side of each front seat seatback which bears an "SRS AIRBAG" label

SRS curtain airbag (if equipped): in the roof side (between the front pillar and a point over the rear seat)
An "SRS AIRBAG" mark is located at the top of each center pillar.

SRS knee airbag (if equipped): under the steering column

1-48 Seat, seatbelt and SRS airbags/*SRS airbag (Supplemental Restraint System airbag)

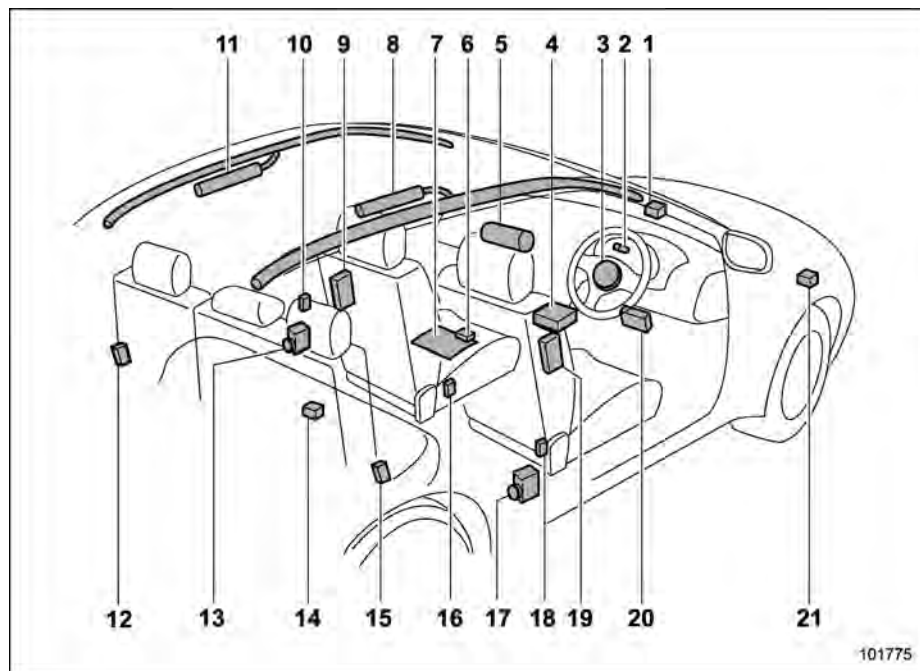


Left-hand drive models

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1) Front sub sensor (right-hand side) | 6) Front passenger's occupant detection control module* |
| 2) SRS airbag system warning light | 7) Front passenger's occupant detection sensor* |
| 3) Frontal airbag module (driver's side) | 8) Curtain airbag module (left-hand side)* |
| 4) Airbag control module (including impact sensors) | 9) Side airbag module (front passenger's side)* |
| 5) Frontal airbag module (front passenger's side) | |

- 10) Side airbag sensor (center pillar right-hand side)*
- 11) Curtain airbag module (right-hand side)*
- 12) Seatbelt pretensioner (rear seat right-hand side)*
- 13) Curtain airbag sensor (rear wheel house right-hand side)*
- 14) Seatbelt pretensioner (front passenger's side)
- 15) Satellite safing sensor (under the rear center seat)*
- 16) Seatbelt pretensioner (rear seat left-hand side)*
- 17) Curtain airbag sensor (rear wheel house left-hand side)*
- 18) Seatbelt buckle switch (front passenger's side)*
- 19) Seatbelt pretensioner (driver's side)
- 20) Side airbag sensor (center pillar left-hand side)*
- 21) Side airbag module (driver's side)*
- 22) Knee airbag module (driver's side)*
- 23) Front sub sensor (left-hand side)

*: If equipped



Right-hand drive models

- 1) Front sub sensor (left-hand side)
- 2) SRS airbag system warning light
- 3) Frontal airbag module (driver's side)
- 4) Airbag control module (including impact sensors)
- 5) Frontal airbag module (front passenger's side)
- 6) Front passenger's occupant detection control module*
- 7) Front passenger's occupant detection sensor*
- 8) Curtain airbag module (right-hand side)*
- 9) Side airbag module (front passenger's side)*
- 10) Side airbag sensor (center pillar left-hand side)*
- 11) Curtain airbag module (left-hand side)*
- 12) Curtain airbag sensor (rear wheel house left-hand side)*
- 13) Seatbelt pretensioner (front passenger's side)
- 14) Satellite safing sensor (under the rear center seat)*
- 15) Curtain airbag sensor (rear wheel house right-hand side)*
- 16) Seatbelt buckle switch (front passenger's side)*
- 17) Seatbelt pretensioner (driver's side)
- 18) Side airbag sensor (center pillar right-hand side)*
- 19) Side airbag module (driver's side)*
- 20) Knee airbag module (driver's side)*
- 21) Front sub sensor (right-hand side)

*: If equipped

■ SRS airbag

WARNING

Warning labels are located on both sides of the front passenger's sun visor. Carefully read the description in "Warning label" 1-26.

For the locations of the SRS airbags, refer to "Components" 1-47.

In a moderate to severe frontal collision, the driver's and front passenger's SRS frontal airbags deploy and supplement the seatbelts by reducing the impact on the driver's and front passenger's head and chest.

For models with SRS side airbag, in a moderate to severe side impact collision, the SRS side airbag on the impacted side of the vehicle deploys between the occupant and the door panel and supplements the seatbelt by reducing the impact to the occupant's chest and waist. The SRS side airbag operates only for front seat occupants.

For models with SRS curtain airbag, in a moderate to severe side impact collision, the SRS curtain airbag on the impacted side of the vehicle deploys between the occupant and the side window and sup-

plements the seatbelt by reducing the impact to the occupant's head.

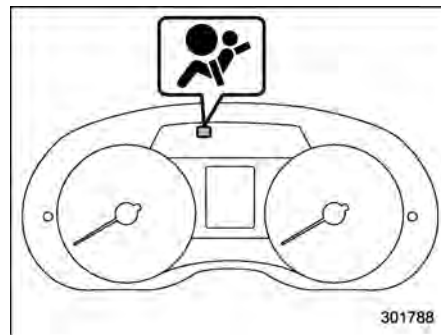
For models with SRS knee airbag, in a moderate to severe frontal collision, the SRS knee airbag deploys in conjunction with the frontal airbag and supplements the seatbelt by reducing the impact on the driver's knees.

▼ **Occupant detection system (if equipped)**

The occupant detection sensor is installed under the seat upholstery and monitors the physique and posture of the front passenger. The occupant detection system determines whether the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag should be deployed or not from the physique and posture of the front passenger.

The occupant detection system may not inflate the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag even when the driver's SRS frontal airbag deploys. This is normal.

If the front passenger's seat cushion is wet, this may adversely affect the ability of the occupant detection system. If the seat cushion is wet, do not use the front passenger's seat. Wipe off liquid from the seat immediately, let the seat dry naturally and then check the SRS airbag system warning light as follows.



SRS airbag system warning light

- If the SRS airbag system warning light illuminates, continue to dry the seat until the warning light turns off. If the SRS airbag system warning light stays on even when the seat has dried, do not allow anyone to sit on the front passenger's seat. We recommend that you have the system checked by your SUBARU dealer.
- If the SRS airbag system warning light does not illuminate, check that the front passenger's frontal airbag ON and OFF indicators work properly. For details about the indicators, refer to "Front passenger's frontal airbag ON and OFF indicators" 3-15. If the indicators do not work properly, do not allow anyone to sit on the front passenger's seat. We recommend that you have the system checked by your

SUBARU dealer.

Also, if luggage or electronic devices are placed on the front passenger's seat, this may adversely affect the ability of the occupant detection system. This may prevent the front passenger's frontal airbag ON and OFF indicators from working properly. Check that the indicators work properly.

When the OFF indicator turns off and the ON indicator illuminates, the front passenger's frontal airbag may deploy during a collision. Remove luggage and electronic devices from the front passenger's seat.

▼ **Front passenger's SRS frontal airbag for models with occupant detection system**



CAUTION

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may prevent the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag system from functioning correctly or cause the system to fail.

- **Do not apply any strong impact to the front passenger's seat.**
- **Do not spill liquid on the front passenger's seat. If liquid is spilled, wipe it off immediately.**
- **Do not remove or disassemble**

the front passenger's seat.

- **Do not install any accessory (such as an audio amplifier) other than a genuine SUBARU accessory or equivalent under the front passenger's seat.**
- **Do not place anything (shoes, umbrella, etc.) under the front passenger's seat.**
- **Do not put sharp object(s) on the seat or pierce the seat upholstery.**
- **Do not place a magnet near the seatbelt buckle.**

If the seatbelt buckle switch and/or front passenger's occupant detection system have failed, the SRS airbag system warning light will illuminate. We recommend that you have the system inspected by your SUBARU dealer immediately if the SRS airbag system warning light illuminates.

If your vehicle has sustained impact, this may affect the proper function of the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag system. We recommend that you have your vehicle inspected at your SUBARU dealer. Do not use the front passenger's seat while driving the vehicle to your SUBARU dealer or another service center.

NOTE

The front passenger's SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag are not controlled by the SRS frontal airbag system.

▼ **Passenger's frontal airbag ON and OFF indicators (if equipped)**

Refer to "Front passenger's frontal airbag ON and OFF indicators" 3-15.

▼ **Conditions in which front passenger's SRS frontal airbag is not activated (models with occupant detection system)**

The front passenger's SRS frontal airbag will not be activated when any of the following conditions are met regarding the front passenger's seat:

- The seat is empty.
- The seat is equipped with an appropriate child restraint system and an infant is restrained in it. (See WARNING that follows.)
- The system is being checked after the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position.
- The front passenger's occupant detection system is malfunctioning.



WARNING

NEVER INSTALL A REARWARD FACING CHILD SEAT IN THE FRONT PASSENGER'S SEAT EVEN IF THE FRONT PASSENGER'S SRS FRONTAL AIRBAG IS DEACTIVATED. Be sure to install it in the REAR seat in a correct manner. Also, it is strongly recommended that any forward facing child seat or booster seat be installed in the REAR seat, and that even children who have outgrown a child restraint system be also seated in the REAR seat. This is because children sitting in the front passenger's seat may be killed or severely injured should the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag deploy. REAR seats are the safest place for children.



CAUTION

When the front passenger's seat is occupied by an infant in an appropriate child restraint system, observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may interfere with the proper operation of the occupant detection system, activating the front passenger's SRS frontal

airbag even though that seat is occupied by the infant in the child restraint system.

- **Do not place any article (including electronic devices) on the seat other than the infant in the child restraint system.**
- **Do not place more than one infant in the child restraint system.**

▽ **If the front passenger's frontal airbag ON indicator illuminates and the OFF indicator turns off even when an infant or a small child is in a child restraint system (including booster seat)**

1. Turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position.
2. Remove the child restraint system from the seat.
3. By referring to the child restraint manufacturer's recommendations as well as the child restraint system installation procedures in "Child restraint systems" 1-23, correctly install the child restraint system.
4. Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position and make sure that the front passenger's frontal airbag ON indicator turns off and the OFF indicator illuminates.

If still the ON indicator remains illuminated while the OFF indicator turns off, take the following actions.

- Ensure that no article is placed on the seat other than the child restraint system and the child occupant.
- Ensure that the backward-forward position and seatback of front passenger's seat are locked into place securely by moving the seat back and forth (models with manual seat only).

If the ON indicator still remains illuminated while the OFF indicator turns off after taking relevant corrective actions described above, relocate the child restraint system to the rear seat. We recommend that you immediately contact your SUBARU dealer for an inspection.

NOTE

When a child who has outgrown a child restraint system or a small adult is seated in the front passenger's seat, the SRS frontal airbag system may or may not activate the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag depending on the occupant's seating posture. If the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag is activated (the ON indicator remains illuminated while the OFF indicator turns off), take the following actions.

- Ensure that no article is placed on the seat other than the occupant.

If the ON indicator still remains illuminated while the OFF indicator turns off despite the fact that the actions noted above have been taken, seat the child/small adult in the rear seat. We recommend that you immediately contact your SUBARU dealer for an inspection. Even if the system has passed the dealer inspection, it is recommended that on subsequent trips the child/small adult always take the rear seat.

Children who have outgrown a child restraint system should always wear the seatbelt irrespective of whether the airbag is deactivated or activated.

▼ **Conditions in which front passenger's SRS frontal airbag is activated (models with occupant detection system)**

The front passenger's SRS frontal airbag will be activated for deployment upon impact when any of the following conditions are met regarding the front passenger's seat.

- When the seat is occupied by an adult.
- When certain items (e.g. jug of water) are placed on the seat.



CAUTION

When the front passenger's seat is occupied by an adult, do not place anything (shoes, umbrella, etc.) under the front passenger's seat. Doing so may deactivate the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag despite the fact that the seat is occupied by an adult. This may result in personal injury.

▽ **If the passenger's frontal airbag OFF indicator illuminates and the ON indicator turns off even when the front passenger's seat is occupied by an adult**

This can be caused by the adult incorrectly sitting in the front passenger's seat.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position.
2. Ask the front passenger to set the seatback to the upright position, sit up straight in the center of the seat cushion, correctly fasten the seatbelt, position his/her legs out forward, and adjust the seat to the rearmost position.
3. Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position.

If the OFF indicator remains illuminated while the ON indicator remains off, take

the following actions.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position.
2. Make sure that the front passenger does not use a blanket, seat cushion, seat cover, seat heater or massager, etc.
3. If wearing excessive layers of clothing, the front passenger should remove any unnecessary items before sitting in the front passenger's seat, or should sit in a rear seat.
4. Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position and wait 6 seconds to allow the system to complete self-checking. Following the system check, both indicators turn off for 2 seconds. Now, the ON indicator should illuminate while the OFF indicator remains off.

If the OFF indicator still remains illuminated while the ON indicator remains off, ask the occupant to move to the rear seat. We recommend that you immediately contact your SUBARU dealer for an inspection.

■ System operation



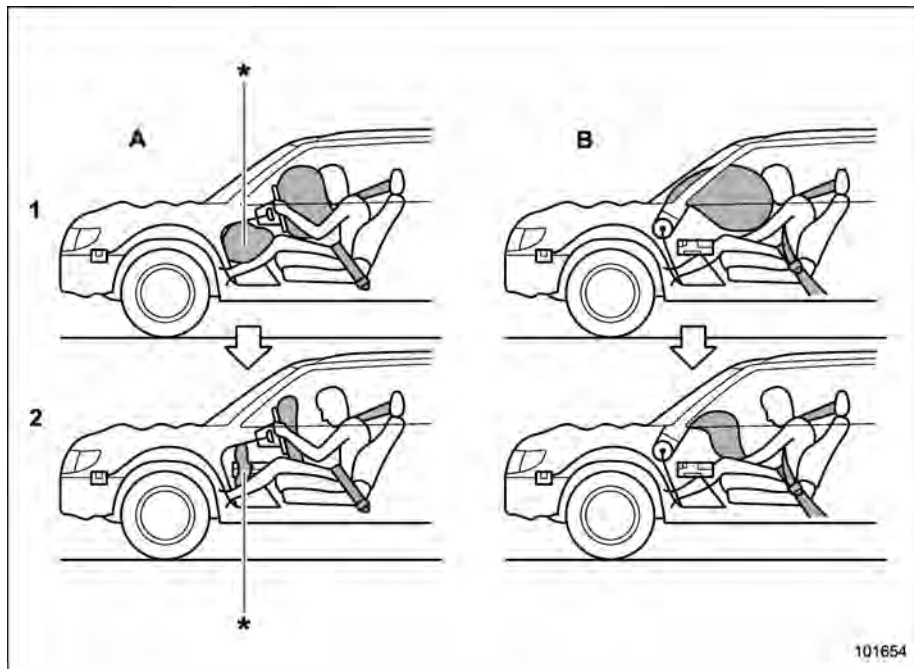
CAUTION

Do not touch the SRS airbag system components with bare hands right after deployment. Doing so can cause burns because the components can be very hot as a result of deployment.

The SRS airbags can function only when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.

When the SRS airbag(s) deploy(s), a sudden, fairly loud inflation noise will be heard and some smoke will be released. These occurrences are a normal result of the deployment. This smoke does not indicate a fire in the vehicle.

▼ SRS frontal airbag operation



- A) Driver's side
- B) Passenger's side
- 1) SRS AIRBAGs deploy as soon as a collision occurs.
- 2) After deployment, SRS AIRBAGs start to deflate immediately so that the driver's vision is not obstructed.
- *: Models with knee airbag

If the front sub sensors located on both the right and left sides at the front of the vehicle and the impact sensors in the airbag control module detect a certain predetermined amount of force during a frontal collision, the control module sends signals to the frontal airbag modules instructing them to inflate the SRS frontal airbags. Then both airbag modules produce gas, which instantly inflates driver's and passenger's SRS frontal airbags. If the vehicle is equipped with a knee airbag, the knee airbag is also inflated in combination with the SRS frontal airbags.

After deployment, the SRS airbags immediately start to deflate so that the driver's vision is not obstructed and the driver's ability to maintain control of the vehicle is not interfered. The time required from detecting impact to the deflation of the SRS airbag after deployment is shorter than the blink of an eye.

If the vehicle is equipped with the occupant detection system for the front passenger's seat, the SRS system detects whether the front passenger's seat is occupied by a passenger or not. If the seat is not occupied, the system does not inflate the front passenger's SRS airbag.

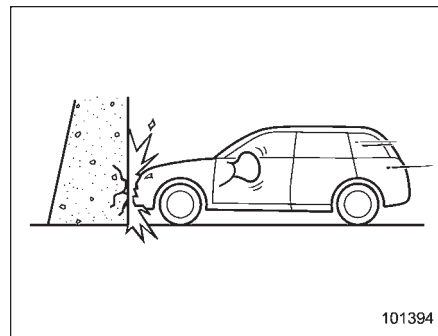
The SRS frontal airbag (and also the knee airbag) is designed to deploy in the event

of an accident involving a moderate to severe frontal collision. It is not designed to deploy in most lesser frontal impacts because the necessary protection can be achieved by the seatbelt alone. Also, it is not designed to deploy in most side or rear impacts or in most roll-over accidents because deployment of the SRS frontal airbag would not help the occupant in those situations.

The SRS airbag is designed to function on a one-time-only basis.

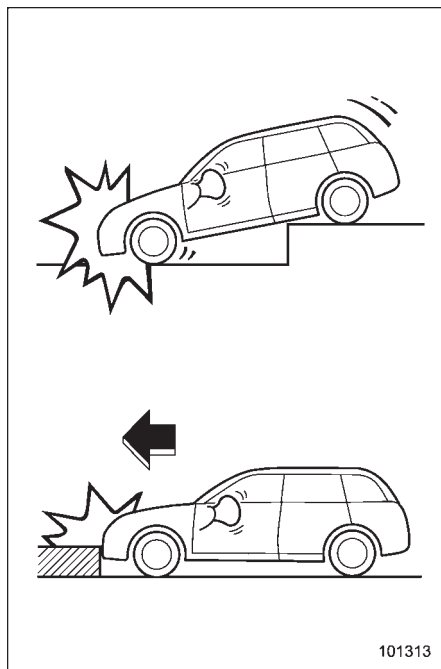
SRS airbag deployment depends on the level of force experienced in the passenger compartment during a collision. That level differs from one type of collision to another, and it may have no bearing on the visible damage done to the vehicle itself.

▽ **When will the SRS frontal airbag most likely deploy?**



A head-on collision against a thick concrete wall at a vehicle speed of 20 to 30 km/h (12 to 19 mph) or higher activates the SRS frontal airbag. The SRS frontal airbag will also be activated when the vehicle is exposed to a frontal impact similar in fashion and magnitude to the collision described above.

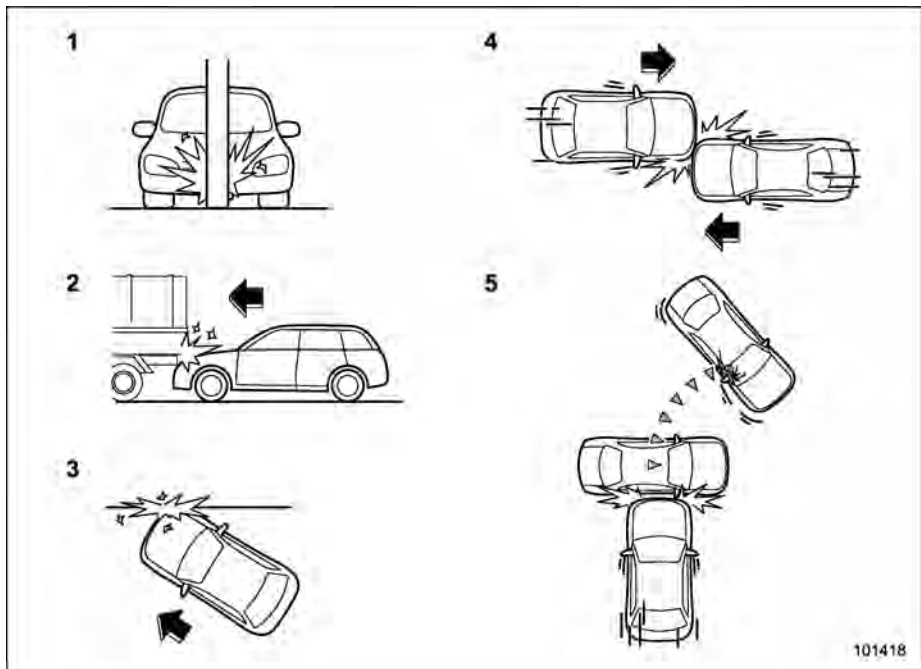
▽ **At what other times might the SRS frontal airbag deploy?**



The SRS frontal airbag may be activated when the vehicle sustains a hard impact in the undercarriage area from the road surface (such as when the vehicle

plunges into a deep ditch, is severely impacted or knocked hard against an obstacle on the road such as a curb).

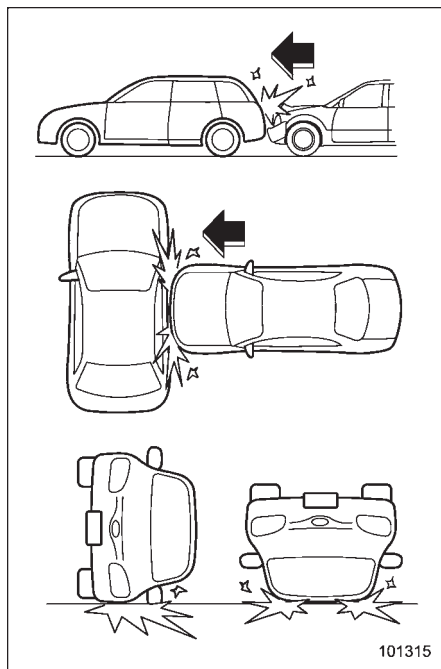
▽ When is the SRS frontal airbag unlikely to deploy?



- 1) The vehicle strikes an object, such as a telephone pole or sign pole.
- 2) The vehicle slides under the load bed of a truck.
- 3) The vehicle sustains an oblique offset frontal impact.
- 4) The vehicle sustains an offset frontal collision.
- 5) The vehicle strikes an object that can move or deform, such as a parked vehicle.

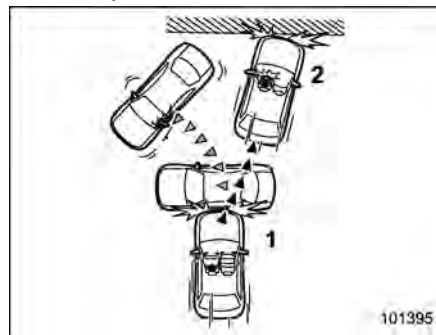
There are many types of collisions which might not necessarily require SRS frontal airbag deployment. In the event of accidents like those illustrated, the SRS frontal airbag may not deploy depending on the level of accident forces involved.

▽ **When will the SRS frontal airbag not deploy?**



The SRS frontal airbag is not designed to deploy in most cases if the vehicle is struck from the side or from behind, or if it rolls onto its side or roof, or if it is involved

in a low-speed frontal collision.



- 1) First impact
- 2) Second impact

In an accident where the vehicle is impacted more than once, the SRS frontal airbag deploys only once on the first impact.

Example: In the case of a double collision, first with another vehicle, then against a concrete wall in immediate succession, once the SRS frontal airbag is activated on the first impact, it will not be activated on the second.

▼ **SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag operation (if equipped)**



Models with SRS side airbags and SRS curtain airbags

The driver's and front passenger's SRS side airbags and SRS curtain airbags deploy independently of each other since each has its own impact sensor. Therefore, they may not both deploy in the same accident. Also, the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag deploy independently of the driver's and front passenger's SRS frontal airbags in the steering wheel and instrument panel.

An impact sensor, which senses impact force, is located in each of the following locations.

- In the left and right center pillars

- In the left and right rear wheel houses
- Under the rear center seat

If one of the center pillar impact sensors and the impact sensor that is located under the rear center seat together sense an impact force above a predetermined level in a side collision, the control module causes both the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag on the impacted side to inflate regardless of whether the rear wheel house impact sensor on the same side senses an impact.

If one of the rear wheel house impact sensors and the impact sensor that is located under the rear center seat together sense an impact force above a predetermined level in a side collision, the control module causes only the SRS curtain airbag on the impacted side to inflate.

After the deployment, the SRS side airbag immediately starts to deflate. The time required from detection of an impact to deflation of an SRS side airbag after deployment is shorter than the blink of an eye. The SRS curtain airbag remains inflated for a while following deployment then slowly deflates.

The SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag deploy even when no one occupies

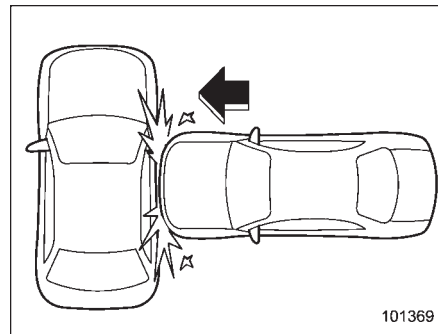
the seat on the side on which an impact is applied.

The SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag are designed to deploy in the event of an accident involving a moderate to severe side impact collision. They are not designed to deploy in most lesser side impact. Also, they are not designed to deploy in most frontal or most rear impacts because SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag deployment would not help the occupant in those situations.

Each SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag are designed to function on a one-time-only basis.

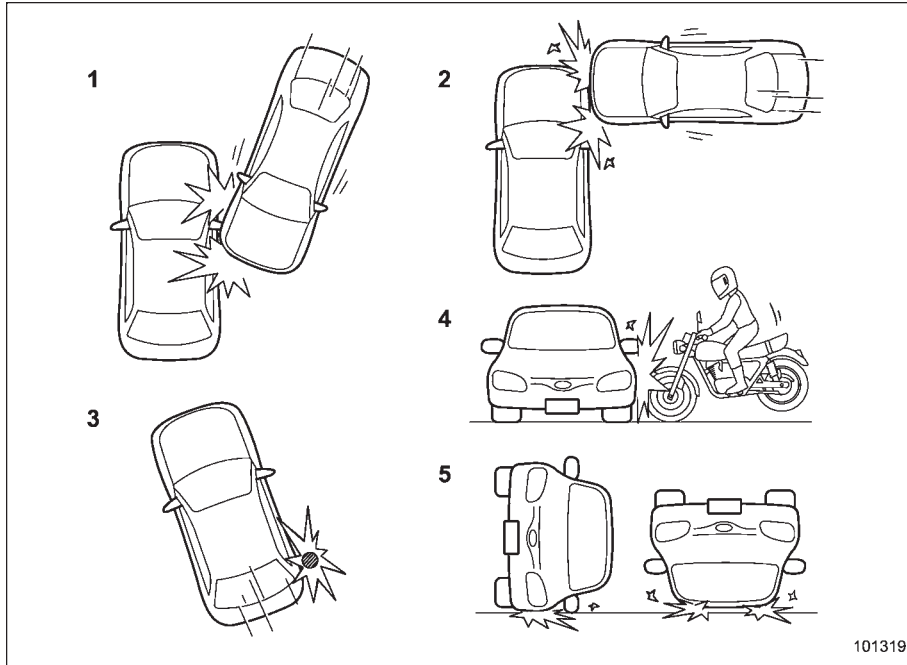
SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag deployment depend on the level of force experienced in the passenger compartment during a side impact collision. That level differs from one type of collision to another, and it may have no bearing on the visible damage done to the vehicle itself.

▽ **When will the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag most likely deploy?**



A severe side impact near the front seat activates the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag.

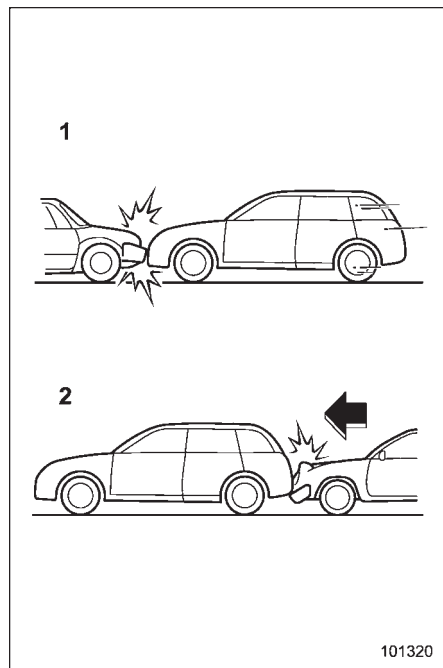
▽ When are the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag unlikely to deploy?



- 1) The vehicle is involved in an oblique side-on impact.
- 2) The vehicle is involved in a side-on impact in an area outside the vicinity of the passenger compartment.
- 3) The vehicle strikes a telephone pole or similar object.
- 4) The vehicle is involved in a side-on impact from a motorcycle.
- 5) The vehicle rolls onto its side or roof.

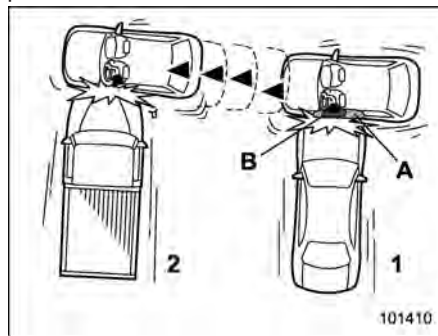
There are many types of collisions which might not necessarily require SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag deployment. In the event of accidents like those illustrated, the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag may not deploy depending on the level of accident forces involved.

▽ **When will the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag not deploy?**



- 1) The vehicle is involved in frontal collision with another vehicle (moving or stationary).
- 2) The vehicle is struck from behind.

The SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag are not designed to deploy in most cases if the vehicle is involved in a frontal collision or is struck from behind. Examples of such accidents are illustrated.



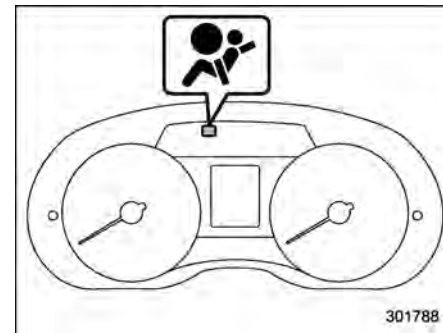
- 1) First impact
- 2) Second impact
- A) SRS curtain airbag
- B) SRS side airbag

In an accident where the vehicle is struck from the side more than once, the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag deploy only once on the first impact.

Example: In the case of a double side impact collision, first with one vehicle and immediately followed by another from the same direction, once the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag are activated on the first impact, they will not be activated

on the second.

■ **SRS airbag system monitor**



SRS airbag system warning light

A diagnostic system continually monitors the readiness of the SRS airbag system (including seatbelt pretensioners) while the vehicle is being driven. The SRS airbag system warning light will show normal system operation by illuminating for approximately 6 seconds when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position.

The following components are monitored by the indicator.

- Front sub sensor
 - Right-hand side
 - Left-hand side

- Airbag control module (including impact sensor)
- Frontal airbag module
 - Driver's side
 - Front passenger's side
- Knee airbag module (driver's side – if equipped)
- Side airbag sensor (if equipped)
 - Center pillar right-hand side
 - Center pillar left-hand side
- Side airbag module (if equipped)
 - Driver's side
 - Front passenger's side
- Front passenger's occupant detection sensor (if equipped)
- Front passenger's occupant detection control module (if equipped)
- Seatbelt buckle switch (front passenger's side – if equipped)
- Curtain airbag sensor (if equipped)
 - Rear wheel house right-hand side
 - Rear wheel house left-hand side
- Curtain airbag module (if equipped)
 - Right-hand side
 - Left-hand side
- Satellite safing sensor (under the rear center seat – if equipped)
- Seatbelt pretensioner
 - Driver's side
 - Front passenger's side

- All related wiring



WARNING

If the warning light exhibits any of the following conditions, there may be a malfunction in the seatbelt pretensioners and/or SRS airbag system. We recommend that you have the system checked immediately by your nearest SUBARU dealer. Unless checked and properly repaired, the seatbelt pretensioners and/or SRS airbags will operate improperly (e.g. SRS airbags may inflate in a very minor collision or not inflate in a severe collision), which may increase the risk of injury.

- Flashing or flickering of the warning light
- No illumination of the warning light when the ignition switch is first turned to the "ON" position
- Continuous illumination of the warning light
- Illumination of the warning light while driving

■ SRS airbag system servicing



WARNING

- When discarding an airbag module or scrapping the entire vehicle damaged by a collision, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer.
- The SRS airbag has no user-serviceable parts. Do not use electrical test equipment on any circuit related to the SRS airbag system. For required servicing of the SRS airbag, we recommend that you consult your nearest SUBARU dealer. Tampering with or disconnecting the system's wiring could result in accidental inflation of the SRS airbag or could make the system inoperative, which may result in serious injury.



CAUTION

If you need service or repair in areas indicated in the following list, we recommend that you have the work performed by an authorized SUBARU dealer. The SRS airbag control module, impact sensors

and airbag modules are stored in the following areas.

- Under the center console
- On both the right and left sides at the front of the vehicle
- Steering wheel and column and nearby areas
- Bottom of the steering column and nearby areas
- Top of the dashboard on front passenger's side and nearby areas
- Each front seat and nearby area (only for models with SRS side airbags)
- Inside each center pillar
- In each roof side (from the front pillar to a point over the rear seat) (only for models with SRS curtain airbags)
- Between the rear seat cushion and rear wheel house on each side
- Under the rear center seat (only for models with SRS side airbags and SRS curtain airbags)

In the event that the SRS airbag system is deployed, we recommend that you have the system replaced with genuine

SUBARU parts at an authorized SUBARU dealer.

NOTE

In the following cases, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

- The front part of the vehicle was involved in an accident in which the SRS frontal airbags did not deploy.
- The pad of the steering wheel, the cover over the front passenger's frontal airbag, or either roof side (from the front pillar to a point over the rear seat) is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.

In addition, if your vehicle is equipped with SRS side airbags and SRS curtain airbags, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible in the following cases.

- The center pillar, rear wheel house or rear sub frame, or an area near these parts, was involved in an accident in which the SRS side airbag and SRS curtain airbag did not deploy.
- The fabric or leather of either front seatback is cut, frayed, or otherwise damaged.

- The rear part of the vehicle was involved in an accident.

■ Precautions against vehicle modification



WARNING

To avoid accidental activation of the system or rendering the system inoperative, which may result in serious injury, no modifications should be made to any components or wiring of the SRS airbag system. This includes the following modifications.

- Installation of custom steering wheels
- Attachment of additional trim materials to the dashboard
- Installation of custom seats*
- Replacement of seat fabric or leather*
- Installation of additional fabric or leather on the front seat*
- Attachment of a hands-free microphone or any other accessory to a front pillar, a center pillar, a rear pillar, the windshield, a side window, an assist grip, or any

other cabin surface that would be near a deploying SRS curtain airbag.

- Installation of additional electrical/electronic equipment such as a mobile two-way radio on or near the SRS airbag system components and/or wiring is not advisable. This could interfere with proper operation of the SRS airbag system.

*: Applies to models with SRS side airbags and models with occupant detection system



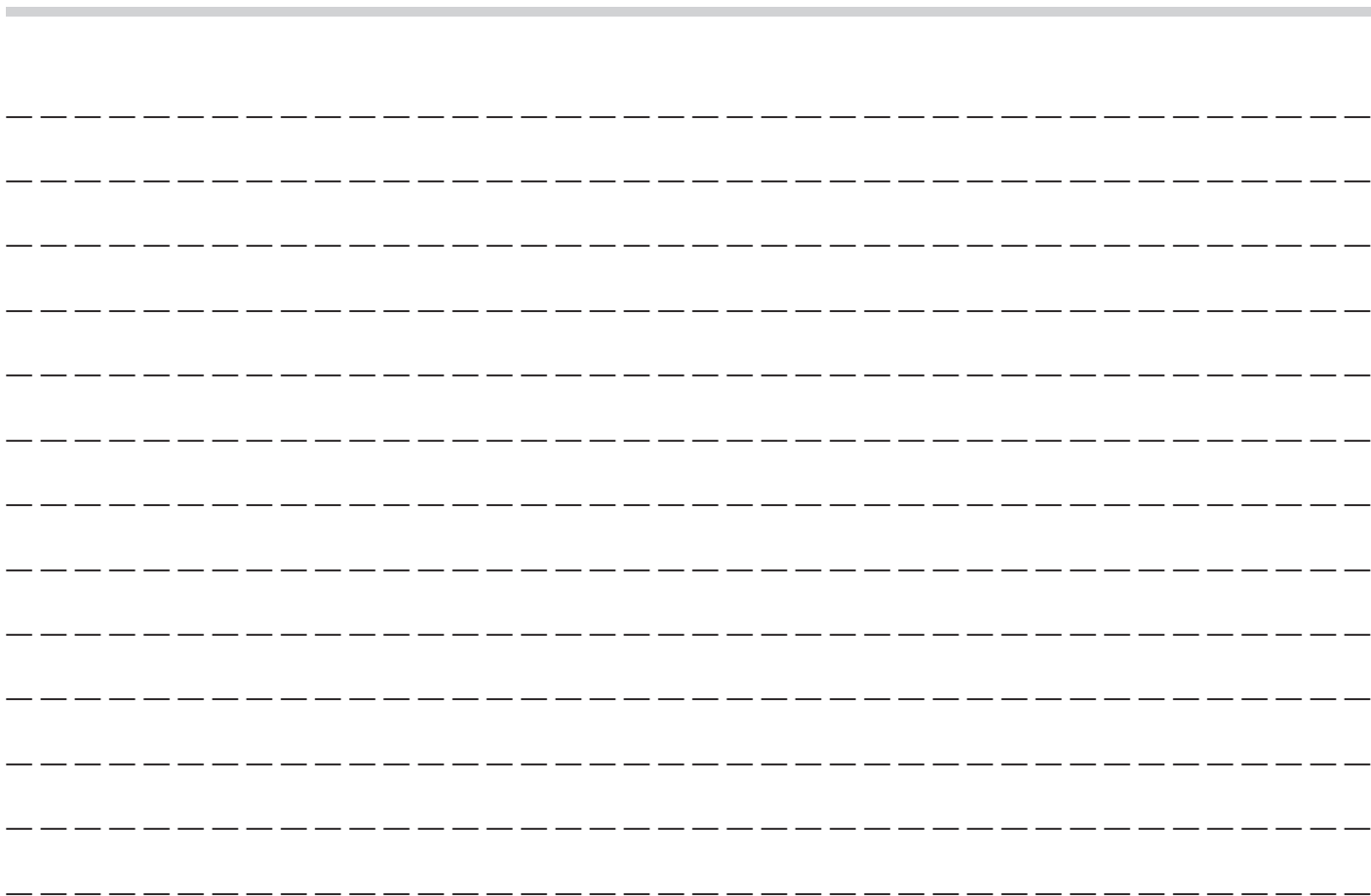
CAUTION

Do not perform any of the following modifications. Such modifications can interfere with proper operation of the SRS airbag system.

- Attachment of any equipment (bush bar, bullbar, winches, snow plow, skid/sump plate, etc.) to the front end other than genuine SUBARU accessory parts or parts that match the quality of genuine SUBARU accessory parts.
- Modification of the suspension system or front end structure.

- Installation of a tire of different size and construction from the tires specified on the vehicle placard attached to the driver's door pillar or specified for individual vehicle models in this Owner's Manual.
- Attachment of any equipment (side steps or side sill protectors, etc.) to the side body other than genuine SUBARU accessory parts specially designed for SRS side airbags, or parts that match the quality of genuine SUBARU accessory parts specially designed for SRS side airbags (only for models with side airbags).

We recommend that you always consult your SUBARU dealer if you want to install any accessory parts on your vehicle.



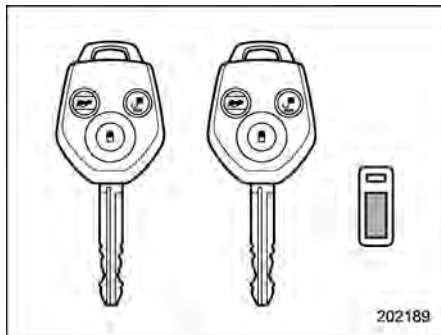
Keys	2-2
Key number plate	2-2
Immobilizer	2-2
Immobilizer indicator light	2-3
Key replacement	2-3
Technical information for Europe models	2-3
Door locks	2-4
Locking and unlocking from the outside with key	2-4
Locking from the outside without key	2-4
Locking and unlocking from the inside	2-5
Battery drainage prevention function	2-5
Power door locking switch.....	2-6
Key lock-in prevention function (except models with double locking system)	2-6
Keyless access with push-button start system (if equipped)	2-7
Safety precautions	2-8
Locking and unlocking with "keyless access" entry function.....	2-11
Warning chimes and warning light.....	2-15
Disabling keyless access function	2-15
When access key does not operate properly	2-16
Replacing battery of access key	2-16
Technical information for Europe models	2-16

Remote keyless entry system.....	2-16
Locking and unlocking doors.....	2-16
Unlocking/operating rear gate	2-18
Technical information.....	2-19
Double locking system (if equipped)	2-19
To set double locking system.....	2-19
To cancel double locking system	2-20
In an emergency	2-20
If a battery goes dead	2-21
To reset double locking system.....	2-21
Function disabling unlocking with the power door locking switch (Australia models).....	2-21
Child safety locks	2-22
Windows.....	2-22
Power window operation by driver	2-22
Power window operation by passengers.....	2-24
Initialization of power window	2-25
Rear gate	2-25
Lock/unlock.....	2-25
Open/close	2-26
Power rear gate (if equipped)	2-27
Sunroof (if equipped)	2-32
Sunroof switch	2-32
Anti-entrapment function.....	2-33
Sun shade	2-33

Keys

NOTE

For models with “keyless access with push-button start system”, refer to “Keyless access with push-button start system” 2-7.



Your vehicle has two or three keys and a key number plate.

All keys provided for your vehicle fit all locks on your vehicle.

- Ignition switch
- Driver's door



CAUTION

Do not attach a large key holder or key case to the key. If it bangs

against your knees while you are driving, it could turn the ignition switch from the “ON” position to the “ACC” or “LOCK” position, thereby stopping the engine.

■ Key number plate



The key number is stamped on the key number plate attached to the key set. Write down the key number and keep it in another safe place, not in the vehicle. This number is needed to make a replacement key if you lose your key or lock it inside the vehicle.

For information on making replacement keys, refer to “Key replacement” 2-3.

Immobilizer

The immobilizer system is designed to prevent an unauthorized person from starting the engine. Only keys registered with your vehicle's immobilizer system can be used to operate your vehicle.

For models with “keyless access with push-button start system”:

When carrying an unregistered access key, if you press the push-button ignition switch, the switch will not turn to the “ON” position and the engine will not start.

For models without “keyless access with push-button start system”:

Even if an unregistered key fits into the ignition switch and can be turned to the “START” position, the engine will automatically stop after several seconds.

Each immobilizer key contains a transponder in which the key's ID code is stored. The transponder transmits the key's ID code to the immobilizer system's receiver under any of the following conditions.

- When an access key is detected within the operating range of the antennas inside the vehicle (models with “keyless access with push-button start system”)
- When a key is inserted into the ignition

switch and turned to the "ON" position (models without "keyless access with push-button start system")

If the transmitted ID code matches the ID code registered in the immobilizer system, the system allows the engine to be started. Since the ID code is transmitted and acted upon almost instantly, the immobilizer system does not impede normal starting of the engine.

If the engine does not start, perform either of the following procedures.

- Perform the procedure described in "Starting engine" 9-17 (models with "keyless access with push-button start system").
- Pull out the key once before trying again (models without "keyless access with push-button start system"). Refer to "Ignition switch (models without push-button start system)" 3-4.



CAUTION

- **Do not place the key under direct sunlight or anywhere it may become hot.**
- **Do not get the key wet. If the key gets wet, wipe it dry with a cloth immediately.**

NOTE

To protect your vehicle from theft, please pay close attention to the following security precautions.

- **Never leave your vehicle unattended with its keys inside.**
- **Before leaving your vehicle, close all windows and the sunroof, and lock the doors and rear gate.**
- **Do not leave spare keys or any record of your key number in the vehicle.**

■ Immobilizer indicator light



Refer to "Immobilizer indicator light" 3-30.

■ Key replacement

Your key number plate will be required if you ever need a replacement key made. Any new key must be registered for use with your vehicle's immobilizer system before it can be used. The maximum number of keys that can be registered for use with one vehicle is as follows.

- Four (models without "keyless access with push-button start system")
- Seven (models with "keyless access with push-button start system")

One key that has already been registered is required in order to register a new key.

If you lose a key, the lost key's ID code still remains in the memory of the vehicle's immobilizer system. For security reasons, the lost key's ID code should be erased from the memory. To erase the lost key's ID code, all keys that will be used are required.

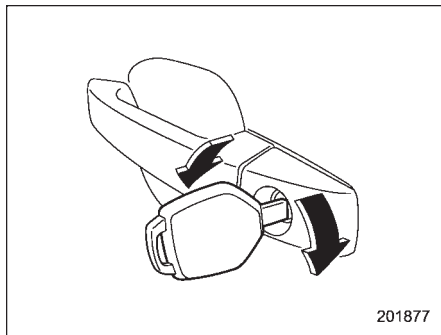
For details about new key registration and erasing the lost key's ID code, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

■ Technical information for Europe models

This device complies with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 1999/5/EC. A copy of the original Declaration of Conformity and the CE marking are found in the chapter 13.

Door locks

■ Locking and unlocking from the outside with key



▼ Models without double locking system

To lock the driver's door from the outside with the key, turn the key toward the front. To unlock the door, turn the key toward the rear. Pull the outside door handle to open an unlocked door.

NOTE

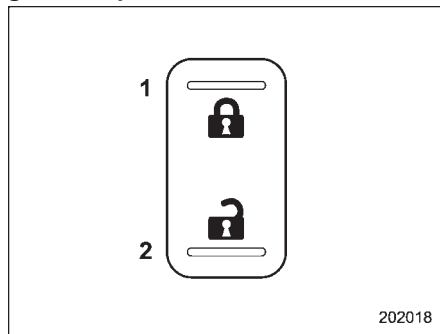
Only the driver's door can be locked from the outside using the key.

To lock the doors including the rear gate, refer to the following procedure.

1. Remove the key from the ignition

switch (models without keyless access with push-button start system) or turn off the ignition switch (models with keyless access with push-button start system).

2. Close the doors including the rear gate except for the driver's door.



- 1) Lock
- 2) Unlock

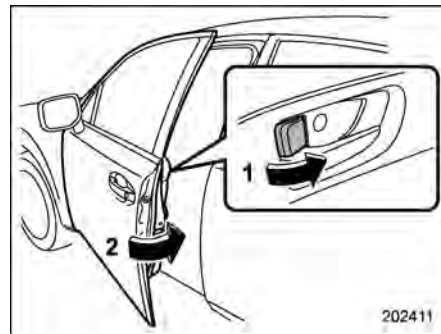
3. Push the lock side of the power door locking switch that is located on the driver's door.

4. Close the driver's door and insert the key. Turn the key forward to lock the driver's door.

▼ Models with double locking system

To lock the doors and the rear gate from the outside with the key, turn the key toward the front. To unlock the doors and the rear gate, turn the key toward the rear. Pull the outside door handle to open an unlocked door.

■ Locking from the outside without key



- 1) Rotate the lock lever forward.
- 2) Close the door while holding the handle pulled.

To lock the front door from the outside without the key, rotate the lock lever forward and hold the outside door handle pulled while closing the door.

To lock the rear door from the outside

without the key, rotate the lock lever forward and close the door.

Always make sure that all doors and the rear gate are locked before leaving your vehicle.

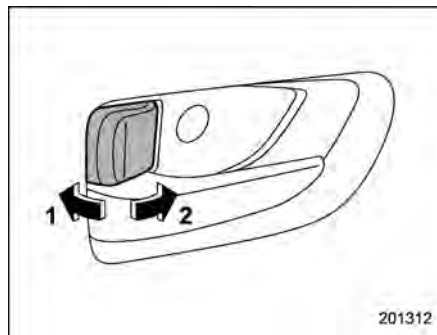
NOTE

Make sure that you do not leave the key inside the vehicle when locking the doors from the outside without the key.

▼ Models with double locking system

It is not possible to place the lock lever on the driver's door in the locking position while the driver's door is open. The door lock levers function only when the driver's door is securely closed and the double locking system is not set.

■ Locking and unlocking from the inside



- 1) Unlock
- 2) Lock

To lock the door from the inside, rotate the lock lever forward. To unlock the door from the inside, rotate the lock lever rearward.

The red mark on the lock lever appears when the door is unlocked.

Pull the inside door handle to open an unlocked door.

Always make sure that all doors and the rear gate are closed before starting to drive.

▼ Models with double locking system

If the double locking system is activated, the door will not be unlocked even when you move the door lock lever rearward.

■ Battery drainage prevention function

If a door or the rear gate is not completely closed, the interior lights will remain illuminated as a result. However, several lights will automatically be turned off by the battery drainage prevention function to prevent the battery from discharging. The following interior lights will be affected by this function.

Item	Switch position	Automatically turning off
Map lights	DOOR	Approximately 20 minutes later
Dome light	DOOR	Approximately 20 minutes later
Ignition switch light	—	Approximately 20 minutes later
Door step lights	—	None*
Cargo area light	DOOR	Approximately 20 minutes later

*: The door step lights are not affected by the battery drainage prevention function, so the lights will not turn off automatically. To turn off

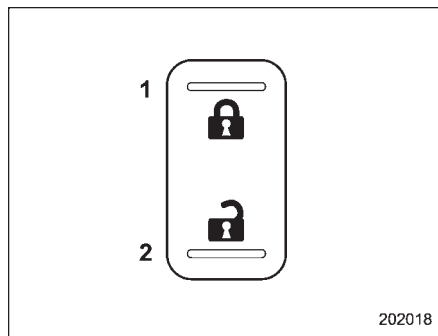
the lights, it is necessary that each door and the rear gate are completely closed.

The operational/non-operational setting of this function can be changed by a SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer to change the setting.

NOTE

- The factory setting (default setting) for this function is set as “operational”.
- When leaving the vehicle, please make sure that all doors and the rear gate are completely closed.
- For models with the push-button ignition switch, the battery drainage prevention function does not operate while the ignition switch is in “ACC” or “ON” position.
- For models without the push-button ignition switch, the battery drainage prevention function does not operate while the key is in the ignition switch.

Power door locking switch



- 1) Lock
- 2) Unlock

All doors and the rear gate can be locked and unlocked by the power door locking switch located at the driver's side door.

To lock the doors including the rear gate, push the front side of the switch.

To unlock the doors including the rear gate, push the rear side of the switch.

NOTE

- With a vehicle that has a double locking system, pushing the unlocking position of the power door locking switch has no effect when the double locking system is activated.

- For Australia models, after locking all doors and the rear gate using the keyless access function or remote keyless entry system, pushing the unlock position of the power door locking switch has no effect.

■ Key lock-in prevention function (except models with double locking system)

This function prevents the doors from being locked under the following conditions.

- The key is still in the ignition switch (models without “keyless access with push-button start system”)
- The ignition switch is in the “ON” position (models with “keyless access with push-button start system”)

This function's operational/non-operational setting can be changed by a SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer for details.

NOTE

When leaving the vehicle, make sure that you are holding the key before locking the doors.

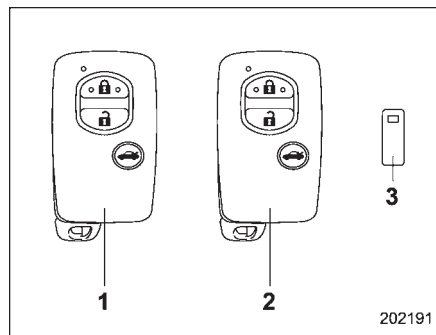
▼ **Behavior with key lock-in prevention function operational**

With the driver's door open, the doors are automatically kept unlocked even if the front side of the power door locking switch is pressed.

▼ **Behavior with key lock-in prevention function non-operational**

- If the lock lever is turned to the front (lock) position with the driver's door open and the driver's door is then closed, the driver's door is locked.
- If the spare key is used to lock the driver's door from the outside of the vehicle, the door is locked.

Keyless access with push-button start system (if equipped)



- 1) Access key (main)
- 2) Access key (sub)
- 3) Key number plate

The vehicle has two or three access keys and a key number plate. For details about the key number plate, refer to "Key number plate" 2-2.

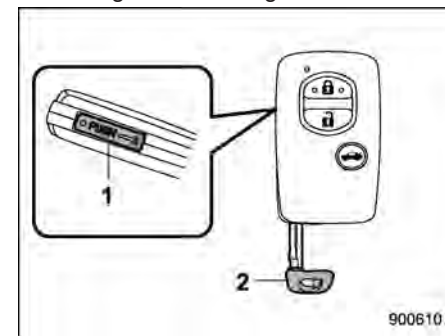
The keyless access with push-button start system allows you to perform the following functions when you are carrying the access key.

- Locking and unlocking of the doors and rear gate

- Starting and stopping the engine

Locking and unlocking by the remote keyless entry system can also be controlled with the buttons on the access key. For the engine starting procedure, refer to "Starting and stopping engine (models with push-button start system)" 7-10.

A mechanical key is attached to each access key. The mechanical key is used for locking and unlocking the driver's door.



- 1) Release button
- 2) Mechanical key

While pressing the release button of the access key, take out the mechanical key.

■ Safety precautions

WARNING

If you wear an implanted pacemaker or an implanted defibrillator, stay at least 22 cm (8.7 in) away from the transmitting antennas installed on the vehicle.

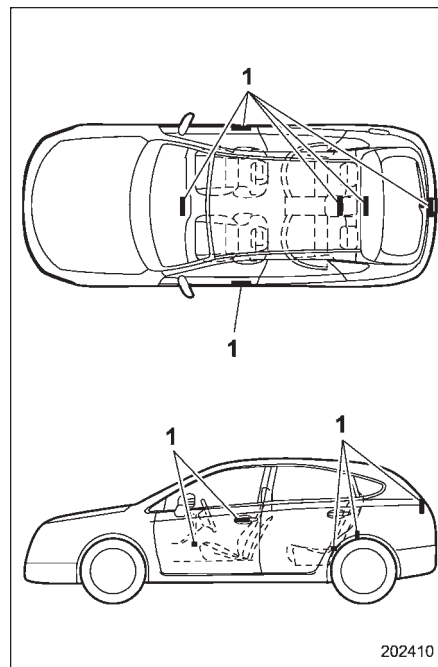
The radio waves from the transmitting antennas on the vehicle could adversely affect the operation of implanted pacemakers and implanted defibrillators.

If you wear electric medical equipment other than an implanted pacemaker or an implanted defibrillator, before using the keyless access with push-button start system, refer to “Radio waves used for the keyless access with push-button start system” mentioned later, and contact the electric medical equipment manufacturer for more information. The radio waves from the transmitting antennas on the vehicle could adversely affect the operation of the electric medical equipment.

“Radio waves used for the keyless access with push-button start system”

- The keyless access with push-button start system uses radio waves of the following frequency* in addition to the radio waves used for the remote keyless entry system. The radio waves are periodically output from the antennas installed on the vehicle as shown in the following illustrations.

* Radio frequency: 134.2 kHz



1) Antenna



CAUTION

- Never leave or store the access key inside the vehicle (e.g., on the instrumental panel, inside the glove box, on the seat, in the door pocket or at the corner of the cargo area) or within 2 m (6.6 ft) around the vehicle (e.g., in the garage). The access key may be locked inside the vehicle, or the battery may discharge rapidly. Note that the push-button ignition switch may not turn on in some cases depending on the location of the access key.
- The access key contains electronic components. Observe the following precautions to prevent malfunctions.
 - Although you can replace the battery of the access key yourself, it is recommended that the battery be replaced by a SUBARU dealer to avoid the risk of damage at the time of replacement.
 - Do not get the access key wet. If the access key gets wet, wipe it off immediately and let it dry completely.

- Do not allow strong impacts to the access key.
- Keep the access key away from magnetic sources.
- Never leave the access key in direct sunlight or anywhere that may become hot, such as on the dashboard. It may damage the battery or cause circuit malfunctions.
- Do not wash the access key in an ultrasonic washer.
- Do not leave the access key in humid or dusty locations. Doing so may cause malfunctions.
- Do not leave the access key near personal computers or home electric appliances. Doing so may cause the access key to malfunction, resulting in battery discharge.
- If the access key is dropped, the integrated mechanical key inside may become loose. Be careful not to lose the mechanical key.
- When you carry the access key on an airplane, do not press the button of the access key while in the airplane. When any button of

the access key is pressed, radio waves are sent and may affect the operation of the airplane. When you carry the access key in a bag on an airplane, take measures to prevent the buttons of the access key from being pressed.

NOTE

- The operational/non-operational setting for the keyless access function can be changed. For the setting procedure, refer to “Disabling keyless access function” 2-15. The setting can also be changed by a SUBARU dealer. For more details, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer.
- For detailed information about the operation method for the push-button ignition switch while the keyless access function is switched to the non-operational mode, refer to “Access key – if access key does not operate properly” 9-16.
- The keyless access with push-button start system uses weak radio waves. The status of the access key and environmental conditions may interfere with the communication between the access key and the vehicle under the following conditions, and it

– CONTINUED –

may not be possible to lock or unlock the doors or start the engine.

- When operating near a facility where strong radio waves are transmitted, such as a broadcast station and power transmission lines
- When products that transmit radio waves are used, such as an access key or a remote transmitter key of another vehicle
- When carrying more than one access key
- When the access key is placed near wireless communication equipment such as a cell phone
- When the access key is placed near a metallic object
- When metallic accessories are attached to the access key
- When carrying the access key with electronic appliances such as a laptop computer
- When the battery of the access key is discharged
- The access key is always communicating with the vehicle and is continuously using the battery. Although the life of the battery varies depending on the operating conditions, it is approximately 1 to 2 years. If the battery becomes fully discharged, replace it with a new one.

- If an access key is lost, it is recommended that the access key be reregistered. For reregistration of an access key, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer.

- For a spare access key, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer.

- Up to 7 access keys can be registered for one vehicle.

- Carefully store the key number plate supplied with the access key. It is necessary for vehicle repair and additional registration of access keys.

- Do not leave the access key in the storage spaces inside the vehicle, such as the door pocket, dashboard and the corner of the cargo area. Vibrations may damage the key or turn on the switch, possibly resulting in a lockout.

- After the vehicle battery is discharged or replaced, initialization of the steering lock system may be required to start the engine. In this case, perform the following procedure to initialize the steering lock.

- (1) Turn the push-button ignition switch to the “OFF” position. For details, refer to “Switching power”
☞ 3-7.

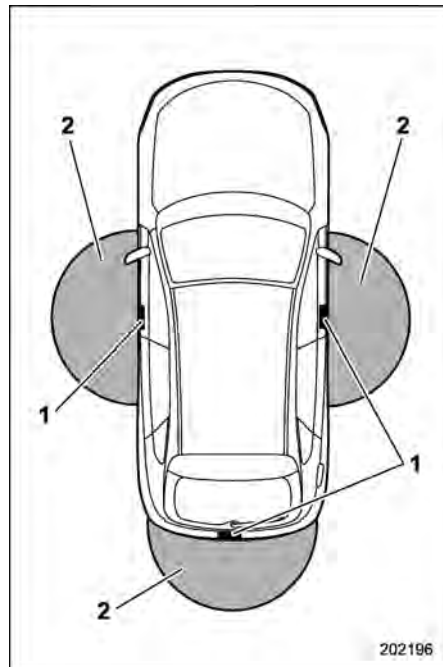
- (2) Open and close the driver’s door.

- (3) Wait for approximately 10 seconds.

When the steering is locked, the initialization is completed.

■ Locking and unlocking with “keyless access” entry function

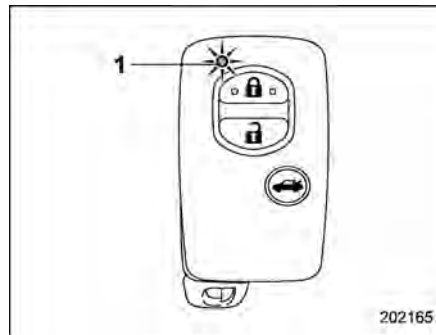
▼ Operating ranges



1) Antenna

2) Operating range

The operating ranges of the door and rear gate locking/unlocking functions are approximately 40 to 80 cm (16 to 32 in) from the respective door handles and the rear gate ornament.



1) LED indicator

When the access key is within either of the operating ranges of the front doors, the LED indicator on the access key flashes. When the keyless access functions are disabled, the LED indicator does not flash unless a button on the access key is pressed.

▽ Operating range tips

- Locking by using the keyless access function can be operated only by the door lock sensor in the operating range in

which the access key is detected.

- Unlocking by using the keyless access function can be operated only by the door handle in the operating range in which the access key is detected.
- If the access key is placed too close to the vehicle body, the keyless access function may not operate properly. If it does not operate properly, repeat the operation from further away.
- If the access key is placed near the ground or in an elevated location from the ground, even if it is in the indicated operating range, the keyless access function may not operate properly.
- When the access key is within the operating range, it is possible for anyone, even someone who is not carrying the access key, to operate the keyless access function. Note that locking and unlocking can be operated only by the door handle, door lock sensor, rear gate opener button or rear lock button in the operating range in which the access key is detected.
- It is not possible to lock the doors and rear gate using the keyless access function when the access key is inside the vehicle. However, depending on the status of the access key and the environmental conditions, the access key may be locked inside the vehicle. Before locking, make sure that you have the access key.

- When the battery of the access key is discharged, or when operating it in a location with strong radio waves or noise (e.g., near a radio tower, power plant, broadcast station or an area where wireless equipment is used), or while talking on a cell phone, the operating ranges may be reduced, or the keyless access function may not operate.

In such a case, perform the procedure described in “Locking and unlocking” 9-16.

- When an access key is in the operating range, if the door handle becomes wet due to exposure to a significant amount of water when the vehicle is washed or during heavy rain, the doors may be locked or unlocked.

- The keyless access function may not operate properly depending on the status of the access key and the radio wave conditions around the vehicle. In such a case, perform the procedure described in “Locking and unlocking” 9-16.

▼ **How to use keyless access functions**

▽ **Keyless access function tips**

- When you lock the doors and rear gate using the keyless access function, turn the push-button ignition switch off. It is not possible to lock the doors and rear gate

using the keyless access function when the push-button ignition switch is on the “ACC” or “ON” position. Refer to “Switching power” 3-7.

- Locking and unlocking by using the keyless access function cannot be operated for a short period of time (approximately less than 3 seconds) after locking or unlocking to prevent malfunctions.

- If the door handle is gripped with a gloved hand, the door lock may not be released.

- When performing the locking procedure too quickly, locking may not have been completed. After locking the doors, it is recommended to pull the REAR door handles to confirm that the doors have been locked.

- It is not possible to lock the doors when one of the doors is open. Close all of the doors including the rear gate and lock the doors.

- Within 3 seconds after locking the doors and the rear gate by using the keyless access function, it is not possible to unlock the doors and/or the rear gate by using the keyless access function.

- If any of the doors or the rear gate is open, the doors and the rear gate cannot be locked.

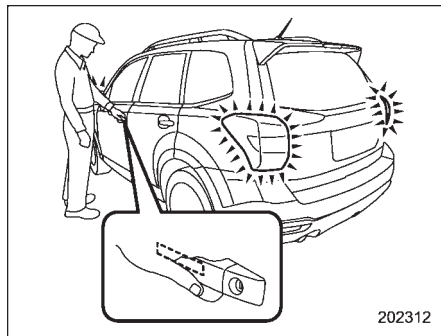
- When locking, be sure to carry the access key to prevent locking the access

key in the vehicle.

- The setting of the hazard warning flasher operation can be changed by your SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for details.

- For models with multi function display, the setting of the hazard warning flasher operation can be changed by operating the multi function display. For details, refer to “Hazard warning flasher setting” 3-79.

▽ Unlocking



Carry the access key, and grip the door handle.

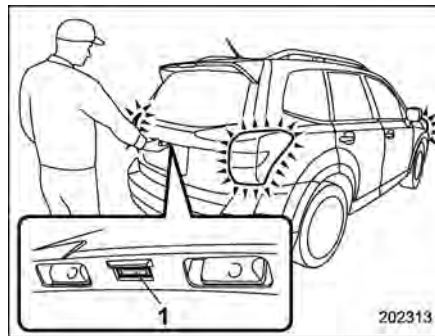
Models without double locking system:
All doors and the rear gate will be unlocked. Also, the hazard warning flashers will flash twice.

Models with double locking system:

- When gripping the driver's door handle: Only the driver's door will be unlocked.
- When gripping the front passenger's door handle: All doors and the rear gate will be unlocked.

Also, the hazard warning flashers will flash twice.

▽ Opening rear gate



- 1) Rear gate opener button

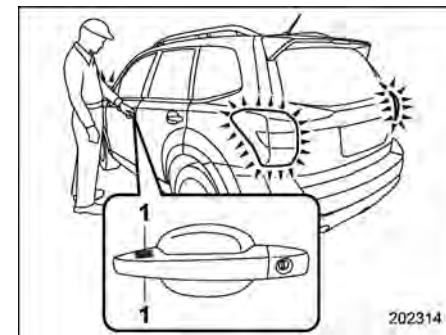
Carry the access key, and press the rear gate opener button.

Models without double locking system:
The rear gate and all doors will be unlocked, and the rear gate will be opened. Also, the hazard warning flashers will flash twice.

Models with double locking system:

Only the rear gate will be unlocked and opened. Also, the hazard warning flashers will flash twice.

▽ Locking with the door lock sensor



- 1) Door lock sensor

Carry the access key, close all doors including the rear gate and touch the door lock sensor on the door handle. All doors including the rear gate will be locked. Also, the hazard warning flashers will flash once.

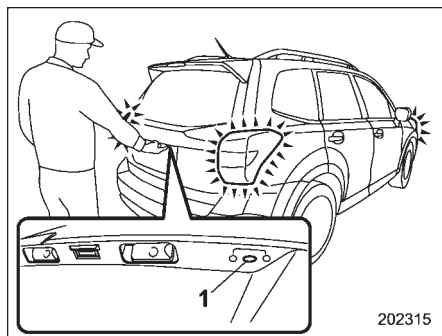
NOTE

After touching the door lock sensor to lock all of the doors (including the rear gate), if you touch the door lock sensor once more to attempt the lock operation without first unlocking the doors, nothing will happen, even if the door lock sensor is touched. In this case, perform the unlocking operation once

– CONTINUED –

first. You can then touch the door lock sensor to lock the doors.

▽ Locking with the rear lock button



1) Rear lock button

Carry the access key, close all doors including the rear gate and press the rear lock button. The rear gate and all doors will be locked. Also, the hazard warning flashers will flash once.

▼ Door unlock selection function

The door unlock selection function makes it possible to unlock the driver's door or the rear gate without unlocking any other doors. You can change the setting for the driver's door and for the rear gate independently.

The operational/non-operational setting

for this function can be changed by a SUBARU dealer.

Operational: Only the driver's door or the rear gate will be unlocked.

Non-operational: All doors and the rear gate will be unlocked.

For the factory setting (default setting), refer to "Function settings" 25.

For further details, we recommend that you consult a SUBARU dealer.

▼ Power saving function

To protect the access key battery and the vehicle battery, the keyless access function will be disabled as follows.

- When the keyless access function and the remote keyless entry system have not been used:

- (1) 5 days after the push-button ignition switch has been turned off, communication between the antennas and the access key will be stopped.

- (2) 9 days after step 1, the sensors (both lock sensor and unlock sensor) on the front passenger's door will be disabled.

- When the access key has been left in the operating range for 10 minutes or longer while all doors are locked, the keyless access function will be disabled.

▽ Recovery from power saving mode

When one of the following is operated, the keyless access function will be recovered.

- Unlock by gripping the door handle (only when the sensors on the front passenger's door are not disabled) or pressing the rear gate opener button on the rear gate

- Lock or unlock by the remote keyless entry system
- Lock or unlock by the mechanical key

▼ Automatic locking (except models with double locking system)

If any of the doors or the rear gate was not opened within 30 seconds after unlocking, they will be automatically locked again.

The function's operational/non-operational setting and the time until automatic locking takes place can be changed by a SUBARU dealer. For more details, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer.

For models with multi function display, the setting and the time can be changed by operating the multi function display. For details, refer to "Security Relocking" 3-80.

■ Warning chimes and warning light

The keyless access with push-button start system sounds a warning chime and flashes the access key warning light on the combination meter in order to minimize improper operations and help protect your vehicle from theft.

For details, refer to "Warning chimes and warning light of the keyless access with push-button start system" 3-25.

■ Disabling keyless access function

When the vehicle is not going to be used for a long time, or when you choose not to use the keyless access function, the keyless access function can be disabled.

NOTE

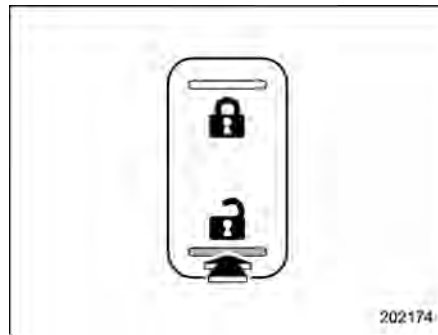
- The locking and unlocking function by the remote keyless entry system is not disabled.
- The setting can also be changed at SUBARU dealers. For more details, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer.
- To start the engine while the functions are disabled, perform the procedure described in "Starting engine" 9-17.

- We recommend that you disable the keyless access functions under the following conditions.

- When the vehicle is not going to be used for an extended period of time
- When the keyless access functions are not going to be used
- When the access key needs to be stored inside or near the vehicle

▼ Disabling functions

1. Sit in the driver's seat, and close the door.



2. Push the rear side (unlock side) of the power door locking switch.
3. Within 5 seconds after step 2 is performed, open the driver's door.

4. Within 5 seconds after step 3 is performed, push the rear side (unlock side) of the power door locking switch twice while the door is open.

5. Within 30 seconds after step 4 is performed, close and open the driver's door twice.

6. Within 30 seconds after step 5 is performed, push the rear side (unlock side) of the power door locking switch twice while the door is open.

7. Within 30 seconds after step 6 is performed, close and open the driver's door once.

8. Within 5 seconds after step 7 is performed, close the door. A chirp sound will be heard for 2 seconds, and the functions will be disabled.

NOTE

In steps 4 and 6, press the power door locking switch slowly. If the switch is pressed quickly, the functions may not be disabled.

▼ Enabling functions

When the procedure to disable the functions is performed again, the functions will be enabled.

A chirp sound will be heard once.

■ When access key does not operate properly

Refer to “Access key – if access key does not operate properly” 9-16.

■ Replacing battery of access key

Refer to “Replacing battery of access key” 11-54.

■ Technical information for Europe models

- This device complies with the essential requirements of the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 1999/5/EC. A copy of the original Declaration of Conformity and the CE marking are found in chapter 13.
- Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that this 13CZY/14AER is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

Remote keyless entry system

The remote transmitter can be used within a distance of approximately 1.0 m (3.2 ft) of the vehicle. It can be used to lock and unlock all of the doors and the rear gate. For models with power rear gate, it can be used to open or close the rear gate.

The system's operable distance will be shorter in areas near a facility or electronic equipment emitting strong radio waves such as a power plant, broadcast station, TV tower, or remote controller of home electronic appliances.



CAUTION

- When you carry the remote transmitter on an airplane, do not press the button of the remote transmitter while in the airplane. When any button of the remote transmitter is pressed, radio waves are sent and may affect the operation of the airplane. When you carry the remote transmitter in a bag on an airplane, take measures to prevent the buttons of the remote transmitter from being pressed.
- Do not expose the transmitter to

shocks.

- Do not take the transmitter apart.
- Do not get the transmitter wet. If it gets wet, wipe it dry with a cloth immediately.

NOTE

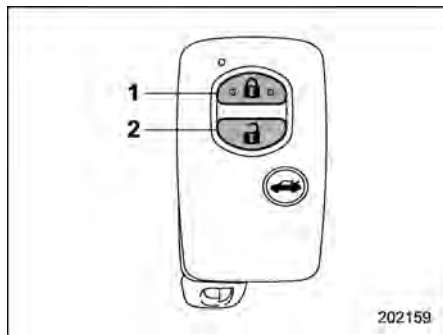
- Before leaving the vehicle, make sure that the doors are locked.
- If any of the doors or the rear gate is open, this function does not operate.
- For models with “keyless access with push-button start system”, when the lock button on the access key is pressed while the access key is placed too close to the vehicle body, unlocking by the keyless access functions may not work. In such a case, the functions will recover by unlocking using the remote keyless entry system.

■ Locking and unlocking doors

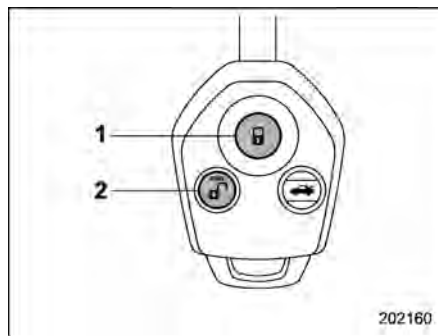
NOTE

The setting of the hazard warning flasher operation can be changed by your SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for details. Also, for models with multi function display, the setting of the hazard warning flasher operation can

be changed by operating the multi function display. For details, refer to “Hazard warning flasher setting” 3-79.



Access key



Remote transmitter

- 1) Lock button
- 2) Unlock button

▼ Unlocking

Press the unlock button on the access key/transmitter near the vehicle.

▽ Models without door unlock selection function

Models without double locking system:

All doors and the rear gate will be unlocked. Also, the hazard warning flashers will flash twice.

Models with double locking system:

1. Only the driver's door will be unlocked. Also, the hazard warning flashers will flash twice.
2. If you press the unlock button again

within 5 seconds of unlocking the driver's door, all of the other doors and the rear gate will be unlocked.

▽ Models with door unlock selection function

NOTE

- For security reasons, confirm the setting is set as “operational” or “non-operational”.
- For models with “keyless access with push-button start system”, the door unlock selection function can be set for both the keyless access function and the remote keyless entry system. For the method of setting the door unlock selection function of the keyless access function, refer to “Door unlock selection function” 2-14.

The door unlock selection function makes it possible to unlock the driver's door without unlocking any other doors. The operational/non-operational setting for this function can be changed by a SUBARU dealer.

Operational: Only the driver's door will be unlocked. If you press the unlock button again within 5 seconds of unlocking the driver's door, all of the other doors and the rear gate will be unlocked.

Non-operational: All doors and the rear gate will be unlocked.

For further details, we recommend that you consult a SUBARU dealer.

▼ Locking

Pressing the lock button on the access key/transmitter locks all doors and the rear gate. When leaving the vehicle, pull the REAR door handle to make sure that the doors have been locked.

NOTE

- The remote keyless entry system does not operate when the key is inserted in the ignition switch or when any of the doors or the rear gate is not fully closed.
- If any of the doors (or the rear gate) is not fully closed, the hazard warning flashers will flash five times (the outside warning chime also sounds five times for models with “keyless access with push-button start system”) to alert you that the doors (or the rear gate) are not properly closed.
- For models with “keyless access with push-button start system”, the front door will be unlocked if you grip the front door handle while an access key is in the operating range. Pull the REAR door handle to make sure that

the doors have been locked.

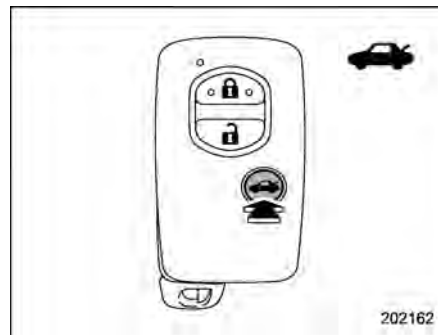
▼ Automatic locking (except models with double locking system)

When the unlock button is pressed, all of the doors and the rear gate will be automatically locked 30 seconds later unless any one of the four doors or the rear gate is opened during that period.

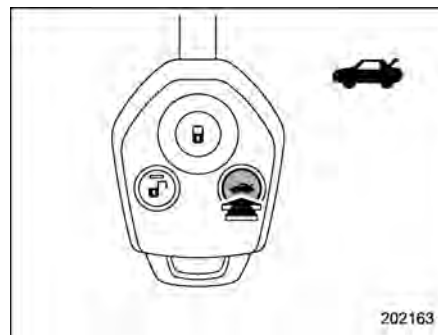
The automatic locking function's operational/non-operational setting and the setting for the locking time period (the time period after which locking takes place) can be changed by a SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact the nearest SUBARU dealer for details.

For models with multi function display, the setting and the time can be changed by operating the multi function display. For details, refer to “Security Relocking” 3-80.

■ Unlocking/operating rear gate



Access key



Remote transmitter

Press the “” button to unlock the rear gate. At this time, the hazard warning

lights flash twice.

For models with power rear gate, press and hold the “” button to open/close the rear gate.

■ Technical information

The trade, model and supplier's names of this device are as follows.

- Equipment's trade name: SUBARU
- Equipment's model name: TF001
- Supplier's name: Calsonic Kansei

For Europe:

This device complies with the essential requirements of the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 1999/5/EC. A copy of the original Declaration of Conformity and the CE marking are found in the chapter 13.

Double locking system (if equipped)

The double locking system is an anti-theft system. It operates when the doors are locked using the key or remote transmitter. While this system is operating, the power door locking switch and door lock levers inside the cabin cannot be used to unlock the doors.



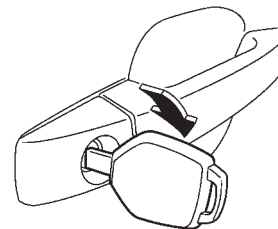
WARNING

Never set the double locking system while passengers are inside the vehicle. With the system set, people in the vehicle would not be able to open the doors from the inside. The result could be serious injuries or death.

■ To set double locking system

▼ Setting system using key

1. Remove the key from the ignition switch (models without “keyless access with push-button start system”)/turn the push-button ignition switch to the “OFF” position (models with “keyless access with push-button start system”) and have all occupants get out of the vehicle.
2. Close all of the doors and the rear gate securely.



202193

3. Insert the key into the key cylinder of the driver's door, then turn it in the locking direction to set the double locking system. All of the doors and the rear gate will be locked.

▼ Setting system using remote transmitter

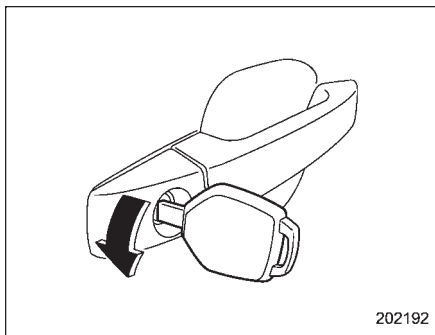
1. Remove the key from the ignition switch (models without “keyless access with push-button start system”)/turn the push-button ignition switch to the “OFF” position (models with “keyless access with push-button start system”) and have all occupants get out of the vehicle.
2. Close all of the doors and the rear gate securely.
3. Press the “” button on the access key or “” button on the transmitter. The hazard warning flashers will flash once and the double locking system will be set. All of the doors and the rear gate will be locked.

NOTE

For models with the keyless access function, it is possible to set the double locking system by touching the door lock sensor.

■ To cancel double locking system

▼ Canceling system using key



Insert the key into the key cylinder of the driver's door, then turn it in the unlocking direction to cancel the double locking system. All of the doors and the rear gate will be unlocked.

▼ Canceling system using remote transmitter

Press the “” button on the access key or “” button on the transmitter. The hazard warning flashers will flash twice and the double locking system will be canceled. The driver's door will be unlocked.

NOTE

For models with the keyless access function, it is possible to cancel the double locking system by gripping the door handle.

■ In an emergency

If you become trapped inside the vehicle owing to an accident or some other unexpected circumstance, unlock the doors using one of the following methods.

- Remove the key from the ignition switch, then press the “” button on the transmitter (models without keyless access function).
- Turn the push-button ignition switch off, then press the “” button on the access key (models with keyless access function).
- Set the ignition switch to the “ON” position and open the driver's window. Insert the key into the key cylinder of the driver's door and turn it in the unlocking

direction.

- Break one of the windows and climb out through the window opening.

■ If a battery goes dead

If the double locking system cannot be canceled because the vehicle battery or transmitter battery has gone dead or because of a blown fuse or other electrical problem, insert the key into the key cylinder of the driver's door and turn it in the unlocking direction.

■ To reset double locking system

The double locking system must be reset when the vehicle battery has been temporarily disconnected for replacement or charging. To reset the system, turn the key once in the unlocking direction or press the “” button on the access key or “” button on the transmitter. The double locking system will then operate normally.

NOTE

For models with the keyless access function, it is possible to reset the double locking system by gripping the door handle.

Function disabling unlocking with the power door locking switch (Australia models)



WARNING

Never lock the doors using the remote keyless entry system while passengers are inside the vehicle. Doing so activates the function that disables unlocking with the power door locking switch and so people in the vehicle would not be able to open the doors from the inside. This could result in serious injury or death.

Australia models are fitted with an anti-theft function that disables door unlocking with the power door locking switch. This function is activated in the following situations, disabling the doors from being unlocked using the power door locking switch.

- The doors are locked using the keyless access function (if equipped). Refer to “How to use keyless access functions”  2-12.
- The doors are locked using the remote keyless entry system. Refer to “Locking and unlocking doors”  2-16.

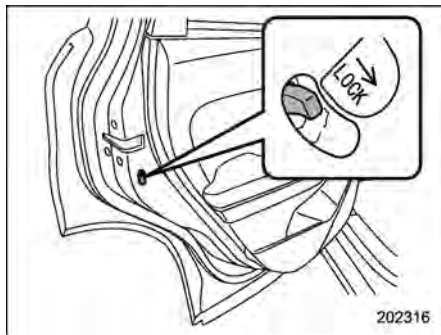
- The automatic locking function is in operation. Refer to “Automatic locking (except models with double locking system)”  2-18.

This function is canceled when the doors are unlocked using the remote keyless entry system or the ignition switch is turned to “ON”.

NOTE

- Even while this function is activated, doors can be unlocked using their lock levers, refer to “Locking and unlocking from the inside”  2-5.
- This function is not activated when the doors are locked using the key or power door locking switch.

Child safety locks



Each rear door has a child safety lock. When the child safety lock lever is in the "LOCK" position, the door cannot be opened from inside. The door can only be opened from the outside.

WARNING

Always turn the child safety locks to the "LOCK" position when children sit on the rear seat. Serious injury could result if a child accidentally opens the door and falls out.

Windows

WARNING

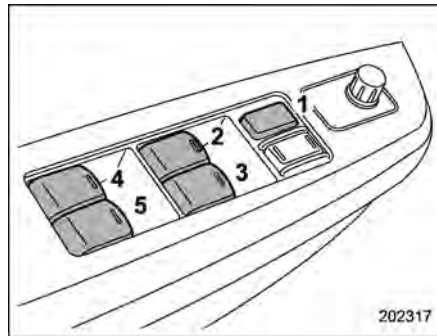
To avoid serious personal injury caused by entrapment, always conform to the following instructions without exception.

- When operating the power windows, be extremely careful to prevent anyone's fingers, arms, neck, head or other objects from being caught in the window.
- Always lock the passengers' windows using the lock switch when children are riding in the vehicle.
- Before leaving the vehicle, always remove the key from the ignition switch for safety (models without "keyless access with push-button start system") and never allow an unattended child to remain in the vehicle. Failure to follow this procedure could result in injury to a child operating the power window.

The power windows operate only when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.

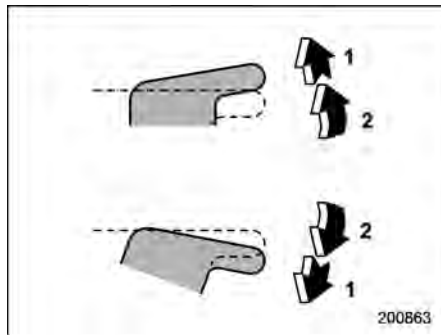
■ Power window operation by driver

▼ Driver's side power window switches



- 1) Lock switch
- 2) For driver's window (with one-touch auto up and down feature)
- 3) For front passenger's window
- 4) For rear left window
- 5) For rear right window

All door windows can be controlled by the power window switch cluster at the driver side door.

▼ Operating the driver's window

- 1) Automatically open/close
- 2) Open/close

To open:

Push the switch down lightly and hold it. The window will open as long as the switch is held.

This switch also has a one-touch auto down feature that allows the window to be opened fully without holding the switch.

Push the switch down until it clicks and release it, and the window will fully open. To stop the window halfway, pull the switch up lightly.

To close:

Pull the switch up lightly and hold it. The window will close as long as the switch is held.

This switch also has a one-touch auto up feature that allows the window to be closed fully without holding the switch.

Pull the switch up until it clicks and release it, and the window will fully close. To stop the window halfway, push the switch down lightly.

NOTE

If the vehicle's battery is disconnected due to situations such as battery or fuse replacement, the one-touch auto up/down function is deactivated. Initialize the power window to reactivate the one-touch auto up/down function. Refer to "Initialization of power window" 2-25.

▼ Anti-entrapment function
 CAUTION

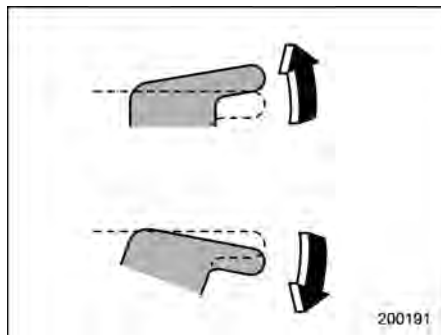
- **Never attempt to test this function using fingers, hands or other parts of your body.**
- **The anti-entrapment function may not operate properly if some object gets trapped just before the window fully closes.**

NOTE

- **If a window detects an impact similar to that caused by trapping an object (for example, when the vehicle encounters a deep pothole), the anti-entrapment function may operate.**
- **The window cannot be operated for a few seconds after the anti-entrapment function operates.**
- **If the vehicle's battery is disconnected due to situations such as battery or fuse replacement, the anti-entrapment function is deactivated. Initialize the power window to reactivate the anti-entrapment function. Refer to "Initialization of power window" 2-25.**

While closing the driver's window automatically, if the window senses a substantial enough object trapped between the window and the window frame, it automatically moves down slightly and stops.

▼ Operating the passengers' windows



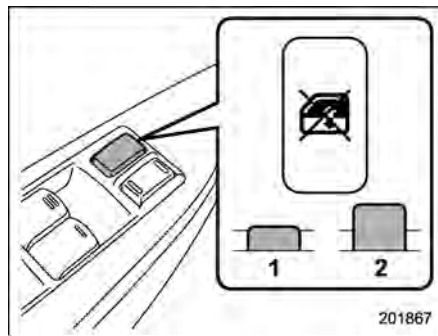
To open:

Push the appropriate switch down and hold it until the window reaches the desired position.

To close:

Pull the switch up and hold it until the window reaches the desired position.

▼ Locking the passengers' windows



- 1) Lock
- 2) Unlock

To lock:

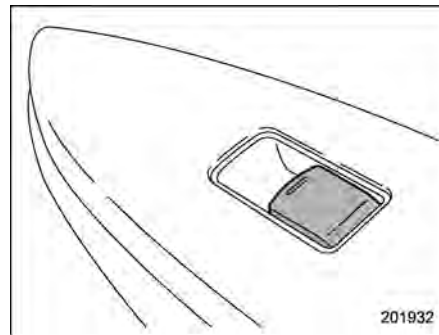
Press the lock switch. When the lock switch is in the lock position, the passengers' windows cannot be opened or closed.

To unlock:

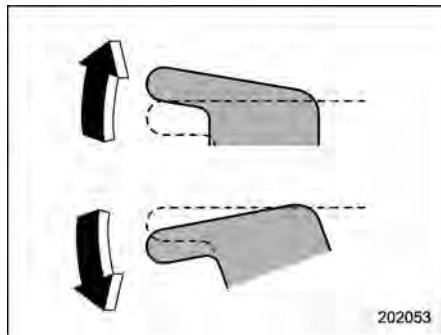
Press the lock switch again.

■ Power window operation by passengers

▼ Passenger's side power window switches



Each passenger window can be controlled by the power window switch located on the door.

▼ Operating the windows**To open:**

Press the switch down and hold it until the window reaches the desired position.

To close:

Pull the switch up and hold it until the window reaches the desired position.

When the lock switch on the power window switch cluster, located on the driver's side door, is in the lock position, the passengers' windows cannot be operated with the passengers' switches.

■ Initialization of power window

If the vehicle's battery is disconnected due to situations such as battery or fuse replacement, the following functions will be deactivated.

- One-touch auto up/down function
- Anti-entrapment function

Initialize the power window using the following procedure to reactivate these functions.

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position.
3. Open the driver's side window halfway by pushing down the power window switch.
4. Pull up the power window switch and close the window completely. Continue pulling up the switch for approximately 1 second after the window is closed completely.
5. Push down the power window switch until it clicks to open the window completely.

Rear gate**■ Lock/unlock**

The rear gate can be locked and unlocked using any of the following systems.

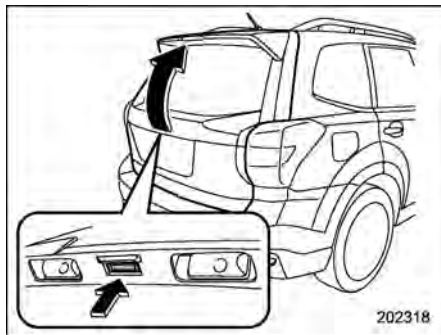
- Power door locking switch: Refer to "Power door locking switch" 2-6.
- Keyless access with the push-button start system (if equipped): Refer to "Keyless access with push-button start system" 2-7.
- Remote keyless entry system: Refer to "Remote keyless entry system" 2-16.
- Locking and unlocking from the outside with the key (models with double locking system): Refer to "Locking and unlocking from the outside with key" 2-4.

NOTE

If the rear gate cannot be unlocked due to a discharged vehicle battery, a malfunction in the door locking/unlocking system or other causes, you can unlock it by manually operating the rear gate lock release lever.

For the procedure, refer to "Rear gate – if the rear gate cannot be opened" 9-17.

■ Open/close

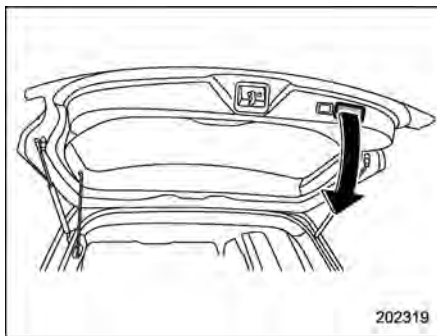


Rear gate opener button

To open:

First unlock the rear gate lock then push the rear gate opener button.

For models with power rear gate, briefly press the rear gate opener button to open the rear gate automatically. Press and hold the rear gate opener button to open the rear gate as utilized in models without a power rear gate.



To close:

Lower the rear gate slowly and push down firmly until the latch engages.

The rear gate can be lowered easily if you pull down on the inside handle as shown in the illustration.



WARNING

- To prevent dangerous exhaust gas from entering the vehicle, always keep the rear gate closed while driving.
- Do not attempt to shut the rear gate while holding the recessed grip. Also avoid closing the rear gate by pulling on the recessed grip from inside the cargo area. There is a danger of your hand being caught and injured.



CAUTION

- Do not jam a plastic bag in or place cellophane tape on the rear gate stays or scratch the stays while loading or unloading cargo. That could cause leakage of gas from the stays, which may result in their inability to hold the rear gate open.
- Be careful not to hit your head or face on the rear gate when opening or closing the rear gate and when loading or unloading cargo.

■ Power rear gate (if equipped)**⚠ WARNING**

- When opening the rear gate, make sure there are no people around it. If the rear gate, by any chance, should hit a part of the body, this may result in an injury.
- When closing the rear gate, be extremely careful to prevent anyone's fingers, arms, neck, head or other objects from being caught in the rear gate. Otherwise, serious personal injury may be caused by entrapment.
- If either of the operating conditions has not been satisfied while operating the power rear gate, an electronic chirp will sound and the power rear gate will be deactivated. In this case, the rear gate may open or close suddenly. Be careful to prevent anyone's body parts or any objects from being hit against the rear gate or being caught in the rear gate.
- After opening the rear gate on the slope by using the power rear gate, the rear gate may be closed. Make sure that the rear gate has been stopped completely

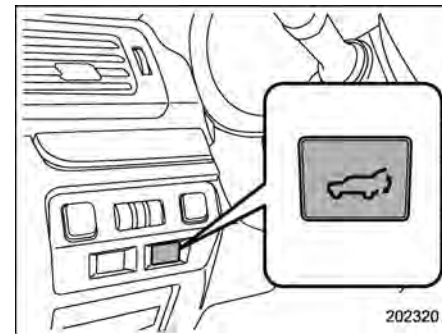
tely after opening it.

⚠ CAUTION

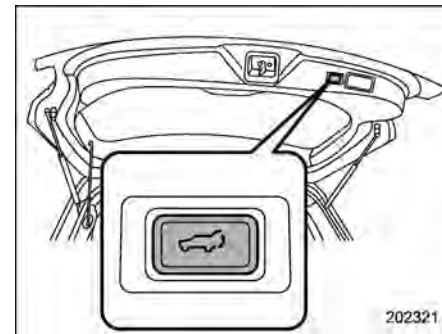
When closing the rear gate after opening it by using the memory function, make sure to use the power rear gate. If you close the rear gate manually with extra force, the power rear gate may be damaged.

The power rear gate operates only when all of the following conditions are satisfied.

- The vehicle is stopped completely.
- The outside temperature is within a range from -30°C to 70°C (from -22°F to 158°F).
- The ignition switch is in the "LOCK"/"OFF" or "ACC" position. Or, the ignition switch is in the "ON" position and the parking brake is applied (MT models)/the select lever is in the "P" position (CVT models).



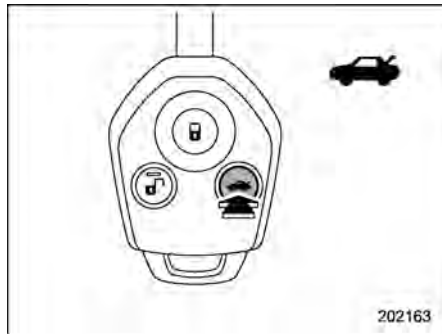
Power rear gate button on the instrument panel



Power rear gate button on the inside edge of the rear gate



Power rear gate button on the access key



Power rear gate button on the remote transmitter

To open the rear gate:

Press and hold any of the power rear gate

buttons when the rear gate is closed. Then the hazard warning flashers will flash twice.

To stop the rear gate midway:

Briefly press any of the power rear gate buttons while the rear gate is being opened. Then the hazard warning flashers will flash twice.

If the button is pressed again, the rear gate will be closed. If the power rear gate button is briefly pressed while the gate is closed, the rear gate can be opened. However, the rear gate cannot be stopped while it is opening.

To close the rear gate:

Perform any of the following procedures when the rear gate is opened.

- Press and hold the power rear gate button on the instrument panel.
- Briefly press the power rear gate button on the rear gate.
- Press and hold the power rear gate button on the access key/remote transmitter.

Then the hazard warning flashers will flash twice. If the button is briefly pressed again, the rear gate will be opened. However, you cannot stop the rear gate midway even if you press the button

again.

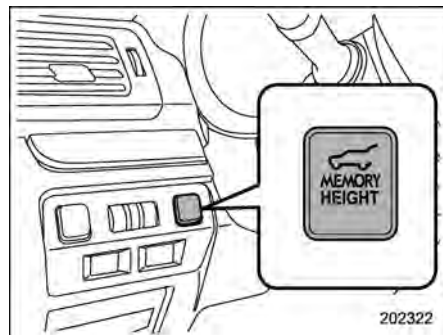
NOTE

- If the button is pressed repeatedly while the power rear gate is operating, the system may ignore the switch operation in order to avoid being damaged. Do not press the button unnecessarily.
- It is not possible to stop the rear gate temporarily while opening between the completely closed position and approximately 30 cm (12 in) open. If you press one of the power rear gate buttons briefly during this range, the rear gate will be closed.
- If the vehicle starts to move while the power rear gate is operating, the system sounds a buzzer and closes the rear gate automatically. At this time, if the system detects jamming, it will deactivate the power rear gate and the rear gate will not be closed. If this occurs, close the rear gate via regular procedures.
- If you try to open the rear gate using the power rear gate function immediately after closing the rear gate using the power rear gate function, an electronic chirp will sound and the rear gate will not open. Wait for a while before trying to open the rear gate via the power rear gate. If you wish to open

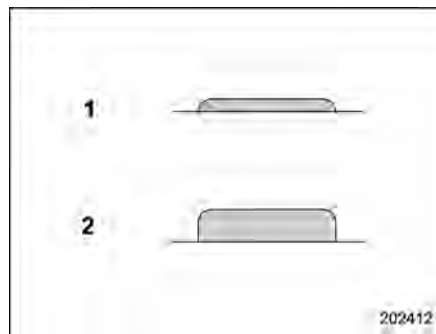
it right away, it can be opened manually.

- For models with the Auto Start Stop system, if the rear gate is opened with the power rear gate function while the engine is stopped via the Auto Start Stop system, the engine will restart.

▼ Memory function



Memory switch



Memory switch status

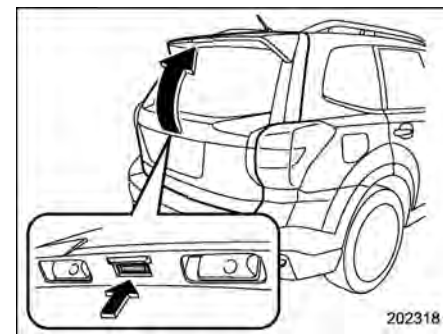
- 1) ON status
- 2) OFF status

Your desired rear gate height can be registered.

Registration of the rear gate height:

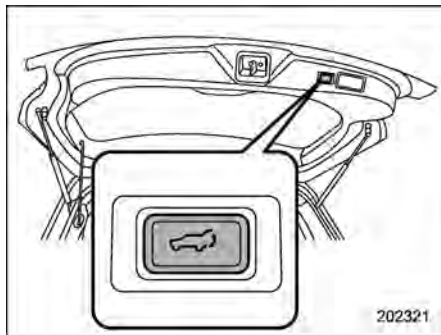
To register the rear gate height, perform the following procedures while the ignition switch is in the "LOCK"/"OFF" position.

1. Press the memory switch to select the "ON" status.



Rear gate opener button

2. Press and hold the rear gate opener button located above the license plate. After the latch releases, let go of the button and raise the rear gate to the desired height manually.



Power rear gate button on the inside edge of the rear gate

3. With the rear gate at the desired height, press and hold the power rear gate button on the inside edge of the rear gate until an electronic chirp is heard and the hazard warning flashers flash three times. The electronic chirp and the flashing hazard warning flashers confirm the selected rear gate height has been registered.

4. Close the rear gate manually (without using the power rear gate).

NOTE

- To change the registered height, perform the registering procedure again.
- It is possible to register the height

from approximately 30 cm (12 in) or more from the completely closed position.

- Before closing the rear gate in step 4, it is possible to register the height many times through step 3. Therefore, the registered height can easily be fine-tuned.

Retrieval of the rear gate height:

To open the rear gate and stop it at the registered height, perform the following procedure.

1. Press the memory switch to select the ON status.
2. Press and hold any of the power rear gate switches.

Even if any of the power rear gate switches are pressed and held while the memory switch is in the OFF status, you can stop it at the registered height by pressing the memory switch to select the ON status before the rear gate reaches the registered height.

NOTE

- The rear gate will open to the position that is stored in the memory function even if the rear gate is opened by the reverse function.
- If the rear gate is opened manually while the memory function is activated,

you cannot close it by pressing the power rear gate button on the rear gate. To close it, press the other power rear gate button or close it manually.

▼ Reverse function



WARNING

- Do not let parts of your body be caught intentionally to operate the reverse function. If the reverse function does not operate for some reason, this may lead to serious injury or accidents.
- The reverse function may not operate in the case that foreign objects are caught in the rear gate just before it closes completely. Be careful not to catch your fingers and other body parts.
- Reverse function may not operate depending on the object shape and the manner in which it was caught. Be careful not to catch your fingers and other body parts.

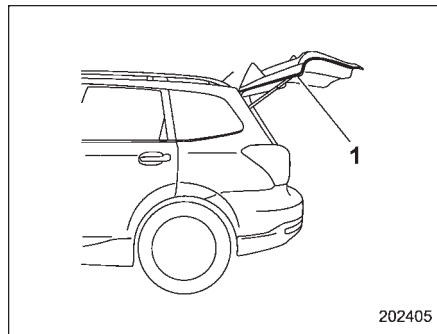
**CAUTION**

- If reverse function is operated 3 times consecutively, automatic opening and closing of the power rear gate function will be canceled and the rear gate can be opened and closed normally. Whether the rear gate opens or closes depends on the rear gate height when automatic operation is ceased. Be careful that the rear gate does not hit anyone's head or face etc. and that fingers and baggage etc. are not caught in it.
- Take care not to damage the touch sensors. The reverse function may cease to operate.

If, while opening or closing using power rear gate, the rear gate catches persons or baggage or hits an obstacle, an electronic chirp will sound 3 times and the rear gate will operate as follows.

When opening the rear gate: The rear gate will be automatically closed.

When closing the rear gate: The rear gate will be automatically opened.



1) Touch sensor

Touch sensors are attached on the left and right edges of the rear gate. If the touch sensors detect fingers, baggage etc. while closing by the power rear gate function, an electronic chirp will sound 3 times and the rear gate will open automatically.

NOTE

When the rear gate is opened using reverse function, it will be opened fully or to the height registered in the memory function.

▼ **Rear gate drop prevention function**

If, while fully opened via the power rear gate, the rear gate is lowered by the weight of snow and such, the electronic

chirp will sound and the rear gate will close automatically.

NOTE

- If there is snow on the rear gate, only use the power rear gate function after removing the snow.
- If you close the rear gate manually just after the rear gate is fully opened using the power rear gate function, the rear gate drop prevention function will operate to close the rear gate automatically. In this case, this is not a malfunction.

Sunroof (if equipped)



WARNING

Never let anyone's hands, arms, head or any objects protrude from the sunroof. A person could be seriously injured if any of the following conditions occur.

- The vehicle stops suddenly.
- The vehicle turns sharply.
- The vehicle is involved in an accident.
- Body parts protruding from the vehicle are struck by outside objects.

To avoid serious personal injury caused by entrapment, always conform to the following instructions without exception.

- Before closing the sunroof, make sure that no one's hands, arms, head or other objects will be accidentally caught in the sunroof.
- Before leaving the vehicle, always remove the key from the ignition switch for safety (models without "keyless access with

push-button start system") and never allow an unattended child to remain in the vehicle. Failure to follow this procedure could result in injury to a child operating the sunroof.

- Never try to check the anti-entrapment function by deliberately placing part of your body in the sunroof.

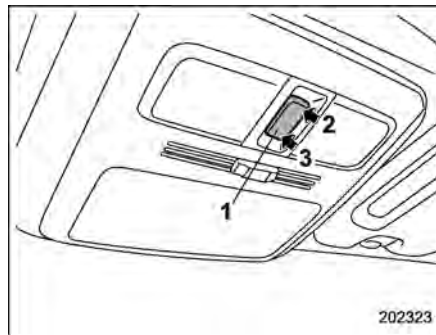


CAUTION

- Do not sit on the edge of the open sunroof.
- Do not operate the sunroof if falling snow or extremely cold conditions have caused it to freeze shut.
- Do not touch the moving parts of the sunroof while the sunroof is operating.
- If the sunroof does not close, we recommend that you have the system checked by a SUBARU dealer.

The sunroof operates only when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.

■ Sunroof switch



- 1) OPEN/CLOSE switch
- 2) Open
- 3) Close

To open the sunroof:

Press the rear side of the "OPEN/CLOSE" switch. The sun shade will also be opened together with the sunroof. The sunroof will stop at a position approximately 20 cm (8 in) away from the fully opened position. Press the rear side of the switch again to open the sunroof completely.

To close the sunroof:

Press the front side of the "OPEN/CLOSE" switch. To stop the sunroof at a selected mid-way position while opening or closing it, momentarily press the front side or rear side of the switch.

After washing the vehicle or after it rains, wipe away water on the roof prior to opening the sunroof to prevent drops of water from falling into the passenger compartment.

NOTE

Driving with the sunroof fully open can cause an annoying sound to be generated at high speeds. If this occurs, use the sunroof at the initial stop position of 20 cm (8 in) away from the fully opened position.

■ Anti-entrapment function

When the sunroof senses a substantial enough object trapped between its glass and the vehicle's roof during closure, the sunroof will automatically open to 15 cm (6 in) or fully open and stop at that position. The anti-entrapment function may also be activated by a strong shock on the sunroof even when there is nothing trapped.



CAUTION

Never attempt to test this function using fingers, hands or other parts of your body.

NOTE

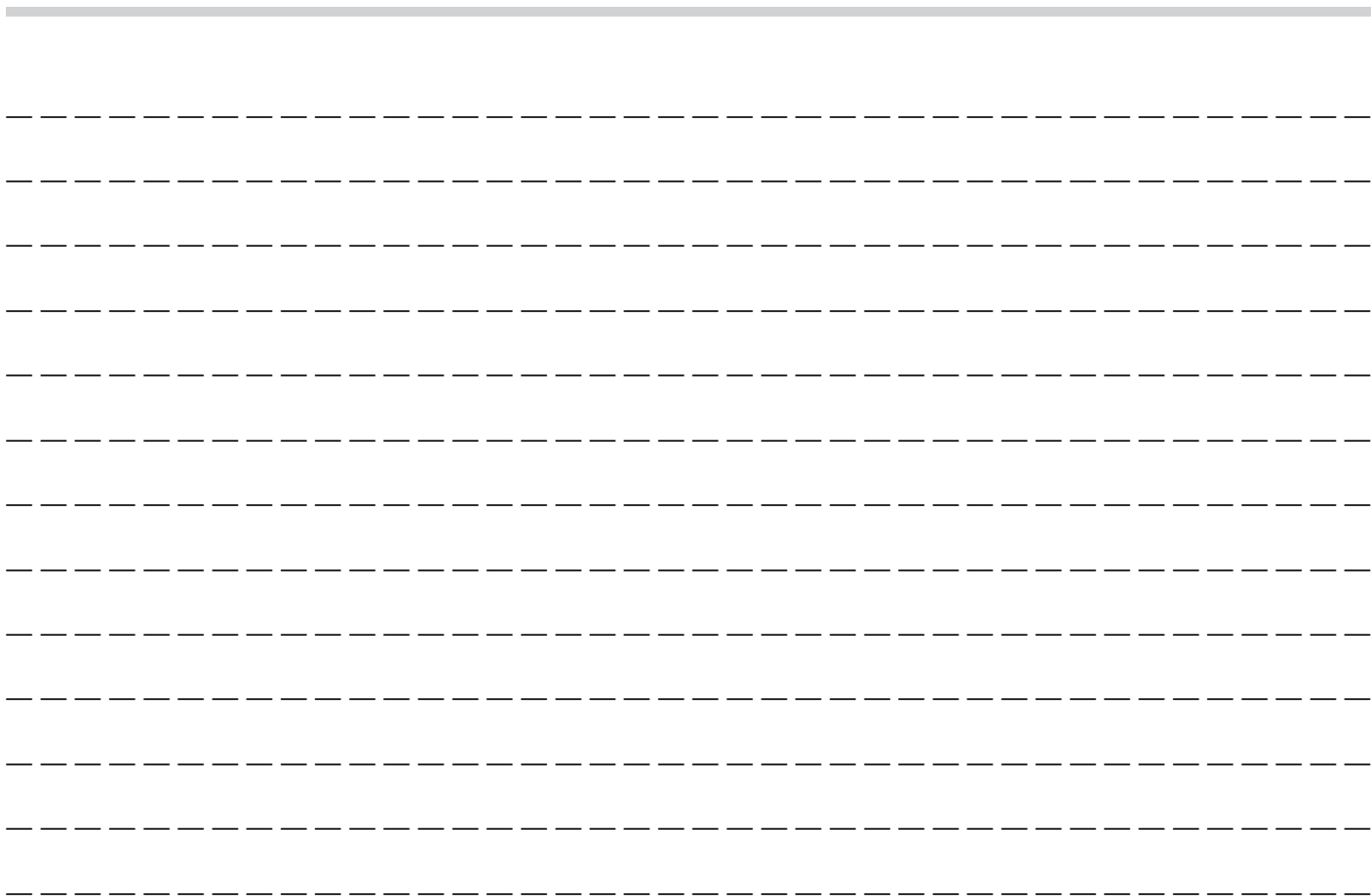
For the sake of safety, it is recommended that you avoid driving with the sunroof fully opened.

■ Sun shade



The sun shade can be slid forward or backward by hand while the sunroof is closed.

If the sunroof is opened, the sun shade also moves back.



Ignition switch (models without push-button start system).....	3-4
LOCK.....	3-4
ACC.....	3-5
ON.....	3-5
START	3-5
Key reminder chime (if equipped)	3-5
Ignition switch light.....	3-5
Push-button ignition switch (models with push-button start system)	3-6
Safety precautions	3-6
Operating range for push-button start system	3-6
Switch location	3-7
Switching power	3-7
When access key does not operate properly	3-8
Hazard warning flasher.....	3-8
Meters and gauges.....	3-8
Combination meter illumination	3-8
Canceling the function for meter/gauge needle movement upon turning on the ignition switch.....	3-9
Speedometer.....	3-9
Odometer.....	3-9
Double trip meter	3-10
Tachometer.....	3-10
Fuel gauge.....	3-11
ECO gauge (if equipped)	3-11
Warning and indicator lights	3-12
Initial illumination for system check.....	3-12
Seatbelt warning light and chime	3-13

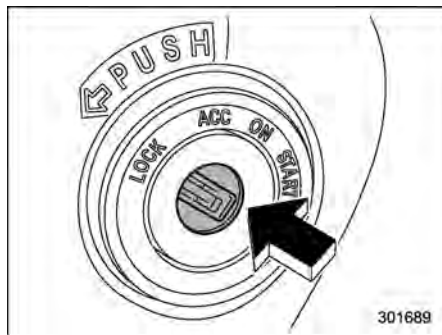
Rear seatbelt indicator light and chime (if equipped)	3-15
SRS airbag system warning light.....	3-15
Front passenger's frontal airbag ON and OFF indicators (if equipped)	3-15
Malfunction indicator light (Check Engine light)	3-16
Coolant temperature low indicator light/Coolant temperature high warning light.....	3-17
Charge warning light.....	3-18
Oil pressure warning light.....	3-18
Engine low oil level warning light.....	3-18
AT OIL TEMP warning light (CVT models)	3-19
Rear differential oil temperature warning light (if equipped).....	3-19
ABS warning light.....	3-20
Vehicle Dynamics Control warning light/Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light.....	3-20
Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light.....	3-22
Brake system warning light.....	3-22
Low fuel warning light	3-23
Windshield washer fluid warning light	3-23
Hill start assist warning light/Hill start assist OFF indicator light	3-23
Door open warning light	3-24
All-Wheel Drive warning light (CVT models).....	3-24
Power steering warning light (models with electric power steering).....	3-24
Automatic headlight beam leveler warning light (models with HID headlights).....	3-25
Warning chimes and warning light of the keyless access with push-button start system (if equipped)	3-25

Immobilizer indicator light	3-30	Multi function display (if equipped)	3-40
SI-DRIVE indicator light (if equipped)	3-30	Basic operation	3-41
Shift-up indicator light (MT models)	3-30	Welcome screen	3-42
Select lever/gear position indicator (CVT models)	3-31	Ending screen	3-42
Turn signal indicator lights	3-31	Self-check screen	3-43
High beam indicator light	3-31	Interruption screen	3-44
Cruise control indicator light (if equipped)	3-31	Basic screens	3-44
Cruise control set indicator light (if equipped)	3-32	Selection screen	3-53
Headlight indicator light (if equipped)	3-32	Date and time settings	3-55
Front fog light indicator light (if equipped)	3-32	Image quality and volume settings	3-63
Rear fog light indicator light (if equipped)	3-32	Screen settings	3-66
X mode indicator light (if equipped)	3-32	Maintenance settings	3-74
Hill descent control indicator light (if equipped)	3-32	Driving history registration	3-77
Fuel filter warning light (diesel engine models)	3-32	Car settings	3-78
Preheating indicator light (diesel engine models)	3-32	Initialize	3-83
Diesel particulate filter warning light (diesel engine models)	3-33	Audio setting (if equipped)	3-86
Over-rev warning light (yellow) (diesel engine models)	3-33	Sound setting (if equipped)	3-88
Auto Start Stop warning light/Auto Start Stop OFF indicator light (yellow) (if equipped)	3-34	Light control switch	3-89
Auto Start Stop indicator light (green) (if equipped)	3-34	Headlights	3-90
Information display (if equipped)	3-34	High/low beam change (dimmer)	3-91
Outside temperature indicator	3-35	Headlight flasher	3-91
Driving information display	3-36	Daytime running light system (if equipped)	3-92
Clock	3-40	Turn signal lever	3-92
		One-touch lane changer (if equipped)	3-92
		Illumination brightness control	3-93
		Headlight beam leveler (if equipped)	3-93
		Automatic headlight beam leveler (models with HID headlights)	3-93
		Manual headlight beam leveler (models without HID headlights)	3-94

Fog light switch.....	3-96
Front fog light switch (if equipped)	3-96
Rear fog light switch (if equipped)	3-97
Wiper and washer	3-98
Windshield wiper and washer switches	3-100
Rear window wiper and washer switch.....	3-103
Headlight washer (if equipped)	3-104

Mirrors	3-105
Inside mirror.....	3-105
Outside mirrors	3-105
Defogger and deicer	3-106
Tilt/telescopic steering wheel	3-108
Horn.....	3-109

Ignition switch (models without push-button start system)



The ignition switch has four positions: LOCK, ACC, ON and START.

WARNING

- Never turn the ignition switch to “LOCK” while the vehicle is being driven or towed because that will lock the steering wheel, preventing steering control. And when the engine is turned off, it takes a much greater effort than usual to steer.
- Before leaving the vehicle, always remove the key from the

ignition switch for safety and never allow an unattended child to remain in the vehicle. Failure to follow this procedure could result in injury to a child or others. Children could operate the power windows or other controls or even make the vehicle move.

CAUTION

Do not attach a large key holder or key case to either key. If it bangs against your knees while you are driving, it could turn the ignition switch from the “ON” position to the “ACC” or “LOCK” position, thereby stopping the engine.

NOTE

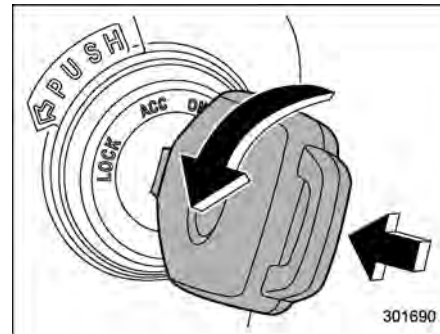
- Keep the ignition switch in the “LOCK” position when the engine is not running.
- Using electrical accessories for a long time with the ignition switch in the “ON” or “ACC” position can cause the battery to go dead.
- If the ignition switch will not move from the “LOCK” position to the “ACC” position, turn the steering wheel

slightly to the left and right as you turn the ignition switch.

■ LOCK

The key can only be inserted or removed in this position. The ignition switch will lock the steering wheel when you remove the key.

If turning the key is difficult, turn the steering wheel slightly to the right and left as you turn the key.



The key can be turned from the “ACC” to “LOCK” position only when the select lever is in the “P” position (CVT models) and the key is pushed in while turning it (all models).

■ ACC

In this position the electrical accessories (audio, accessory power outlet, etc.) can be used.

■ ON

This is the normal operating position after the engine is started.

■ START

The engine is started in this position. The starter cranks the engine to start it. When the key is released (after the engine has started), the key automatically returns to the "ON" position.

**CAUTION**

Do not turn the ignition switch to the "START" position while the engine is running.

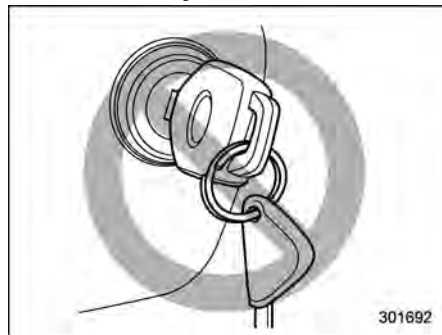
As your vehicle is equipped with an immobilizer system, if you fail to start the engine with a registered key, pull out the key once, (at this time, the immobilizer indicator light blinks) and then insert the key in the ignition switch and turn it to the "START" position and again try to start your engine.

NOTE

The engine may not start in the following cases:



- The key grip is touching another key or a metallic key holder.



- The key is near another key that

contains an immobilizer transponder.

- The key is near or touching another transmitter.

■ Key reminder chime (if equipped)

The reminder chime sounds when the driver's door is opened and the ignition switch is in the "LOCK" or "ACC" position.

The chime stops under the following conditions.

- when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position
- when the key is removed from the ignition switch
- when the driver's door is closed

■ Ignition switch light

For easy access to the ignition switch in the dark, the ignition switch light illuminates when the driver's door is opened or when the driver's door is unlocked using the remote keyless entry transmitter.

The light remains illuminated for several tens of seconds and then gradually turns off under the following conditions.

- when the driver's door is closed
- when the doors are unlocked using the remote keyless entry transmitter

The light turns off immediately under the following conditions.

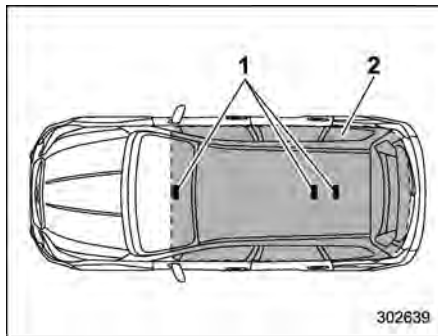
- when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position
- when all doors and the rear gate are locked using the remote keyless entry transmitter

Push-button ignition switch (models with push-button start system)

■ Safety precautions

Refer to "Safety precautions" 2-8.

■ Operating range for push-button start system



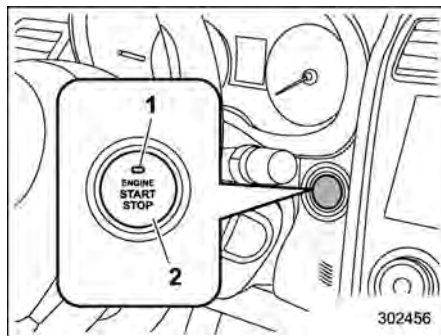
- 1) Antenna
- 2) Operating range

NOTE

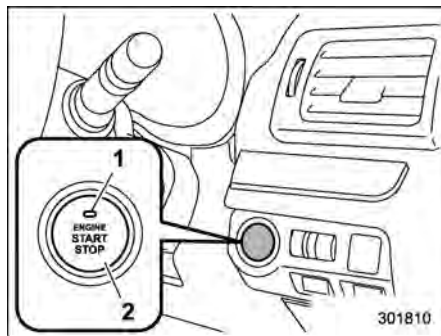
- If the access key is not detected within the operating range of the antennas inside the vehicle, the push-button ignition switch and the engine start cannot be operated.

- Even when the access key is outside the vehicle, if it is placed too close to the glass, it may be possible to switch the power or to start the engine.
- Do not leave the access key in the following places. It may become impossible to operate the push-button ignition switch and the engine start.
 - On the instrument panel
 - On the floor
 - Inside the glove box
 - Inside the door trim pocket
 - On the rear seat
 - At the corner of the cargo area
- When operating the push-button ignition switch or starting the engine, if the access key battery is discharged, perform the procedure described in "Access key – if access key does not operate properly" 9-16. In such a case, replace the battery immediately. Refer to "Replacing battery of access key" 11-54.

Switch location



Left-hand drive models



Right-hand drive models

- 1) Operation indicator
- 2) Push-button ignition switch

Switching power

The power is switched every time the push-button ignition switch is pressed.

1. Carry the access key, and sit in the driver's seat.
2. Shift the shift lever in neutral (MT models) or the select lever in the "P" position (CVT models).
3. Press the push-button ignition switch without depressing the clutch pedal (MT models) or the brake pedal (CVT models). Every time the button is pressed, the power is switched in the sequence of "OFF", "ACC", "ON" and "OFF". The operation indicator on the push-button ignition switch illuminates or turns off as shown in the following chart.

Power status	Indicator color	Operation
OFF	Turned off	Power is turned off.
ACC	Orange	The following systems can be used: audio and accessory power outlet.
ON	Orange (while engine is stopped)	All electrical systems can be used.
	Turned off (while engine is running)	

CAUTION

- When the push-button ignition switch is left in "ON" or "ACC" for a long time, it may result in vehicle battery discharge.
- Do not spill drinks or other liquids on the push-button ignition switch. It may cause a malfunction.
- Do not touch the push-button ignition switch with a hand soiled with oil or other contaminants. It may cause a malfunction.
- If the push-button ignition switch does not operate smoothly, stop the operation. We recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer immediately.
- If the push-button ignition switch does not illuminate even when the instrument panel illumination is turned on, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected at a SUBARU dealer.
- If the vehicle was left in the hot sun for a long time, the surface of the push-button ignition switch may get hot. Be careful not to burn yourself.

NOTE

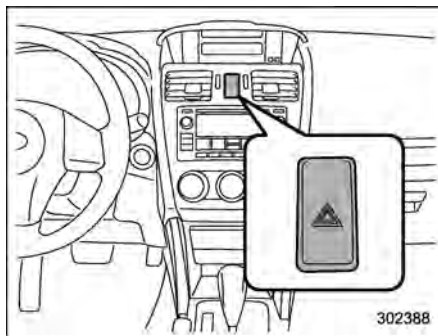
- In CVT models, the push-button ignition switch cannot be switched to “OFF” when the select lever is in a position other than “P”.
- When operating the push-button ignition switch, firmly press it all the way.
- If the push-button ignition switch is pressed quickly, the power may not turn on or off.

▼ Battery drainage prevention function

When the push-button ignition switch is left in “ON” or “ACC” for approximately 1 hour, the push-button ignition switch will be automatically switched to “OFF” to prevent the battery from going dead. (In CVT models, this function is activated when the select lever is in the “P” position.)

■ When access key does not operate properly

Refer to “Access key – if access key does not operate properly” 9-16.

Hazard warning flasher

The hazard warning flasher is used to warn other drivers when you have to park your vehicle under emergency conditions. The hazard warning flasher works with the ignition switch in any position.

To turn on the hazard warning flasher, press the hazard warning button on the instrument panel. To turn off the flasher, press the button again.

NOTE

When the hazard warning flasher is on, the turn signals do not work.

Meters and gauges**NOTE**

Liquid-crystal displays are used in some of the meters and gauges on the combination meter. You will find their indications hard to see if you wear polarized glasses.

■ Combination meter illumination

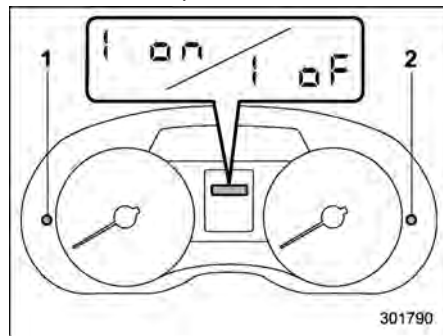
When the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position, the various parts of the combination meter are illuminated in the following sequence.

1. Warning lights, indicator lights, meter needles, gauge needles and liquid crystal display illuminate.
2. Meter and gauge indications each show MAX position.
3. Meter and gauge indications each show MIN position.
4. Regular illumination (for driving) begins.

■ Canceling the function for meter/gauge needle movement upon turning on the ignition switch

It is possible to activate or deactivate the movement of the meter needles and gauge needles that takes place when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position. To change the setting, perform the following procedure.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" or "ACC" position.

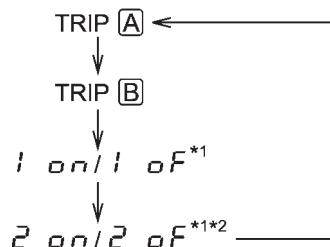


- 1) Trip knob (left-hand drive models)
- 2) Trip knob (right-hand drive models)

2. Press the trip knob to show "i on" or "i of" on the trip meter display.

The display can be switched as shown in

the following sequence by pressing the trip knob.



*1: They cannot be displayed when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.

*2: MT models only

To change the current setting, press the trip knob for at least 2 seconds.

i on : Activated

i of : Deactivated

NOTE

● Your vehicle's initial movement setting of the meter/gauge needles has been set for activation "i on" at the time of shipment from the factory.

● It is not possible to change the movement setting of the meter/gauge needles when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position. Change the setting when the ignition switch is in the "LOCK"/"OFF" or "ACC" position.

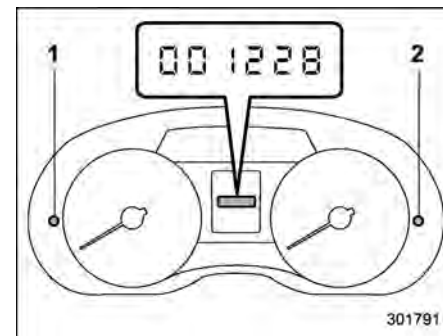
■ Speedometer

The speedometer shows the vehicle speed.

▼ Speed warning chime (if equipped)

When the speed is over approximately 120 km/h (75 mph), a chime sounds.

■ Odometer



- 1) Trip knob (left-hand drive models)
- 2) Trip knob (right-hand drive models)

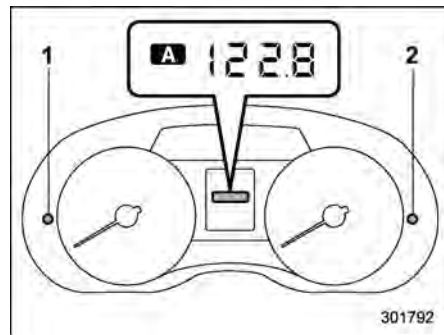
This meter displays the odometer when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position. The odometer shows the total distance that the vehicle has been driven.

If you press the trip knob when the ignition switch is in the "LOCK"/"OFF" or "ACC" position, the odometer/trip meter will light

up. If you do not press the trip knob within 10 seconds of illumination of the odometer/trip meter, the odometer/trip meter will turn off.

Also, if you open and close the driver's door within 10 seconds of illumination of the odometer/trip meter, the odometer/trip meter will turn off.

■ Double trip meter



- 1) Trip knob (left-hand drive models)
- 2) Trip knob (right-hand drive models)

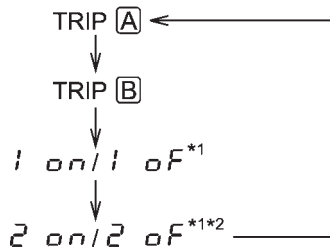
This meter displays the two trip meters when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.

The trip meter shows the distance that the vehicle has been driven since you last set it to zero.

If you press the trip knob when the ignition switch is in the "LOCK"/"OFF" or "ACC" position, the odometer/trip meter will light up. It is possible to switch between the A trip meter and B trip meter indications while the odometer/trip meter is lit up. If you do not press the trip knob within 10 seconds of illumination of the odometer/trip meter, the odometer/trip meter will turn off.

Also, if you open and close the driver's door within 10 seconds of illumination of the odometer/trip meter, the odometer/trip meter will turn off.

The display can be switched as shown in the following sequence by pressing the trip knob.



*1: They cannot be displayed when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.

*2: MT models only

To set the trip meter to zero, select the A

trip or B trip meter by pressing the knob and keep the knob pressed for more than 2 seconds.



CAUTION

To ensure safety, do not attempt to change the function of the indicator during driving, as an accident could result.

NOTE

If the connection between the combination meter and battery is broken for any reason such as vehicle maintenance or fuse replacement, the data recorded on the trip meter will be lost.

■ Tachometer

The tachometer shows the engine speed in thousands of revolutions per minute.

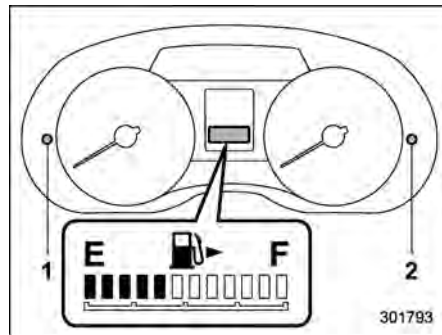


CAUTION

Do not operate the engine with the pointer of the tachometer in the red zone. This may cause severe damage to the engine.

Fuel gauge**CAUTION**

For diesel engine models, fill the tank with diesel fuel. For details about diesel fuel, refer to “Fuel requirements for diesel engine models” 7-3.

**Fuel gauge**

- 1) Trip knob (left-hand drive models)
- 2) Trip knob (right-hand drive models)

The fuel gauge is displayed when the ignition is in the “ON” position, and it shows the approximate amount of fuel remaining in the tank.

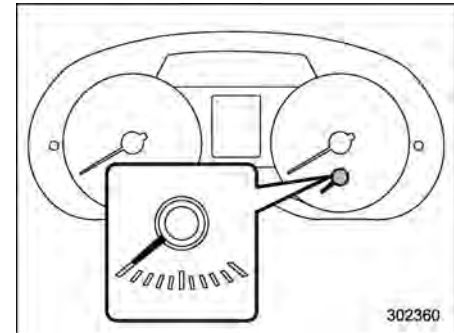
The gauge indication may change slightly during braking, turning or acceleration due

to fuel level movement in the tank.

If you press the trip knob while the ignition switch is in the “LOCK”/“OFF” or “ACC” position, the fuel gauge will light up and indicate the amount of fuel remaining in the tank. If, while the fuel gauge is indicating the amount of fuel remaining in the tank, you (a) do not press the trip knob for 10 seconds or (b) open and close the driver's door, the fuel gauge indication will turn off.

NOTE

You will see the “▶” sign in the fuel gauge. This indicates that the fuel filler door (lid) is located on the right side of the vehicle.

ECO gauge (if equipped)

The unit displayed varies depending on the models.

The ECO gauge shows the difference between the current rate of fuel consumption and the average rate of fuel consumption since the trip meter was last reset.

If the needle of the gauge moves towards the right side, this indicates better fuel efficiency.

NOTE

- The ECO gauge shows only an approximate indication of fuel efficiency.
- After resetting the trip meter, the average rate of fuel consumption is not shown until driving 1 km (0.6 mile).

Before that time, the ECO gauge does not operate.

Warning and indicator lights

■ Initial illumination for system check

Several of the warning and indicator lights illuminate when the ignition switch is initially turned to the "ON" position. This permits checking the operation of the bulbs.

Apply the parking brake and turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position. For the system check, the following lights illuminate and then turn off after several seconds or after the engine has started.

: Seatbelt warning light
(The driver's seatbelt warning light and the front passenger's seatbelt warning light turn off only when each seatbelt is fastened.)

: SRS airbag system warning light

: Rear seatbelt indicator light (if equipped)

ON / : Front passenger's frontal airbag ON indicator light (if equipped)

OFF / : Front passenger's frontal airbag OFF indicator light (if equipped)

: Malfunction indicator light
(Check Engine light)

: Coolant temperature high warning light

: Charge warning light

: Oil pressure warning light

: Engine low oil level warning light

: Windshield washer fluid warning light

AT OIL TEMP: AT OIL TEMP warning light
(CVT models)

R.DIFF. TEMP: Rear differential oil temperature warning light (if equipped)

(ABS): ABS warning light

(BRAKE): Brake system warning light

: Low fuel warning light

: Hill start assist warning light/Hill start assist OFF indicator light

: Door open warning light

AWD: AWD warning light (CVT models)

: Power steering warning light (models with electric power steering)

: Vehicle Dynamics Control warning light/Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light

: Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light

- ▲: Shift-up indicator light (MT models)
- ⌚: Cruise control indicator light (if equipped)
- SET: Cruise control set indicator light (if equipped)
- ⚡: Automatic headlight beam leveler warning light (models with HID headlights)
- 🔑: Access key warning light (if equipped)
- 🚗: X mode indicator light (if equipped)
- ⬇️: Hill descent control indicator light (if equipped)
- ⛽: Fuel filter warning light (diesel engine models)
- 🔥: Preheating indicator light (diesel engine models)
- 🌫️: Diesel particulate filter warning light (diesel engine models)
- ▲: Over-rev warning light (yellow) (diesel engine models)
- (A): Auto Start Stop warning light/Auto Start Stop OFF indicator light (yellow) (if equipped)
- (A): Auto Start Stop indicator light (green) (if equipped)

If any lights fail to illuminate, it indicates a burned-out bulb or a malfunction of the corresponding system.

We recommend that you consult your authorized SUBARU dealer for repair.

■ Seatbelt warning light and chime

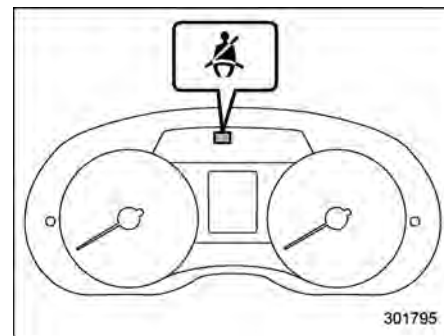


NOTE

If your seatbelt warning device does not operate as described below, it may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you have the device inspected and, if necessary, repaired by the nearest SUBARU dealer.

▼ Seatbelt warning for driver's seat

Your vehicle is equipped with a seatbelt warning device for the driver's seat.



Driver's warning light

This device causes the seatbelt warning light on the combination meter to illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to "ON" to remind the driver to wear the seatbelt.

If the vehicle is driven at a speed no higher than approximately 20 km/h (12.5 mph) with the driver's seatbelt not fastened, the warning light will illuminate continuously.

If the vehicle subsequently reaches a speed of approximately 20 km/h (12.5 mph) with the driver's seatbelt not fastened, the warning light will start a repeated cycle consisting of 5 seconds of flashing followed by 1 second of steady illumination. At the same time, a buzzer will start a repeated cycle consisting of

sounding for 5 seconds followed by a 1-second pause. If the seatbelt is fastened at this time, the warning light will turn off and the buzzer will stop sounding immediately.

This condition will continue for approximately 108 seconds. If the driver's seatbelt is still not fastened when the 108-second period has elapsed, the warning light will stop flashing and the buzzer will stop sounding. The warning light, however, will remain illuminated continuously unless the seatbelt is fastened.

▼ Seatbelt warning for front passenger's seat (if equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with a seatbelt warning device for the front passenger's seat.



Front passenger's warning light

With the ignition switch turned to the "ON" position, this device reminds the front passenger to fasten his/her seatbelt by illuminating a warning light as shown in the illustration.

If the vehicle is driven at a speed no higher than approximately 20 km/h (12.5 mph) with the front passenger's seatbelt not fastened, the warning light(s) corresponding to the unfastened seatbelt(s) will illuminate continuously.

If the vehicle subsequently reaches a speed of approximately 20 km/h (12.5

mph) with the front passenger's seatbelt not fastened, the warning light(s) will start a repeated cycle consisting of 5 seconds of flashing followed by 1 second of steady illumination.

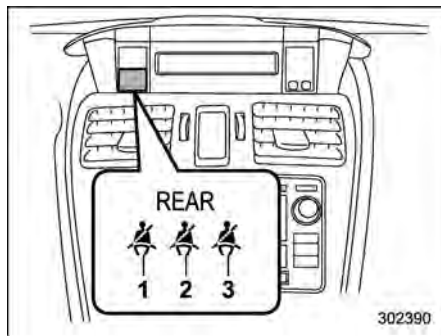
At the same time, a buzzer will start a repeated cycle consisting of sounding for 5 seconds followed by a 1-second pause. If either the driver's or front passenger's unfastened seatbelts is fastened at this time, the warning light corresponding to that seatbelt will immediately turn off but the buzzer will continue operating unless the remaining seatbelt is fastened.

NOTE

- If the driver's and front passenger's seatbelts are not fastened simultaneously (if one seatbelt is fastened significantly earlier or later than the other), the buzzer may sound longer (10 seconds maximum).
- The occupant detection system of the front passenger's seat detects if the seat is occupied by a passenger. However, if there is an object on the seat, the seatbelt warning system may be activated even the seat is not occupied.
- If you use a cushion on the front passenger's seat, there is the possibility that the occupant detection system cannot detect the passenger.

If the driver's seatbelt and/or the front passenger's seatbelt is still not fastened when the 108-second period has elapsed, the warning light(s) will stop flashing and the buzzer will stop sounding. The warning light(s), however, will remain illuminated continuously unless the corresponding seatbelt(s) is fastened.

■ Rear seatbelt indicator light and chime (if equipped)



- 1) Rear seat (left position)
- 2) Rear seat (center position)
- 3) Rear seat (right position)

This indicator light is located as shown in the illustration. It illuminates to show only the seating positions in which seatbelts have not been fastened.

■ SRS airbag system warning light



⚠ WARNING

If the warning light exhibits any of the following conditions, there may be a malfunction in the seatbelt pretensioners and/or SRS airbag system. We recommend that you have the system checked immediately by your nearest SUBARU dealer. Unless checked and properly repaired, the seatbelt pretensioners and/or SRS airbags will operate improperly (e.g. SRS airbags may inflate in a very minor collision or not inflate in a severe collision), which may increase the risk of injury.

- Flashing or flickering of the warning light
- No illumination of the warning light when the ignition switch is first turned to the "ON" position
- Continuous illumination of the warning light
- Illumination of the warning light while driving

■ Front passenger's frontal airbag ON and OFF indicators (if equipped)



ON / : Front passenger's frontal airbag ON indicator

OFF / : Front passenger's frontal airbag OFF indicator

The front passenger's frontal airbag ON and OFF indicators show you the status of the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag. When the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position, both the ON and OFF indicators illuminate for 6 seconds during which time the system is checked. Following the system check, both indicators turn off for 2 seconds. After that, one of the indicators illuminates depending on the status of the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag determined by the frontal airbag

– CONTINUED –

system monitoring.

If the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag is activated, the passenger's frontal airbag ON indicator will illuminate while the OFF indicator will remain off.

If the front passenger's SRS frontal airbag is deactivated, the passenger's frontal airbag ON indicator will remain off while the OFF indicator will illuminate.

With the ignition switch turned to the "ON" position, if both the ON and OFF indicators remain illuminated or off simultaneously even after the system check period, the system is malfunctioning. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer immediately for an inspection.

■ Malfunction indicator light (Check Engine light)



▼ Models equipped with OBD system

Vehicles sold in Europe are equipped with an enhanced on-board diagnostics system called OBD that monitors the performance of the vehicle's emission control system.

Vehicles sold in some countries outside Europe may be equipped with the OBD system. We recommend that you ask your SUBARU dealer to ascertain whether your vehicle has the OBD system.

The OBD system helps to protect the environment by ensuring that emissions are at acceptable levels for the life of the vehicle.

If the malfunction indicator light illuminates steadily or blinks while the engine is running, it may indicate that there is a problem or potential problem somewhere in the emission control system and that service is required. The OBD system also assists your service technician in properly diagnosing any malfunction.



CAUTION

If the malfunction indicator light illuminates while you are driving, we recommend that you have your vehicle checked/repaired by your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible. Continued vehicle operation without having the emission control system checked and repaired as necessary could cause serious damage, which may not be covered by your vehicle's warranty.

▽ If the light illuminates steadily

If the light illuminates steadily while driving or does not turn off after the engine starts, an emission control system malfunction has been detected.

We recommend that you have your vehicle checked by an authorized SUBARU dealer immediately.

▽ If the light is blinking

If the light is blinking while driving, an engine misfire condition has been detected which may damage the emission control system.

To prevent serious damage to the emission control system, you should do the following:

- Reduce vehicle speed.
- Avoid hard acceleration.
- Avoid steep uphill grades.
- Reduce the amount of cargo, if possible.
- Stop towing a trailer as soon as possible.

The malfunction indicator light may stop blinking and illuminate steadily after several driving trips. We recommend that you have your vehicle checked by an authorized SUBARU dealer immediately.

▼ Models NOT equipped with OBD system

If the malfunction indicator light illuminates when the engine is running, it may indicate that there is a problem somewhere in the engine control system.

If the light illuminates while driving or does not turn off after the engine starts, we recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer immediately.

■ Coolant temperature low indicator light/Coolant temperature high warning light

CAUTION

- After turning the ignition switch to the "ON" position, if this indicator light/warning light behaves under any of the following conditions, the electrical system may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer immediately for an inspection.
 - It remains blinking in RED.
 - It remains illuminated in RED for more than 2 seconds.
 - It remains blinking in RED and BLUE alternately.
- While driving, if this indicator light/warning light behaves under any of the following conditions, take the specified appropriate measure listed below.
 - Blinking or illuminated in RED:
Safely stop the vehicle as soon as possible, and refer to the emergency steps for the

engine overheating. Afterward, we recommend that you have the system checked by your nearest SUBARU dealer. Refer to "Engine overheating" 9-11.

- Blinking in RED and BLUE alternately:
The electrical system may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for an inspection.

This coolant temperature low indicator light/coolant temperature high warning light has the following three functions.

- Illumination in **BLUE** indicates insufficient warming up of the engine
- Blinking in **RED** indicates that the engine is close to overheating
- Illumination in **RED** indicates overheating condition of the engine

For the system check, this indicator light/warning light illuminates in **RED** for approximately 2 seconds when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position. After that, this indicator light/warning light changes to **BLUE** and maintains illumination in **BLUE**. This **BLUE** illuminated light turns off when the engine is warmed up

sufficiently.

If the engine coolant temperature increases over the specified range, the indicator light/warning light blinks in **RED**. At this time, the engine is close to overheating.

If the engine coolant temperature increases further, the indicator light/warning light illuminates in **RED** continuously. At this time, the engine may be overheating.

When the indicator light/warning light blinks in **RED** or illuminates in **RED**, safely stop the vehicle as soon as possible, and refer to the emergency steps for the engine overheating. Refer to "Engine overheating" 9-11. Afterward, we recommend that you have the system checked by your nearest SUBARU dealer.

Also, if the indicator light/warning light often blinks in **RED**, the electrical system may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for an inspection.

NOTE

If the engine is restarted after a certain driving condition, this indicator light/warning light may illuminate in RED. However, this is not a malfunction if the indicator light/warning light turns off

after a short time.

■ Charge warning light



If this light illuminates when the engine is running, it may indicate that the charging system is not working properly.

If the light illuminates while driving or does not turn off after the engine starts, stop the engine at the first safe opportunity and check the alternator belt. If the belt is loose, broken or if the belt is in good condition but the light remains illuminated, we recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer immediately.

■ Oil pressure warning light



If this light illuminates when the engine is running, it may indicate that the engine oil pressure is low and the lubricating system is not working properly.

If the light illuminates while driving or does not turn off after the engine starts, stop the engine at the first safe opportunity and check the engine oil level. If the oil level is low, add oil immediately. If the engine oil is at the proper level but the light remains illuminated, we recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer immediately.

For details about checking the oil level or adding the engine oil, refer to "Engine oil" 11-15.



CAUTION

Do not operate the engine with the oil pressure warning light on. This may cause serious engine damage.

■ Engine low oil level warning light



This light illuminates when the engine oil level decreases to the lower limit.

If the light illuminates while driving, park the vehicle in a safe and level location, and then check the engine oil level. When the engine oil level is not within the normal range, refill with engine oil as soon as possible. Refer to "Engine oil" 11-15.

If the light does not turn off after refilling the engine oil, or the light illuminates even though the engine oil level is within the normal range, we recommend that you have the vehicle checked by a SUBARU dealer.

NOTE

For models with Auto Start Stop system:

- The engine low oil level warning light will not turn off immediately even if you replace or add engine oil. It will turn off after the vehicle starts to move. Depending on the driving conditions and environment where the vehicle is driven, it may take a period of approximately 10 minutes for the light to turn off. If the light has still not turned off after 15 minutes have elapsed, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

- The engine low oil level warning light may illuminate temporarily in the following conditions because a low oil level may be detected as a result of significant oil movement in the engine.

- when the vehicle is considerably inclined on an uphill or steep slope
- when the vehicle has continuously accelerated and decelerated
- when the vehicle is continuously turned
- when the vehicle is driven on a road that alternates continuously between uphill and downhill

For models without Auto Start Stop system:

- The engine low oil level warning light turns off when the ignition switch is turned to the “LOCK”/“OFF” position. However, after the next time you turn on the engine, if the engine oil level has decreased to the lower limit, the warning light illuminates frequently while the engine is running.

- When the vehicle is considerably inclined on an uphill or steep slope, the warning light may illuminate temporarily due to the movement of engine oil in the engine.

■ AT OIL TEMP warning light (CVT models) AT OIL TEMP

If this light illuminates when the engine is running, it may indicate that the transmission fluid temperature is too hot.

If the light illuminates while driving, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe location and let the engine idle until the warning light turns off.

▼ Transmission control system warning

If the “AT OIL TEMP” warning light flashes after the engine has started, it may indicate that the transmission control

system is not working properly. We recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer for service immediately.

■ Rear differential oil temperature warning light (if equipped)

R.DIFF TEMP



CAUTION

Reduce the vehicle speed and park the vehicle in a safe location as soon as possible if the R.DIFF TEMP warning light illuminates. Sustained driving with this light on can cause the rear differential and other parts of the powertrain to be damaged.

If this light illuminates when the engine is running, it may indicate that the rear differential oil temperature is too hot.

If the light illuminates while driving, reduce vehicle speed and stop the vehicle in the nearest safe location. Park the vehicle for several minutes. After the light turns off, you can start driving.

If the light does not turn off, we recommend that you contact the nearest SUBARU dealer for service.

NOTE

- If the tire pressures are not correct and/or the tires are not all the same size and brand, the rear differential will be heavily loaded when the vehicle is driven, resulting in an abnormally high oil temperature.
- The rear differential oil will deteriorate if its temperature increases enough for the rear differential oil temperature warning light to illuminate. It is advisable to have the rear differential oil replaced as soon as possible.

■ ABS warning light



CAUTION

- If any of the following conditions occur, we recommend that you have the ABS system repaired at the first available opportunity by your SUBARU dealer.
 - The warning light does not illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position.
 - The warning light illuminates when the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position, but it does not turn off even when the vehicle speed ex-

ceeds approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

- The warning light illuminates during driving.
- When the warning light is on (and the brake system warning light is off), the ABS function shuts down. However, the conventional brake system continues to operate normally.

The ABS warning light illuminates together with the brake system warning light if the EBD system malfunctions. For further details of the EBD system malfunction warning, refer to “Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system warning” 3-22.

NOTE

If the warning light behavior is as shown in the following, the ABS system may be considered normal.

- The warning light illuminates when the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position and turns off approximately 2 seconds after the engine has started.
- The warning light illuminates right after the engine is started but turns off immediately, remaining off.
- The warning light remains illumi-

nated after the engine has been started, but it turns off when the vehicle speed reaches approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

- The warning light illuminates during driving, but it turns off immediately and remains off.

When driving with an insufficient battery voltage such as when the engine is jump started, the ABS warning light may illuminate. This is due to the low battery voltage and does not indicate a malfunction. When the battery becomes fully charged, the light will turn off.

■ Vehicle Dynamics Control warning light/ Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light



▼ Vehicle Dynamics Control warning light



CAUTION

The Vehicle Dynamics Control system provides its ABS control through the electrical circuit of the ABS system. Accordingly, if the ABS is inoperative, the Vehicle Dynamics

Control system becomes unable to provide ABS control. As a result, the Vehicle Dynamics Control system becomes inoperative, causing the warning light to illuminate. Although both the Vehicle Dynamics Control and ABS systems are inoperative in this case, the ordinary functions of the brake system are still available. You will be safe while driving with this condition, but drive carefully and we recommend that you have your vehicle checked at a SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

NOTE

- If the electrical circuit of the Vehicle Dynamics Control system itself malfunctions, the warning light only illuminates. At this time, the ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) remains fully operational.
- The warning light illuminates when the electronic control system of the ABS/Vehicle Dynamics Control system malfunctions.

The Vehicle Dynamics Control system is probably inoperative under any of the following conditions. We recommend that you have your vehicle checked at a SUBARU dealer immediately.

- The warning light does not illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position.
- The warning light illuminates while the vehicle is running.

NOTE

If the warning light behavior is as described in the following examples, the Vehicle Dynamics Control system may be considered normal.

- The warning light illuminates when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position and turns off approximately 2 seconds after the engine has started.
- The warning light illuminates right after the engine is started but turns off immediately and remains off.
- The warning light illuminates after the engine has started and turns off while the vehicle is subsequently being driven.
- The warning light illuminates during driving, but turns off immediately and remains off.
- The warning light illuminates when the engine has stalled and continues to illuminate after the engine has been restarted. However, it will turn off once the vehicle starts moving.

▼ Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light

The indicator light flashes during activation of the skid suppression function and during activation of the traction control function.

NOTE

- The light may remain illuminated for a short period of time after the engine has been started, especially in cold weather. This does not indicate the existence of a problem. The light should turn off as soon as the engine has warmed up.
- The indicator light illuminates when the engine has developed a malfunction and the malfunction indicator light/CHECK ENGINE warning light is on.

The Vehicle Dynamics Control system is probably malfunctioning under the following condition. We recommend that you have your vehicle checked at a SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

- The light does not turn off even after the lapse of several minutes (the engine has warmed up) after the engine has started.

Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light



The light illuminates when the Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch is pressed to deactivate the Vehicle Dynamics Control system.

The Vehicle Dynamics Control system is probably malfunctioning under any of the following conditions. We recommend that you have your vehicle checked at a SUBARU dealer immediately.

- The light does not illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position.
- The light does not turn off even after a period of approximately 2 seconds after the ignition switch has been turned to the “ON” position.

Brake system warning



WARNING

- **Driving with the brake system warning light on is dangerous. This indicates your brake system may not be working properly. If the light remains illuminated, we recommend that you have the**

brakes inspected by a SUBARU dealer immediately.

- **If at all in doubt about whether the brakes are operating properly, do not drive the vehicle. We recommend that you have your vehicle towed to the nearest SUBARU dealer for repair.**

This light has the following functions.

▼ Parking brake warning

The light illuminates with the parking brake applied while the ignition switch is in the “ON” position. It turns off when the parking brake is fully released.

▼ Brake fluid level warning

The light illuminates when the brake fluid level has dropped to near the “MIN” level of the brake fluid reservoir with the ignition switch in the “ON” position and with the parking brake fully released.

If the light should illuminate while driving (with the parking brake fully released and with the ignition switch positioned in “ON”), it could be an indication of leaking of brake fluid or worn brake pads. If this occurs, immediately stop the vehicle at the nearest safe place and check the brake fluid level. For details, refer to “Brake fluid”  11-27. If the fluid level is below the

“MIN” mark in the reservoir, do not drive the vehicle. We recommend that you have the vehicle towed to the nearest SUBARU dealer for repair. For details, refer to “Towing”  9-12.

▼ Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system warning

The brake system warning light also illuminates if a malfunction occurs in the EBD system. In that event, it illuminates together with the ABS warning light.

The EBD system may be malfunctioning if the brake system warning light and ABS warning light illuminate simultaneously during driving.

Even if the EBD system fails, the conventional braking system will still function. However, the rear wheels will be more prone to locking when the brakes are applied harder than usual and the vehicle’s motion may therefore become somewhat harder to control.

If the brake system warning light and ABS warning light illuminate simultaneously, take the following steps.

1. Stop the vehicle in the nearest safe, flat place.
2. Shut down the engine, apply the parking brake, and then restart it.
3. Release the parking brake. If both

warning lights turn off, the EBD system may be malfunctioning.

We recommend that you drive carefully to the nearest SUBARU dealer and have the system inspected.

4. If both warning lights illuminate again and remain illuminated after the engine has been restarted, shut down the engine again, apply the parking brake, and check the brake fluid level. For details, refer to "Brake fluid" 11-27.

5. If the brake fluid level is not below the "MIN" mark, the EBD system may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you drive carefully to the nearest SUBARU dealer and have the system inspected.

6. If the brake fluid level is below the "MIN" mark, DO NOT drive the vehicle. Instead, we recommend that you have the vehicle towed to the nearest SUBARU dealer for repair. For details, refer to "Towing" 9-12.

▼ Vacuum pump system warning (turbo petrol engine models)

This light illuminates when a malfunction is detected in the vacuum pump system.

NOTE

The vacuum pump system assists the boost pressure when driving at high altitudes while the engine is cold.

■ Low fuel warning light

The low fuel warning light illuminates when the tank is nearly empty, at approximately 9.0 liters (2.3 US gal, 1.9 Imp gal). It only operates when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position. When this light illuminates, fill the fuel tank immediately.

NOTE

This light does not turn off unless the tank is replenished up to an internal fuel quantity of approximately 17 liters (4.5 US gal, 3.7 Imp gal).



CAUTION

Promptly put fuel in the tank whenever the low fuel warning light illuminates. Engine misfires as a result of an empty tank could cause damage to the engine.

■ Windshield washer fluid warning light



This light illuminates when the fluid level in the windshield washer fluid tank decreases to the lower limit (approximately 1.1 US qt, 1.0 liter, 0.9 Imp qt).

■ Hill start assist warning light/Hill start assist OFF indicator light

▼ Hill start assist warning light

While the engine is running, if there are any malfunctions in the Hill start assist system, the warning light will illuminate.



WARNING

When the Hill start assist warning light illuminates, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected at an authorized SUBARU dealer.

▼ Hill start assist OFF indicator light

While the Hill start assist system is deactivated, the Hill start assist OFF indicator light illuminates continuously to inform the driver that the Hill start assist system is not operational.

■ Door open warning light



The warning light illuminates if any door or the rear gate is not fully closed. This function is effective even if the ignition switch is in the "LOCK"/"OFF" or "ACC" position, or the key is removed from the ignition switch.

Always make sure this light is not illuminated before you start to drive.

■ All-Wheel Drive warning light (CVT models) AWD



CAUTION

Continuing to drive with the AWD warning light flashing can damage the powertrain. If the AWD warning light starts to flash, promptly park in a safe place and check whether the tires have differing diameters and whether any of the tires has an excessively low inflation pressure.

NOTE

If the temporary spare tire is used, the AWD warning light may flash. Use of the temporary spare tire should therefore be restricted to the minimum time

necessary. Replace the temporary spare tire with a conventional tire as soon as possible.

This light flashes if the vehicle is driven with tires of different diameters fitted on its wheels or with the air pressure excessively low in any of its tires.

■ Power steering warning light (models with electric power steering)



While the engine is running, this warning light illuminates when a malfunction has been detected in the electric power steering system.



CAUTION

When the power steering warning light is illuminated, there may be more resistance when the steering wheel is operated. We recommend that you drive carefully to the nearest SUBARU dealer and have the vehicle inspected immediately.

NOTE

If the steering wheel is operated in the following ways, the power steering control system may temporarily limit the power assist in order to prevent the

system components, such as the control computer and drive motor, from overheating.

- The steering wheel is operated frequently and turned sharply while the vehicle is maneuvered at extremely low speeds, such as while frequently turning the steering wheel during parallel parking.
- The steering wheel remains in the fully turned position for a long period of time.

At this time, there will be more resistance when steering. However this is not a malfunction. Normal steering force will be restored after the steering wheel is not operated for a while and the power steering control system has an opportunity to cool down. However, if the power steering is operated in a non-standard way which causes power assist limitation to occur too frequently, this may result in a malfunction of the power steering control system.

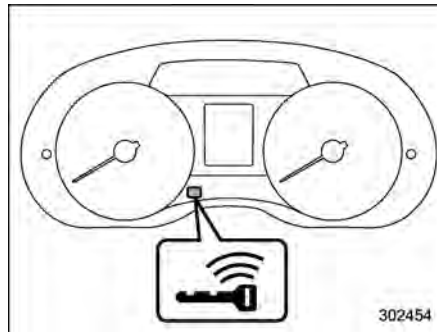
■ Automatic headlight beam leveler warning light (models with HID headlights)



This light illuminates when the automatic headlight beam leveler does not operate normally.

If this light illuminates while driving or does not turn off approximately 3 seconds after turning the ignition switch to the "ON" position, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected at your SUBARU dealer.

■ Warning chimes and warning light of the keyless access with push-button start system (if equipped)



Access key warning light

The keyless access with push-button start system sounds a warning chime and flashes the access key warning light on the combination meter in order to minimize improper operations and help protect your vehicle from theft.

When the warning chime sounds and/or the warning light flashes, take the appropriate action.



WARNING

Never drive the vehicle if the indicator on the push-button ignition

switch is flashing in green when starting the engine. This indicates the status that the steering wheel is not released and could result in an accident involving serious injury or death.



CAUTION

- When starting the engine again after the operation indicator on the push-button ignition switch flashes in green, if the operation indicator is still flashing in green, there could be a steering lock malfunction. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.
- When the operation indicator on the push-button ignition switch flashes in orange, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer immediately.

NOTE

- Even when the access key is within the operating ranges inside the vehicle, the access key warning for engine start may be provided depending on the status of the access key and the environmental conditions.

3-26 *Instruments and controls/Warning and indicator lights*

- When the access key is taken out of the vehicle through an open window, the access key takeout warning or passenger access key takeout warning will not be provided.

▼ List of warnings

Inside warning chime	Outside warning chime	Access key warning light on meter	Operation indicator on push-button ignition switch	Status	Action
Ding, ding ... (intermittent)	—	—	—	The driver's door was opened while the push-button ignition switch is "ACC" (in CVT models, when the select lever is in the "P" position).	Switch the push-button ignition switch to "OFF", or close the driver's door. *When exiting the vehicle, be sure to switch the push-button ignition switch to "OFF".
				The push-button ignition switch was switched to "OFF" while the driver's door is open.	Close the driver's door.
Ding	Short beep (2 seconds)	—	—	Lockout warning: An attempt was made to lock all doors while the access key is left inside the vehicle.	Take out the access key from the vehicle, and lock the doors. *The doors cannot be locked while the access key is inside the vehicle. *A chirp sound will be heard, and all doors will be unlocked.
—	Short beep (2 seconds)	—	—	Access key lock-in warning: The door lock sensor was touched while the push-button ignition switch is "OFF" and the access key is inside the vehicle.	Take out the access key from the vehicle, and lock the doors. *If the access key is inside the vehicle, the doors cannot be locked.
—	Beep, beep ... (5 beeps)	—	—	Door ajar warning: The door lock sensor is touched while the push-button ignition switch is in the "OFF" position and one of the doors including the rear gate is opened.	Close the doors securely and lock them. *If one of the doors including the rear gate is opened, the doors cannot be locked.

3-28 Instruments and controls/Warning and indicator lights

Inside warning chime	Outside warning chime	Access key warning light on meter	Operation indicator on push-button ignition switch	Status	Action
Ding	Long beep (60 seconds max.)	—	—	Power warning: The door lock sensor was touched while carrying the access key and the push-button ignition switch is in a position other than "OFF" (in CVT models, when the select lever is in the "P" position).	Return the access key inside the vehicle, or switch the push-button ignition switch to "OFF". *If the push-button ignition switch is not switched to "OFF", the doors cannot be locked.
Ding, ding ... (7 seconds)	—	 (Flashes 1 sec. intermittent)	—	Access key warning: The vehicle was driven while the access key is not inside the vehicle.	Carry the access key, and drive the vehicle.
Ding	—	 (Flashes 1 sec. intermittent)	—	Access key warning for engine start: The push-button ignition switch was pressed while the access key is not inside the vehicle.	Carry the access key, and press the push-button ignition switch.
Ding	Beep, beep, beep (3 beeps)	 (Flashes 1 sec. intermittent)	—	Access key takeout warning: The driver exited the vehicle with the access key and closed the driver's door while the push-button ignition switch is in a position other than "OFF" (in CVT models, when the select lever is in the "P" position).	Switch the push-button ignition switch to "OFF", and get out of the vehicle.
Ding	Beep, beep, beep (3 beeps)	 (Flashes 1 sec. intermittent)	—	Passenger access key takeout warning: A fellow passenger exited the vehicle with the access key and closed a door other than the driver's door while the push-button ignition switch is in a position other than "OFF".	Return the access key to inside the vehicle, or switch the push-button ignition switch to "OFF".

Inside warning chime	Outside warning chime	Access key warning light on meter	Operation indicator on push-button ignition switch	Status	Action
Long beep (continuous)	Long beep (continuous)	 (Flashes 1 sec. intermittent)	—	The driver exited the vehicle with the access key and closed the driver's door while the push-button ignition switch is in a position other than "OFF" (all models) and the select lever is in a position other than the "P" position (CVT models).	Shift the select lever to the "P" position (CVT models), switch the push-button ignition switch to "OFF" (all models) and exit the vehicle.
Long beep (continuous)	—	—	—	Select lever position warning (CVT models): The driver's door was opened while the push-button ignition switch is in a position other than "OFF" and the select lever is in a position other than the "P" position.	Shift the select lever to the "P" position, switch the push-button ignition switch to "OFF" and exit the vehicle.
Ding	—	—	—	The battery of the access key is low.	Replace the battery of the access key.
Ding	—	—	Flashes in green (15 seconds max.)	Steering lock warning: The engine start procedure was performed, but the steering is still locked.	While turning the steering wheel right and left lightly, depress the brake pedal and press the push-button ignition switch.
Ding	—	—	Flashes in orange	System malfunction warning: A malfunction was detected in the power system or steering lock.	We recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer immediately and have the vehicle inspected.

■ Immobilizer indicator light



This light begins flashing under any of the following conditions.

For models with “keyless access with push-button start system”:

- Immediately after the push-button ignition switch is turned to the “OFF” position.
- Immediately after the driver’s door is opened or closed when the push-button ignition switch is in the “ON” or “ACC” position.

For models without “keyless access with push-button start system”:

- Approximately 60 seconds after the ignition switch is turned from the “ON” position to the “ACC” or “LOCK” position.
- Immediately after the key is pulled out.

If the indicator light does not blink, it may indicate that immobilizer system is not working properly. We recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer immediately.

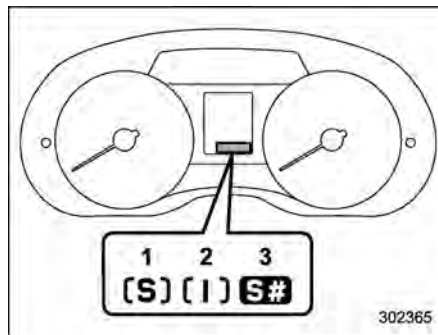
In case an unauthorized key is used, the immobilizer indicator light illuminates.

NOTE

Even if the immobilizer indicator light flashes irregularly or its fuse blows (the

light does not flash if its fuse is blown), the immobilizer system will function normally.

■ SI-DRIVE indicator light (if equipped)

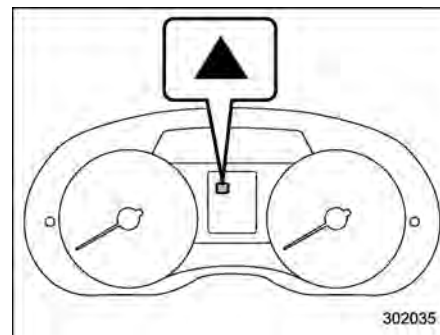


- 1) Sport (S) mode
- 2) Intelligent (I) mode
- 3) Sport Sharp (S#) mode (if equipped)

This light indicates the current SI-DRIVE mode.

For details of SI-DRIVE mode, refer to “SI-DRIVE” 7-22.

■ Shift-up indicator light (MT models)

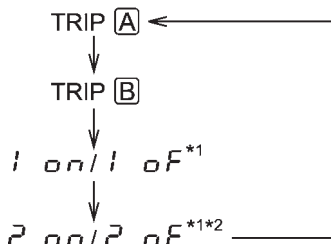


While driving, this indicator light illuminates and informs the driver about the upshift timing for fuel-efficient driving.

The shift-up indicator can be activated or deactivated by performing the following procedure.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the “LOCK”/“OFF” or “ACC” position.
2. Press the trip knob to show “2 00” or “2 0F” on the trip meter display.

The display can be switched as shown in the following sequence by pressing the trip knob.



*1: They cannot be displayed when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.

*2: MT models only

3. To change the current setting, press the trip knob for at least 2 seconds.

2 on : Activated

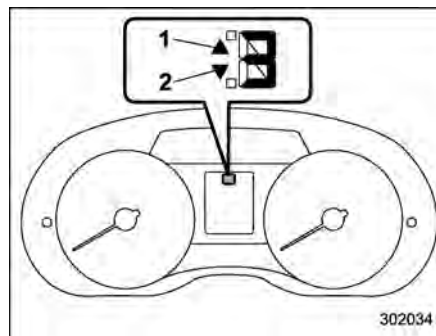
2 of : Deactivated

NOTE

• The initial setting for the shift-up indicator has been set for activation "2 on" at the time of shipment from the factory.

• It is not possible to change the setting of the shift-up indicator when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position. Change the setting when the ignition switch is in the "LOCK"/"OFF" or "ACC" position.

Select lever/gear position indicator (CVT models)



- 1) Upshift indicator
- 2) Downshift indicator

This indicator shows the position of the select lever.

For models with manual mode, when the manual mode is selected, the gear position indicator (which shows the current gear selection) and the upshift/downshift indicator light up. Refer to "Selection of manual mode" 7-19.

Turn signal indicator lights

These lights show the operation of the turn signal or lane change signal.

If the indicator lights do not blink or blink rapidly, the turn signal bulb may be burned out. Replace the bulb as soon as possible. Refer to "Front turn signal light and position light" 11-49 or "Rear combination lights" 11-52.

High beam indicator light



This light shows that the headlights are in the high beam mode.

This indicator light also illuminates when the headlight flasher is operated.

Cruise control indicator light (if equipped)



This light illuminates when the cruise control main button is pressed to activate the cruise control function.



CAUTION

If the malfunction indicator light (Check Engine light) illuminates, the cruise control indicator light flashes at the same time. At this time, avoid driving at high speed and we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected at a SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

NOTE

If this indicator light does not illuminate even when you press the cruise control main button, the cruise control system may not operate properly. We recommend that you have your vehicle checked by your nearest SUBARU dealer.

■ Cruise control set indicator light (if equipped)



This light illuminates when vehicle speed has been set to use the cruise control function.

■ Headlight indicator light (if equipped)



This indicator light illuminates under the following conditions.

- when the light switch is turned to the “ ” or “ ” position (except Australia models)
- When the light switch is in the “ ” or “ ” position (Australia models)
- when the light control switch is in the “AUTO” position and the headlights illuminate automatically (models with auto on/off headlights)

■ Front fog light indicator light (if equipped)



This indicator light illuminates while the front fog lights are illuminated.

■ Rear fog light indicator light (if equipped)



This indicator light illuminates while the rear fog light is illuminated.

■ X mode indicator light (if equipped)



This light illuminates while the X mode is activated. It will turn off when the X mode is deactivated.

■ Hill descent control indicator light (if equipped)



This indicator illuminates while the hill descent control function is in standby. It will flash while the hill descent control function is operating. It will turn off when the hill descent control function is not available.

■ Fuel filter warning light (diesel engine models)



This warning light illuminates when the

amount of accumulated water in the fuel filter has reached the specified level. If this warning light illuminates, we recommend that you have your vehicle checked at a SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.



CAUTION

Never drive the vehicle when the warning light is illuminated. Continuing to drive while water has accumulated in the fuel filter will damage the fuel injection pump.

■ Preheating indicator light (diesel engine models)



The preheating indicator light illuminates when the ignition switch is turned to the “ON” position and turns off after the engine has sufficiently preheated (a few seconds later).

NOTE

- When the weather is cold outside, the preheating indicator light remains illuminated a little longer than usual.
- For models without push-button start system, start the engine after the preheating indicator light has turned off.

- For models with push-button start system, the engine will not start until the preheating indicator light has turned off.

■ Diesel particulate filter warning light (diesel engine models)

▼ When diesel particulate filter warning light illuminates

The diesel particulate filter warning light illuminates when the filter is not able to automatically burn the soot and the accumulated particulate matter exceeds the specified limit.

When the diesel particulate filter warning light illuminates, drive the vehicle under the following conditions after the engine has been warmed up completely.

- Engine speed: 1,800 to 2,500 rpm
- Vehicle speed: 60 km/h (37 mph) or faster is preferred
- Driving time for burn treatment: 15 minutes or more

NOTE

- Do not accelerate rapidly. Accelerate the vehicle according to the upshift timing shown in the shift-up indicator light. During regeneration of the diesel

particulate filter, the shift-up indicator will prompt the driver to accelerate to the engine speed necessary for regeneration. For details about the shift-up indicator light, refer to “Shift-up indicator light (MT models)”  3-30.

- If it is difficult to maintain all these conditions, maintaining at least the specified engine speed will have some effect for burning soot.

Driving under these conditions will increase the inside temperature of the filter and burn the accumulated soot to eliminate it. The warning light turns off when the soot is eliminated.



WARNING

Even if the diesel particulate filter warning light illuminates, continuing to drive does not damage the engine and diesel particulate filter immediately. Safely drive the vehicle according to all road laws and the traffic conditions. Otherwise, it may cause an accident or traffic violation.

NOTE

While the soot is burning in the diesel particulate filter, the driveability, engine revolutions, engine sound and smell of

emission gas may change.

▼ When diesel particulate filter warning light flashes

When the diesel particulate filter warning light flashes, we recommend that you consult the nearest SUBARU dealer for an immediate inspection.



CAUTION

If you continue to drive the vehicle while the diesel particulate filter warning light is illuminated, the warning light will begin to flash. In this case, we recommend that you consult the nearest SUBARU dealer for an immediate inspection. Otherwise, the engine and diesel particulate filter may be damaged.

■ Over-rev warning light (yellow) (diesel engine models)

If engine over-revving is likely to occur, a buzzer will sound and the over-rev warning light on the combination meter will flash in yellow. For more details, refer to “Over-revving warning (diesel engine models)”  7-15.

■ Auto Start Stop warning light/Auto Start Stop OFF indicator light (yellow) (if equipped)

▼ Auto Start Stop warning light

CAUTION

- If the Auto Start Stop warning light is flashing, there may be a malfunction in the Auto Start Stop system. We recommend that you have your vehicle inspected at a SUBARU authorized dealer as soon as possible.
- If the Auto Start Stop warning light is illuminated at any time other than in the following cases, and will not turn off even if the Auto Start Stop OFF switch is pushed and held, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected at a SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

The Auto Start Stop warning light will illuminate in yellow if either of the following operations is performed when the engine has been temporarily stopped by the Auto Start Stop system.

- the engine hood is opened
- the driver's seatbelt is unfastened
- the driver's door is opened

In these cases, to ensure safety, the engine will not be automatically restarted, even if the following operations are performed. Use normal operation to restart the engine.

- the brake pedal is released (CVT models)
- the clutch pedal is fully depressed (MT models)

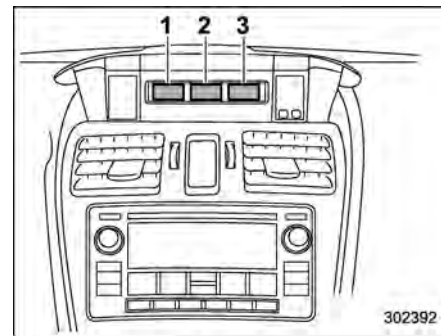
▼ Auto Start Stop OFF indicator light

This light will illuminate in yellow when the Auto Start Stop OFF switch is pressed to prevent the Auto Start Stop system from operating. It will turn off when the Auto Start Stop OFF switch is pressed once more to enable operation of the Auto Start Stop system.

■ Auto Start Stop indicator light (green) (if equipped)

This indicator light illuminates in green when the engine has been temporarily stopped by the Auto Start Stop system. It will turn off when the engine is restarted.

Information display (if equipped)

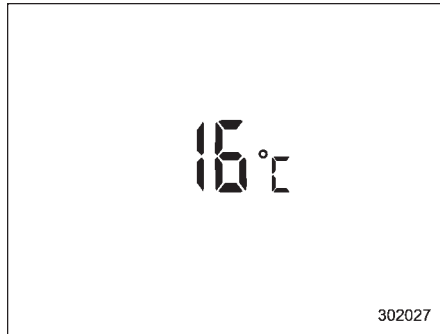


- 1) Outside temperature indicator
- 2) Driving information display
- 3) Clock

With the ignition switch in the "ACC" position, the clock appears on the display.

With the ignition switch in the "ON" position, the outside temperature indicator, driving information display and clock all appear on the display.

■ Outside temperature indicator

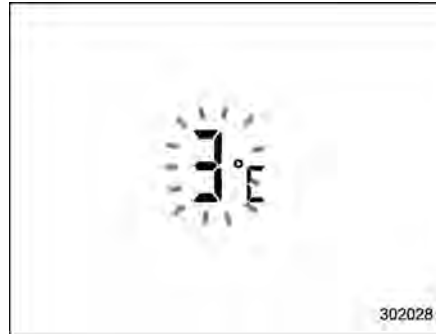


The outside temperature indicator shows the outside temperature within a range from -40 to 50°C.

The indicator can give a false reading under any of the following conditions.

- When there is too much sun.
- During idling; while running at low speeds in a traffic jam; when the engine is restarted immediately following a shut-down.
- When the actual outside temperature falls outside the specified indicator range.

▼ Road surface freeze warning indication



When the outside temperature drops to 3°C (37°F) or lower, the temperature indication flashes to show that the road surface may be frozen.

If the outside temperature drops to 3°C (37°F) or lower while the display is giving an indication other than the outside temperature, the display switches to the outside temperature indication and flashes for 5 seconds before returning to its original indication.

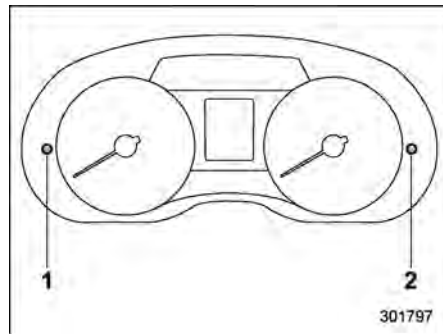
If the display is already indicating an outside temperature of 3°C (37°F) or lower when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position, the indication does not flash.

NOTE

- The outside temperature indicator shows the temperature around the sensor. Therefore, the temperature indication may differ from the actual outside air temperature.
- The road surface freeze warning indication should be treated only as a guide. Be sure to check the condition of the road surface before driving.
- After the road surface freeze warning has already appeared on the display, the warning will not appear again even if the outside temperature drops to 3°C (37°F) or lower until once the outside temperature has increased to 5°C (41°F) or more before that time.

■ Driving information display

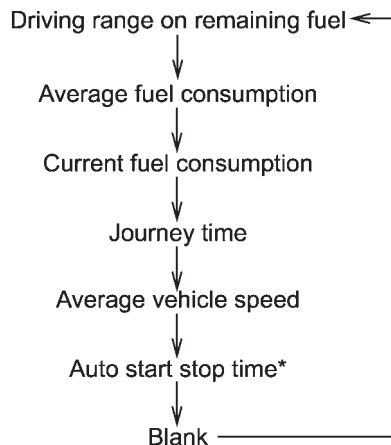
▼ Display selection



Information display selection knob

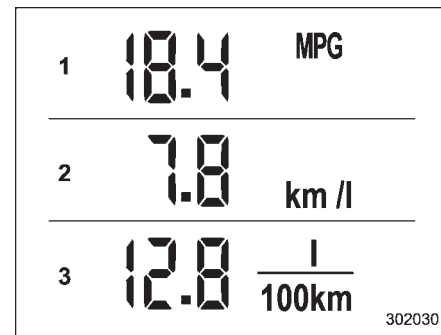
- 1) Right-hand drive models
- 2) Left-hand drive models

With the ignition switch in the "ON" position, each successive press of the information display selection knob toggles the display in the following sequence.



*: Models with Auto Start Stop system only

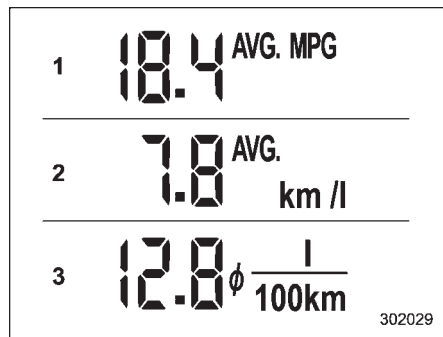
▼ Current fuel consumption



- 1) Type A
- 2) Type B
- 3) Type C

This display shows the rate of fuel consumption at the present moment.

▼ Average fuel consumption



- 1) Type A
- 2) Type B
- 3) Type C

This display shows the average rate of fuel consumption since the trip meter was last reset.

Pressing the trip knob toggles the display between the average fuel consumption corresponding to the A trip meter mileage and the average fuel consumption corresponding to the B trip meter mileage.

When either of the trip meter mileage is reset, the corresponding average fuel consumption value is also reset.

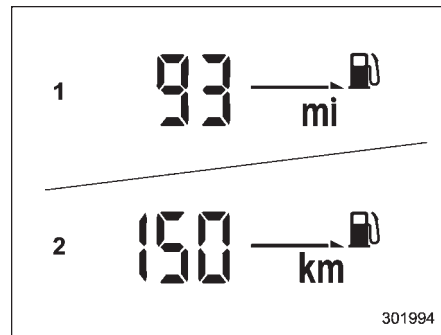
NOTE

- The indicated values vary in accordance with changes in the vehicle's

running conditions. Also, the indicated values may differ slightly from the actual values and should thus be treated only as a guide.

- When either trip meter mileage is reset, the average fuel consumption corresponding to that trip meter is not shown until the vehicle has subsequently covered a distance of 1 km (or 1 mile).

▼ Driving range on remaining fuel

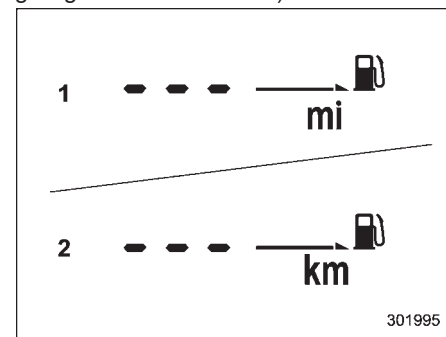


- 1) U.K. models
- 2) Except U.K. models

The driving range indicates the distance that can be driven taking into account the amount of fuel remaining in the tank and the average rate of fuel consumption.

When the low fuel warning light illumi-

nates, the driving range display flashes for 5 seconds. (The display first switches to the driving range display if it was originally giving some other value.)



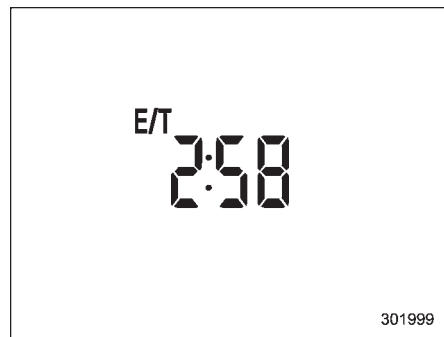
- 1) U.K. models
- 2) Except U.K. models

If the driving range is shown as “---”, there is only a tiny amount of fuel left in the tank. You must refuel the vehicle immediately.

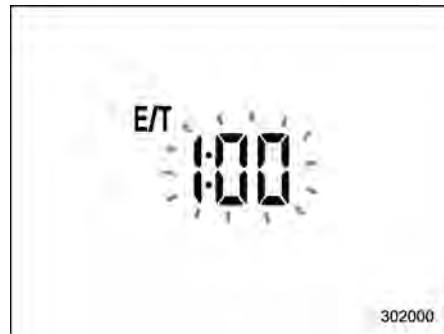
NOTE

The driving range on remaining fuel is only a guide. The indicated value may differ from the actual driving range on remaining fuel, so you must immediately fill the tank when the low fuel warning light illuminates.

▼ Journey time



The journey time shows the time that has elapsed since the ignition switch was turned to the "START" position.



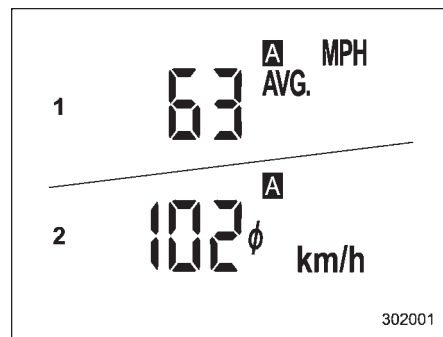
The journey time indication flashes each time a complete hour has elapsed. If the

display is giving a reading other than the journey time, the display switches to the journey time, flashes for 5 seconds, and returns to its original reading each time a complete hour has elapsed.

NOTE

The journey time is reset when the ignition switch is turned to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position. It is also reset if the ignition switch is turned to the "LOCK"/"OFF" or "ACC" position prior to restarting of the engine.

▼ Average vehicle speed



- 1) U.K. models
- 2) Except U.K. models

This display shows the average vehicle speed since the trip meter was last reset.

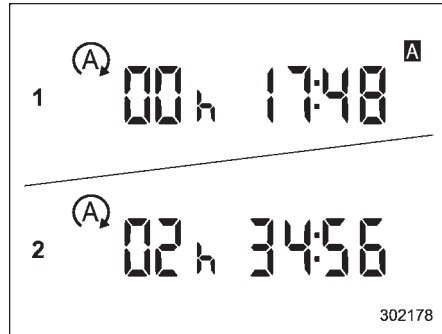
Pressing the trip knob toggles the display between the average vehicle speed corresponding to the A trip meter mileage and the average vehicle speed corresponding to the B trip meter mileage.

When either of the trip meter displays is reset, the corresponding average vehicle speed value is also reset.

NOTE

When either trip meter display is reset, the average vehicle speed corresponding to that trip meter display is not shown until the vehicle has subsequently covered a distance of 1 km (or 1 mile).

▼ **Auto Start Stop time (models with Auto Start Stop system)**



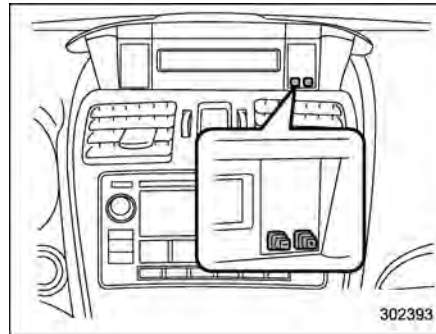
- 1) Total time in conjunction with the trip meter
- 2) Total time in conjunction with the ignition switch

This display shows the total time that the engine was stopped by the Auto Start Stop system in the following ways.

Total time in conjunction with the trip meter: Displays the total time that the engine was stopped by the Auto Start Stop system, from the last time the currently displayed trip meter was reset until the current time. By pressing the trip meter knob, you can toggle the display between the time the engine was stopped for trip A and the time the engine was stopped for trip B.

Total time in conjunction with the ignition switch: Displays the total time that the engine was stopped by the Auto Start Stop system, from the time when the ignition switch was turned to the "ON" position to the current time.

Perform the following operation to toggle the display between the total time in conjunction with the trip meter and the total time in conjunction with the ignition switch.



1. Press and hold the "+" button located on the side of the information display. The stopped time will then flash.
2. Within 5 seconds after the stopped time starts flashing, press and hold the "-" button located on the side of the information display. The display will then change

and after flashing for 3 seconds, the stopped time selected will be displayed.

3. Each time the "-" button is pressed and held during the 3 seconds that the display is flashing, the display will change and flash for 3 seconds. If the "-" button is not pressed and held during the 3 second period that the display is flashing, the stopped time selected will be displayed.

▼ **X mode indicator (if equipped)**



This indicator will be shown while the X mode is activated. It will turn off when the X mode is deactivated.

▼ **Turn off display of driving information display**

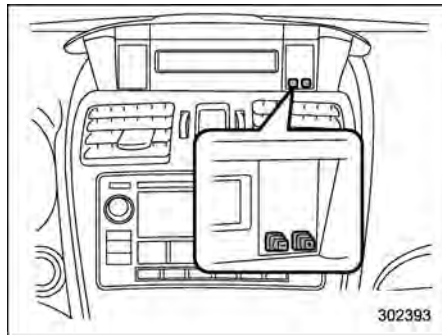
The driving information display can be turned off.

To turn off the display, turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position and press and hold the "+" button adjacent to the clock. Then, the driving information display and the clock will blink for 3 seconds to notify you that the driving information display has been turned off. To restore the display, once again press and hold the "+" button.

NOTE

- The initial setting of the driving information display has been set to operational at the time of shipment from the factory.
- The average fuel consumption and average vehicle speed are calculated even while the driving information display has been turned off.
- Even if you turn off the driving information display, the display will automatically turn on when the battery voltage is disconnected and then re-connected for battery replacement or fuse replacement.

■ Clock



To adjust the time shown by the clock, press the “+” button or the “-” button. If

you press the “+” button, the indicated time will change in one-minute increments. If you press the “-” button, the indicated time will change in one-minute decrements. If you keep the button pressed, the rate at which the indicated time changes will speed up.

The clock can be set to 12-hour or 24-hour clock displays. Perform the following procedure to switch the display format.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the “LOCK”/“OFF” position.
2. Press and hold the “-” button that is located near the clock display. The clock display will then start to flash for 5 seconds.
3. While the clock display is flashing, press and hold the “+” button. The clock format will then change.
4. The clock display will continue to flash for approximately 3 seconds to inform you that the clock display has been changed. If you want to change the clock display again, press and hold the “+” button while the clock display is flashing.

Multi function display (if equipped)



WARNING

Always pay adequate attention to safe driving when operating the multi function display while the vehicle is in motion. When operation of the multi function display is disturbing your awareness and ability to concentrate on driving, stop the vehicle in a safe place before performing operations on the screen. Also, do not concentrate on the display while driving. Doing so may cause you to look away from the road and could result in an accident.

The multi function display has the following functions.

Description	Page
Displays useful messages, such as warning information, etc.	3-44
Displays basic screens (e.g. fuel consumption screen, etc.)	3-44
Sets and adjusts maintenance notification	3-74
Registers driving history	3-77
Sets and customizes car operation	3-78

Also, the multi function display can also be used to set and initialize the multi function display itself.

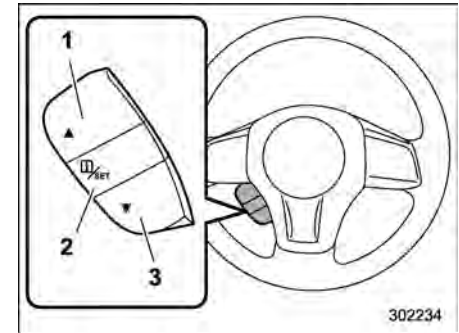


Multi function display

- 1) Outside temperature indicator
- 2) Information reminder
- 3) Top display (For the display setting, refer to "Top display setting" 3-66.)
- 4) Clock
- 5) Driving information display (For the displayed contents, refer to "Basic screens"

3-44.)

Basic operation



Control switch

- 1) Up (select)
- 2) Set (enter)
- 3) Down (select)

By operating "▲" or "▼" of the control switch, the screens and selection items can be switched. When the "i/SET" switch is pulled toward you, the item can be selected and set.

■ Welcome screen

When the door is unlocked and the driver's door is opened, the welcome screen will appear for a short time.



NOTE

- The welcome screen will disappear when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position while the welcome screen is displayed.
- If any of the doors (including the rear gate) is opened while the welcome screen is displayed, the door ajar warning will appear.
- The welcome screen can be set to on or off. For details, refer to "Bypass screen setting" 3-72.
- For a certain period of time after the welcome screen has once appeared, it may not appear again even when the driver's door is opened again. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ Ending screen

If the ignition switch is turned to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position, one of the following screens will be displayed as the ending screen before the screen turns off.

- If "Eco Summary" is set to "Off" in the "Bypass screen setting": The "Goodbye" screen will be displayed.
- If "Eco Summary" is set to "On" in the "Bypass screen setting": The "Fuel consumption results screen" will be displayed.

For details about the bypass screen setting, refer to "Bypass screen setting" 3-72.

• "Goodbye" screen



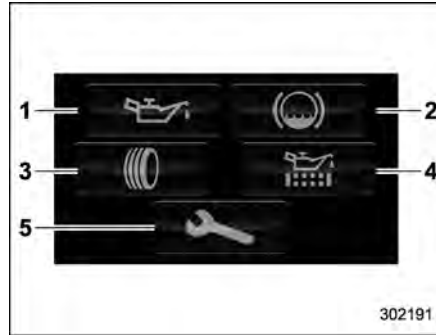
● Fuel consumption results screen



- 1) The average fuel consumption for the entire driving distance, from when the ignition switch was turned to the "ON" position to when it was turned to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position.
- 2) The average fuel consumption for the driving interval displayed on the trip meter at the point when the ignition switch was turned to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position.
- 3) Models with Auto Start Stop system: The total amount of time the engine was stopped by means of the Auto Stop system. It is calculated from when the ignition switch was turned to the "ON" position to when the ignition switch was turned to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position.

■ Self-check screen

When the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position, the vehicle self-check will be performed. The screens corresponding to the following items will appear one after another for several seconds each.



- 1) Engine oil: Checks the interval of engine oil replacement.
- 2) Brake fluid: Checks the level of brake fluid.
- 3) Tires: Checks the interval of tire rotation.
- 4) Oil filter: Checks the interval of oil filter replacement.
- 5) Inspection and maintenance: Checks the interval of inspection and maintenance.

When the checks are performed, the color of the icon corresponding to the checked item will turn green.

If there is no warning message, the self-

check will be completed without notification.



Example of notification

If there is a warning message or a maintenance notification, the color of the icon corresponding to the item will turn yellow and the warning message or the maintenance notification will be displayed. Take the appropriate actions based on the messages indicated.

NOTE

- The self-check screen can be set to on or off. For details, refer to "On/Off setting" 3-75.
- After performing the maintenance, change the setting of the corresponding maintenance item. For details, refer to "Maintenance settings" 3-74.

- The maintenance notification screen will be displayed under either of the following conditions.

- The period of time remaining until the registered notification date is 15 days or less.
- The total driving distance remaining until the registered notification distance is approximately 500 km (311 miles) or less.

- The maintenance notification screen will be displayed until either of the following conditions is satisfied.

- The period of time passed after the registered notification date is 15 days or more.
- The total distance driven after the registered notification distance is approximately 500 km (311 miles) or more.

■ Interruption screen



Warning information (display example)

Useful messages, such as reminder information, vehicle information, warning information, etc. may interrupt the current screen and appear on the display accompanied by a beep. Take proper action according to the message.

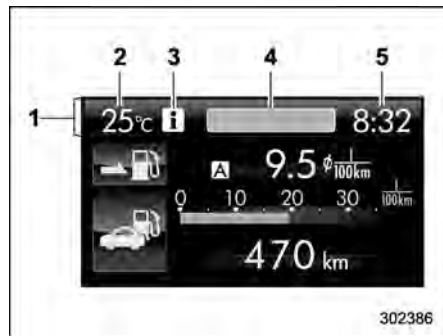
The warning screen will return to the original screen after a few seconds. If the warning screen can be displayed again, an information reminder "I" will appear on the upper left part of the display. To recall the message marked with "I" on the display, pull the "I/SET" switch on the steering wheel toward you.

■ Basic screens

These are the basic screens of the multi function display.

Item	Page
Information bar	3-45
Fuel consumption screen	3-46
ECO gauge screen	3-46
ECO history screen	3-47
Auto Start Stop system screen (if equipped)	3-47
Vehicle activation status screen	3-47
EyeSight screen (models with EyeSight system)	3-49
Triple meter screen	3-49
Guidance screen	3-50
Clock/calendar screen	3-50
Audio screen (if equipped)	3-51

By operating the "▲" or "▼" switch on the steering wheel, you can switch the screen that is always displayed. Also, when the "I/SET" switch is pulled and held, the selection screen can be displayed. For details about the selection screen, refer to "Selection screen" 3-53.

▼ **Information bar**

- 1) Information bar
- 2) Outside temperature indicator
- 3) Information reminder
- 4) Top display
- 5) Clock

While the ignition switch is in the “ACC” or “ON” position, the outside temperature indicator, clock, etc. will be shown on the information bar.

▼ **Outside temperature indicator**

This displays the outside temperature between -40°C (-40°F) and 50°C (122°F).



Icy road surface warning screen

When the outside temperature becomes 3°C (37°F) or less, the icy road surface warning screen interrupts to inform the driver that the road surface may be frozen.

NOTE

- **The outside temperature indicator shows the temperature around the sensor. Therefore, the temperature indication may differ from the actual outside air temperature.**
- **The icy road surface warning screen should be treated only as a guide. Be sure to check the condition of the road surface before driving.**
- **Once the icy road surface warning screen is displayed, it will not be displayed again unless the ignition**

switch is turned to the “ACC” or “ON” position after it has been turned to “LOCK”/“OFF” position.

▼ **Information reminder**

The screen returns to the original screen several seconds after the interruption screen has been displayed. If the interruption screen can be displayed once more even after the original screen has appeared, an information reminder should be displayed. For details about the interruption screen, refer to “Multi function display” 3-40.

▼ **Top display**

One of the following items can be displayed on the top display.

- Average fuel consumption corresponding to the driving distance of each trip meter
- Current fuel consumption (This may not be displayed when driving in a low speed.)
- Driving range on remaining fuel

For details about the setting of the top display, refer to “Top display setting” 3-66.

NOTE

The driving range on the remaining fuel is calculated using the average fuel consumption of the last 30 km (19 miles) driven. This value may be different from the values calculated using the average fuel consumption corresponding to the driving distance of each trip meter or the current fuel consumption.

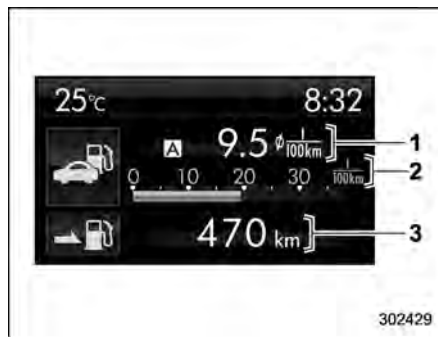
▽ Clock

The clock can be displayed in either 12-hour display or 24-hour display. For details about the setting, refer to “Current date and time setting” 3-55.

NOTE

If the vehicle battery is disconnected, the clock shown in the information bar will be reset. Set the time again after the vehicle battery is connected. For details about the setting, refer to “Top display setting” 3-66.

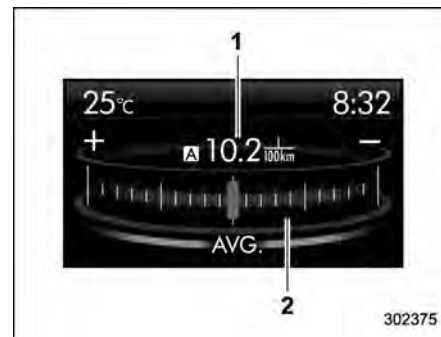
▼ Fuel consumption screen



- 1) Average fuel consumption corresponding to the driving distance of each trip meter
- 2) Current fuel consumption
- 3) Driving range on remaining fuel

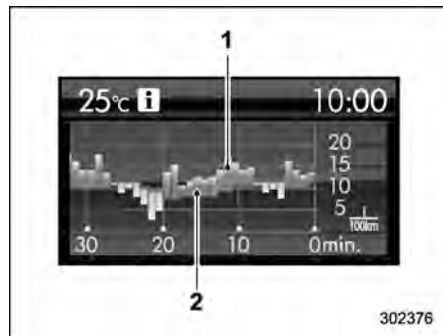
The displayed location can be customized. For details, refer to “Fuel consumption screen setting” 3-67.

▼ ECO gauge screen



- 1) Average fuel consumption corresponding to the driving distance of each trip meter
- 2) ECO gauge

The gauge pointer shows the difference between the current fuel consumption and the average fuel consumption that is displayed on the center part of the screen. If the gauge pointer moves toward the green side, this indicates better fuel efficiency.

▼ ECO history screen

- 1) Average fuel consumption per unit time (bar graph)
- 2) Average fuel consumption corresponding to the driving distance of each trip meter (red line)

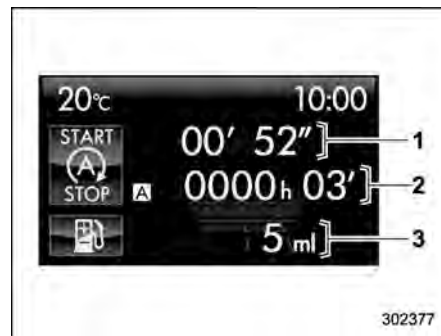
This screen displays the fuel economy history for the vehicle using a bar graph.

The horizontal scale represents the past time range and the vertical scale represents the fuel consumption. The green bars show driving with good fuel economy and the yellow bars show driving with poor fuel economy.

The time range of the history can be set. The width of the bar graph is adjusted as follows depending on the set time range.

Time range	Width of bar graph
30 minutes	1 minute
60 minutes	2 minutes
120 minutes	4 minutes

For details about the setting, refer to "Economy history setting" 3-68.

▼ Auto Start Stop system screen (if equipped)

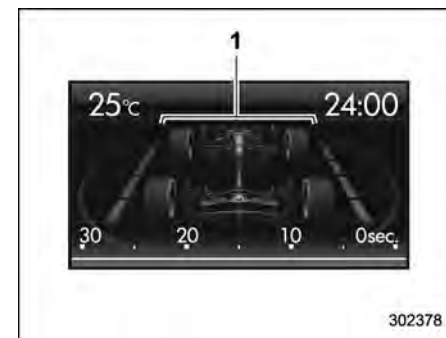
This screen displays the following vehicle information.

- 1) The total time the engine was stopped by the Auto Start Stop system, from the time that the ignition switch was turned to the "ON" position to the current time
- 2) The total time the engine was stopped by the Auto Start Stop system, from the most recent reset of the currently displayed trip meter to the current time

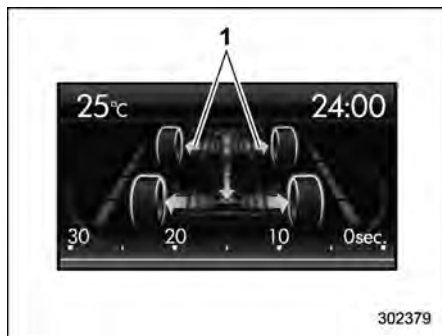
- 3) The total amount of fuel saved due to the engine being stopped by the Auto Start Stop system, from the most recent reset of the currently displayed trip meter to the current time

NOTE

- When the trip meter is reset, the corresponding accumulated time and the amount of fuel saving are also reset.
- The time spent with the engine stopped by means of the Auto Start Stop system is also added to the journey time.

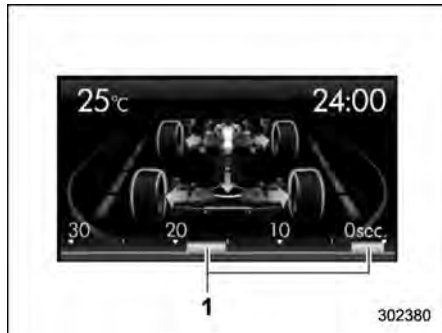
▼ Vehicle activation status screen**When the vehicle stops**

- 1) Steering axle



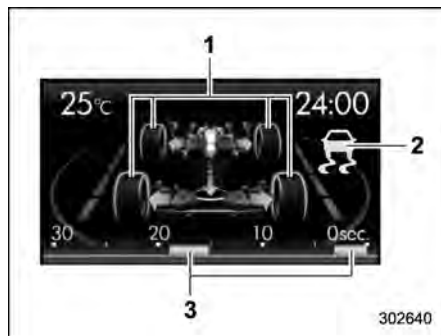
When the vehicle is being driven regularly

- 1) Power train



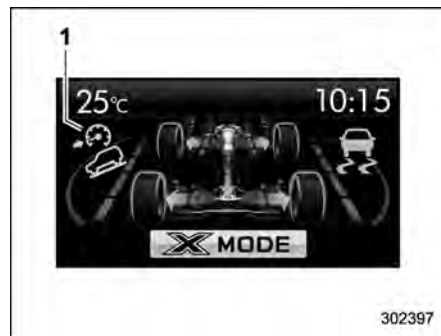
When the Vehicle Dynamics Control system activates, the tires illuminate in yellow.

- 1) History of Vehicle Dynamics Control system activation



When the Vehicle Dynamics Control system activates, the tires illuminate in yellow.

- 1) Activation status of the ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)
2) Vehicle Dynamics Control system operating indicator (flashing in yellow)
3) History of Vehicle Dynamics Control system activation



When the X mode is selected (if equipped)

- 1) Hill descent control indicator

This screen displays the following vehicle information.

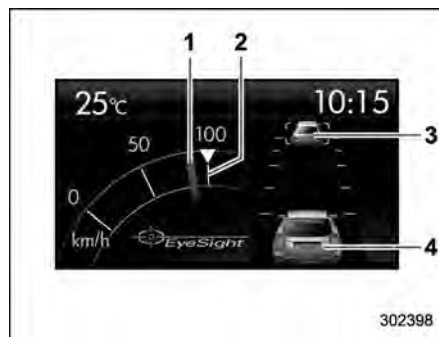
- steering angle and driving wheel status
- activation status of the ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)
- activation status of the Vehicle Dynamics Control system
- activation status of the X mode (if equipped)
- activation status of the hill descent control function (if equipped)

While driving, the vehicle wheels are illuminated in green and the driving direction is represented using an animation of the traffic lane.

If the ABS is activated, all of the vehicle's wheels will be illuminated in yellow and the length of operation in seconds and the number of activations will be displayed in the bar indicator, located on the lowermost part of the display.

If the Vehicle Dynamics Control system is activated, the activated vehicle wheels will be illuminated in yellow and the operating indicator "V" will appear on the upper right part of the display. Also, the length of operation in seconds and the number of activations will be displayed in the bar indicator.

▼ EyeSight screen (models with EyeSight system)



- 1) Current vehicle speed
- 2) Set vehicle speed
- 3) Preceding vehicle
- 4) Your vehicle

This screen displays the status of the EyeSight system.

▼ Triple meter screen



Triple meter screen (display example)

This screen displays up to three optional pieces of information that can be selected from the following items.

The items shown in the triple meter screen can be changed. For details, refer to "Triple meter setting" 3-70.

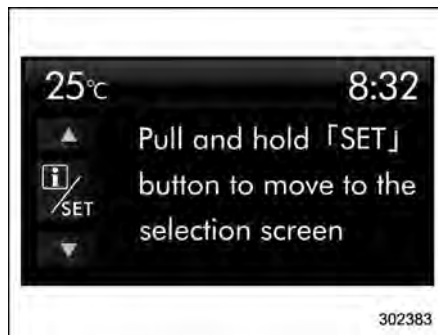
NOTE

For models with turbo petrol engine, the following items are displayed by both numbers and gauges.

- Engine oil temperature
- Accelerator opening ratio
- Boost pressure

Item	Details
	Average vehicle speed (Average vehicle speed for the entire driving time from when the trip meter was reset)
	Lifetime fuel consumption
	Engine oil temperature
	Accelerator opening ratio
	Journey time (the time that has elapsed since the ignition switch was turned to the "ON" position)
	Journey distance (the distance that has been driven since the ignition switch was turned to the "ON" position)
	Average fuel consumption for the entire driving distance from when the ignition switch was turned to the "ON" position
	Boost pressure (turbo petrol engine models only)

▼ Guidance screen



When the "i/SET" switch is pulled and held, the selection screen can be displayed.

The displayed contents can be set or customized from the selection screen. For details, refer to "Selection screen" 3-53.

▼ Clock/calendar screen



Clock (analog format)



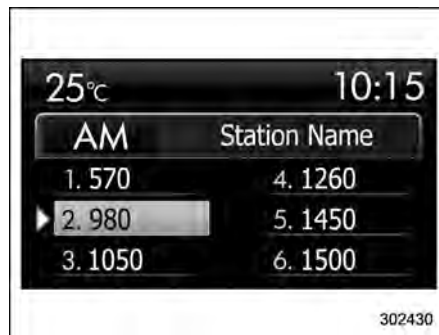
Clock (digital format)

**Calendar**

- 1) Today's date
- 2) Birthday/Anniversary/Scheduled maintenance date

In addition to the clock/calendar, the outside temperature and average fuel consumption can also be displayed.

You can select clock (analog format), clock (digital format) or calendar. The clock/calendar can also be set so that it is not displayed. For details, refer to "Clock/calendar screen setting" 3-71.

▼ **Audio screen (if equipped)****Example of the audio screen**

This screen displays the current audio mode (FM mode, AM mode, etc.) and the following items.

When FM mode or AM mode is selected:

- Broadcasting station on-air
- Frequency on-air

Press the "LIST" button on the audio set to display the preset frequencies of the broadcasting stations.

When CD mode is selected:

- Track number
- Album title (while playing a CD-Text)
- Folder title (while playing MP3/WMA/

AAC format CDs)

- Artist title
- Song title

While playing an MP3/WMA/AAC format track, press the "LIST" button on the audio set to display a list of the folder titles for 8 seconds.

When USB mode is selected:

- Folder title
- Artist title
- Song title

Press the "LIST" button on the audio set to display a list of the folder titles.

When iPod® mode is selected:

- Album title
- Artist title (while playing music or an audiobook)
- Song title (while playing music or a podcast)
- Audiobook title (while playing an audiobook)
- Podcast date (while playing a podcast)

Press the "LIST" button on the audio set to display the titles of playlists etc.

When Bluetooth® audio mode is selected:

- Album title

- Artist title
- Song title

When AUX mode is selected:

“No Device” (only when you select AUX mode while an external device is not connected)

■ Selection screen

When the “/SET” switch is pulled and held, the setting screen for each menu can be displayed. Select the preferred menu by operating the “” or “” switch.

Top menu	Menu option	Description		Page
Date	Date	Set and adjust the time and date. 12h or 24h format can be selected.		3-55
	Birthday	Set a birthday.		3-56
	Anniversary	Set an anniversary day.		3-59
	Day Light Saving Time	Set the day light saving time on or off		3-61
	Delivery Setting (Australia models)	Set a delivery date		3-62
	Go Back	Return to the top menu.		
Display	Brightness	Adjust the brightness.	+5 ↔ -5	3-64
	Contrast	Adjust the contrast.	+5 ↔ -5	3-64
	Screen Off	Turn the screen on or off.	On or Off	3-65
	Beep	Adjust the beep sound volume.	High, Low or Off	3-65
	Go Back	Return to the top menu.		
Screen Setting	Top Display	Set and customize the top display information contents.	Avg Cons, Inst Cons, Range or Off	3-66
	Cons	Customize the fuel consumption information display.		3-67
	Eco History	Set and customize the time of logging fuel consumption history.	30 min, 60 min or 120 min	3-68
	Triple Meter	Set and customize the triple meter.		3-70
	Clock	Select the clock format.	Analog, Digital or Off	3-71
	Bypass Screen	Set the bypass screen for each item.	On or Off	3-72
	Languages	Select the display language.		3-73
	Go Back	Return to the top menu.		

3-54 Instruments and controls/Multi function display

Top menu	Menu option	Description		Page
Maintenance	Engine Oil	Set and adjust the oil maintenance notification date.		3-74
	Oil Filter	Set and adjust the oil filter maintenance notification date.		3-75
	Tires	Set and adjust the tire maintenance notification date.		3-75
	Maintenance Schedule	Set and adjust the vehicle maintenance notification date.		3-75
	On/Off	Turn on or off the self-check screen that is activated when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position.	On or Off	3-75
	Clear All Settings	Clear all settings for maintenance items.	Yes or No	3-76
	Go Back	Return to the top menu.		
Driving History	Set	Register and overwrite the driving record.		3-77
	Go Back	Return to the top menu.		
Car Setting	Hazard Warning Flasher	Set the hazard warning flasher.	On or Off	3-79
	Security Relocking*1	Set and customize the automatic locking operation period.	20, 30, 40, 50, 60 seconds or off	3-80
	Defogger	Set and customize the operation of the defogger.	15 minutes or Continuous	3-81
	Interior Light	Set and customize the interior light off delay timer.	10, 20, 30 seconds or Off	3-82
	Go Back	Return to the top menu.		
Initialize	Reset to Defaults	Reset all settings to the default settings.	Yes or No	3-84
	Lifetime Fuel Consumption Reset	Clear logged lifetime fuel consumption data.	Yes or No	3-85
	Go Back	Return to the top menu.		
Go Back	—	Return to the top menu.		

*1: If equipped

■ Date and time settings

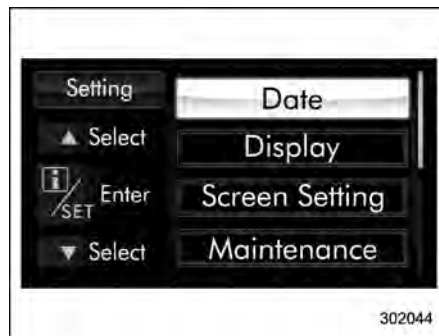
The items in the date and time settings can be set. To change the items, operate the “▲” or “▼” switch.

NOTE

- The “Date” item must be set to display the “Birthday”, “Anniversary” and notifications for vehicle maintenance.
- The “Birthday” and “Anniversary” items can be entered after the “Date” item has been set.
- Dates that do not exist in the Gregorian calendar cannot be set (for example, April 31).

▼ Preparation for date setting

1. Turn the ignition switch to the “ON” position.
2. Pull and hold the “/SET” switch toward you to show the selection screen.



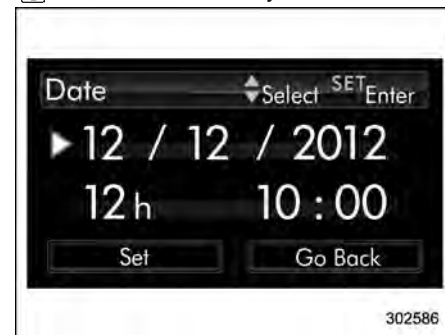
3. After the selection screen is displayed, operate the “▲” or “▼” switch to show the “Date” item. Then, pull the “/SET” switch toward you.

▼ Current date and time setting

1. Perform the preparation steps according to “Preparation for date setting” 3-55.

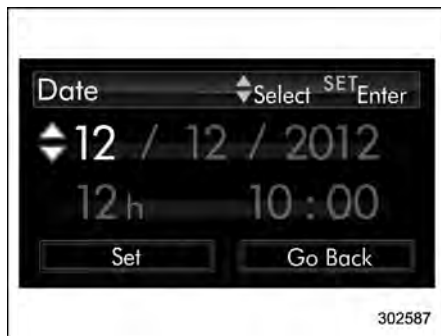


2. Operate the “▲” or “▼” switch to select the “Date” item, and then pull the “/SET” switch toward you.

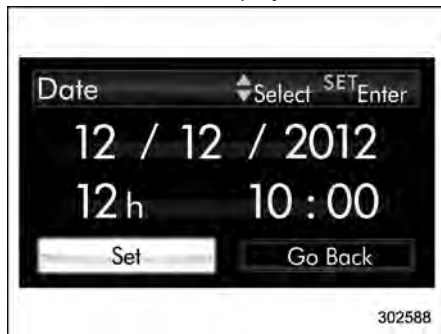


3. Select the item to set by operating the “▲” or “▼” switch, and then pull the “/SET” switch toward you.

– CONTINUED –



4. Select a number by operating the “▲” or “▼” switch, and then pull the “**I**/SET” switch toward you. When “12 h” is selected, the clock is set to a 12-hour display. When “24 h” is selected, the clock is set to a 24-hour display.



5. After entering the date and time, select “Set” by operating the “▼” switch and confirm the setting by pulling the “**I**/SET” switch toward you.



6. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.

▼ Birthday setting

1. Perform the preparation steps according to “Preparation for date setting” 3-55.



2. Operate the “▲” or “▼” switch to select the “Birthday” item, and then pull the “**I**/SET” switch toward you.



3. Select the item to set by operating the “▲” or “▼” switch, and then pull the “**I**/SET” switch toward you.



4. The selected item will be shown.
- Pull the “I/SET” switch toward you to set the selected item.
 - If you want to select the other item, operate the “▲” switch to go back to step 3.



5. Select numbers by operating the “▲” or “▼” switch, and then pull the “I/SET” switch toward you.



6. After entering the date by repeating step 5, you can enter the name.



7. Select characters by operating the “▲” or “▼” switch, and then pull the “I/SET” switch toward you.
- You can select characters of the English alphabet (upper case characters and lower case characters are available), eleven symbols or blank spaces.
 - The word being edited will be displayed with an underline.



8. After entering the name by repeating step 7, select "Set" by operating the "▼" switch and confirm the setting by pulling the "I/SET" switch toward you.



9. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.

If a birthday is approaching, the following screen will be displayed accompanied by a beep when the ignition switch has been turned to the "ON" position. This function can be set to on or off. For details, refer to "Bypass screen setting" 3-72.



From 1 to 7 days prior to the birthday



On a birthday

NOTE

If " _ " is selected for either the "Month" or "Day" item instead of numbers, the birthday notification will be deactivated.

▼ Anniversary setting

1. Perform the preparation steps according to "Preparation for date setting" 3-55.



2. Operate the "▲" or "▼" switch to select the "Anniversary" item, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.



3. Select the item to set by operating the "▲" or "▼" switch, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.



4. The selected item will be shown.
 - Pull the "i/SET" switch toward you to set the selected item.

- If you want to select another item, operate the "▲" switch to go back to step 3.



5. Select numbers by operating the "▲" or "▼" switch, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.



6. After entering the date by repeating step 5, you can enter the name.



7. Select characters by operating the "▲" or "▼" switch, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.

- You can select characters of the English alphabet (upper case characters and lower case characters are available), eleven symbols or blank spaces.
- The word being edited will be displayed with an underline.

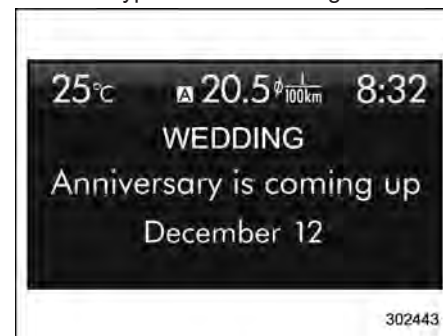


8. After entering the name by repeating step 7, select "Set" by operating the "▼" switch and confirm the setting by pulling the "i/SET" switch toward you.



9. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.

If an anniversary is approaching, the following screen will be displayed accompanied by a beep when the ignition switch has been turned to the "ON" position. This function can be set to on or off. For details, refer to "Bypass screen setting" 3-72.



From 1 to 7 days prior to the anniversary



On an anniversary

NOTE

If “_” is selected for either the “Month” or “Day” item instead of numbers, the anniversary notification will be deactivated.

▼ Clearing birthday or anniversary

1. Perform the preparation steps according to “Preparation for date setting” 3-55 and display “Birthday” or “Anniversary” on the screen.
2. Select the preferred birthday/anniversary.
3. When “_” is selected for either the “Month” or “Day” item instead of numbers, the setting of “Birthday” or “Anniversary” will be cleared.

▼ Daylight saving time setting

1. Perform the preparation steps according to “Preparation for date setting” 3-55.



2. Operate the “▲” or “▼” switch to select the “Day Light Saving Time” item, and then pull the “i/SET” switch toward you.



3. The current setting will be displayed. Pull the “i/SET” switch toward you to enter the selection mode.



4. Select “Summer” or “Winter” by operating the “▲” or “▼” switch, and then pull the “i/SET” switch toward you.

- CONTINUED -



5. Select "Set" by operating the "▼" switch, and confirm the setting by pulling the "i/SET" switch toward you.



6. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.

▼ Delivery date setting (Australia models)

1. Perform the preparation steps according to "Preparation for date setting" 3-55.



2. Operate the "▲" or "▼" switch to select the "Delivery Setting" item, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.



3. The current setting will be displayed. Pull the "i/SET" switch toward you to enter the setting mode.



4. Select a number by operating the "▲" or "▼" switch, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.



5. Select "Set" by operating the "▼" switch, and confirm the setting by pulling the "i/SET" switch toward you.



6. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.



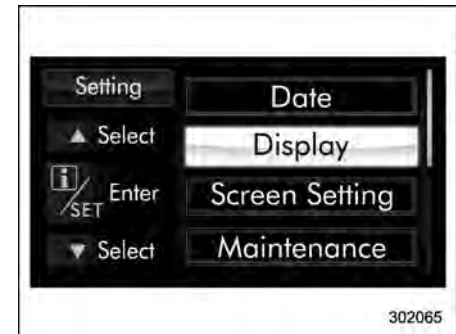
When you turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position on the set delivery date, a special welcome message will be displayed only on that vehicle delivery date. It is displayed every time you turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position that day.

■ Image quality and volume settings

The items in the image quality and volume settings can be set. To change the items, operate the "▲" or "▼" switch.

▼ Preparation for image quality and volume settings

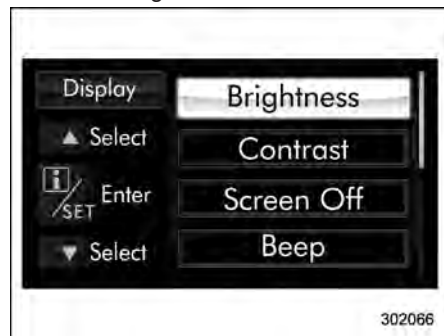
1. Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position.
2. Pull and hold the "i/SET" switch toward you to show the selection screen.



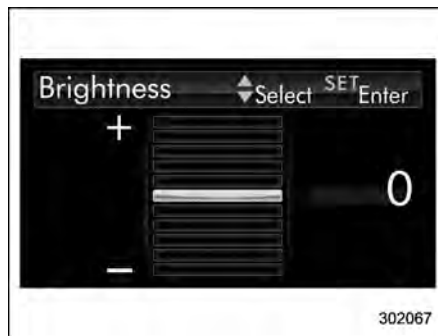
3. After the selection screen is displayed, operate the "▲" or "▼" switch to show the "Display" item. Then, pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.

▼ Brightness setting

1. Perform the preparation steps according to "Preparation for image quality and volume settings" 3-63.



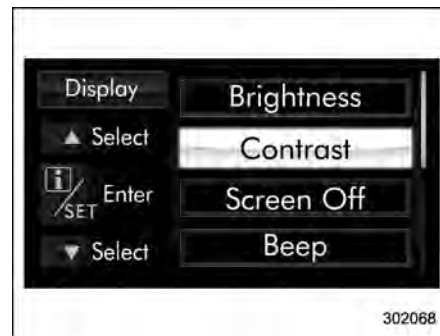
2. Operate the "▲" or "▼" switch to select the "Brightness" item, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.



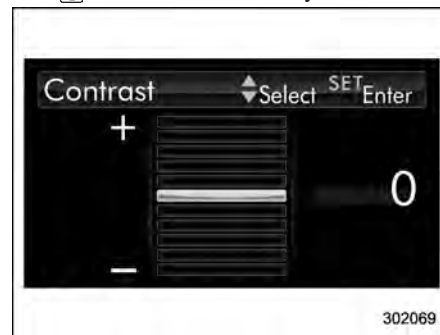
3. Select a brightness level by operating the "▲" or "▼" switch, and confirm the setting by pulling the "i/SET" switch toward you.

▼ Contrast setting

1. Perform the preparation steps according to "Preparation for image quality and volume settings" 3-63.



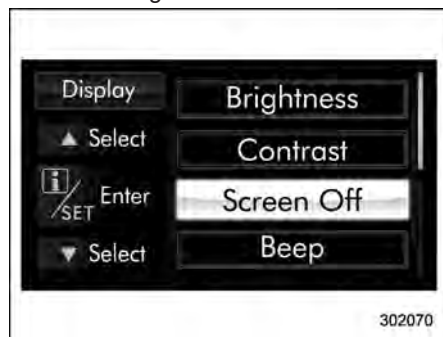
2. Operate the "▲" or "▼" switch to select the "Contrast" item, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.



3. Select a contrast level by operating the "▲" or "▼" switch, and confirm the setting by pulling the "i/SET" switch toward you.

▼ Screen OFF setting

1. Perform the preparation steps according to "Preparation for image quality and volume settings" 3-63.



2. Operate the "▲" or "▼" switch to select the "Screen OFF" item, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.



3. Pull the "i/SET" switch once more toward you.



4. The screen will be turned off.

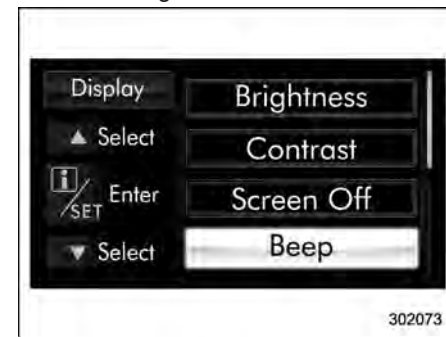
Restoring the screen

When the "▲", "▼" or "i/SET" switch is

pulled toward you after the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position, the screen will be restored. The screen will be restored with the basic screen that was displayed when the screen was turned off. While the screen is off, a warning message will be displayed if necessary, but other screens will not be displayed.

▼ Beep volume setting

1. Perform the preparation steps according to "Preparation for image quality and volume settings" 3-63.



2. Operate the "▲" or "▼" switch to select the "Beep" item, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.



3. Pull the "[i]/SET" switch toward you.



4. Select an item by operating the "▲" or "▼" switch, and then pull the "[i]/SET" switch toward you.



5. Select "Set" by operating the "▼" switch, and confirm the setting by pulling the "[i]/SET" switch toward you.



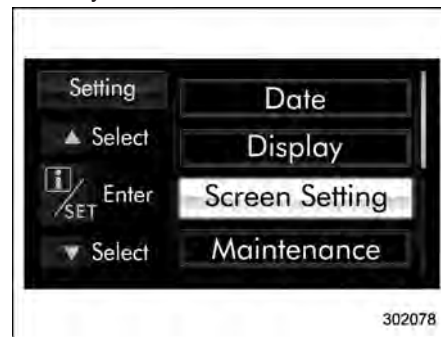
6. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.

■ Screen settings

The items in the screen settings can be set. To change the items, operate the "▲" or "▼" switch, and then pull the "[i]/SET" switch toward you.

▼ Preparation for screen settings

1. Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position.
2. Pull and hold the "[i]/SET" switch toward you to show the selection screen.

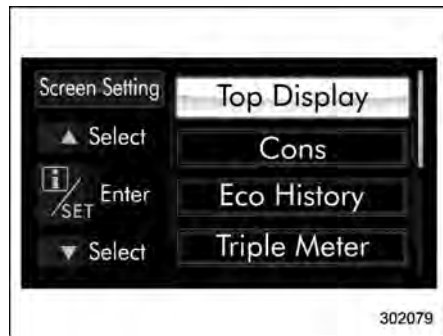


3. After the selection screen is displayed, operate the "▲" or "▼" switch to show the "Screen Setting" item. Then, pull the "[i]/SET" switch toward you.

▼ Top display setting

1. Perform the preparation steps according to "Preparation for screen settings"

3-66.



2. Operate the “▲” or “▼” switch to select the “Top Display” item, and then pull the “**I**/SET” switch toward you.



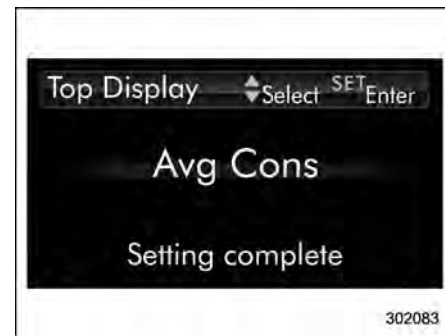
3. Pull the “**I**/SET” switch once more.



4. Select an item by operating the “▲” or “▼” switch, and then pull the “**I**/SET” switch toward you.



5. Select “Set” by operating the “▼” switch, and confirm the setting by pulling the “**I**/SET” switch toward you.

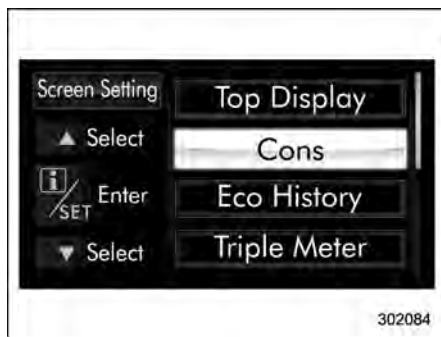


6. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.

▼ Fuel consumption screen setting

1. Perform the preparation steps according to “Preparation for screen settings” 3-66.

– CONTINUED –



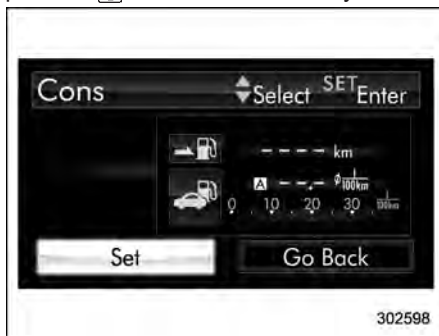
2. Operate the “▲” or “▼” switch to select the “Cons” item, and then pull the “i/SET” switch toward you.



3. Pull the “i/SET” switch once more.



4. Select the displayed configuration by operating the “▲” or “▼” switch, and then pull the “i/SET” switch toward you.



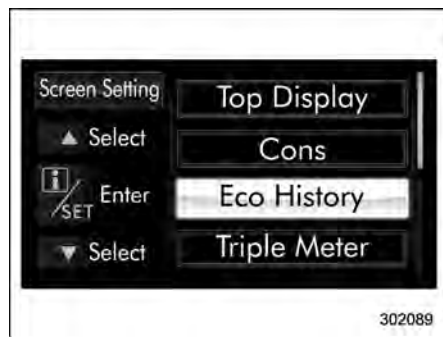
5. Select “Set” by operating the “▼” switch, and confirm the setting by pulling the “i/SET” switch toward you.



6. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.

▼ Economy history setting

1. Perform the preparation steps according to “Preparation for screen settings” 3-66.



2. Operate the “▲” or “▼” switch to select the “Eco History” item, and then pull the “**i**/SET” switch toward you.



3. Pull the “**i**/SET” switch once more.



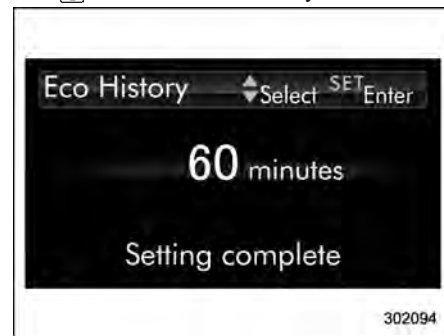
4. Select the time of the logged fuel consumption history by operating the “▲” or “▼” switch, and then pull the “**i**/SET” switch toward you.



5. Select “Go Back” by operating “▲” switch.



6. Select “Set” by operating the “▲” switch and confirm the setting by pulling the “**i**/SET” switch toward you.

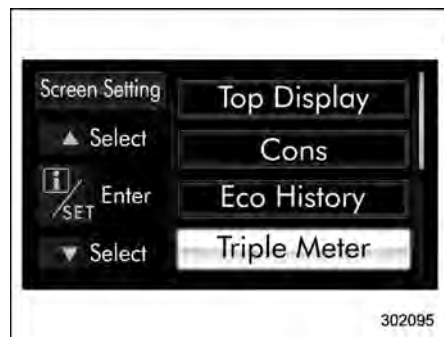


7. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.

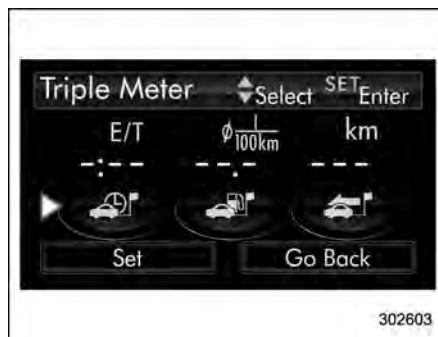
– CONTINUED –

▼ Triple meter setting

1. Perform the preparation steps according to "Preparation for screen settings" 3-66.



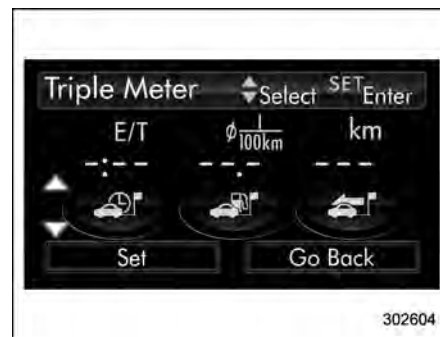
2. Operate the "▲" or "▼" switch to select the "Triple Meter" item, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.



3. Select the setting location (left, center or right) by operating the "▲" or "▼" switch, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.

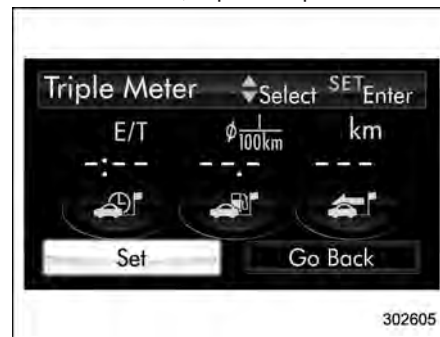
NOTE

The same item cannot be selected for the left, center or right location.



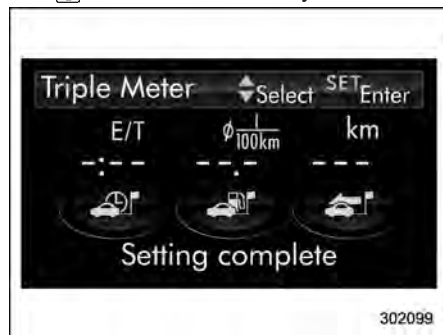
4. Select the preferred item by operating the "▲" or "▼" switch, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.

If you also want to change the setting for another location, repeat steps 3 and 4.



5. Select "Set" by operating the "▼" switch

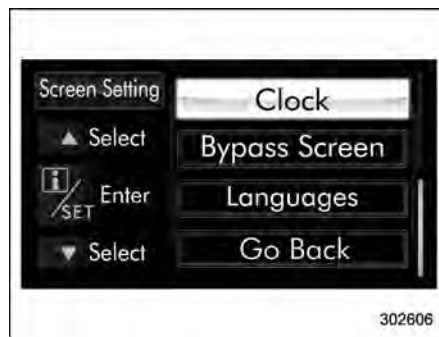
switch, and confirm the setting by pulling the "i/SET" switch toward you.



6. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.

▼ Clock/calendar screen setting

1. Perform the preparation steps according to "Preparation for screen settings" 3-66.



2. Operate the "▲" or "▼" switch to select the "Clock" item, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.



3. Pull the "i/SET" switch once more.



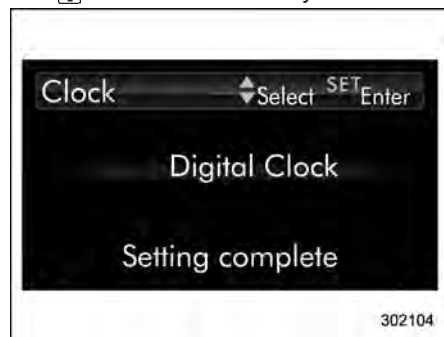
4. Select "Analog Clock", "Digital Clock", "Calendar" or "Off" by operating the "▼" switch and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.



5. Select "Set" by operating the "▼" switch, and confirm the setting by pulling the "i/SET" switch toward you.

– CONTINUED –

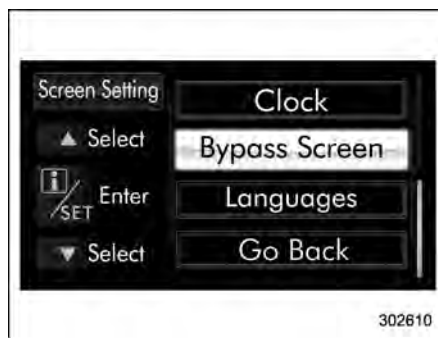
the “**i**/SET” switch toward you.



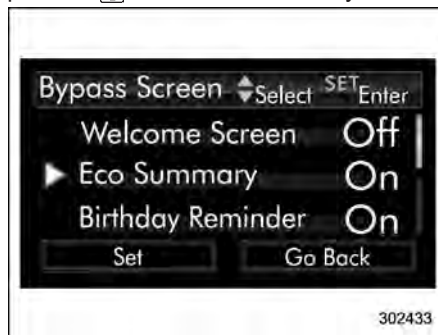
6. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.

▼ Bypass screen setting

1. Perform the preparation steps according to “Preparation for screen settings” 3-66.



2. Operate the “▲” or “▼” switch to select the “Bypass Screen” item, and then pull the “**i**/SET” switch toward you.



3. Select the item to set by operating the “▲” or “▼” switch, and then pull the “**i**/SET” switch toward you.



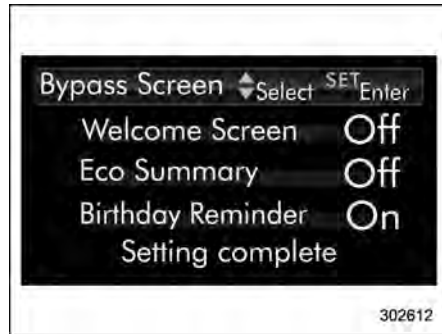
4. Select “On” or “Off” by operating the “▲” or “▼” switch, and pull the “**i**/SET” switch toward you.

If you want to change setting for another item, repeat steps 3 and 4.



5. Select “Set” by operating the “▲” or

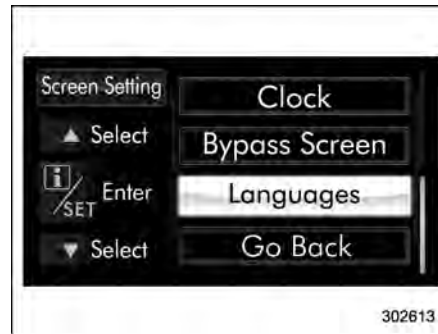
“▼” switch, and confirm the setting by pulling the “**I**/SET” switch toward you.



6. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.

▼ Language setting

1. Perform the preparation steps according to “Preparation for screen settings” 3-66.



2. Operate the “▲” or “▼” switch to select the “Languages” item, and then pull the “**I**/SET” switch toward you.



3. The current language setting will be displayed. Pull the “**I**/SET” switch toward you to enter the language selection mode.



4. Select the preferred language by operating the “▲” or “▼” switch, and then pull the “**I**/SET” switch toward you.



5. Select “Set” by operating the “▼” switch, and confirm the setting by pulling the “**I**/SET” switch toward you.

– CONTINUED –



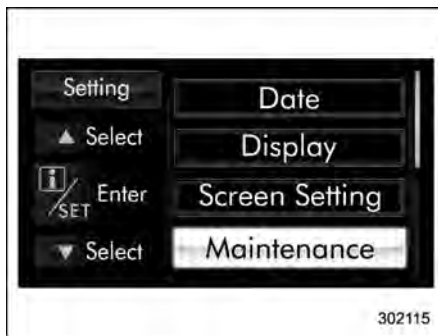
6. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.

■ Maintenance settings

The items in the maintenance settings can be set. To change the items, operate the “▲” or “▼” switch toward you.

▼ Preparation for maintenance settings

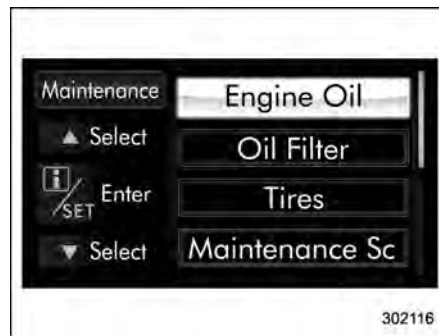
1. Turn the ignition switch to the “ON” position.
2. Pull and hold the “/SET” switch toward you to show the selection screen.



3. After the selection screen is displayed, operate the “▲” or “▼” switch to show the “Maintenance” item. Then, pull the “/SET” switch toward you.

▼ Engine oil setting

1. Perform the preparation steps according to “Preparation for maintenance settings” 3-74.



2. Operate the “▲” or “▼” switch to select the “Engine Oil” item, and then pull the “/SET” switch toward you.



3. Select the setting location (month, day, year or distance) by operating the “▲” or “▼” switch, and then pull the “/SET” switch toward you.

switch toward you.



4. Select a number by operating the “▲” or “▼” switch, and then pull the “**I**/SET” switch toward you.

If you also want to change the setting for another location, repeat steps 3 and 4.



5. Select “Set” by operating the “▲” or “▼” switch and confirm the setting by pulling the “**I**/SET” switch toward you.



6. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.

NOTE

- The notification will be displayed with information of both date and distance or either date or distance in accordance with the setting.
- When “_” is selected for either the “Month”, “Day”, “Year” or “Distance” item instead of numbers, the set notification will be deactivated.
- If the notification continues for 15 days or more, the system will display “_” on the screen.
- When the distance announcement

reaches 0 km, the display will show “0000” for the next 500 km (311 miles). After exceeding 500 km (311 miles), “_ _ _” will be displayed.

▼ Oil filter setting

The setting procedure is the same as “Engine oil setting” 3-74, but select the “Oil Filter” item in step 2.

▼ Tires setting

The setting procedure is the same as “Engine oil setting” 3-74, but select the “Tires” item in step 2.

▼ Maintenance schedule setting

The setting procedure is the same as “Engine oil setting” 3-74, but select the “Maintenance Schedule” item in step 2.

▼ On/Off setting

1. Perform the preparation steps according to “Preparation for maintenance settings” 3-74.



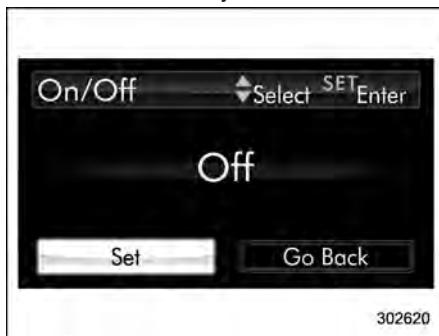
2. Operate the “▲” or “▼” switch to select the “On/Off” item, and then pull the “i/SET” switch toward you.



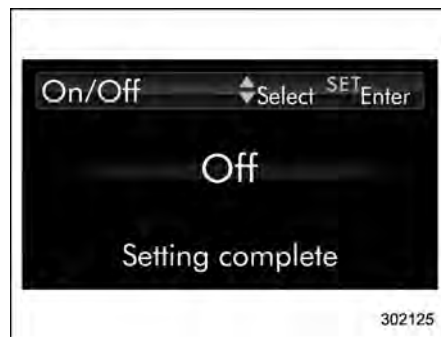
3. The current setting will be displayed. Pull the “i/SET” switch toward you to enter the selection mode.



4. Select “On” or “Off” by operating the “▲” or “▼” switch, and then pull the “i/SET” switch toward you.



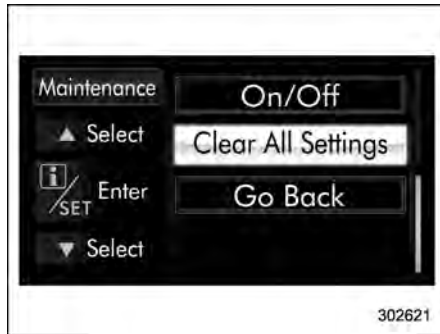
5. Select “Set” by operating the “▼” switch, and confirm the setting by pulling the “i/SET” switch toward you.



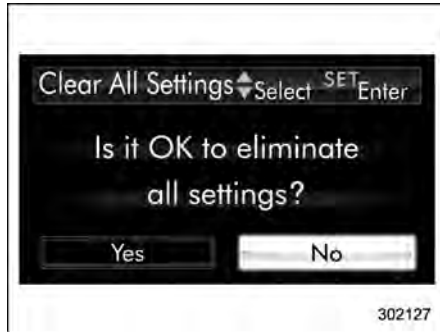
6. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.

▼ Clear setting

1. Perform the preparation steps according to “Preparation for maintenance settings” 3-74.

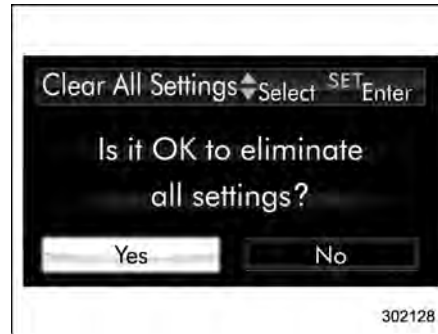


2. Operate the “▲” or “▼” switch to select the “Clear All Settings” item, and then pull the “i/SET” switch toward you.

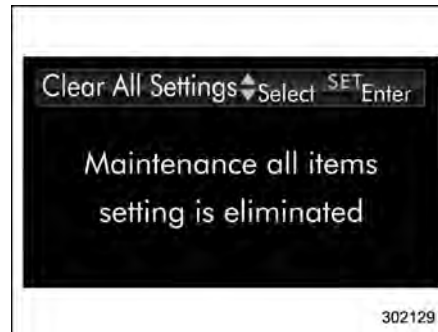


3. The system will prompt a Yes/No dialogue (“No” is selected first). To clear all maintenance settings, select “Yes” by

operating the “▼” switch.



4. Confirm the setting by pulling the “i/SET” switch toward you.



5. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.

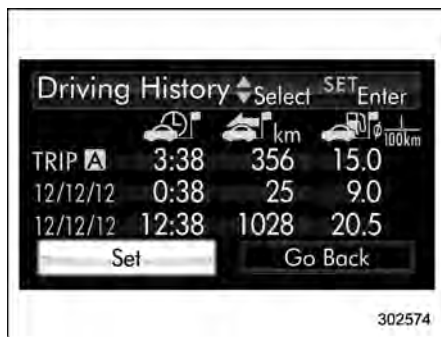
■ Driving history registration

The items in the driving history can be registered. To change the items, operate the “▲” or “▼” switch, and then pull the “i/SET” switch toward you.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the “ON” position.
2. Pull and hold the “i/SET” switch toward you to show the selection screen.



3. After the selection screen is displayed, operate the “▲” or “▼” switch to show the “Driving History” item. Then, pull the “i/SET” switch toward you.



4. Pull the “**I**/SET” switch toward you once more to enter the setting mode.



5. The system will notify you of the place to be selected for approximately 2 seconds.



6. Select one of the registration lines by operating the “▲” or “▼” switch, and then pull the “**I**/SET” switch toward you.



7. To overwrite the previous registration, pull the “**I**/SET” switch toward you. When registration is performed the first time, it

will be registered directly without a notification.



8. The system will notify you that the registration is complete.

NOTE

The driving history can be registered for the trip meter A or B.

■ Car settings

The items in the car settings can be set. To change the items, operate the “▲” or “▼” switch, and then pull the “**I**/SET” switch toward you.

▼ Preparation for car settings

1. Turn the ignition switch to the “ON” position.

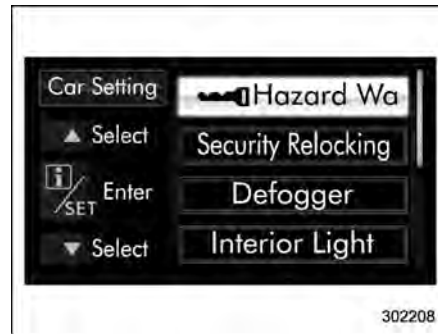
2. Pull and hold the "[I]/SET" switch toward you to show the selection screen.



3. After the selection screen is displayed, operate the "▲" or "▼" switch to select the "Car Setting" item. Then, pull the "[I]/SET" switch toward you.

▼ Hazard warning flasher setting

1. Perform the preparation steps according to "Preparation for car settings" 3-78.



2. Operate the "▲" or "▼" switch to select the "Hazard Warning Flasher" item, and then pull the "[I]/SET" switch toward you.



3. The current setting will be displayed. Pull the "[I]/SET" switch toward you to

enter the selection mode.



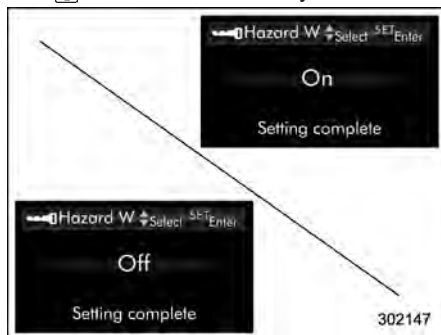
4. Select "On" or "Off" by operating the "▲" or "▼" switch, and then pull the "[I]/SET" switch toward you.



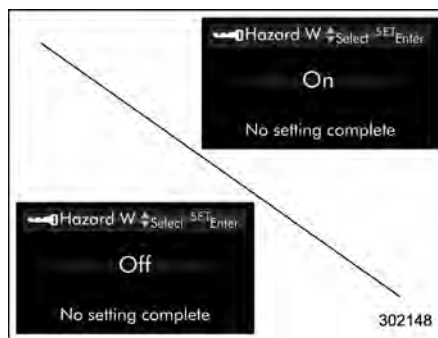
5. Select "Set" by operating the "▼" switch, and confirm the setting by pulling

– CONTINUED –

the “**i**/SET” switch toward you.



6. The system will notify you that the setting is complete. If the setting is not available, the following notification will be displayed. In this case, perform the setting procedure again.



▼ Security Relocking

1. Perform the preparation steps according to “Preparation for car settings” 3-78.

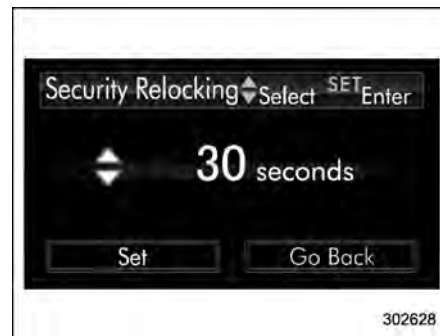


2. Operate the “▲” or “▼” switch to select the “Security Relocking” item, and

then pull the “**i**/SET” switch toward you.



3. The current setting will be displayed. Pull the “**i**/SET” switch toward you to enter the selection mode.



4. Select the preferred setting by operating the “▲” or “▼” switch, and then pull

the “**I**/SET” switch toward you.



5. Select “Set” by operating the “▼” switch, and confirm the setting by pulling the “**I**/SET” switch toward you.



6. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.

If the setting is not available, the following notification will be displayed. In this case, perform the setting procedure again.



▼ Defogger setting

1. Perform the preparation steps according to “Preparation for car settings” 3-78.



2. Operate the “▲” or “▼” switch to select the “Defogger” item, and then pull the “**I**/SET” switch toward you.

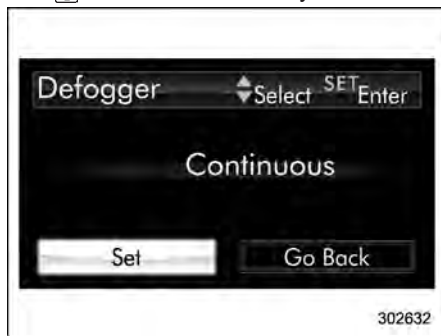


3. The current setting will be displayed. Pull the “**I**/SET” switch toward you to enter the selection mode.

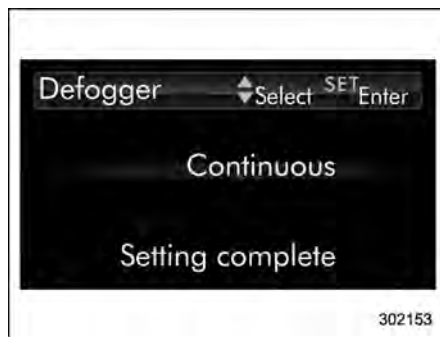
– CONTINUED –



4. Select the preferred setting by operating the “▲” or “▼” switch, and then pull the “i/SET” switch toward you.



5. Select “Set” by operating the “▼” switch, and confirm the setting by pulling the “i/SET” switch toward you.



6. The system will notify you that the setting is complete. If the setting is not available, the following notification will be displayed. In this case, perform the setting procedure again.



▼ Interior light off delay timer setting

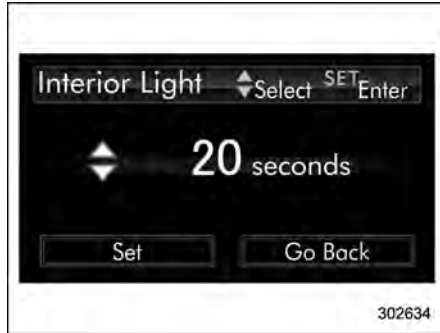
1. Perform the preparation steps according to “Preparation for car settings” 3-78.



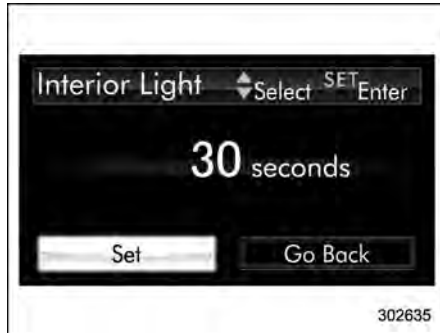
2. Operate the “▲” or “▼” switch to select the “Interior Light” item, and then pull the “i/SET” switch toward you.



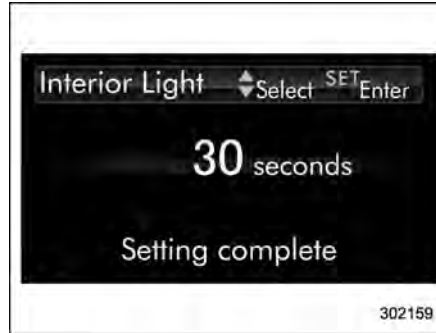
3. The current setting will be displayed. Pull the "I/SET" switch toward you to enter the selection mode.



4. Select the preferred setting by operating the "▲" or "▼" switch, and then pull the "I/SET" switch toward you.

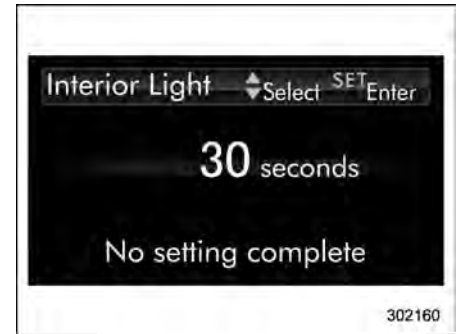


5. Select "Set" by operating the "▼" switch, and confirm the setting by pulling the "I/SET" switch toward you.



6. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.

If the setting is not available, the following notification will be displayed. In this case, perform the setting procedure again.

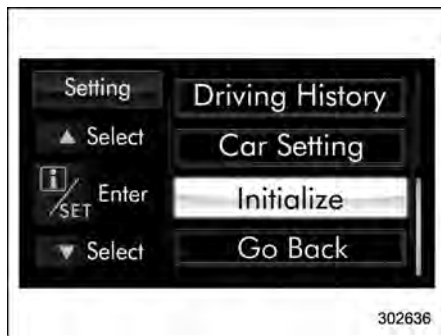


■ Initialize

Items that have been set to your preference can be initialized. To select an initialization menu, operate the "▲" or "▼" switch as follows.

▼ Preparation for initialization

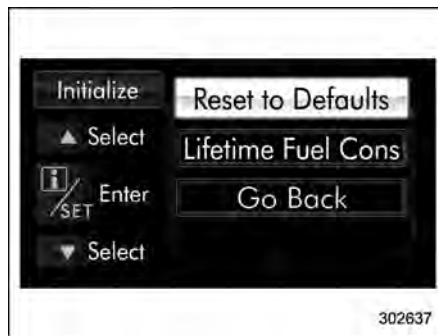
1. Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position.
2. Pull and hold the "I/SET" switch toward you to show the selection screen.



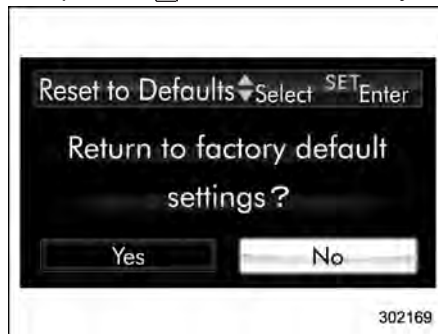
3. After the selection screen is displayed, operate the “▲” or “▼” switch to show the “Initialize” item. Then, pull the “**I**/SET” switch toward you.

▼ Reset to factory default settings

1. Perform the preparation steps according to “Preparation for initialization” 3-83.

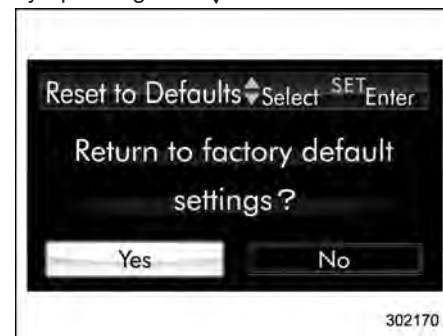


2. Operate the “▲” or “▼” switch to select the “Reset to Defaults” item, and then pull the “**I**/SET” switch toward you.

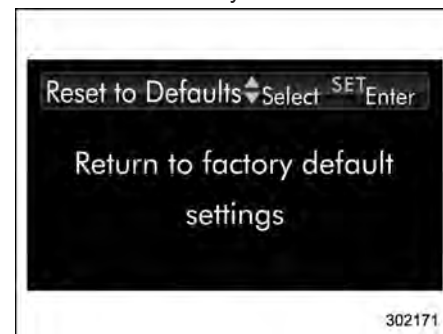


3. The system will prompt a Yes/No dialogue (“No” is selected first). To return to the factory default settings, select “Yes”

by operating the “▼” switch.



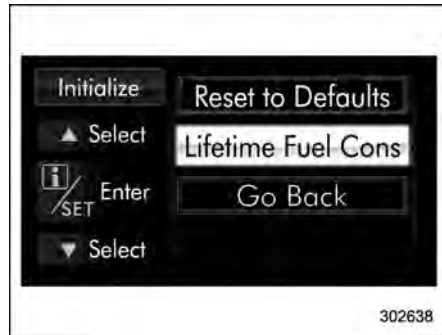
4. Confirm the setting by pulling the “**I**/SET” switch toward you.



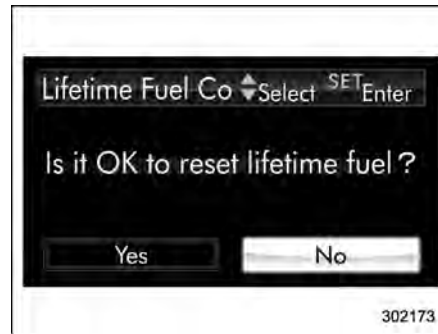
5. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.

▼ **Lifetime fuel consumption resetting**

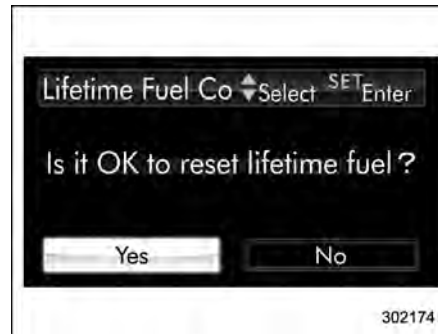
1. Perform the preparation steps according to "Preparation for initialization" 3-83.



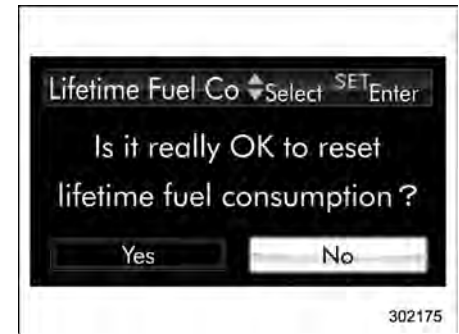
2. Operate the "▲" or "▼" switch to select the "Lifetime Fuel Consumption Resetting" item, and then pull the "i/SET" switch toward you.



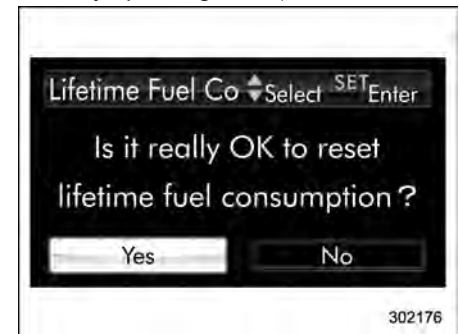
3. The system will prompt a Yes/No dialogue ("No" is selected first). To reset the lifetime fuel consumption, select "Yes" by operating the "▼" switch.



4. Confirm the setting by pulling the "i/SET" switch toward you.

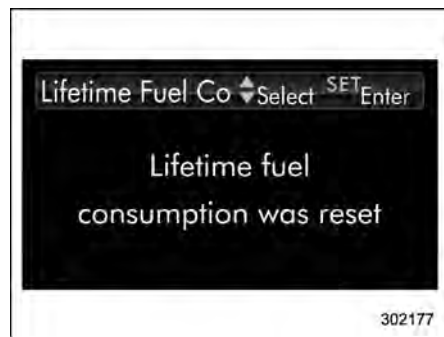


5. Reconfirmation will be displayed. If you are sure you want to proceed, select "Yes" by operating the "▼" switch.



6. Confirm the setting again by pulling the "i/SET" switch toward you.

– CONTINUED –



7. The system will notify you that the setting is complete.

■ Audio setting (if equipped)

"MENU" button	
Control dial	

You can set the audio by operating the multi function display. Press the "MENU" button on the audio set to display the audio setting screen. The menus are shown in the following table.

First menu	Second menu	Page
BT-AUD Setup	Pair Audio	3-87
	Select Audio	3-87
	Set Passkey	3-87
	Delete Audio	3-88
Speed Volume	—	3-88
Regional*	—	3-88
Volume Adjust*	—	3-88
Beep	—	3-88
Go Back	—	—

*: Europe models only

To select the next menu in the same layer (first or second menu): Press the "MENU" button.

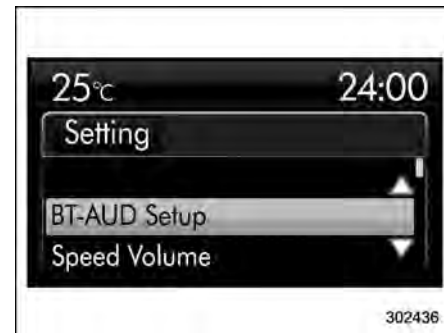
To enter the second menu: Press the control dial while the "BT-AUD Setup" menu is selected.

To enter the setting mode of the selected menu: Press the control dial while the menu other than "BT-AUD Setup" is selected.

To complete the audio setting: Select the "Go Back" menu and press the control dial. Then the audio screen will be

displayed. For details about audio screen, refer to "Audio screen" 3-51.

▼ Bluetooth® audio setting



Select the "BT-AUD Setup" menu. Then you can set the following items.

▽ Registering (pairing) audio device



1. Select the "Pair Audio" menu.
2. Perform the procedure described in "Registering (pairing) device" 5-31.

▽ Selecting audio device



1. Select the "Select Audio" menu.
2. Perform the procedure described in "Selecting device" 5-31.

▽ Setting passkey



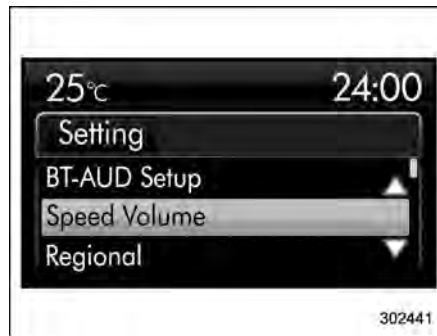
1. Select the "Set Passkey" menu.
2. Perform the procedure described in "Setting passkey" 5-31.

▼ Deleting audio device



1. Select the "Delete Audio" menu.
2. Perform the procedure described in "Deleting device" 3-5-31.

▼ Speed volume setting



1. Select the "Speed Volume" menu.
2. Operate the control dial to select the preferred setting.

▼ Regional setting (Europe models)

The setting procedure is the same as "Speed volume setting" 3-88, but select the "Regional" item in step 1.

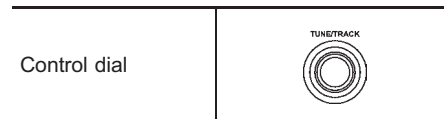
▼ Volume adjust setting (Europe models)

The setting procedure is the same as "Speed volume setting" 3-88, but select the "Volume Adjust" item in step 1.

▼ Beep setting

The setting procedure is the same as "Speed volume setting" 3-88, but select the "Beep" item in step 1.

■ Sound setting (if equipped)



Press the control dial on the audio set to display the sound setting screen. You can set the following items by operating the multi function display.

Item	Range of levels
Bass	-8 to +8
Middle	-8 to +8
Treble	-8 to +8
Fader	R9 to F9
Balance	L9 to R9
Virtual Bass*	Off to On
Sound Restorer*	Off to On
Vocal Image Control*	L9 to R9

*: If equipped

To select the next item: Press the control dial.

To set the selected item: Turn the control dial.

For details, refer to "Tone and balance control" 5-7.

Light control switch



CAUTION

- Use of any lights for a long period of time while the engine is not running can cause the battery to discharge.
- Before leaving the vehicle, make sure that the light control switch is turned to the off position. If the vehicle is left unattended for a long time with the light control switch set to a position other than the off position, the battery may be discharged.

Models with "keyless access with push-button start system":

The light control switch operates when the push-button ignition switch is in the "ACC" or "ON" position.

Regardless of the position of the light control switch, the illuminated lights are turned off when the push-button ignition switch is turned off.

Models without "keyless access with push-button start system":

The light control switch operates when the key is inserted in the ignition switch.

Regardless of the position of the light control switch, the illuminated lights are turned off when the key is removed from the ignition switch.

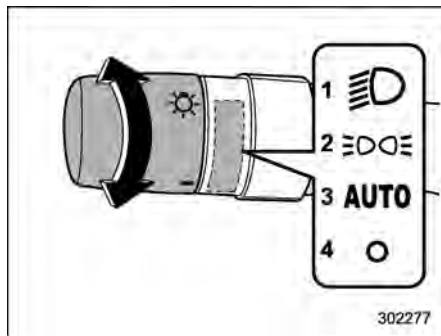
NOTE

The light control switch can be operated (except auto on/off headlights), even under the following conditions.

- when the key is not inserted into the ignition switch (models without "keyless access with push-button start system")
- when the push-button ignition switch is turned off (models with "keyless access with push-button start system")

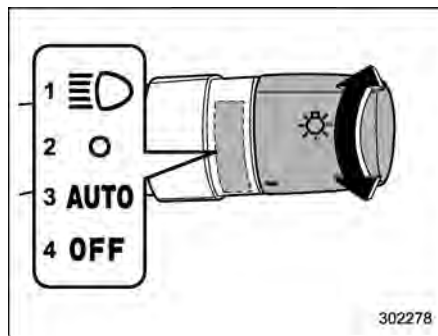
If the driver's door is opened while the headlights are illuminated under such conditions, the chirp sound will inform the driver that the lights are illuminated.

■ Headlights



Except Australia models

- 1) Second position
- 2) First position
- 3) Auto position
- 4) Off position



Australia models

- 1) Second position
- 2) First position
- 3) Auto position
- 4) Off position

To turn on the headlights, turn the knob on the end of the turn signal lever.

Second position:

Headlights, front position lights, instrument panel illumination, tail lights and license plate lights are on.

First position:

Front position lights, instrument panel illumination, tail lights and license plate lights are on.

Auto position: auto on/off headlights (if equipped):

When the ignition switch is in the "ON" position, the headlights, front position lights, instrument panel illumination, tail lights and license plate lights are **automatically on or off** depending on the level of the ambient light.

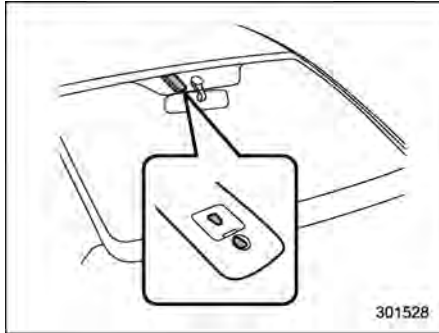
Off position:

The headlights are all off.

NOTE

- The sensitivity of the auto on/off headlights can be changed by your SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for details.
- When you drive in a foreign country in which the vehicular lane (left-hand traffic or right-hand traffic) is different from your country, to avoid blinding the oncoming driver, you need to block a part of the headlight lenses. For details, refer to "Driving in a foreign country in which the vehicular lane is different to your country" 8-5.

▼ **Sensor for the auto on/off headlights (rain light sensor) (if equipped)**

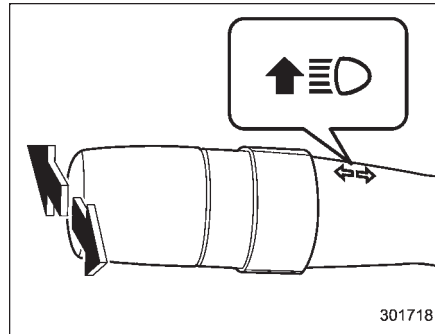


The sensor is on the windshield glass as shown in the illustration.

CAUTION

If any object is attached on or near the sensor, the sensor may not detect the level of ambient light correctly and the auto on/off headlights may not operate properly.

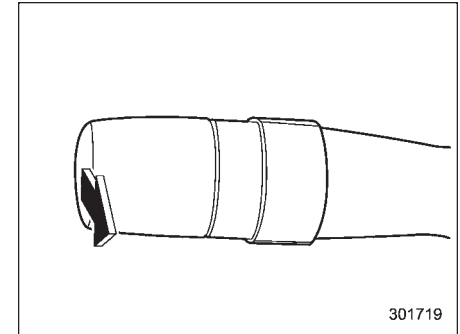
■ **High/low beam change (dimmer)**



To change from low beam to high beam, push the turn signal lever forward. When the headlights are on high beam, the high beam indicator light "≡●" on the combination meter is also on.

To switch back to low beam, pull the lever back to the center position.

■ **Headlight flasher**



CAUTION

Do not hold the lever in the flashing position for more than just a few seconds.

To flash the headlights, pull the lever toward you and then release it. The high beam will stay on for as long as you hold the lever. The headlight flasher works even though the lighting switch is in the off position.

When the headlights are on high beam, the high beam indicator light "≡●" on the combination meter is also on.

■ Daytime running light system (if equipped)



WARNING

The light switch must always be turned to the “” position when it is dark outside.

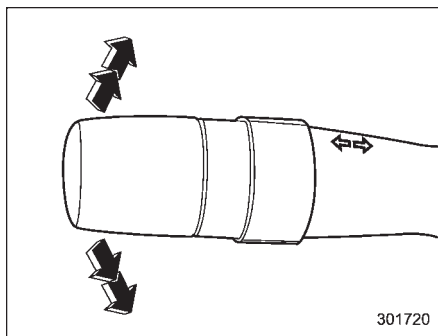
The daytime running light will automatically illuminate at reduced brightness when the following conditions are fulfilled.

- The engine is running.
- The light control switch is in the “AUTO” (if equipped) or off position.

NOTE

- If the parking brake is applied when you start the engine, the daytime running light will illuminate when the parking brake is released.
- When the headlight switch is in the “” or “” position, the daytime running light system is deactivated.
- For models with the auto on/off headlights, while the headlight switch is in the “AUTO” position and the headlights turn on automatically, the daytime running light is deactivated.

Turn signal lever



To activate the right turn signal, push the turn signal lever up. To activate the left turn signal, push the turn signal lever down. When the turn is finished, the lever will return automatically. If the lever does not return after cornering, return the lever to the neutral position by hand.

To signal a lane change, push the turn signal lever up or down slightly and hold it during the lane change. The turn signal indicator lights will flash in the direction of the turn or lane change. The lever will return automatically to the neutral position when you release it.

NOTE

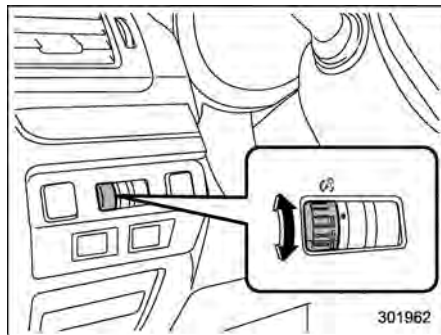
For models with a turn signal lever on the right side of the steering wheel, the pushing direction of the turn signal lever is the opposite of that described here.

■ One-touch lane changer (if equipped)

To flash the turn signal and turn signal indicator light three times, push the turn signal lever up or down slightly and immediately release it.

The operational/non-operational setting of the one-touch lane changer's can be changed by a SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact the nearest SUBARU dealer for details.

Illumination brightness control



The illumination brightness of the instrument panel dims under the following conditions.

- when the light switch is in the “ ” or “ ” position (except Australia models)
- when the light switch is in the “ ” or “ ” position (Australia models)
- when the light control switch is in the “AUTO” position and the headlights turn on automatically (models with auto on/off headlights: Refer to “Headlights” 3-90.)

You can also adjust the illumination brightness for better visibility in the following ways.

To brighten, turn the control dial upward.
To darken, turn the control dial downward.

NOTE

- When the control dial is turned fully upward, the illumination brightness becomes the maximum and the automatic dimming function does not work at all.
- The brightness setting is not canceled even when the ignition switch is turned to the “LOCK”/“OFF” position.

Headlight beam leveler (if equipped)

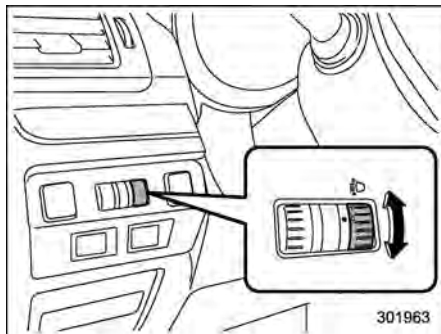
■ Automatic headlight beam leveler (models with HID headlights)

The HID headlights generate more light than conventional halogen headlights.

Therefore a driver of an oncoming vehicle may experience too much glare when your headlight beam height adjustment is high when the vehicle is carrying a heavy load.

The automatic headlight beam leveler adjusts the headlight beam height automatically and optimally according to the load being carried by the vehicle.

■ **Manual headlight beam leveler (models without HID headlights)**



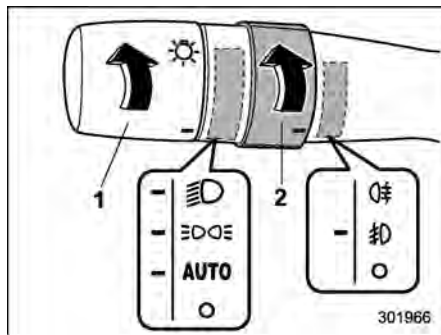
Adjust the headlight beam level with the following dial positions according to the number of passengers and load condition.

Dial position	Number of front seat occupants	Number of rear seat occupants	Load in the luggage compartment area	Trailer towing
0	1 or 2	0	No load	No
1	2	3	No load	No
2	2	3	Full load*	No
3	1	0	Full load*	No
	1	0	Full load*	Yes
	2	3	Full load*	Yes
4 and 5	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable

*: Up to maximum permissible weight

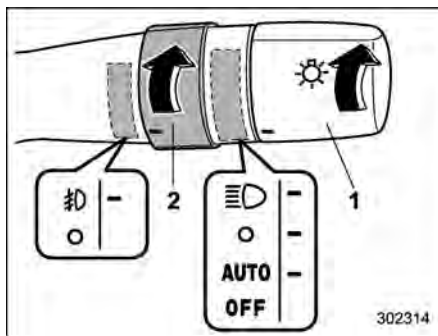
Fog light switch

■ Front fog light switch (if equipped)



Front fog light operating condition (except Australia models)

- 1) Headlight switch
- 2) Fog light switch



Front fog light operating condition (Australia models)

- 1) Headlight switch
- 2) Fog light switch

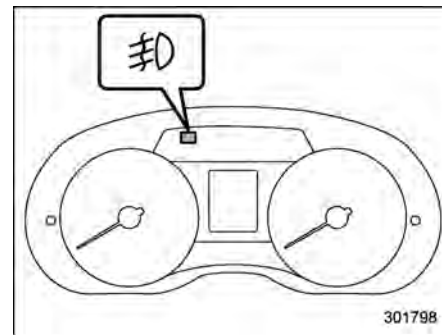
The front fog lights will turn on when the fog light switch is placed in the “” position while the headlights are in either of the following conditions.

- when the headlight switch is in the “” or “” position (except Australia models)
- when the headlight switch is in the “” or “” position (Australia models)
- for models with the auto on/off headlights, while the headlight switch is in the “” position and the headlights turn on automatically

To turn off the front fog lights, turn the

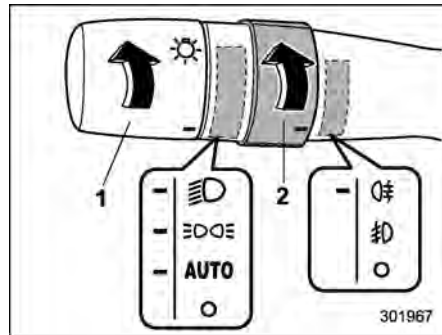
switch back down to the following positions.

- “” position (except Australia models)
- “” position (Australia models)



The indicator light on the combination meter will illuminate when the front fog lights are illuminated.

■ Rear fog light switch (if equipped)



Rear fog light operating condition

- 1) Headlight switch
- 2) Fog light switch

The rear fog light will turn on when the fog light switch is turned to the "ON" position while the headlights are in either of the following conditions.

- while the headlight switch is in the "OFF" or "ON" position
- for models with the auto on/off headlights, while the headlight switch is in the "AUTO" position and the headlights turn on automatically

The switch will return to the following position when released.

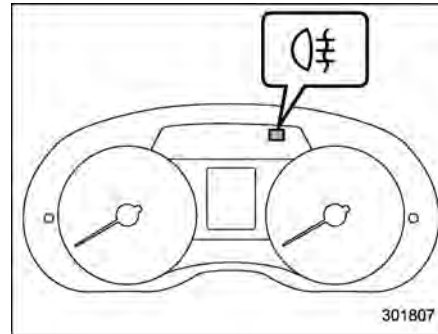
- "OFF" position (models with front fog

lights)

- "OFF" position (models without front fog lights)

To turn off the rear fog light, perform either of the following procedures.

- Turn the fog light switch upward back to the "OFF" position again (all models)
- Turn the fog light switch downward to the "OFF" position (models with front fog lights)



The indicator light on the combination meter will illuminate when the rear fog light is illuminated.

NOTE

To prevent switching off the rear fog light from being forgotten, the rear fog light circuit is designed so that it turns

off whenever one of the following operations is performed.

- The headlight switch is set to either the "OFF" or "ON" position.
- The headlight switch is set to the "AUTO" position and the headlights turn off (models with auto on/off headlights).
- The key is removed from the ignition switch (models without the "keyless access with push-button start system").
- The push-button ignition switch is turned off (models with the "keyless access with push-button start system").

However, this does not mean that the rear fog light illuminates when the headlight switch is set to "OFF" position or the ignition switch is turned to "ON" position again. So, if you want to reilluminate the rear fog light, turn the fog light switch to the "ON" position.

Wiper and washer



WARNING

In freezing weather, do not use the windshield washer until the windshield is sufficiently warmed by the defroster.

Otherwise the washer fluid can freeze on the windshield, blocking your view.



CAUTION

- Do not operate the washer continuously for more than 10 seconds, or when the washer fluid tank is empty. This may cause overheating of the washer motor. Check the washer fluid level frequently, such as at fuel stops.
- Do not operate the wipers when the windshield or rear window is dry. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades and cause the wiper motor to burn out. Before operating the wiper on a dry windshield or rear window, always use the windshield washer.

- In freezing weather, be sure that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windshield or rear window before switching on the wipers. Attempting to operate the wiper with the blades frozen to the window glass could cause not only the wiper blades to be damaged but also the wiper motor to burn out. If the wiper blades are frozen to the window glass, be sure to operate the defroster, windshield wiper deicer (if equipped) or rear window defogger before turning on the wiper.
- If the wipers stop during operation because of ice or some other obstruction on the window, the wiper motor could burn out even if the wiper switch is turned off. If this occurs, promptly stop the vehicle in a safe place, turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position and clean the window glass to allow proper wiper operation.
- Use clean water if windshield washer fluid is unavailable. In areas where water freezes in winter, use SUBARU Windshield Washer Fluid or the equivalent.

Refer to "Windshield washer fluid" 11-38.

Also, when driving the vehicle when there are freezing temperatures, use non-freezing type wiper blades.

- Do not clean the wiper blades with fuel or a solvent, such as paint thinner or benzene. This will cause deterioration of the wiper blades.
- For models with automatic rain sensing windshield wipers:
- When the wiper switch is in the "AUTO" position, do not touch the windshield near the rain light sensor and do not place a wet cloth on the windshield near the rain light sensor. Doing so may result in unexpected wiper operation and cause injury.
 - When washing the vehicle, make sure that the wiper is turned off. Otherwise, the wipers may operate unexpectedly and cause injury.
 - When having your vehicle washed in an automatic car wash, make sure that the wiper is turned off. Otherwise, the wipers may be damaged because

they may operate unexpectedly and car wash brushes could become tangled around them.

NOTE

- The windshield wiper motor is protected against overloads by a circuit breaker. If the motor operates continuously under an unusually heavy load, the circuit breaker may trip to stop the motor temporarily. If this happens, park your vehicle in a safe place, turn off the wiper switch, and wait for approximately 10 minutes. The circuit breaker will reset itself, and the wipers will again operate normally.
- Clean your wiper blades and window glass periodically with a washer solution to prevent streaking, and to remove accumulations of road salt or road film. Operate the windshield washer for at least 1 second so that washer solution will be sprinkled all over the windshield or rear window.
- Grease, wax, insects or other material on the windshield or the wiper blade results in jerky wiper operation and streaking on the glass. If you cannot remove those streaks after operating the washer or if the wiper operation is jerky, clean the outer surface of the windshield or rear window

and the wiper blades using a sponge or soft cloth with a neutral detergent or mild-abrasive cleaner. After cleaning, rinse the window glass and wiper blades with clean water. The glass is clean if no beads form on the glass when you rinse with water.

- If you cannot eliminate the streaking even after following this procedure, replace the wiper blades with new ones. For replacement instructions, refer to “Replacement of wiper blades”  11-40.

NOTE

For models with automatic rain sensing windshield wipers:

- When the wiper switch is turned to the “AUTO” position while the ignition switch is in the “ON” position, the wipers will operate once. This indicates that the wiper switch is in the “AUTO” position.
- When the wiper switch is in the “AUTO” position, the following situations may occur.
 - The wipers may operate if the rain light sensor or the windshield is vibrated or objects such as, insects, dirt, mud, etc. are covering them. Turn off the wiper unless it is raining or snowing.

– The wipers do not operate if the rain light sensor does not detect rain or snow. If necessary, push the wiper control lever down to the low speed position or high speed position.

– The wipers may not operate properly if the rain light sensor does not detect the amount of raindrops because of the water-repellent coating on the windshield, or dirt or ice on the upper half of the windshield.

– The rain light sensor may be malfunctioning if the wiper intermittent operation does not vary depending on the amount of rainfall. If necessary, turn the wiper switch to any position except for the “AUTO” position. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer and have the system inspected as soon as possible.

– The wipers stop operation if the ambient temperature decreases to -15°C (5°F) or lower. The wipers resume operation when the ambient temperature increases to -10°C (14°F) or higher. If you need to operate the wipers under -15°C (5°F), push the wiper control lever down to the low speed position or

high speed position.

– The wipers may not operate if the temperature around the rain light sensor is more than 80°C (176°F) because the system cannot detect the amount of raindrops under these temperatures.

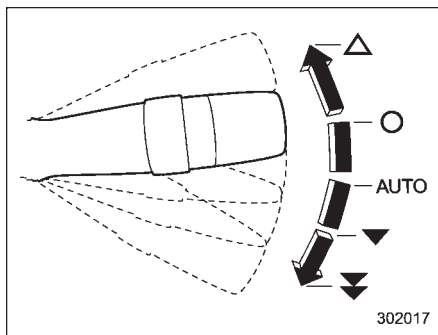
● This system is also equipped with the vehicle speed interlocking intermittent wiper function. When the vehicle stops, the wiper operation interval will become longer compared with that while driving.

● This system may malfunction in a location with strong radio waves or noise.

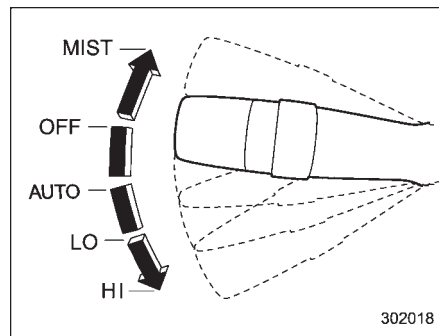
■ Windshield wiper and washer switches

The wiper operates only when the ignition switch is in the “ON” position.

▼ Windshield wipers (models with automatic rain sensing windshield wipers)



Except Australia models



Australia models

△ / MIST: Mist (for a single wipe)

○ / OFF: Off

AUTO / AUTO: Automatic operation

▼ / LO: Low speed

▼ / HI: High speed

To turn the wipers on, push the wiper control lever down. With the wiper switch in the “AUTO” position, the wipers operate automatically when the rain light sensor detects falling rain. The wiper timing is automatically adjusted depending on the amount of rain.

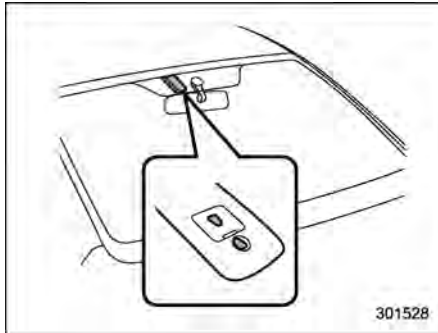
To turn the wipers off, return the lever to the “OFF”/“○” position.

For a single wipe of the wipers, push the lever up. The wipers operate until you release the lever.

NOTE

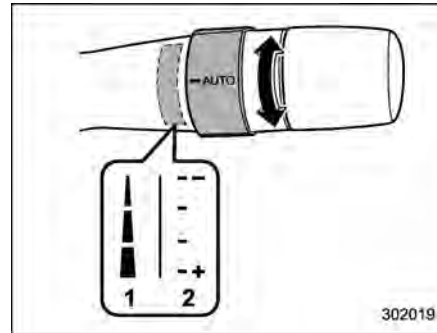
The automatic adjusting mode of the wiper timing can be changed from the rain-sensing mode to the vehicle speed interlocking mode. The setting can be changed by a SUBARU dealer. For more details, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer.

▽ Rain light sensor



The rain light sensor is on the windshield glass.

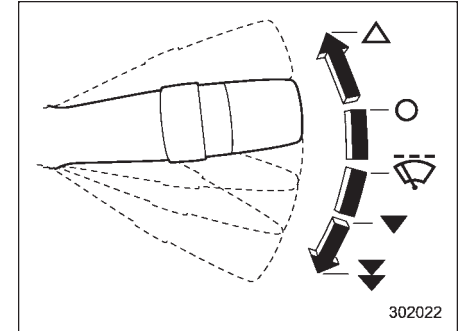
▽ Sensor sensitivity control



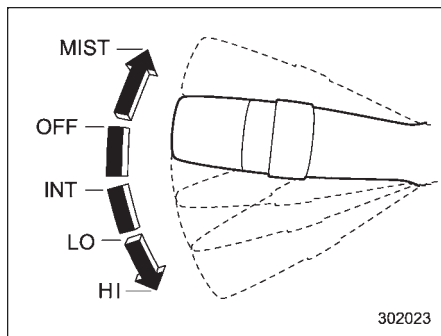
- 1) Except Australia models
- 2) Australia models

Turn the dial to adjust the sensitivity of the rain light sensor for wiper control. Turn the dial upward to increase the sensitivity. Turn the dial downward to decrease the sensitivity.

▼ Windshield wipers (models without automatic rain sensing windshield wipers)



Except Australia models



Australia models

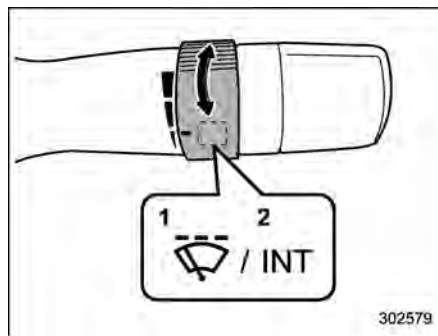
- △ / MIST: Mist (for a single wipe)
- / OFF: Off
- ▽ / INT: Intermittent
- ▼ / LO: Low speed
- ▼ / HI: High speed

To turn the wipers on, push the wiper control lever down.

To turn the wipers off, return the lever to the "○"/"OFF" position.

For a single wipe of the wipers, push the lever up. The wipers operate until you release the lever.

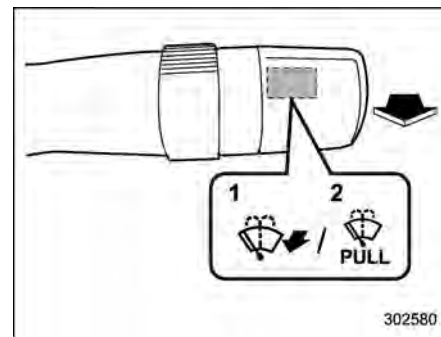
▽ Wiper intermittent time control



- 1) Except Australia models
- 2) Australia models

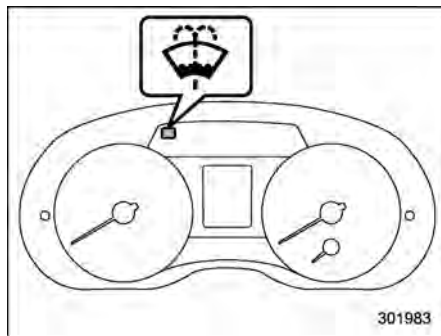
When the wiper switch is in the "▽"/"INT" position, turn the dial to adjust the operating interval of the wiper. The operating interval can be adjusted in several steps from the shortest interval to the longest.

▼ Windshield washer



- 1) Except Australia models
- 2) Australia models

To wash the windshield, pull the wiper control lever toward you. The washer fluid sprays until you release the lever. The wipers operate while you pull the lever.

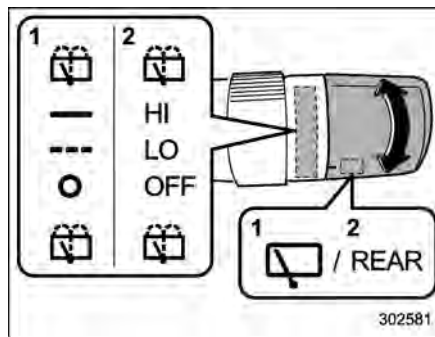
NOTE

The windshield washer fluid warning light illuminates when the washer fluid level in the tank has dropped to the lower limit. If the warning light illuminates, refill the tank with fluid. For the refilling procedure, refer to “Windshield washer fluid” 11-38.

NOTE

If your vehicle is equipped with a headlight washer, pulling the wiper control lever for more than 1 second also causes the headlight washer to operate when the headlight switch is in the “ ” position. For further details, refer to “Headlight washer” 3-104.

Rear window wiper and washer switch



- 1) Except Australia models
- 2) Australia models

: Washer (accompanied by wiper operation)
 — / HI: Continuous
 --- / LO: Intermittent
 ○ / OFF: Off
 : Washer (accompanied by wiper operation)

▼ Rear wiper

To turn the rear wiper on, turn the knob switch upward.

To turn the wiper off, return the knob switch to the “○”/“OFF” position.

With the switch turned to the “---”/“LO” position, the rear wiper will operate intermittently at intervals corresponding to the

vehicle speed. In this position, when you move the select lever to the “R” position (CVT models) or the shift lever to the reverse position (MT models), the rear wiper will switch to continuous operation. When you move the select lever/shift lever from the “R” (reverse) position to another position, the rear wiper will return to intermittent operation.

NOTE

- Even if the rear wiper switch is in the off position, while the shift lever/select lever is in the “R” position with the windshield wiper operating continuously, the rear wiper will operate intermittently.
- If a cargo carrier or other object that disturbs rear wiper operation is attached, the rear wipers may be damaged when they operate. In cases like this, set the reverse gear interlocked rear wiper to “non-operational”. For more details, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer.

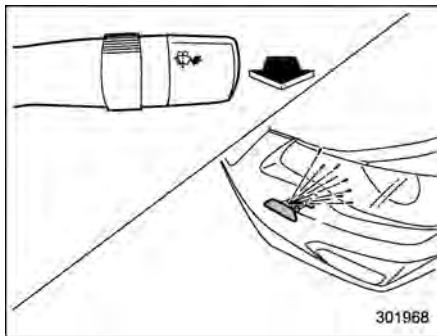
▼ Washer

To wash the rear window while the rear wiper is operating, turn the knob switch upward to the “ ” position. The washer fluid sprays until you release the knob.

To wash the rear window when the rear

wiper is not in use, turn the knob switch downward to the “” position. The washer fluid sprays and the wiper operates until you release the knob.

Headlight washer (if equipped)



If you pull the wiper control lever toward you and hold it for more than 1 second with the ignition switch in the “ON” position, the headlight washer operates together with the windshield washer in the following conditions.

- when the light switch is in the “” position (except Australia models)
- when the light switch is in the “” position (Australia models)
- when the light switch is in the “AUTO” position and the headlights illuminate automatically (models with auto on/off headlights)

The windshield washer stops spraying

washer fluid as soon as you release the wiper control lever. The headlight washer sprays the washer fluid for approximately 1 second and then stops automatically.



CAUTION

Do not operate the washer if the washer fluid tank is empty. This may cause overheating of the washer motor. Check washer fluid level frequently, such as at fuel stops.

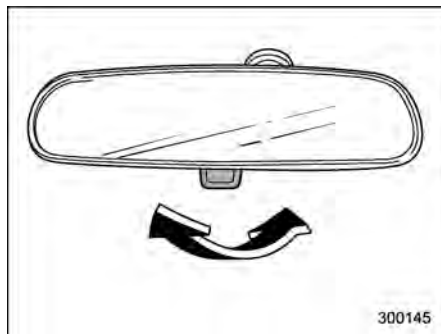
NOTE

When the area around the nozzle cover of the headlight washer is frozen, remove the ice before using.

Mirrors

Always check that the inside and outside mirrors are properly adjusted before you start driving.

■ Inside mirror



The inside mirror has a day and night position. Pull the tab at the bottom of the mirror toward you for the night position. Push it away for the day position. The night position reduces glare from headlights.

■ Outside mirrors

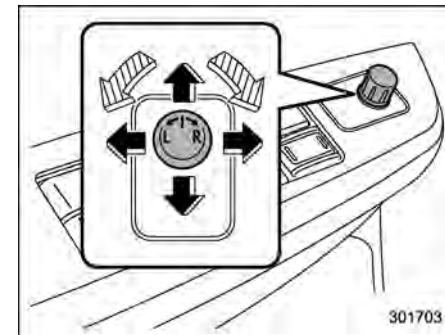
▼ Convex mirror (passenger side)



WARNING

Objects look smaller in a convex mirror and farther away than when viewed in a flat mirror. Do not use the convex mirror to judge the distance of vehicles behind you when changing lanes. Use the inside mirror (or glance backwards) to determine the actual size and distance of objects that you view in convex mirror.

▼ Remote control mirror switch



⬅: Select side to adjust

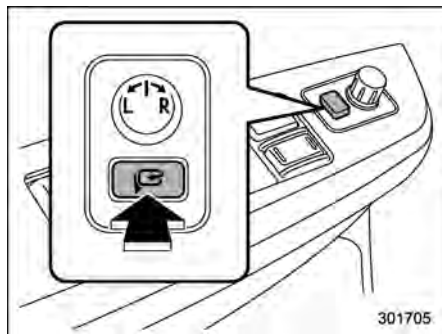
➡: Direction control

The remote control mirrors operate only when the ignition switch is in the "ON" or "ACC" position.

1. Turn the control switch to the side that you want to adjust. "L" is for the left mirror, "R" is for the right mirror.
2. Move the control switch in the direction you want to move the mirror.
3. Return the control switch to the neutral position to prevent unintentional operation.

The mirrors can also be adjusted manually.

▼ **Power folding mirror switch (if equipped)**



The power folding mirror switch operates only when the ignition switch is in the “ON” or “ACC” position.

To fold the outside mirrors, press the power folding mirror switch. To unfold the mirrors, press the switch again.

NOTE

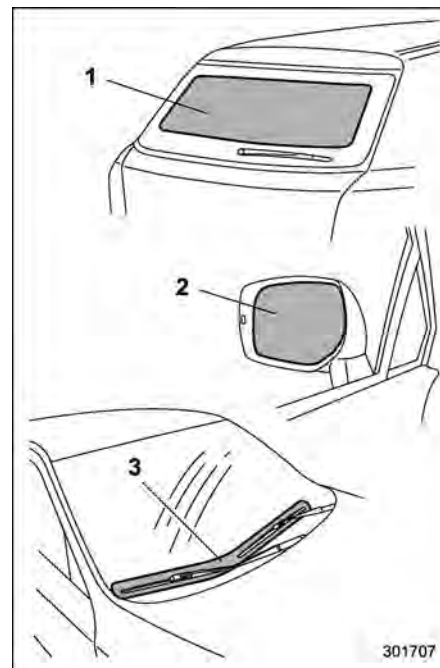
- When the temperature is low, the outside mirrors may stop during switch operation. If that occurs, push the switch again. When the outside mirrors do not work by switch operation, move them several times manually. This makes it possible to operate them by switch operation.

- When you operate the power folding

mirror switch continuously, it may not work. This is not a malfunction. Operate the switch again after waiting for a short period of time.

- When you unfold the outside mirrors manually, the mirrors may become wobbly. Be sure to unfold the mirrors by switch operation. If the outside mirrors are still wobbly, fold the mirrors again and then unfold them by switch operation.

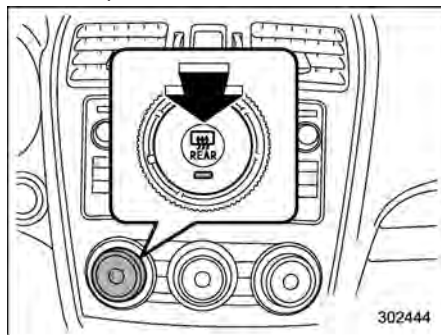
Defogger and deicer



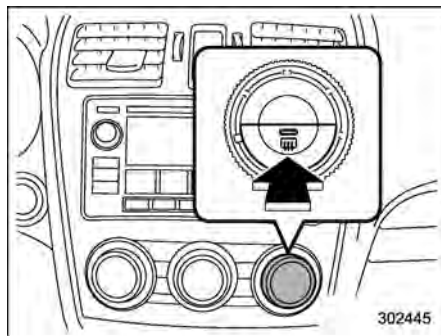
- 1) Rear window defogger
- 2) Outside mirror defogger (if equipped)
- 3) Windshield wiper deicer (if equipped)

The defogger and deicer system is acti-

vated only when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.



Type A climate control system



Type B or type C climate control system

To activate the defogger and deicer system, press the control switch that is

located on the climate control panel. The rear window defogger, outside mirror defogger and windshield wiper deicer are activated simultaneously. The indicator light on the control switch illuminates while the defogger and deicer system is activated.

To turn them off, press the control switch again. They also turn off when the ignition switch is turned to the "ACC" or "LOCK"/"OFF" position.

The defogger and deicer system will automatically shut off after approximately 15 minutes. If the rear window and the outside mirrors have been cleared and the windshield wiper blades have been deiced completely before that time, press the control switch to turn them off. If defrosting, defogging or deicing is not complete, you have to press the control switch to turn them on again.

It is possible for the defogger and deicer system to be set to continuous operation mode by a SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer for details. Also, for models with a multi function display, it is possible to set the defogger and deicer system for the continuous operation mode. For details, refer to "Defogger setting" 3-81.

If the battery voltage drops below the permissible level, continuous operation of the defogger and deicer system is canceled and the system stops operating.



CAUTION

- To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not operate the defogger and deicer system continuously for any longer than necessary.
- Do not use sharp instruments or window cleaner containing abrasives to clean the inner surface of the rear window. They may damage the conductors printed on the window.

NOTE

- Turn on the defogger and deicer system if the wipers are frozen to the windshield.
- If the windshield is covered with snow, remove the snow so that the windshield wiper deicer works effectively.
- While the defogger and deicer system is in the continuous operation mode, if the vehicle speed remains at 15 km/h (9 mph) or lower for 15 minutes, the windshield wiper deicer

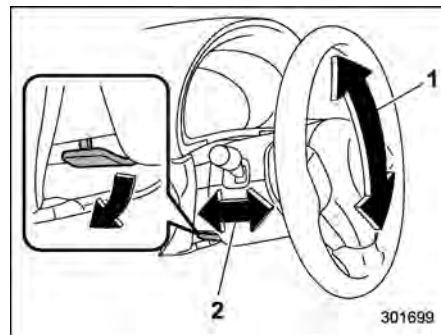
– CONTINUED –

automatically stops operating, though the rear window defogger and outside mirror defogger maintain continuous operation in this condition.

Tilt/telescopic steering wheel

WARNING

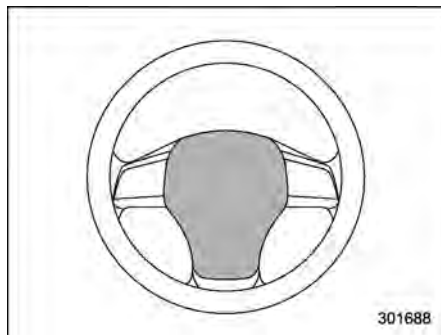
- Do not adjust the steering wheel tilt/telescopic position while driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control and result in personal injury.
- If the lever cannot be raised to the fixed position, adjust the steering wheel again. It is dangerous to drive without locking the steering wheel. This may cause loss of vehicle control and result in personal injury.



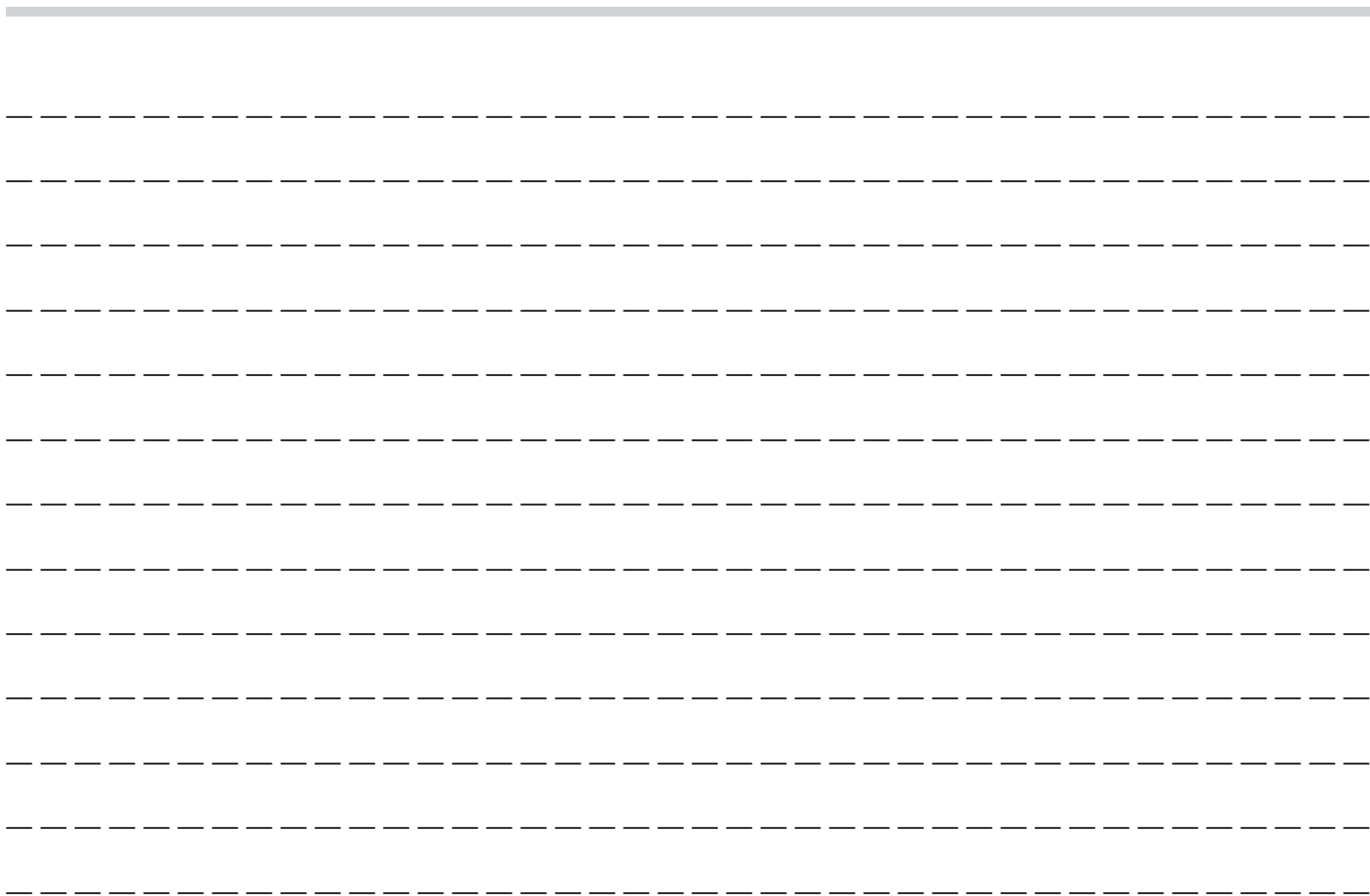
- 1) Tilt adjustment
- 2) Telescopic adjustment

1. Adjust the seat position. Refer to "Front seats" 1-2.
2. Pull the tilt/telescopic lock lever down.
3. Move the steering wheel to the desired level.
4. Pull the lever up to lock the steering wheel in place.
5. Make sure that the steering wheel is securely locked by moving it up and down, and forward and backward.

Horn



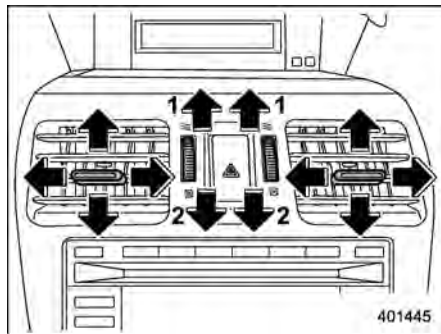
To sound the horn, push the horn pad.



Ventilator control.....	4-2	Type B.....	4-10
Center and side ventilators.....	4-2	Type C.....	4-10
Climate control panel.....	4-3	Operating tips for heater and air conditioner	4-10
Type A	4-3	Cleaning ventilation grille.....	4-10
Type B	4-4	Efficient cooling after parking in direct sunlight.....	4-10
Type C	4-5	Lubrication oil circulation in the refrigerant circuit.....	4-11
Automatic climate control operation	4-6	Checking air conditioning system before summer season	4-11
Type A	4-6	Cooling and dehumidifying in high humidity and low temperature weather conditions	4-11
Type B and C	4-6	Air conditioner compressor shut-off when engine is heavily loaded.....	4-11
Temperature sensors.....	4-7	Refrigerant for your climate control system	4-11
Manual climate control operation	4-7	Air filtration system	4-12
Airflow mode selection.....	4-7	Replacing an air filter.....	4-12
Temperature control	4-8		
Fan speed control	4-9		
Air conditioner control	4-9		
Air inlet selection	4-9		
Defrosting	4-10		
Type A	4-10		

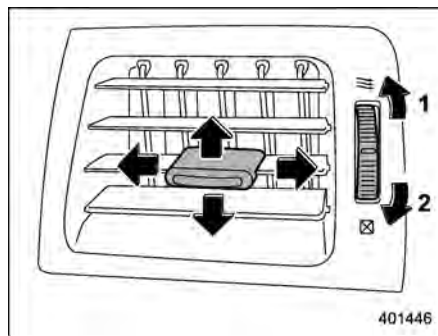
Ventilator control

■ Center and side ventilators



Center ventilators

- 1) Open
- 2) Close



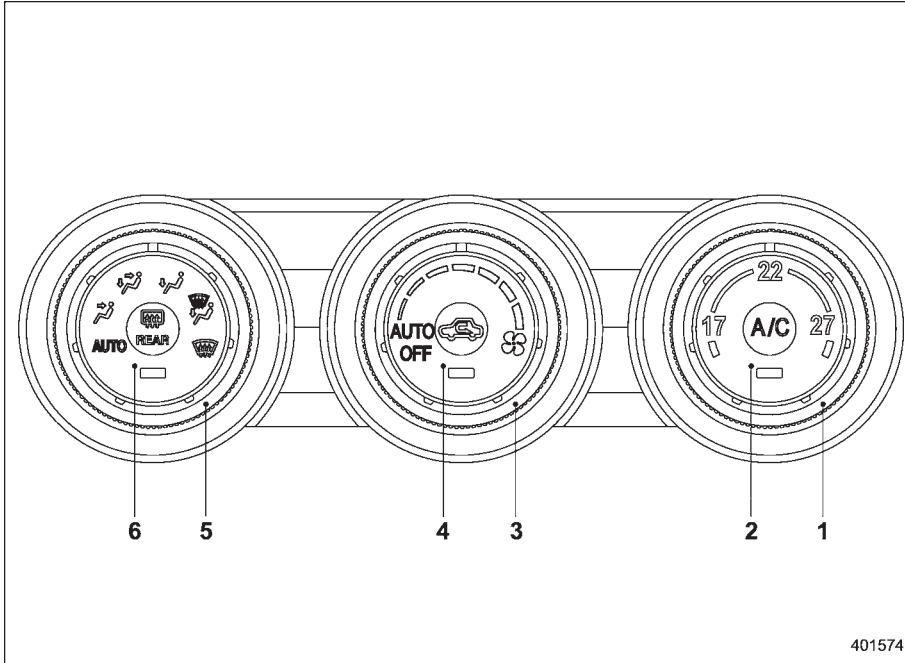
Side ventilators

- 1) Open
- 2) Close

To adjust the flow direction, move the tab.
To open or close the ventilator, turn the thumb-wheel up or down.

Climate control panel

■ Type A



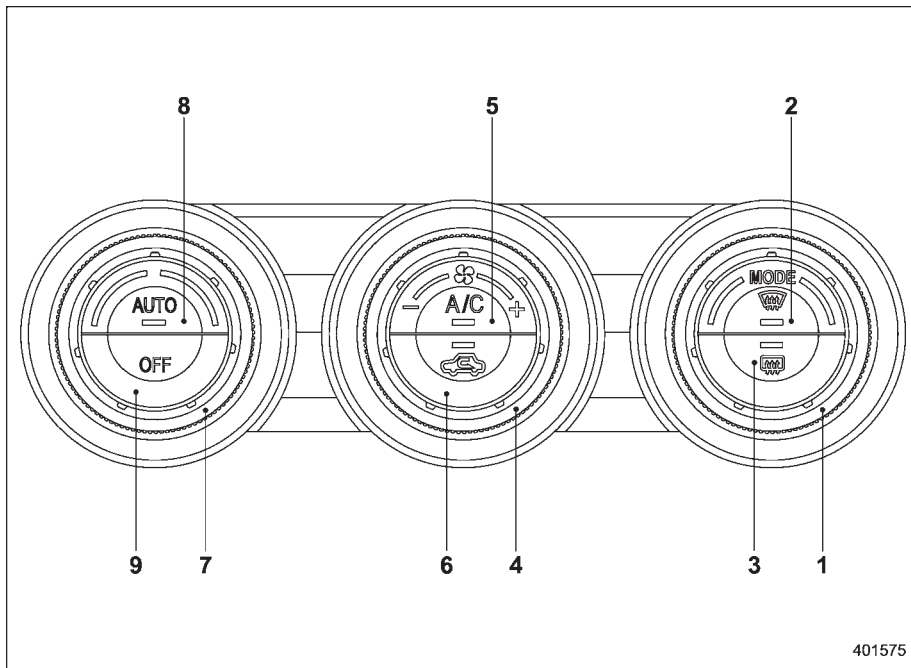
- 1) Temperature control dial (Refer to "Automatic climate control operation" 4-6 and/or "Temperature control" 4-8.)
- 2) Air conditioner button (Refer to "Air conditioner control" 4-9.)
- 3) Fan speed control dial (Refer to "Automatic climate control operation" 4-6 and/or "Fan speed control" 4-9.)
- 4) Air inlet selection button (Refer to "Air inlet selection" 4-9.)
- 5) Airflow mode selection dial (Refer to "Automatic climate control operation" 4-6 and/or "Airflow mode selection" 4-7.)
- 6) Rear window defogger button (Refer to "Defogger and deicer" 3-106.)

NOTE

The controllable temperature range may differ depending on the model.

401574

■ Type B

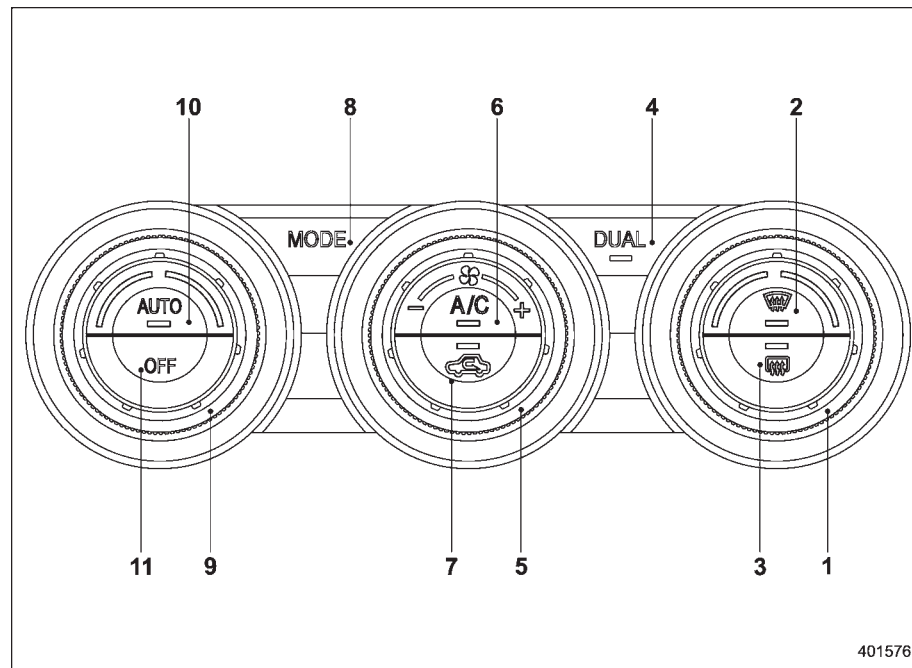


- 1) Airflow mode selection dial (Refer to "Airflow mode selection" 4-7.)
- 2) Defroster button (Refer to "Airflow mode selection" 4-7.)
- 3) Rear window defogger button (Refer to "Defogger and deicer" 3-106.)
- 4) Fan speed control dial (Refer to "Fan speed control" 4-9.)
- 5) Air conditioner button (Refer to "Air conditioner control" 4-9.)
- 6) Air inlet selection button (Refer to "Air inlet selection" 4-9.)
- 7) Temperature control dial (Refer to "Automatic climate control operation" 4-6 and/or "Temperature control" 4-8.)
- 8) AUTO button (Refer to "Automatic climate control operation" 4-6.)
- 9) OFF button (Refer to "Automatic climate control operation" 4-6.)

▼ For regional specification

The illustration on the left is a typical example for left-hand drive models. For right-hand drive models, the locations of some buttons/dials are different to that shown in the illustration.

■ Type C



- 1) Temperature control dial (Refer to "Automatic climate control operation" 4-6 and/or "Temperature control" 4-8.)
- 2) Defroster button (Refer to "Airflow mode selection" 4-7.)
- 3) Rear window defogger button (Refer to "Defogger and deicer" 3-106.)
- 4) DUAL mode button (Refer to "DUAL" mode (type C) 4-9.)
- 5) Fan speed control dial (Refer to "Fan speed control" 4-9.)
- 6) Air conditioner button (Refer to "Air conditioner control" 4-9.)
- 7) Air inlet selection button (Refer to "Air inlet selection" 4-9.)
- 8) Airflow mode selection button (Refer to "Airflow mode selection" 4-7.)
- 9) Temperature control dial (Refer to "Automatic climate control operation" 4-6 and/or "Temperature control" 4-8.)
- 10) AUTO button (Refer to "Automatic climate control operation" 4-6.)
- 11) OFF button (Refer to "Automatic climate control operation" 4-6.)

▼ For regional specification

The illustration on the left is a typical example for left-hand drive models. For right-hand drive models, the locations of some buttons/dials are different to that shown in the illustration.

401576

Automatic climate control operation

When this mode is selected, the fan speed, airflow distribution, air-inlet control, and air conditioner compressor operation are automatically controlled. To activate this mode, perform the following.

NOTE

- Even when cooling is not necessary, setting the temperature much lower than the current outlet air temperature turns on the air conditioner compressor automatically and the “A/C” indicator light on the control panel illuminates.
- The air conditioner may not operate in the following cases:
 - when the cabin temperature is low
 - when the ambient temperature decreases close to 0°C (32°F)
- The controllable temperature range may vary depending on the regional specifications of the vehicle.

■ Type A

1. Turn the airflow mode selection dial and fan speed control dial to the “AUTO” position.

2. Set the preferred temperature using the temperature control dial.

NOTE

Each function can be individually set to the AUTO mode independently of the other functions. Any function set to the AUTO mode is controlled automatically. Any function not set to the AUTO mode can be manually adjusted as desired.

3. To turn off the climate control system, turn the fan speed control dial to the “OFF” position.

■ Type B and C

1. Press the “AUTO” button. The indicator light “FULL AUTO” on the display illuminates.
2. Set the preferred temperature using the temperature control dial.

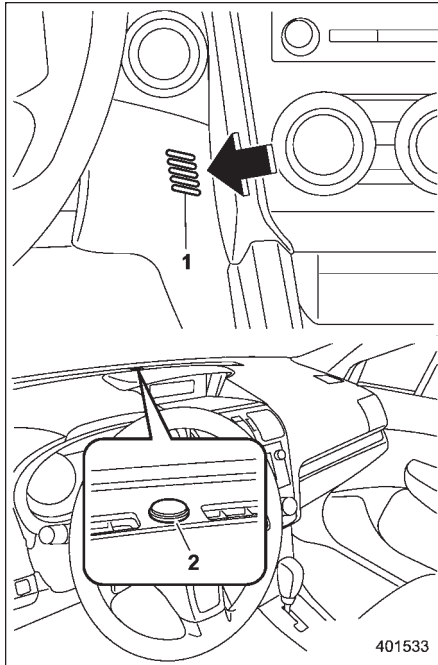
NOTE

If you operate any of the buttons on the control panel other than the “OFF” button, rear window defogger button and temperature control dial(s) during FULL AUTO mode operation, the “FULL” indicator light on the control panel will turn off and the “AUTO” indicator light will remain illuminated.

You can then manually control the system as desired using the button you operated. To change the system back to the FULL AUTO mode, press the “AUTO” button.

3. To turn off the climate control system, press the “OFF” button.

■ Temperature sensors



- 1) Interior air temperature sensor
- 2) Solar sensor

The automatic climate control system employs several sensors. These sensors are delicate. If they are not treated

properly and become damaged, the system may not be able to control the interior temperature correctly. To avoid damaging the sensors, observe the following precautions.

- Do not subject the sensors to impact.
- Keep water away from the sensors.
- Do not cover the sensors.

The sensors are located as follows.

- Solar sensor: beside the windshield defroster grille
- Interior air temperature sensor: next to the steering column
- Outside temperature sensor: near the front bumper opening

Manual climate control operation

■ Airflow mode selection

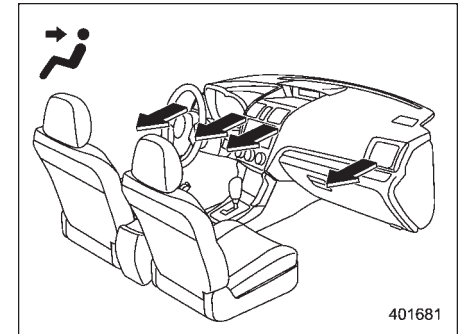
To select the airflow mode:

- **Type A and B:** Turn the airflow mode selection dial.
- **Type C:** Press the airflow mode selection button.

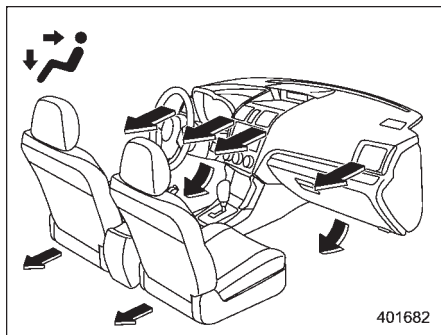
To select the defrost mode:

- **Type A:** Turn the airflow mode selection dial and select the “” mode.
- **Type B and C:** Press the defroster button.

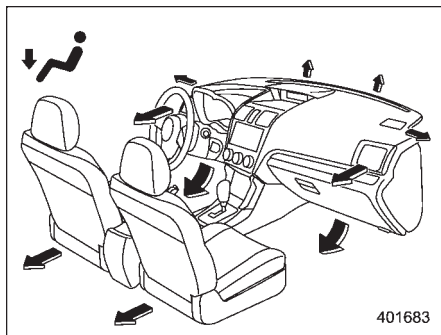
Airflow modes are as follows.



(Ventilation): Instrument panel outlets

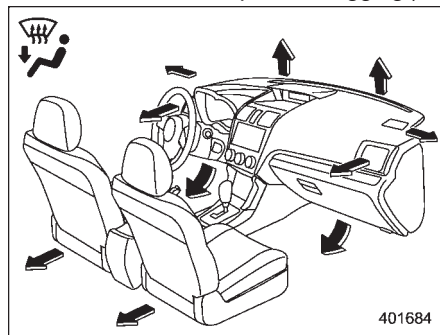


(Bi-level): Instrument panel outlets and foot outlets

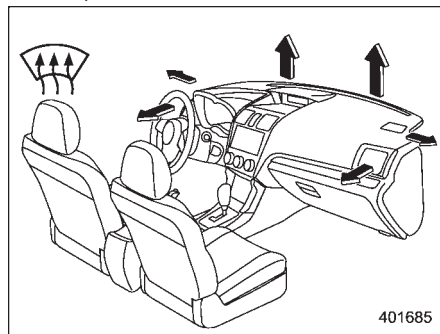


(Heat): Foot outlets, both side outlets of the instrument panel and some through windshield defroster outlets (A small amount of air flows to the windshield and

both side windows to prevent fogging.)



(Heat-def): Windshield defroster outlets, foot outlets and both side outlets of the instrument panel (Refer to "Defrosting" ¶ 4-10.)



(Defrost): Windshield defroster outlets

and both side outlets of the instrument panel (Refer to "Defrosting" ¶ 4-10.)

NOTE

When the "☼" mode or "☼" mode is selected, the air conditioner compressor automatically operates to more quickly defog the windshield. At the same time, the air inlet selection is automatically set to the outside air mode.

■ Temperature control

NOTE

The controllable temperature range may vary depending on the regional specifications of the vehicle.

▼ Type A

Turn the temperature control dial to set the preferred interior temperature. With the dial set to your preferred temperature, the system automatically adjusts the temperature of air supplied from the outlets so that the preferred temperature is achieved and maintained.

If the dial is turned fully counterclockwise, the system provides maximum cooling performance. If the dial is turned fully clockwise, the system provides maximum heating performance.

▼ Type B and C

Turn the temperature control dial over a range from the blue side (cool) to red side (warm) to regulate the temperature of airflow from the air outlets.

▼ “DUAL” mode (type C)

You can change the setting of the driver's side and front passenger's side temperature independently by selecting the “DUAL” mode.

You can select the “DUAL” mode by performing either of the following procedures.

- Press the “DUAL” button
- Turn the passenger's side temperature control dial

The “DUAL” mode can be canceled by pressing the “DUAL” button.

When the “DUAL” mode is selected:

Turn the driver's side dial to set the driver's side temperature. Turn the front passenger's side dial to set the front passenger's side temperature.

When the “DUAL” mode is canceled:

Set the desired temperature by turning the driver's side dial.

■ Fan speed control

The fan operates only when the ignition switch is in the “ON” position. Select the preferred fan speed by turning the fan speed control dial.

■ Air conditioner control

The air conditioner operates only when the engine is running.

Press the air conditioner button while the fan is in operation to turn on the air conditioner. When the air conditioner is on, the “A/C” indicator light illuminates.

To turn off the air conditioner, press the button again.

NOTE

For efficient defogging or dehumidifying in cold weather, turn on the air conditioner. However, if the ambient temperature decreases to approximately 0°C (32°F), the air conditioner compressor will stop operating.

■ Air inlet selection

Select the air inlet by pressing the air inlet selection button.

ON position (recirculation): Interior air is recirculated inside the vehicle. Press the air inlet selection button to the ON position

for fast cooling with the air conditioner or when driving on a dusty road.

OFF position (outside air): Outside air is drawn into the passenger compartment. Press the air inlet selection button to the OFF position when the interior has cooled to a comfortable temperature and the road is no longer dusty.



WARNING

Continued operation in the ON position may fog up the windows. Switch to the OFF position as soon as the outside conditions are no longer dusty.

Defrosting

NOTE

When the “” or “” mode is selected, the air conditioner compressor automatically operates to more quickly defrost the windshield. At the same time, the air inlet selection is automatically set to the outside air mode.

■ Type A

Select the “” or “” mode by turning the airflow mode selection dial to defrost or dehumidify the windshield and front door windows.

■ Type B

Select the “” mode by pressing the defroster button, or select the “” mode by turning the airflow mode selection dial to defroster or to dehumidify the windshield and front door windows.

If the defroster button is pressed while the “” mode is selected, it will return to the previous mode before selecting the “” mode.

■ Type C

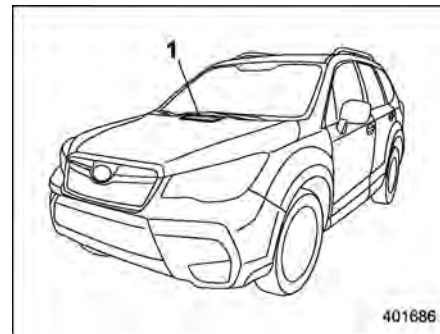
Select the “” mode by pressing the defroster button, or select the “” mode

by pressing the airflow mode selection button to defroster or to dehumidify the windshield and front door windows.

If the defroster button is pressed while the “” mode is selected, it will return to the previous mode before selecting the “” mode.

Operating tips for heater and air conditioner

■ Cleaning ventilation grille



1) Front ventilation inlet grille

Always keep the front ventilation inlet grille free of snow, leaves, or other obstructions to ensure efficient heating and defrosting. Since the condenser is located in front of the radiator, this area should be kept clean because cooling performance is impaired by any accumulation of insects and leaves on the condenser.

■ Efficient cooling after parking in direct sunlight

After parking in direct sunlight, drive with the windows open for a few minutes to

allow outside air to circulate into the heated interior. This results in quicker cooling by the air conditioner. Keep the windows closed during the operation of the air conditioner for maximum cooling efficiency.

■ Lubrication oil circulation in the refrigerant circuit

Operate the air conditioner compressor at a low engine speed (at idle or low driving speeds) a few minutes each month during the off-season to circulate its oil.

■ Checking air conditioning system before summer season

Check the air conditioner unit for refrigerant leaks, hose conditions, and proper operation each spring. We recommend that you have your SUBARU dealer perform this check.

■ Cooling and dehumidifying in high humidity and low temperature weather conditions

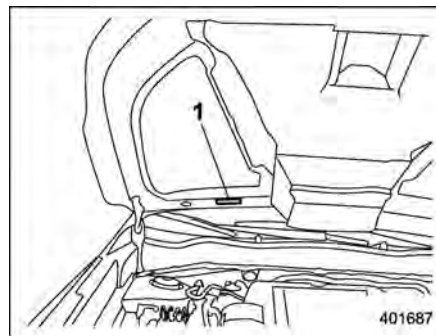
Under certain weather conditions (high relative humidity, low temperatures, etc.) a small amount of water vapor emission from the air outlets may be noticed. This condition is normal and does not indicate

any problem with the air conditioning system.

■ Air conditioner compressor shut-off when engine is heavily loaded

To improve acceleration and fuel consumption, the air conditioner compressor is designed to temporarily shut off during air conditioner operation whenever the accelerator pedal is fully depressed such as during rapid acceleration or when driving up a steep incline.

■ Refrigerant for your climate control system



1) Air conditioner label

Your air conditioner uses ozone friendly

refrigerant HFO-1234yf or HFC134a. Therefore, the method for adding, changing or checking the refrigerant is different from the method for CFC12 (freon). Also, the methods for adding, changing or checking HFO-1234yf and HFC134a refrigerant are different. Before adding, changing or checking the refrigerant, check the air conditioner label in the location shown in the illustration to confirm which type of refrigerant is used in your vehicle. We recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer for service. Repairs needed as a result of using the wrong refrigerant are not covered under the warranty.

Air filtration system

Replace the filter element according to the maintenance schedule. Refer to "Maintenance schedule" 11-3. The schedule should be followed to maintain the filter's dust collection ability. Under extremely dusty conditions, the filter should be replaced more frequently. It is recommended that you have your filter checked or replaced by your SUBARU dealer. For replacement, we recommend that you use only a genuine SUBARU air filter kit.



CAUTION

We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer if the following occurs, even if it is not yet time to change the filter:

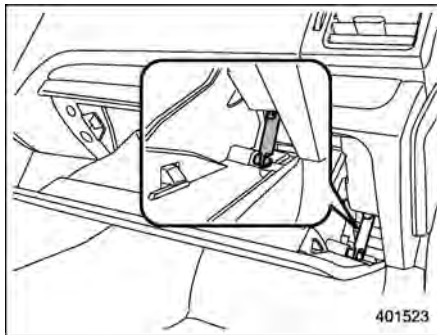
- Reduction of the airflow through the vents.
- Windshield gets easily fogged or misted.

NOTE

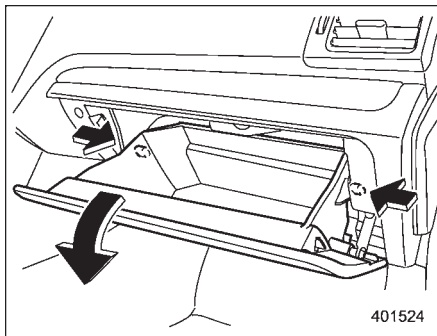
The filter can influence the air conditioning, heating and defroster performance if not properly maintained.

■ Replacing an air filter

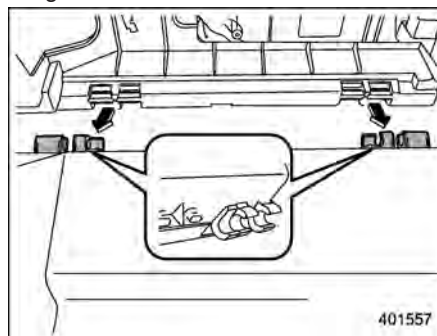
1. Remove the glove box.
 - (1) Open the glove box.



- (2) Remove the damper shaft from the glove box.

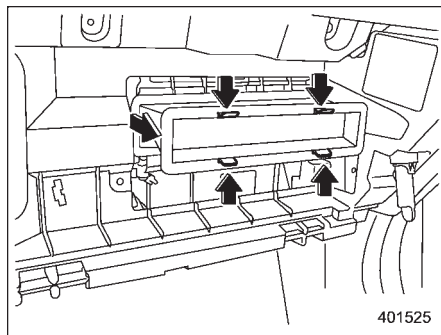


- (3) Push in the stoppers located on both sides of the glove box and then pull down the glove box as far as it will go.

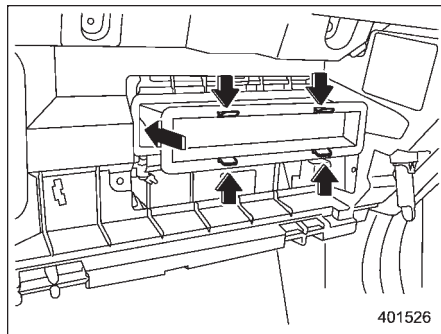


- (4) Pull out the glove box horizontally and remove the hinge portion. When doing this, be careful not to damage the hinge.

2. Carefully read the caution label that is attached as shown in the illustration.



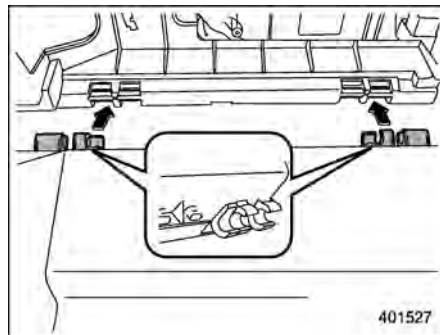
3. Remove the air filter.



4. Replace the air filter element with a new one.

CAUTION

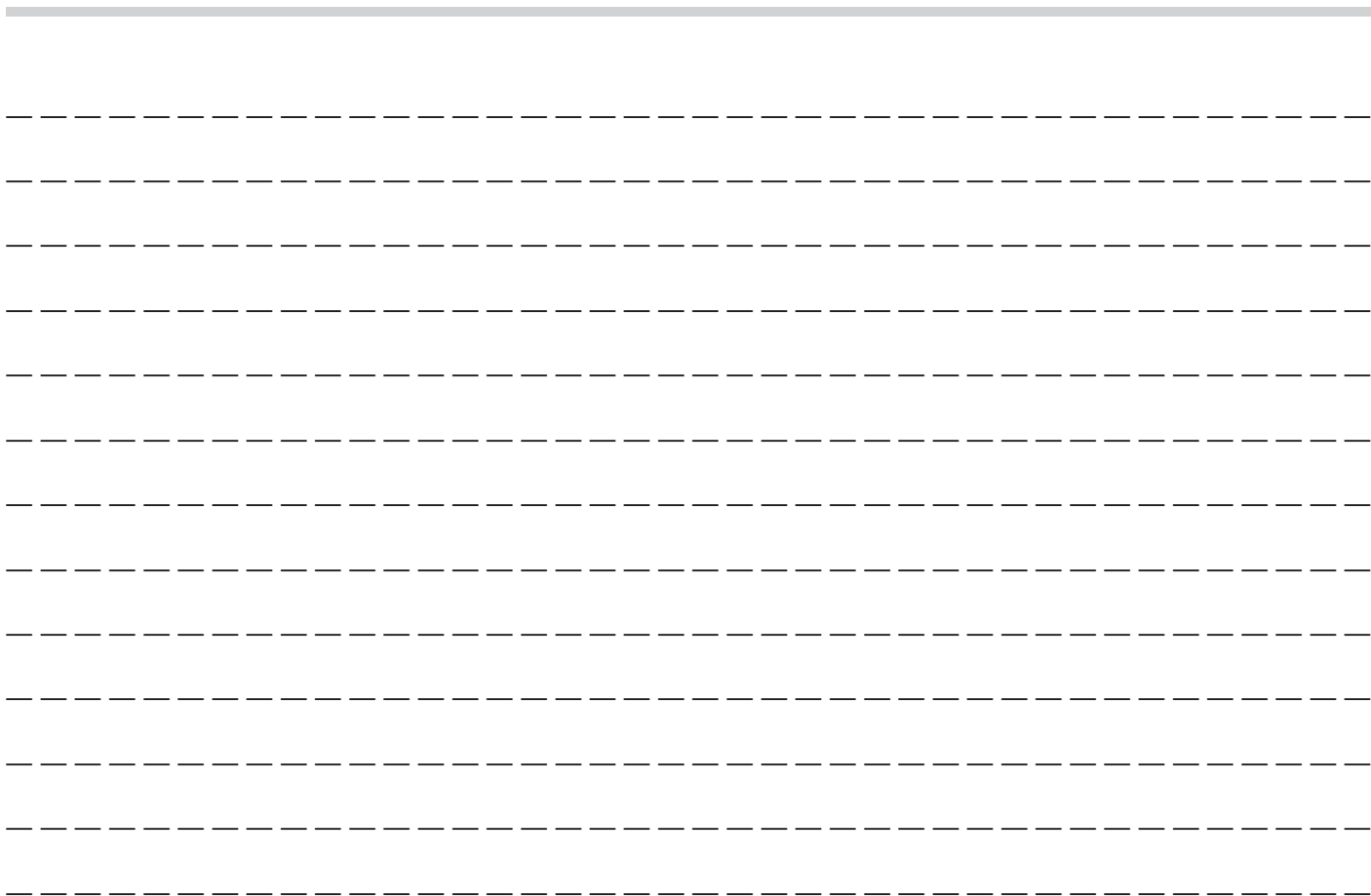
The arrow mark on the filter must point UP.



5. Reinstall the glove box, and connect the damper shaft.

6. Close the glove box.

7. Attach the service label to the driver's side door pillar.



Antenna system	5-3	Folder selection	5-18
Roof antenna	5-3	How to eject a CD from the player	5-18
FM reception	5-3	When the following messages are displayed	5-19
Installation of accessories	5-4	Auxiliary input jack (if equipped)	5-19
Audio set	5-4	Precautions to observe when handling a compact disc	5-20
Type A audio set (if equipped)	5-5	USB storage device / iPod® operations	5-22
Type B audio set (if equipped)	5-6	Play file	5-22
Power and sound controls	5-7	Connectable USB storage device	5-22
Power switch and volume control	5-7	Connectable iPod® models	5-23
Sound control	5-7	Connecting USB storage device / iPod®	5-23
Adjustable level of each mode	5-9	How to play back	5-24
FM/AM radio operation	5-10	To select a track from the beginning	5-25
FM/AM selection (type A audio)	5-10	To select a chapter from the beginning when connecting iPod®	5-25
FM selection (type B audio)	5-10	Fast-forwarding and rewinding	5-25
AM selection (type B audio)	5-10	Repeating	5-25
Tuning	5-10	Random playback	5-26
Radio Data System (RDS) on FM (type A audio)	5-11	SCAN (only when connecting USB storage device)	5-26
Displaying radio PS (Program Service Name) (type A audio)	5-12	Selecting category (only when connecting iPod®)	5-26
Station preset	5-13	Display selection	5-27
CD player operation	5-14	Folder selection (only when connecting USB storage device)	5-27
Play file	5-14	When "CHECK DEVICE" is displayed	5-27
How to insert a CD	5-15	Audio control buttons (if equipped)	5-27
How to play back a CD	5-15	MODE button	5-28
To select a track from the beginning	5-15	"∧" and "∨" switch	5-28
Fast-forwarding and rewinding	5-16	Volume control switch	5-29
Repeating	5-16		
Random playback	5-17		
Scan	5-17		
Display selection	5-18		

MUTE button (models without Hands-free system).....	5-29
Bluetooth® audio (if equipped).....	5-30
Media format.....	5-30
Setting Bluetooth® audio	5-30
Bluetooth® audio operation.....	5-31

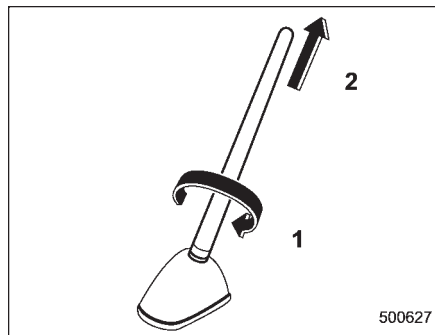
Hands-free system (if equipped)	5-33
Safety precautions.....	5-33
Using the Hands-free system	5-34
Bluetooth® setting	5-43
Tips for the Hands-free system	5-45
Certification for the Hands-free system.....	5-46

Antenna system

■ Roof antenna

CAUTION

- Be sure to remove the antenna rod before entering garages, parking towers and other locations with low ceilings.
- Remove the antenna rod before washing your car at a car wash. If the antenna rod is left attached, it may scratch the roof.
- When reinstalling the removed antenna rod, be sure to fully tighten it.



- 1) Unscrew
- 2) Remove

The roof antenna is installed in the center at the rear of the roof.

The antenna rod can be removed by unscrewing it from its base.

■ FM reception

Although FM is normally static free, reception can be affected by the surrounding area, atmospheric conditions, station strength and transmitter distance. Buildings or other obstructions may cause momentary static, flutter or station interference. If reception continues to be unsatisfactory, switch to a stronger station.

Installation of accessories

We recommend that you always consult your SUBARU dealer before installing a citizen band radio or other transmitting device in your vehicle. Such devices may cause the electronic control system to malfunction if they are incorrectly installed or if they are not suited for the vehicle.

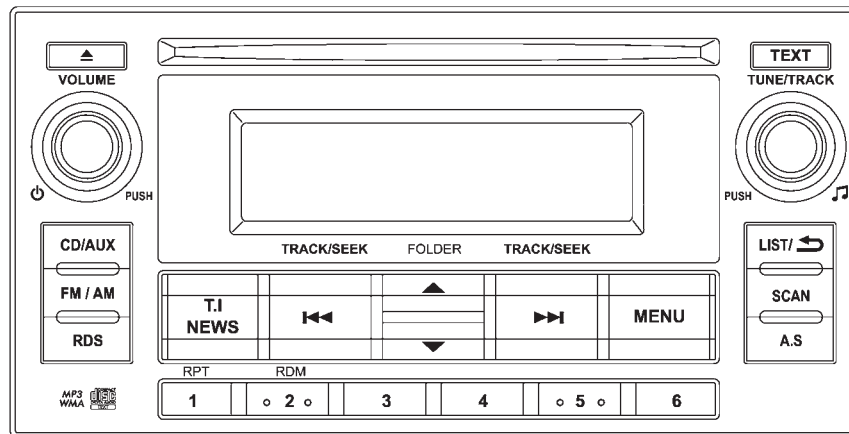
Audio set

Your SUBARU may be equipped with one of the following audio sets. Refer to the pages indicated in this section for operating details.

NOTE

- If a cell phone is placed near the audio set, it may cause the audio set to emit noise when the phone receives calls. This noise does not indicate an audio set malfunction. Note that a cell phone should be placed as far as possible from the audio set.
- The design may be slightly different from the following illustration depending on the model.

■ Type A audio set (if equipped)



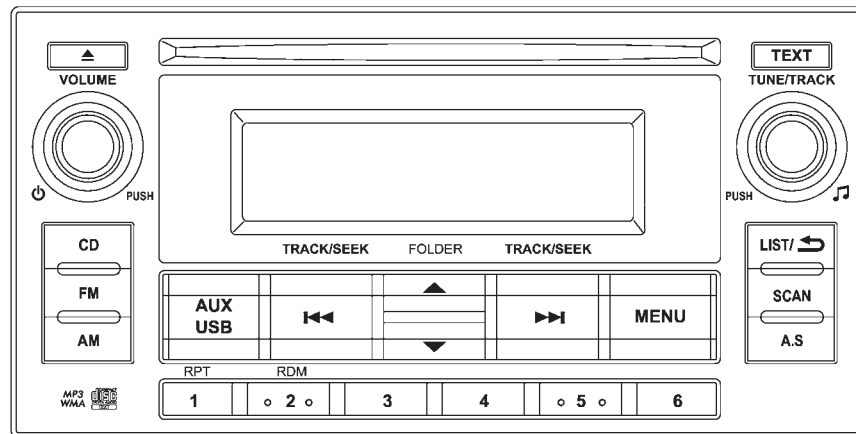
The audio set will operate only when the ignition switch is in the “ACC” or “ON” position.

- Power and sound controls: refer to page 5-7
- Radio operation: refer to page 5-10
- CD (compact disc) player operation: refer to page 5-14
- Auxiliary input jack: refer to page 5-19
- USB storage device/iPod® operation: refer to page 5-22
- Bluetooth® audio: refer to page 5-30
- Hands-free system: refer to page 5-33

▼ For regional specification

The left illustration is a typical example for left-hand drive models. For right-hand drive models, some of the switch locations are the opposite of those shown in the illustration.

■ Type B audio set (if equipped)



500650

The audio set will operate only when the ignition switch is in the “ACC” or “ON” position.

- Power and sound controls: refer to page 5-7
- Radio operation: refer to page 5-10
- CD (compact disc) player operation: refer to page 5-14
- Auxiliary input jack: refer to page 5-19
- USB storage device/iPod® operation: refer to page 5-22
- Bluetooth® audio (if equipped): refer to page 5-30
- Hands-free system (if equipped): refer to page 5-33

Power and sound controls

■ Power switch and volume control

Power and volume control dial



The dial is used for both power (ON/OFF) and volume control. The radio is turned ON and OFF by pressing the dial, and the volume is controlled by turning the dial.

■ Sound control

NOTE

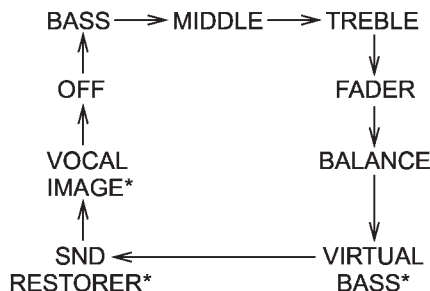
For models with multi function display, this feature can be set via the multi function display unit. For details, refer to "Sound setting" 3-88.

▼ Tone and balance control

Sound control dial



Each brief press of the sound control dial changes the control modes in the following sequence.



*: If equipped

Choose the preferred level for each mode by turning the sound control dial.

The control function returns to the tune/track control mode after approximately 8 seconds.

NOTE

- **VIRTUAL BASS** compensates for low pitch.
- **SND RESTORER** compensates for high pitch.
- **VOCAL IMAGE** controls the sound image localization.

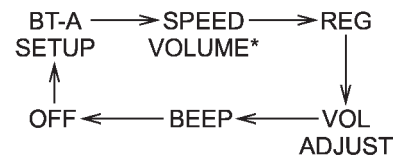
▼ Other sound setting controls

"MENU" button



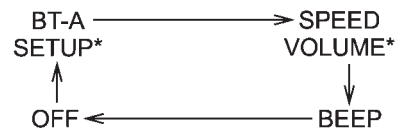
Each brief press of the "MENU" button changes the control modes in the following sequence.

Type A audio:



*: If equipped

Type B audio:



*: If equipped

Choose the preferred settings for each mode by turning the sound control dial.

The control function returns to the tune/track control mode after approximately 8

seconds.

▽ SVC setting (if equipped)

SVC (Speed Volume Control) is a function that automatically adjusts the volume according to the vehicle speed. As the vehicle speed increases, the audio volume automatically increases to match the vehicle speed, in order to create a pleasant listening environment even as the driving noise increases. The amount of this automatic volume change can be set in the range from OFF to 2. The initial setting is OFF.

▽ BEEP setting

A beep sound (operation sound) that occurs when the audio system is operated can be set ON/OFF. The initial setting is ON.

▽ REG setting (type A audio)

This function prevents the radio from selecting local stations during AF searches. It is possible to turn the function ON/OFF by selecting the "REG" setting. You can change the setting only when the Radio Data System (RDS) is on. For details about RDS, refer to "Radio Data System (RDS) on FM (type A audio)" 5-11.

▽ VOL ADJUST setting (type A audio)

It is possible to preset the volume that the set will use when it breaks into playback with broadcasts of traffic information, news bulletins and emergency announcements.

If you select the "VOL ADJUST" setting, the preset break-in volume can be adjusted.

NOTE

- If the preset break-in volume is lower than the current volume when break-in reception occurs, the volume does not change to the preset break-in level. (It remains at the current level.)
- When break-in reception finishes, the volume returns to the original level.

■ Adjustable level of each mode

Mode		Range of levels (displayed)	Initial setting	Turn counterclockwise	Turn clockwise
Volume	Volume control	0 to 40	15	For less volume	For more volume
	AUX volume control	0 to 40	15	For less volume	For more volume
Tone and balance	Bass control	-8 to +8	0	For less bass sound	For more bass sound
	Midrange control	-8 to +8	0	For less midrange sound	For more midrange sound
	Treble control	-8 to +8	0	For less treble sound	For more treble sound
	Balance	L9 to R9	0	Right channel attenuated	Left channel attenuated
	Fader	R9 to F9	0	Front attenuated	Rear attenuated
	Virtual bass control (if equipped)	OFF to ON	ON	OFF	ON
	Sound restorer (SND restorer) (if equipped)	OFF to ON	ON	OFF	ON
	Vocal image control (if equipped)	L9 to R9	0	Right attenuated	Left attenuated
Other settings	REG (type A audio)	OFF to ON	OFF	OFF	ON
	VOL ADJUST (type A audio)	0 to 40	17	For less volume	For more volume
	SPEED VOLUME	OFF to 2	OFF	For less auto volume change	For more auto volume change
	BEEP	OFF to ON	ON	OFF	ON

FM/AM radio operation

NOTE

- If a cell phone is placed near the radio, it may cause the radio to emit noise when the phone receives calls. This noise does not indicate a radio malfunction.
- For models with multi function display, the selected reception mode and frequency will be displayed when either the “FM/AM” button (type A) or the “FM” button/“AM” button (type B) is pressed. When receiving a broadcast, the station name may be displayed. For details, refer to “Audio screen” 3-51.

■ FM/AM selection (type A audio)

“FM/AM” button	
----------------	---

Press the “FM/AM” button when the radio is off to turn on the radio.

Press the “FM/AM” button when the radio is on to select the preferred reception mode.

Each time the “FM/AM” button is briefly pressed, the radio will change in the following sequence starting from the last

radio band that you selected.



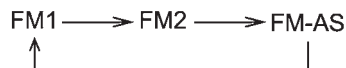
■ FM selection (type B audio)

“FM” button	
-------------	---

Press the “FM” button when the radio is off to turn on the radio.

Press the “FM” button when the radio is on to select the preferred reception mode.

Each time the “FM” button is briefly pressed, the radio will change in the following sequence starting from the last radio band that you selected.



■ AM selection (type B audio)

“AM” button	
-------------	---

Press the “AM” button when the radio is off to turn on the radio.

Each time the “AM” button is briefly pressed, the radio will change in the following sequence starting from the last radio band that you selected.



■ Tuning

▼ Manual tuning

“TUNE” dial	
-------------	---

Turn the “TUNE” dial clockwise to increase the tuning frequency and turn the “TUNE” dial counterclockwise to decrease it.

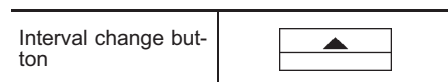
Every time the dial is turned, the frequency interval will be changed 9 kHz (10 kHz*¹) in the AM mode and 0.05 MHz (0.1 MHz*²) in the FM mode.

*1: For type B audio: The tuning frequency interval can be set to either 9 kHz or 10 kHz to suit the broadcasting area.

*2: For type A audio for Australia, in the FM mode, when the “TUNE” dial is turned the frequency will change in 0.1 MHz increments/decrements.

▽ Tuning frequency interval change function for AM waveband (type B audio)

Select the tuning frequency interval (9 kHz or 10 kHz) that is appropriate for the broadcasting area where the radio is used.



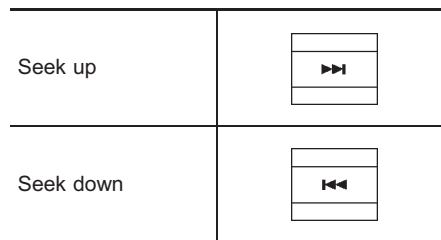
To select an interval of 9 kHz, press the  preset button and the interval change button at the same time. The display will show "9 kHz STEP".

To select an interval of 10 kHz, press the  preset button and the interval change button at the same time. The display will show "10 kHz STEP".

▼ Stereo indicator

The stereo indicator "ST" will illuminate when an FM stereo broadcast is received.

▼ Seek tuning (SEEK)



If you press the  or  side of the "SEEK" button briefly, the radio will automatically search for a receivable station and stop at the first one it finds.

This function may not be available when radio signals are weak. When this happens, perform manual tuning to select the preferred station.

▼ Scan tuning (SCAN)



If you press the "SCAN" button briefly, the radio will switch to the preset scan mode. In this mode, the radio scans through the preset channels until a receivable station is found. The radio will briefly stop at the station while displaying the frequency, after which scanning will continue until all

of the preset channels have been scanned.

Automatic scanning may not function properly if the station reception is weakened by distance from the station or proximity to tall buildings and hills.

▼ Local seek function (type A audio)



You can turn the local seek function on or off during FM or AM reception by pressing and holding the "RDS" button.

■ Radio Data System (RDS) on FM (type A audio)

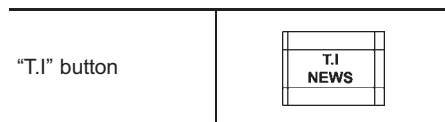
RDS is a system in which inaudible digital information is transmitted in addition to normal FM radio broadcasts. Your car radio uses the RDS information to offer you many benefits.

▼ Alternative Frequencies (AF)

If the vehicle moves beyond the area of the station that the radio is receiving and subsequently enters an area where the same station is available on a different frequency, the radio automatically searches that frequency. Press the "RDS" button briefly to change the ON

and OFF mode of the alternative frequency (AF) searching function. The default setting is ON (Europe models) or OFF (Australia models).

▼ Traffic information (T.I.)



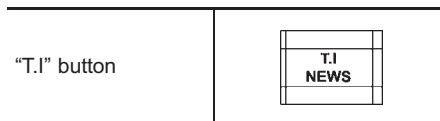
When a station begins broadcasting traffic information, this function causes the set to automatically receive it so that the driver can hear it. If the driver is listening to another audio source, the set breaks into that playback with the traffic information.

It is possible to turn the traffic information break-in function ON/OFF by pressing the “T.I” button briefly. While the function is set to ON, the “TI” indicator illuminates on the display.

When the audio power is OFF, pressing the “T.I” button causes the audio power to turn ON and the traffic information break-in function to be turned ON.

The “TA” indicator illuminates on the display (for “traffic announcements”) while the set is actually receiving traffic information.

▼ News bulletins



When a station begins broadcasting news, this function causes the set to automatically receive it so that the driver can hear it. If the driver is listening to another audio source, the set breaks into that playback with the news.

It is possible to turn the news bulletin break-in function ON/OFF by pressing and holding the “T.I” button.

When the audio power is OFF, pressing and holding the “T.I” button causes the audio power to turn ON and the news bulletin break-in function to be turned ON.

NOTE

- The initial setting of the break-in function is OFF.
- While the news bulletin break-in function is ON, the “NEWS” indicator illuminates on the display.

▼ Emergency announcements (ALARM)

When a station begins broadcasting an emergency announcement, the set automatically receives it so that the driver can hear it. If the driver is listening to another audio source, the set breaks into that playback with the emergency announcement. This function is permanently ON.

■ Displaying radio PS (Program Service Name) (type A audio)



If the PS (Program Service Name) is available, pressing the “TEXT” button changes the display between PS and frequency. The initial setting is “PS”.

NOTE

The maximum number of characters that can be displayed is 8.

■ Station preset

▼ How to preset stations

1. Select the preferred reception mode.
2. Select the preferred station.
3. Press and hold one of the preset buttons (from **1** to **6**) to store the frequency. If the button is pressed briefly, the preceding selection will remain in the memory.

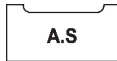
NOTE

- Up to six stations for each reception mode may be preset.
- If the connection between the radio and battery is broken for any reason such as vehicle maintenance or radio removal, all stations stored in the preset buttons are cleared. If this occurs, it is necessary to reset the preset buttons.

▼ Selecting preset stations

1. Select the preferred reception mode.
2. Press the preferred preset button (from **1** to **6**) briefly.

▼ Auto-store

"A.S" button	
--------------	---

Using the Auto-store function, you can automatically store 6 stations on the current waveband by pressing and holding the "A.S" button. Use Auto-store to quickly find the strongest stations, for example when traveling through different reception areas.

NOTE

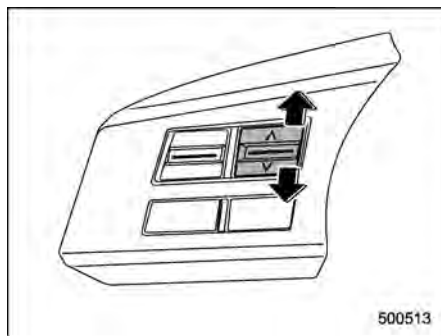
- When you use Auto-store, the new stations replace any stations previously stored.
- Interrupting Auto-store: If you accidentally press the Auto-store button, you can cancel the Auto-store function before the Auto-store function has been completed as follows.
 - switching to the other source mode
 - switching to the other band
 - turning the "TUNE/TRACK" dial
 - operating the "SEEK" button

▼ Displaying and selecting preset stations

NOTE

For models with multi function display, the list of the preset broadcasting stations will be displayed when the "LIST" button is briefly pressed during AM/FM reception. For details, refer to "Audio screen"  3-51.

"LIST" button	
"TUNE" dial	



Seek switch

1. Briefly press the "LIST" button during AM/FM reception to display the radio screen.
2. Display the preferred preset station by performing either of the following procedures.
 - Turn the "TUNE" dial
 - Briefly press the seek switch to the " $\wedge$ " or " $\vee$ " side
3. Press the "TUNE" dial to select the displayed station.

CD player operation

NOTE

- Make sure to always insert a disc with the label side up. If a disc is inserted with the label side down, the player displays "CHECK DISC".

Refer to "When the following messages are displayed" 5-19.

- If a disc is inserted during a radio broadcast, the disc will interrupt the broadcast.
- After the last track finishes, the disc will automatically return to the first track on the disc and will automatically play back.
- The player is designed to be able to play music CD-Rs and music CD-RWs, but it may not be able to play certain ones.
- Mini CDs (i.e., 8 cm/3 inch CDs) are not supported, and if inserted, they will be immediately ejected.
- CDs that can be played back are accompanied by the following restrictions.
 - Maximum number of folders: 255
 - Maximum number of files in a folder: 255
 - Maximum number of files on a CD: 510

■ Play file

NOTE

- Copyright protected MP3/WMA/AAC files will not be played by the system. The player will automatically skip to the next file (track).
- WMA9 Lossless, WMA9 Professional and WMA9 voice cannot be played.

MP3:

- Based on MPEG1, 2 and 2.5 Layer3
- Sampling rate (kHz): 48, 44.1, 32, 24, 22.05, 16, 12, 11.025, 8
- Bit rate (kbps): 8 to 320
- Supports variable bit rates

WMA:

- Based on Windows Media Audio 9
- Sampling rate (kHz): 48, 44.1, 32
- Bit rate (kbps): 32 to 192

AAC:

- Based on MPEG4 AAC
- Sampling rate (kHz): 48, 44.1, 32, 24, 22.05, 16, 12, 11.025, 8
- Bit rate (kbps): 8 to 320
- Number of channels: 1 to 2ch

■ How to insert a CD

Hold a disc with a finger in the center hole while gripping the edge of the disc, then insert it into the slot (with the label side up) and the player will automatically pull the disc into position.

NOTE

DO NOT INSERT TWO DISCS INTO THE DISC INSERTION SLOT AT A TIME.

■ How to play back a CD

NOTE

For models with multi function display, the following information will be displayed while playing a CD.

- Album name (except when playing an MP3/WMA/AAC file)
- Folder name (when playing an MP3/WMA/AAC file)
- Artist name
- Song title

For details, refer to “Audio screen” 3-51.

▼ When there is no CD inserted

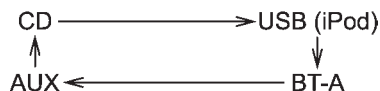
Properly insert a CD. Refer to “How to insert a CD” 5-15.

When a CD is loaded, the player will start playback of the CD, beginning with the

first track.

▼ When a CD is in the player (type A)

Each brief press of the  button changes the modes in the following sequence.



When the CD mode is selected, the player will start playback.

▼ When CD is in the player (type B)

When the  button is pressed, the player will start playback.

■ To select a track from the beginning

“TRACK” dial	
Skip to the beginning of the next track	
Skip to the beginning of the current track	

Use either of the following methods to skip to the beginning of the next track. Each time, the indicated track number will increase.

- Turn the “TRACK” dial clockwise.
- Press the  button briefly.

Use either of the following methods to skip to the beginning of the current track. Each time, the indicated track number will decrease.

- Turn the “TRACK” dial counterclockwise.
- Press the  button briefly.

NOTE

With an MP3, WMA or AAC:

- Skipping past the last track will take you back to the first track in the folder.
- Skipping past the first track will take you to the last track in the folder.

■ Fast-forwarding and rewinding

Fast-forwarding	
Rewinding	

Press and hold the “” button to fast-forward the track. Release the button to stop fast-forwarding.

Press and hold the “” button to rewind the track. Release the button to stop rewinding.

NOTE

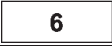
- If you fast-forward to the end of the last track, fast-forwarding will stop and the player will start playback beginning with the first track. For an MP3, WMA or

AAC folder, the player will start playback beginning with the first track of the next folder.

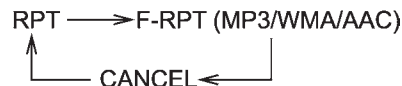
- If you rewind to the beginning of the first track, rewinding will stop and the player will start playback. For an MP3, WMA or AAC folder, the player will start playback beginning with the first track of the current folder.

■ Repeating

To repeat a track, briefly press the following button (“RPT” button) while the track is playing.

Left-hand drive models	RPT 
Right-hand drive models	RPT 

Each time you briefly press the button, the mode changes in the following sequences.



NOTE

- The “RPT” indication refers to the repeat playback of a single track. It repeats the track that is playing.
- The “F-RPT” indication refers to the repeat playback of a folder. It repeats all of the tracks in the folder. It is possible to select the function when the MP3/WMA/AAC format track is playing.

To cancel the track repeat-play mode, briefly press the “RPT” button and select CANCEL. The “RPT” indicator will turn off, and the normal playback mode will be resumed.

NOTE

The repeat-play mode will be cancelled if you perform any of the following steps.

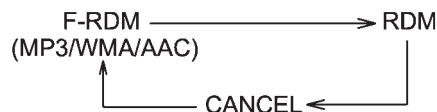
- Press the “RPT” button and select CANCEL.
- Press the “RDM” button.
- Press the  button.
- Press the “SCAN” button.

■ Random playback

To playback tracks at random, briefly press the following button ("RDM" button) while a track is playing.

Left-hand drive models	RDM ○ 2 ○
Right-hand drive models	RDM ○ 5 ○

Each time you briefly press the button, the mode changes in the following sequences.



NOTE

● The "RDM" indication refers to the random playback of the tracks. It randomly repeats the tracks on the CD. It is possible to select the function when formats other than the MP3/WMA/AAC format CD is playing.

● The "F-RDM" indication refers to the random playback in the folder. It randomly repeats all of the tracks in the folder. It is possible to select the function when an MP3/WMA/AAC format track is playing.

To cancel the random playback mode, briefly press the "RDM" button and select CANCEL. The "RDM" indicator will turn off, and the normal playback mode will be resumed.

NOTE

Random playback will be cancelled if you perform any of the following steps.

- Briefly press the "RDM" button and select CANCEL.
- Press the "RPT" button.
- Press the "▼" or "▲" side of the "FOLDER" button (only when an MP3/WMA/AAC format track is playing).
- Press the  button.
- Press the "SCAN" button.

■ Scan

"SCAN" button	SCAN
---------------	--

The scan mode lets you listen to the first 10 seconds of each track in succession.

Press the "SCAN" button to start scanning upward beginning with the track following the currently selected one.

After all tracks on the disc/in the folder have been scanned, normal playback will be resumed. To cancel the scan mode, press the "SCAN" button again.

NOTE

● The scan mode will be cancelled if you perform any of the following steps.

- Press the "RPT" button.
- Press the "RDM" button.
- Turn the "TUNE/TRACK" dial.
- Press the "▼" or "▲" side of the "FOLDER" button (only when an MP3/WMA/AAC track is playing).
- Press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" side of the "TRACK/SEEK" button.
- Press the "SCAN" button.
- Select the radio or AUX mode.
- Turn off the power of the audio equipment.
- Turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position.
- When the "SCAN" button is pressed while the MP3, WMA or AAC format data is played back, the system scans within the current folder.
- When the "SCAN" button is pressed while data (except for the MP3, WMA or

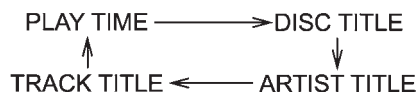
AAC formats) is played back, the system scans the disc.

■ Display selection

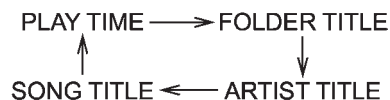
"TEXT" button	
---------------	--

If you press the "TEXT" button during playback, the indication will change to the next one in the following sequence.

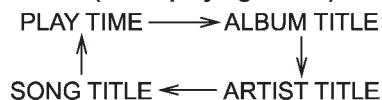
For CD-DA:



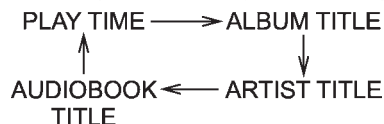
For MP3/WMA/AAC:



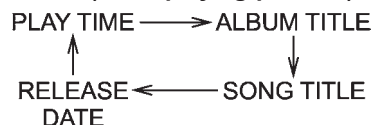
For iPod® (when playing music):



For iPod® (when playing audiobook):



For iPod® (when playing podcast):



▼ Page (track/folder title) scroll

If you press the "TEXT" button again and hold it, the title will be scrolled so you can see all of it.

NOTE

- The display is designed to show titles for up to 24 characters.
- If no operations are performed for 10 seconds, the screen that was displayed before pressing and holding the "TEXT" button will be shown.

■ Folder selection

Press the following buttons briefly.

To select the next folder	
To go back to the previous folder	

NOTE

Only MP3/WMA/AAC folders are recognized when an attempt to select the next or previous folder is made. If no appropriate folder exists on the disc, pressing the "▲" or "▼" side of the "FOLDER" button starts playback beginning with the first track.

■ How to eject a CD from the player

When a disc is being played back or when a disc is in the player, press the button. The disc will be ejected.

NOTE

- Avoid driving the vehicle with a CD sticking out. The CD may fall out due to vibration.
- If you do not remove the ejected disc within approximately 15 seconds, a disc protection function will operate,

automatically reloading the disc. In this case, the disc is not played.

■ When the following messages are displayed

If one of the following messages is displayed while operating the CD player, determine the cause based on the following information. If you cannot clear those messages, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

▼ When “PUSH EJECT” is displayed

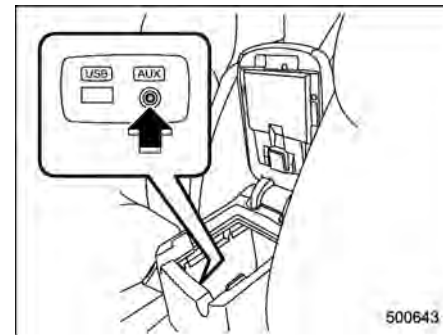
Press the  button to eject the disc. Check the disc for damage or deformation, and also check that the correct disc is inserted. Do not try to eject the disc forcibly. Mini CDs (e.g., 8 cm/3 inch CDs) are not supported, and if inserted, they will be immediately ejected and this message will be displayed. If the disc cannot be ejected or this message remains displayed, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

▼ When “CHECK DISC” is displayed

Press the  button to eject the disc. Check that the disc is not damaged or scratched, and also check that the disc is inserted correctly. This message may appear when using some CD-RW discs. Check that the disc type (e.g., 8 cm/3 inch

CDs are not supported) and data format are correct. This player can only play MP3, WMA and AAC data formats. If the disc cannot be ejected or this message remains displayed, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

Auxiliary input jack (if equipped)



You can connect an external audio device to the vehicle's audio system and play back audio via the vehicle's speakers.

An auxiliary (AUX) input jack is equipped in the center console. A stereo mini pin plug (3.5ø) can be inserted in this jack. The connection cable is available at electrical appliance or similar stores.

To use the AUX input jack:

1. Connect a portable audio player to the AUX input jack.

AUX input selection button:

Type A audio	
Type B audio	

2. Press the AUX input selection button on the audio control panel to select the AUX mode. For type A audio, refer to "When a CD is in the player (type A)" 5-15.

3. Play back the portable audio player. Refer to the instruction manual of the portable audio player.

NOTE

- For models with the genuine SUBARU navigation system, refer to the Owner's Manual supplement for the navigation system for details.
- The output sound of the portable audio player is not loud, and the sound via the vehicle's speakers that are connected to the vehicle audio set may be very low. If you turn up the volume of the audio set, the volume becomes louder. However, when you change from one portable audio player to another one, the volume levels via the vehicle's speakers may be signifi-

cantly louder compared to the prior device. To avoid a large volume difference, turn down the volume when you change between portable audio players.

- In some cases, when the sound volume of the portable audio player is low, the sound quality may become impaired when you turn up the volume of the vehicle audio system. In this case, adjust the sound volume of the portable audio player.
- In some cases, noise occurs because of a bad connection between the portable player and the audio system. Try cleaning the stereo jack and audio plug.
- If the noise is not reduced, check for disconnection of the cord or a malfunction of the portable player.

Precautions to observe when handling a compact disc

Use only compact discs (CDs, CD-Rs and CD-RWs) that have the following mark. Also, some compact discs cannot be played.

COMPACT
disc
DIGITAL AUDIO

COMPACT
disc
Recordable

COMPACT
disc
ReWritable

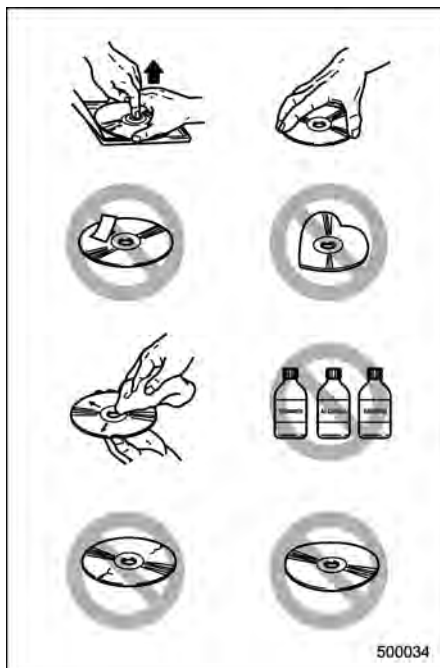
500090



- You cannot use a DualDisc in the CD player. If you insert a DualDisc into the player, the disc may not come out again, possibly causing the player to malfunction.
- In cold and/or rainy weather, dew can form inside the CD player, preventing normal operation. If this happens, eject the CD and wait for the player to dry.
- Skipping may occur when the CD player is subjected to severe vibration (for example, when the vehicle is driven on a rough surface).
- To remove a disc from the case, press the center of the case and hold both edges of the disc. If the disc surface is touched directly, contamination could cause poor tone quality. Do not touch the disc surface.
- Use a clean disc whenever possible. If

there are deposits, wipe the disc surface from the center outward with a dry, soft cloth. Be sure not to use a hard cloth, thinner, benzine, alcohol, etc.

- Do not use any disc that is scratched, deformed, or cracked. Also, do not use any disc that has a non-standard shape (for example, a heart shape). Malfunctions or problems might result.
- A disc is vulnerable to heat. Never keep it either in places exposed to direct sunlight, near heaters or in vehicles parked in the sun or on hot days.



USB storage device / iPod® operations

NOTE

For models with the genuine SUBARU navigation system, refer to the Owner's Manual supplement for the navigation system.

■ Play file

Refer to "Play file" 5-14.

■ Connectable USB storage device

Mass storage class USB memory can be connected. USB storage devices that can be played back are accompanied by the following restrictions.

- Maximum directory layers: 8 layers (including the ROOT)
- Maximum number of files in a folder: 255
- Maximum number of folders: 512 (including the ROOT)
- Maximum number of files in the device: 130,560

NOTE

- HUB class USB memory cannot be played.

- ATAPI subclass USB cannot be played.
- High Speed USB 2.0 cannot be played.
- A USB memory that is powered by a source other than the USB power supply (for example, an AC power adapter, etc.) cannot be operated.
- A USB memory that is connected to the memory card reader or multi card reader cannot be operated.
- If the USB memory consists of two drives or more, the system will recognize only one of the drives after connecting the USB memory.
- The contents stored on the USB memory may not be played in the same order as they appear on a personal computer.
- A personal computer cannot be used even if it is connected to the system using a USB cable.
- If the USB memory has a security function, the contents stored on the USB memory cannot be played by the system.
- A USB memory and an iPod® cannot be connected to the system at the same time.

■ Connectable iPod® models

Model		Firmware version
iPod®	with video	1.3
	classic	2.0.4
	nano 1G	1.3.1
	nano 2G	1.1.3
	nano 3G	1.1.3
	nano 4G	1.0.4
	nano 5G	1.0.2
	nano 6G	1.0
	touch 1G	3.1.3
	touch 2G	3.1.3
	touch 3G	4.1
	touch 4G	4.1
iPhone®	1G	3.1.3
	3G	3.1.3
	3G S	3.1.3
	4	4.1
	4S	iOS 5.0



CAUTION

Do not connect an iPod® other than the previously stated models. Doing so may result in a malfunction or,

depending on conditions, cause a fire.

NOTE

- iPod® is a registered trademark of Apple Inc.
- You are only permitted to personally copy and play copyright-free material or material that is legally permitted to be copied and played by using an iPod® and iTunes. Copyright infringement is prohibited by law.
- To check the firmware version of an iPod®, connect it to a computer and check the device manager. For further information, see the User's Guide of the iPod®.
- To update the firmware version of an iPod®, visit the Apple Inc. website.
- Depending on the model and firmware version of an iPod®, it may not work properly or not operate at all.

■ Connecting USB storage device / iPod®



WARNING

Do not operate an iPod® while driving. Doing so may distract your attention from driving and could lead to an accident.



CAUTION

- If the data stored on an iPod® is deleted while it is connected to the in-vehicle system, the data cannot be recovered.
- Do not store an iPod® in the vehicle. If an iPod® is left in the vehicle for a long period of time, it may be deformed, discolored or damaged by high temperature.

NOTE

- Even if a USB storage device or iPod® is connected, it cannot be played unless the USB/iPod® mode is selected.
- Movies stored on a USB storage device or an iPod® cannot be played while the storage device or iPod® is connected to the system.

– CONTINUED –

- While an iPod® is connected, the iPod® cannot be operated using the click wheel on the iPod® (except some models).

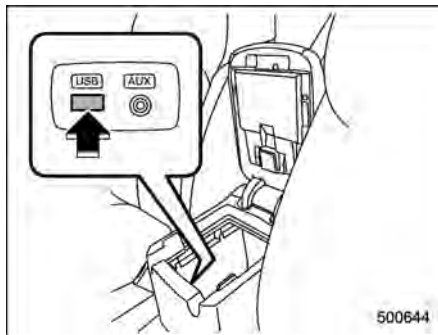
- When using an iPod® by connecting it to in-vehicle equipment, the order of the list items displayed on the in-vehicle equipment may be different from that on the iPod®. However, this does not indicate a malfunction.

- An iPod® battery that is connected to in-vehicle equipment will be charged when the ignition switch is in the “ON” or “ACC” position. However, activation of the iPod® may be delayed if the battery charge of the iPod® is low.

- If an iPod® does not activate after operation, disconnect the connection cable from the iPod® and reset it. For the resetting procedure, see the User’s Guide of the iPod®.

- If an iPod® and the connection cable are connected improperly, the iPod® cannot be powered on or will not be recognized by in-vehicle equipment. In this case, disconnect the connection cable from the iPod®, and then connect it again.

- Depending on the model of iPod® connected, the “RPT” indicator may illuminate regardless of the user settings. However, this is not a malfunction.



The USB connector is equipped in the center console. Use the connector to connect a USB storage device / iPod®.

How to play back

NOTE

For models with multi function display, the following information will be displayed while using a USB storage device/iPod®.

- Folder name (when using a USB storage device)
- Album name (when using an iPod®)

- Artist name
- Song title (when using a USB storage device or playing a music with an iPod®)
- Audiobook name (when playing an audiobook with an iPod®)
- Date of Podcast (when playing a podcast with an iPod®)

For details, refer to “Audio screen” 3-51.

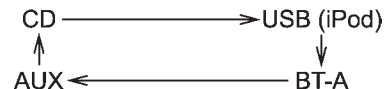
- Connect a USB storage device / iPod®.

Playback button:

Type A audio	CD/AUX
Type B audio	AUX USB

- Press the playback button. Each time you briefly press the button, the mode will change in the following sequence.

Type A audio:



Type B audio:

*: If equipped

When the USB/iPod® mode is selected, the player will start playback of the USB storage device / iPod®.

NOTE

- Depending on the number of tracks stored on an iPod® and the firmware version, the iPod® may not activate smoothly after operation or not work properly.
- Do not disconnect the connector from an iPod® during iPod® operation.

■ To select a track from the beginning

Select a track in the same way as for a CD. For details, refer to “To select a track from the beginning” 5-15.

■ To select a chapter from the beginning when connecting iPod®

When playing podcasts or audiobooks, select a chapter in the same way as

described in “To select a track from the beginning” 5-15.

■ Fast-forwarding and rewinding

Fast-forwarding and rewinding are operated in the same way as for a CD. For details, refer to “Fast-forwarding and rewinding” 5-16.

NOTE

When connecting iPod®:

- When the end of a track is reached while fast forwarding, fast forwarding will end and playback will begin from the beginning of the next track.
- When the beginning of a track is reached while rewinding, rewinding will end and playback will begin from the beginning of the track.

■ Repeating

Left-hand drive models	RPT 1
Right-hand drive models	RPT 6

▼ When connecting USB storage device

Repeating is operated in the same way as for a CD. For details, refer to “Repeating” 5-16.

▼ When connecting iPod®

Each time you briefly press the “RPT” button, the mode will change in the following sequence.

ALL RPT ↔ SONG RPT

NOTE

- The “ALL RPT” indication refers to the repeat playback of all tracks on the entire iPod®.
- The “SONG RPT” indication refers to the repeat playback of a single track. It repeats the track that is playing.
- When an audiobook is playing, the mode does not change even if you press the “RPT” button.

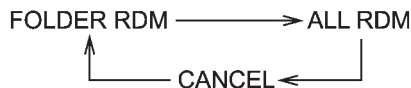
■ Random playback

Left-hand drive models	RDM ○ 2 ○
Right-hand drive models	RDM ○ 5 ○

To playback tracks at random, briefly press the “RDM” button while a track is playing.

Each time you briefly press the button, the mode will change in the following sequence.

When connecting USB storage device:



When connecting iPod®:



NOTE

- The “FOLDER RDM” indication refers to random playback in the folders. It randomly repeats all of the tracks in the folder.
- The “ALL RDM” indication refers to

random playback on the entire USB storage device. It randomly repeats all of the tracks on the USB storage device.

- The “ALBUM RDM” indication refers to the shuffle playback in the album. It randomly repeats all of the tracks in the album.
- The “SONG RDM” indication refers to the shuffle playback on the entire iPod®. It randomly repeats all of the tracks on the iPod®.
- When an iPod® is connected, the tracks are played back at random by the shuffle function of the iPod®. Therefore, iPod® operation may be different depending on the model of the connected iPod®.
- When an audiobook or a podcast is playing, the mode does not change even if you briefly press the “RDM” button.

To cancel the random playback mode, briefly press the “RDM” button and select CANCEL. The “RDM” indicator will turn off, and the normal playback mode will resume.

■ SCAN (only when connecting USB storage device)

Scan is operated in the same way as for a CD. For details, refer to “Scan” 5-17.

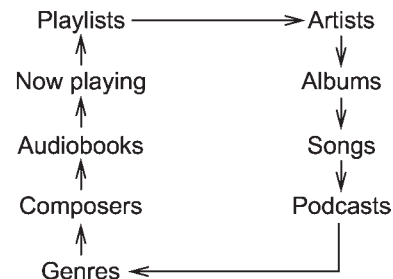
NOTE

When an iPod® is connected, you cannot select the SCAN mode.

■ Selecting category (only when connecting iPod®)

When the  button is pressed briefly, the iPod® menu will be displayed.

Each time you turn the “TUNE/TRACK” dial clockwise, the displayed category will change in the following sequence. Each time you turn the “TUNE/TRACK” dial counterclockwise, the displayed category will change in the opposite sequence.



To select the category, press the “TUNE/TRACK” dial. To close the iPod® menu, press and hold the  button. To return to the previous screen, briefly press the

 button.

■ Display selection

Refer to "Display selection" 5-18.

▼ Page scroll

Refer to "Page (track/folder title) scroll" 5-18.

■ Folder selection (only when connecting USB storage device)

Refer to "Folder selection" 5-18.

NOTE

When an iPod® is connected, you cannot select a folder.

■ When "CHECK DEVICE" is displayed

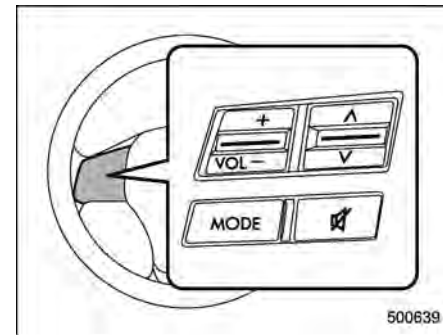
This message is displayed under the following conditions.

- When there is a short in the USB bus
- When an unsupported device (for example a USB mouse) is connected
- When an unsupported iPod® is connected
- When a connected iPod® is frozen
- When a transmission malfunction occurs

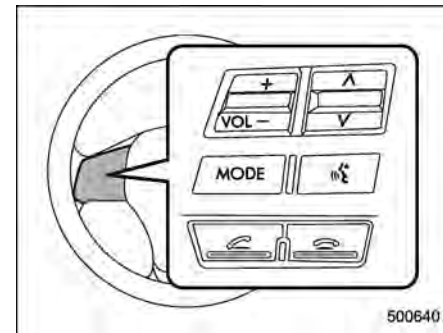
- When an iPod® confirmation malfunction occurs
- When a HUB class USB storage device is connected

Disconnect the USB storage device/iPod® and check it.

Audio control buttons (if equipped)



Models without Hands-free system

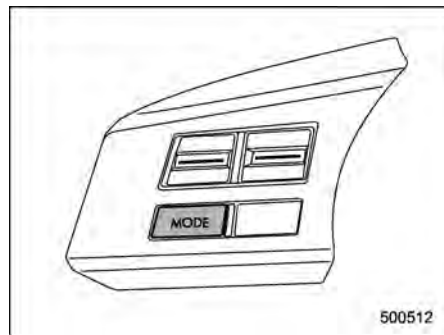


Models with Hands-free system

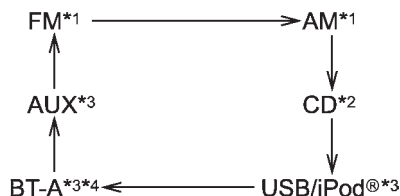
5-28 Audio/Audio control buttons

These buttons are located on the spokes of the steering wheel. They allow the driver to control audio functions without taking his/her hands off the steering wheel.

■ MODE button



This button is used to select the preferred audio mode. Each time it is pressed, the mode will change to the next one in the following sequence:



*1: The frequency last received in the selected waveband will be displayed.

*2: Only when a CD is in the player.

*3: Only when the device is connected.

*4: If equipped

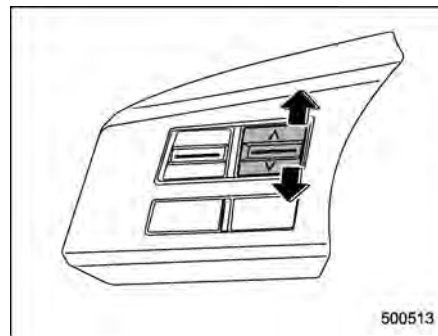
▼ Models with Hands-free system

Press and hold this button if you wish to immediately cut the volume to zero.

The audio display will show "MUTE".

If you press and hold the button again, the original sound volume will return and "MUTE" turns off.

■ "∧" and "∨" switch



▼ With radio mode selected

Press the switch to the "∧" or "∨" side briefly to skip to a preset channel. Press and hold the switch to the "∧" or "∨" side to seek the next receivable station and stop at it.

That station's frequency will be indicated on the audio display.

▼ With CD mode selected

Press the switch to the "∧" side briefly to skip forward in the track order. Press the switch to the "∨" side briefly to skip backward in the track order.

The track number will be shown on the audio display.

When the MP3/WMA/AAC format track is

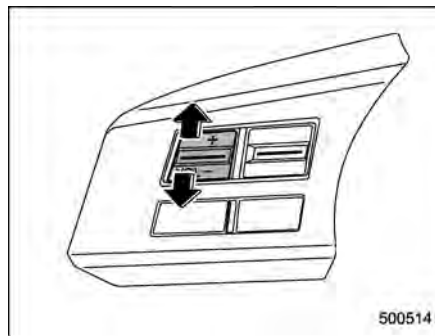
playing, press and hold the switch to the “^” side to select the next folder. Press and hold the switch to the “v” side to go back to the previous folder.

▼ **With USB/iPod®/Bluetooth® audio mode selected**

Press the switch to the “^” side briefly to skip forward in the track order. Press the switch to the “v” side briefly to skip backward in the track order. The track number will be shown on the audio display.

When the USB/Bluetooth® audio mode is selected, press and hold the switch to the “^” side to select the next folder. Press and hold the switch to the “v” side to go back to the previous folder.

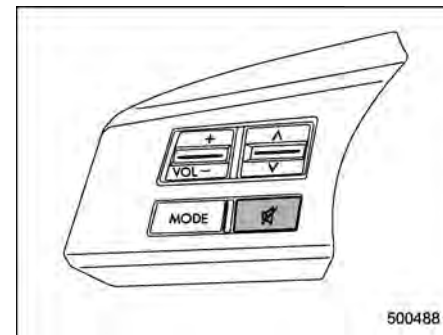
■ **Volume control switch**



Press the switch to the “+” side to increase the volume. Press the switch to the “-” side to reduce the volume.

A number indicating the volume will be shown on the audio display.

■ **MUTE button (models without Hands-free system)**



Press this button if you wish to immediately cut the volume to zero.

The audio display will show “MUTE”.

If you press the button again, the original sound volume will return and “MUTE” will turn off.

Bluetooth® audio (if equipped)



NOTE

The Bluetooth word mark and logo are registered trademarks of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

This function enables you to play back audio sources recorded in **Bluetooth®** audio devices. You need to register the **Bluetooth®** audio device in the system before using it.

NOTE

- The Bluetooth® audio function may not operate properly under the following conditions.
 - The device is turned off.

- The battery of the device has run down.
- The device is not connected to the system.
- The device is behind the seat or in the glove box.
- A metal material is covering or touching the device.
- Depending on the type of device that is used, operation and sound volume may be different from normal use of those devices.
- The sound quality may degrade due to the influence of the device that is connected to the system or the circumstances of the Bluetooth network.
- When another Bluetooth® device is simultaneously connected, noise may be heard.

Media format

Bluetooth® audio devices cannot be connected if they are not compatible with the following **Bluetooth®** profiles.

- A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile)
- AVRCP (Audio/Video Remote Control Profile)

Setting Bluetooth® audio

NOTE

For models with multi function display, Bluetooth® audio can be set via the multi function display. For details, refer to “Bluetooth® audio setting” 3-86.

“MENU” button	
“TUNE/TRACK” dial	

1. Select the “BT-A SETUP” menu by pressing the “MENU” button.

2. Perform the following procedure by operating the “TUNE/TRACK” dial while “BT-A” is displayed.

NOTE

You cannot set Bluetooth® audio while driving.

▼ **Registering (pairing) device****NOTE**

Only one device can be registered.

1. Select the "PAIR AUDIO" menu.
 - If a device is already registered, "MEMORY FULL" will be displayed and the mode will change to the **Bluetooth®** audio setting mode.
2. After the passkey is shown on the display, input the passkey into the device.
 - If you input the correct passkey, "PAIRED" will be displayed and the registration procedure will be finished.
 - If you input an incorrect passkey, "FAILED" will be displayed, the registration procedure was not successful and the mode will change to the **Bluetooth®** audio setting mode.

NOTE

After the ignition switch is turned to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position, the registered device will not be automatically connected to the system even if the ignition switch is turned to the "ACC" or "ON" position.

▼ **Selecting device**

1. Select the "SELECT AUDIO" menu.
 - If no devices are registered,

"EMPTY" will be displayed and the mode will change to the **Bluetooth®** audio setting mode.

2. Select the "CONFIRM" menu.
 - If the device is connected, "SELECTED" will be displayed and the selection procedure will be finished.
 - If the device cannot be connected, "FAILED" will be displayed and the selection procedure will not be successful.

▼ **Setting passkey**

1. Select the "SET PASSKEY" menu.
 - After the currently set passkey is displayed, a new passkey can be entered.
2. Input the new passkey by operating the "TUNE/TRACK" dial.
3. Select the "CONFIRM" menu.
 - The new passkey will be displayed, the passkey will be changed and the mode will change to the **Bluetooth®** audio setting mode.

▼ **Deleting device**

1. Select the "DELETE AUDIO" menu.
 - If no devices are registered, "EMPTY" will be displayed and the mode will change to the **Bluetooth®** audio setting mode.

2. Select the "CONFIRM" menu.
 - "DELETED" will be displayed and the mode will change to the **Bluetooth®** audio setting mode.

■ **Bluetooth® audio operation****NOTE**

Depending on the connected device, it may not activate as per the following items or not work smoothly.

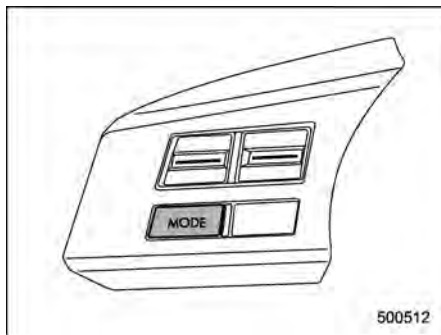
▼ **How to play back****NOTE**

For models with multi function display, the following information will be displayed while playing Bluetooth® audio.

- Album name
- Artist name
- Song title

For details, refer to "Audio screen" 3-51.

Perform any of the following procedures and select the “BT-A” mode.



- Press the “MODE” button on the spoke of the steering wheel. For details, refer to “MODE button” 5-28.
- Press the “CD/AUX” button (type A audio).
- Press the “AUX/USB” button (type B audio).

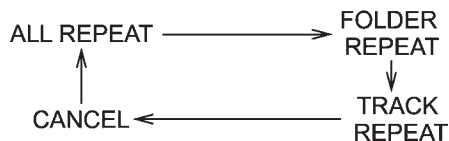
▼ To select a track from the beginning

Select a track in the same way as for a CD. Refer to “To select a track from the beginning” 5-15.

▼ Repeating

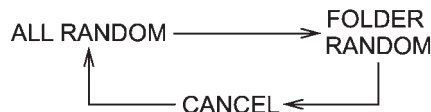
Repeating is operated in the same way as for a CD. Refer to “Repeating” 5-16. Each time you briefly press the “RPT” button, the mode will change in the

following sequence.



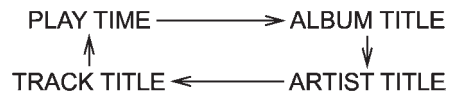
▼ Random playback

Random playback is operated in the same way as for a CD. Refer to “Random playback” 5-17. Each time you briefly press the “RDM” button, the mode will change in the following sequence.



▼ Display selection

Select an item to be displayed in the same way as for a CD. Refer to “Display selection” 5-18. Each time you briefly press the **TEXT** button, the indication will change in the following sequence.



▼ Folder selection

Select a folder in the same way as for a CD. Refer to “Folder selection” 5-18.

Hands-free system (if equipped)

NOTE

- For models with the genuine SUBARU navigation system, refer to the Owner's Manual supplement for the navigation system.
- When selling your vehicle, make sure that you initialize the Hands-free system to prevent personal data from being improperly accessed. For details, refer to "Initializing the registered data" 5-44.

The Hands-free system operates while the ignition switch is in the "ACC" or "ON" position.

You can use your cell phone without touching it by using the Hands-free system. To use the Hands-free system, connect a cell phone as follows.

When no cell phones are registered:

Register a cell phone to the in-vehicle equipment. For details, refer to "When no cell phones are registered" 5-38. After registering a phone, the phone will be automatically connected to the in-vehicle equipment.

When a cell phone is already registered:

The registered cell phone will be automatically connected to the in-vehicle equipment when the ignition switch is turned to the "ACC" or "ON" position while carrying the cell phone.

When two cell phones or more are already registered:

If the system detects a cell phone in the passenger compartment which was previously connected to the in-vehicle equipment when the ignition switch was last turned to the "ACC" or "ON" position, the system connects the cell phone automatically to the in-vehicle equipment. You can select the phone to be connected to the in-vehicle equipment. For details, refer to "Selecting a cell phone" 5-38.

After connecting a cell phone, you can use the following functions.

Function	Page
Making a phone call	5-39
Taking/declining an incoming call	5-39
Registering phonebook data	5-40
Using and setting phonebook data	5-41
Deleting data	5-42

Even when no cell phones are connected, you may be able to set the following items.

Item	Page
Security setting	5-43
Phone setting	5-43
System setting	5-44

■ Safety precautions



WARNING

- For safety reasons, avoid operating a cell phone while driving.
- Do not make a phone call while driving. When you have an incoming call, stop the vehicle in a safe location before taking the

incoming phone call. When you have to absolutely take a phone call, tell the caller “I’ll call you back”. And then call the caller back after stopping the vehicle in a safe location.



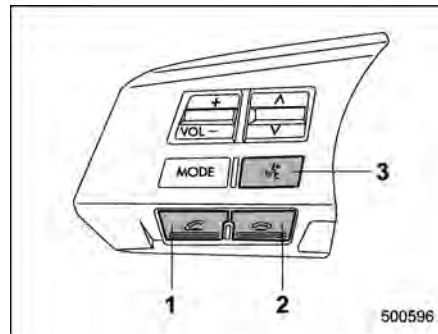
CAUTION

- Do not leave a cell phone in the vehicle. The temperature in the vehicle may become extremely high and cause a malfunction of the cell phone.
- When using a cell phone, be careful not to get it close to the in-vehicle equipment. Getting it too close to the in-vehicle equipment may result in deterioration in tone quality or a poor connecting condition.
- In the frequency band used by this equipment, along with industrial, scientific and medical equipment such as a microwave oven, radio stations (a license is required) to be used by the production line in the factory to identify movable bodies, specific small power radio stations (a license is not required) and ama-

teur radio stations (a license is required) are being operated. (These three types of radio stations are hereinafter referred to as “other radio stations.”) Before using this equipment, be sure to check to see if “other radio stations” are being operated in the vicinity. If there is detrimental radio interference from this equipment to “other radio stations,” move the equipment to another location as soon as possible to avoid radio interference. The frequency band used by this equipment is in the 2.4 GHz zone. The FH-SS modulation is employed as a modulation method. The expected inflicting interference distance is less than 10 m (33 ft). This equipment uses a full band and can avoid a band used by a movable body identification device.

■ Using the Hands-free system

▼ Turning on/off the Hands-free mode



- 1) OFF hook switch
- 2) ON hook switch
- 3) Talk switch

To turn on the Hands-free mode, press the OFF hook switch . To turn off the Hands-free mode, press the ON hook switch .

▼ Menu list of the Hands-free system

"TUNE/TRACK" dial	
-------------------	---

1. Press the OFF hook switch  to turn on the Hands-free mode.
2. Turn the "TUNE/TRACK" dial to select a menu, and then press the dial to enter the selected menu.

5-36 *Audio/Hands-free system*

First menu	Second menu	Third menu	Details	Page
PHONE BOOK*	ADD ENTRY	BY PHONE	Adding a new number by cell phone	5-40
		MANUAL INPUT	Adding a new number by inputting manually	5-40
		CALL HISTORY	Adding a new number from the call history	5-41
		GO BACK		
	LIST NAMES	—	Showing the list of the names registered in the phonebook	5-41
	CHANGE NAME	—	Changing a name registered in the phonebook	5-42
	SET SPD DIAL	—	Registering a speed dial	5-42
	DELETE ENTRY	—	Deleting phonebook data	5-42
	DEL SPD DIAL	—	Deleting a registered speed dial	5-42
	GO BACK	—		
REDIAL	DIAL	—	Redialing	5-39
	STORE	—	Adding a new number stored in the outgoing call history memory	5-41
	DELETE	—	Deleting a number stored in the outgoing call history memory	5-42
	GO BACK	—		
CALL BACK	DIAL	—	Dialing a number stored in the incoming call history memory	5-39
	STORE	—	Adding a new number stored in the incoming call history memory	5-41
	DELETE	—	Deleting a number stored in the incoming call history memory	5-43
	GO BACK	—		

*: If a cell phone is not registered, the menu described in the chart is not indicated.

First menu	Second menu	Third menu	Details	Page
SETUP	SECURITY	SET PIN	Setting a PIN code	5-43
		PHBK LOCK	Locking the phonebook	5-43
		PHBK UNLOCK	Unlocking the phonebook	5-43
		GO BACK		
	PHONE SETUP	PAIR PHONE	Registering a new cell phone	5-38
		SELECT PHONE	Selecting a cell phone to be used	5-38
		CHANGE NAME	Changing the registered name of the cell phone	5-43
		LIST PHONES	Showing the list of the registered cell phones	5-44
		SET PASSKEY	Changing the pass key	5-44
		DELETE	Deleting the registered cell phone	5-44
		GO BACK		
	SYSTEM SETUP	GUIDANCE VOL	Setting the volume of the voice guidance	5-44
		INITIALIZE	Initialization	5-44
		GO BACK		
	GO BACK	—		

▼ Preparation for using the Hands-free system

▽ When no cell phones are registered

Before using the Hands-free system, it is necessary to register a cell phone in the system. Perform the following procedure to register a cell phone.

1. Press the OFF hook switch .
 - “WELCOME!” will be displayed.
2. Press the “TUNE/TRACK” dial or the talk switch .
3. Perform either of the following procedures.
 - Select the “RECORD NAME” menu.
 - Press the talk switch .
4. Say the name (voice tag) to be registered.
5. Select the “CONFIRM” menu by operating the “TUNE/TRACK” dial.
 - After “CAR M_MEDIA” is displayed, a pass key will be displayed.
6. Input the displayed pass key into the cell phone while “PKY: ****” is displayed.
 - If you input the correct pass key, “PAIRED” will be displayed and the registration procedure will be finished.
 - If you input an incorrect pass key, “FAILED” will be displayed and the

registration procedure will not be successful.

▽ Registering a cell phone

To register a cell phone to the in-vehicle equipment, perform the following procedure.

1. Select the “SETUP” menu.
2. Select the “PHONE SETUP” menu.
3. Select the “PAIR PHONE” menu.
4. Perform either of the following procedures.
 - Select the “RECORD NAME” menu.
 - Press the talk switch .
5. Say the name (voice tag) to be registered.
6. Select the “CONFIRM” menu by operating the “TUNE/TRACK” dial.
 - After “CAR M_MEDIA” is displayed, a pass key will be displayed.
7. Input the displayed pass key into the cell phone while “PKY: ****” is displayed.
 - If you input the correct pass key, “PAIRED” will be displayed and the registration procedure will be finished.
 - If you input an incorrect pass key, “FAILED” will be displayed and the registration procedure will not be successful.

▽ Selecting a cell phone

To select the registered cell phone for connecting to the in-vehicle equipment, perform the following procedure.

1. Select the “SETUP” menu.
2. Select the “PHONE SETUP” menu.
3. Select the “SELECT PHONE” menu.
 - If no cell phones are registered, “EMPTY” will be displayed and the mode will change to the “PHONE SETUP” mode.
4. Select the cell phone by performing either of the following procedures.
 - Operate the “TUNE/TRACK” dial.
 - Press the talk switch  and say the voice tag.
5. Select the “CONFIRM” menu.
 - “SELECTED” will be displayed, the selected cell phone will be connected to the in-vehicle equipment and the mode will change to the “PHONE SETUP” mode.
 - If the selected cell phone cannot be connected, “FAILED” will be displayed and the mode will change to the “PHONE SETUP” mode.

▼ Making a phone call**▽ Making a phone call by saying name**

1. Press the talk switch .
2. Say the preferred name (voice tag) to be called.
 - Then the called name (voice tag) or the corresponding phone number will be displayed.
3. Select the “DIAL” menu or press the OFF hook switch .

▽ Making a phone call from speed dial

It is possible to select a phone number from speed dial registered with the in-vehicle equipment to make a phone call.

1. Press the preset button (from  to ) to which the preferred number is registered.
2. Press the OFF hook switch .

NOTE

When a preset button for which numbers are not registered is pressed, an error message will be indicated on the audio screen.

▽ Redial

1. Select the “REDIAL” menu.
2. Select the preferred number by operating the “TUNE/TRACK” dial.
3. Select the “DIAL” menu or press the OFF hook switch .

▽ Callback

1. Select the “CALL BACK” menu.
2. Select the preferred number by operating the “TUNE/TRACK” dial.
3. Select the “DIAL” menu or press the OFF hook switch .

▽ Making a phone call from list name

It is possible to select a phone number from the list name registered with the in-vehicle equipment to make a phone call. For details, refer to “List names function” 5-41.

▽ Top redial

1. Press the OFF hook switch  and load the outgoing call history.
2. Select the “DIAL” menu or press the OFF hook switch .

▼ Taking a phone call and declining an incoming call

To take a phone call: Press the OFF hook switch .

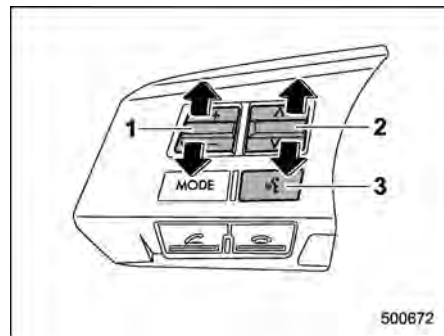
To put an incoming call on hold (only if the cell phone has this function): Press the ON hook switch  briefly.

To decline an incoming call (only if the cell phone has this function): Press and hold the ON hook switch .

▼ Ending a call

Press the ON hook switch .

▼ Volume control



- 1) Volume control switch
- 2) Speech volume control switch
- 3) Talk switch

Press the volume control switch to the “+” side to increase the phone call volume, voice volume and voice guidance volume. Press the switch to the “-” side to decrease the volume.

Press the speech volume control switch to the “^” side to increase the speech volume. Press the switch to the “v” side to decrease the volume.

During a call, press the talk switch  to turn the microphone off. Press the talk switch  once again to turn the microphone on.

▽ Adjustable level of each volume

Volume	Range	Initial setting
Phone call	0 to 14	7
Voice	0 to 14	7
Voice guidance	0 to 6	3

▼ Registering phonebook data

▽ Registering by phone

1. Select the “PHONE BOOK” menu.
2. Select the “ADD ENTRY” menu.
3. Select the “BY PHONE” menu.
4. Select the “CONFIRM” menu.
 - Then “TRANSFER” will be displayed.
5. Transfer the data from the cell phone. For details about transferring the data, refer to the instruction manual of the cell phone.
6. Select the “CONFIRM” menu.
7. Perform either of the following procedures.
 - Select the “RECORD NAME” menu.
 - Press the talk switch .
8. Say the name (voice tag) to be registered.
9. Select the “CONFIRM” menu.

– Then “STORED” will be displayed and the mode will change to the registering speed dial mode. Refer to “Registering speed dial” 5-41.

▽ Registering by inputting manually

1. Select the “PHONE BOOK” menu.
2. Select the “ADD ENTRY” menu.
3. Select the “MANUAL INPUT” menu.
4. Input the phone number to be registered.
5. Perform either of the following procedures.
 - Select the “RECORD NAME” menu.
 - Press the talk switch .
6. Say the name (voice tag) to be registered.
7. Select the “CONFIRM” menu.
 - Then “STORED” will be displayed and the mode will change to the registering speed dial mode. Refer to “Registering speed dial” 5-41.

NOTE

While inputting the phone numbers, if “GO BACK” is chosen using the “TUNE/TRACK” dial, the character that was input last is deleted.

▽ Registering from call history

1. Select the "PHONE BOOK" menu.
2. Select the "ADD ENTRY" menu.
3. Select the "CALL HISTORY" menu.
4. Select "OUTGOING" or "INCOMING" by operating the "TUNE/TRACK" dial.
5. Select the phone number by operating the "TUNE/TRACK" dial.
6. Perform either of the following procedures.
 - Select the "RECORD NAME" menu.
 - Press the talk switch .
7. Say the name (voice tag) to be registered.
8. Select the "CONFIRM" menu.
 - Then "STORED" will be displayed and the mode will change to the registering speed dial mode. Refer to "Registering speed dial" 5-41.

▽ Registering from redial

1. Select the "REDIAL" menu.
2. Select the phone number by operating the "TUNE/TRACK" dial.
3. Select the "STORE" menu.
4. Select the "CONFIRM" menu.
5. Perform either of the following procedures.
 - Select the "RECORD NAME"

menu.

- Press the talk switch .
6. Say the name (voice tag) to be registered.
 7. Select the "CONFIRM" menu.
 - Then "STORED" will be displayed and the mode will change to the registering speed dial mode. Refer to "Registering speed dial" 5-41.

▽ Registering from call back

1. Select the "CALL BACK" menu.
2. Select the phone number by operating the "TUNE/TRACK" dial.
3. Select the "STORE" menu.
4. Select the "CONFIRM" menu.
5. Perform either of the following procedures.
 - Select the "RECORD NAME" menu.
 - Press the talk switch .
6. Say the name (voice tag) to be registered.
7. Select the "CONFIRM" menu.
 - Then "STORED" will be displayed and the mode will change to the registering speed dial mode. Refer to "Registering speed dial" 5-41.

▽ Registering speed dial

1. After registering phonebook data, select the "SPEED DIAL" menu.
2. Press the preset button (from  to ) to which you want to register the phone number.

NOTE

If the number to be used is already registered in speed dial, "OVERWRITE?" will be displayed.

▼ Using and setting phonebook data**▽ List names function**

The voice tags registered in the phonebook are spoken by using the list names function. To use the list names function, perform the following procedure.

1. Select the "PHONE BOOK" menu.
2. Select the "LIST NAMES" menu.
3. Select the registered data by performing either of the following procedures.
 - Press the talk switch .
 - Operate the "TUNE/TRACK" dial.
4. After "SELECTED" is displayed, you can select the following menus.
 - "DIAL" to make a phone call
 - "CHANGE NAME" to change the name (voice tag)

- “SET SPD DIAL” to set the speed dial
- “DELETE ENTRY” to delete the name (voice tag) from the phonebook
- “GO BACK” to go back to the menu mode

NOTE

- After “LIST NAMES” is selected, if the OFF hook switch  is pushed, the selected number is called.
- After “LIST NAMES” is selected, if no operation is performed, the memories are displayed and voice tags are spoken. After all memories/voice tags are displayed/spoken, “END OF LIST” is displayed and the mode changes to the “PHONE BOOK” menu mode.

▽ Changing voice tag

1. Select the “PHONE BOOK” menu.
2. Select the “CHANGE NAME” menu.
3. Select the phone number by performing either of the following procedures.
 - Operate the “TUNE/TRACK” dial.
 - Press the talk switch  and say the voice tag.
4. Select the “CONFIRM” menu.
 - Then the selected phone number will be displayed.
5. Perform either of the following procedures.

- Select the “RECORD NAME” menu.
 - Press the talk switch .
6. Say the new voice tag.
 7. Select the “CONFIRM” menu.
 - Then “CHANGED” will be displayed.

▽ Set speed dial

1. Select the “PHONE BOOK” menu.
2. Select the “SET SPD DIAL” menu.
3. Select the phone number by performing either of the following procedures.
 - Operate the “TUNE/TRACK” dial.
 - Press the talk switch  and say the voice tag.
4. Select the “CONFIRM” menu.
5. Press the preset button (from  to ) to which you want to register the phone number.

NOTE

If the number to be used is already registered in speed dial, “OVER-WRITE?” will be displayed.

▽ Deleting data

▽ Deleting the phonebook data

1. Select the “PHONE BOOK” menu.

2. Select the “DELETE ENTRY” menu.
3. Select the phone number by performing either of the following procedures.
 - Operate the “TUNE/TRACK” dial.
 - Press the talk switch  and say the voice tag.
4. Select the “CONFIRM” menu.
 - Then “DELETED” will be displayed and the selected phonebook data will be deleted.

▽ Deleting the speed dial

1. Select the “PHONE BOOK” menu.
2. Select the “DEL SPD DIAL” menu.
3. Press the preset button (from  to ) to which you want to delete the speed dial.
4. Select the “CONFIRM” menu.
 - Then “DELETED” will be displayed and the selected speed dial will be deleted.

▽ Deleting the redial data

1. Select the “REDIAL” menu.
2. Select the phone number by operating the “TUNE/TRACK” dial.
3. Select the “DELETE” menu.
4. Select the “CONFIRM” menu.
 - Then “DELETED” will be displayed and the selected redial data will be

deleted.

▽ Deleting the callback data

1. Select the "CALL BACK" menu.
2. Select the phone number by operating the "TUNE/TRACK" dial.
3. Select the "DELETE" menu.
4. Select the "CONFIRM" menu.
 - Then "DELETED" will be displayed and the selected callback data will be deleted.

■ Bluetooth® setting

▼ Security setting

▽ Setting PIN code

The PIN code is a 4-digit number and is used when locking the phonebook.

1. Select the "SETUP" menu.
2. Select the "SECURITY" menu.
3. Select the "SET PIN" menu.
 - Then "CURRENT PIN?" will be displayed.
4. Input the current PIN code by operating the "TUNE/TRACK" dial.
5. Select the "CONFIRM" menu.
6. Input the new PIN code by operating the "TUNE/TRACK" dial.
7. Select the "CONFIRM" menu.

▽ Locking the phonebook

1. Select the "SETUP" menu.
2. Select the "SECURITY" menu.
3. Select the "PHBK LOCK" menu.
 - Then "CURRENT PIN?" will be displayed.
4. Input the PIN code by operating the "TUNE/TRACK" dial.
5. Select the "CONFIRM" menu.
 - If the inputted PIN code is correct, "LOCKED" will be displayed and the phonebook will be locked.

NOTE

While the phonebook is locked, if the operation restricted menu is selected, "PHBK LOCK" will be displayed.

▽ Unlocking the phonebook

1. Select the "SETUP" menu.
2. Select the "SECURITY" menu.
3. Select the "PHBK UNLOCK" menu.
 - Then "CURRENT PIN?" will be displayed.

NOTE

If the phonebook is not locked, "UNLOCK" will be displayed and the mode will change to the security mode.

4. Input the PIN code by operating the

"TUNE/TRACK" dial.

5. Select the "CONFIRM" menu.
 - If the inputted PIN code is correct, "UNLOCKED" will be displayed and the phonebook will be unlocked.

▼ Phone setup

▽ Setting pair phone

Refer to "Registering a cell phone" 5-38.

▽ Selecting phone

Refer to "Selecting a cell phone" 5-38.

▽ Changing the voice tag of the cell phone

1. Select the "SETUP" menu.
2. Select the "PHONE SETUP" menu.
3. Select the "CHANGE NAME" menu.
 - If no cell phones are registered, "EMPTY" will be displayed and the mode will change to the "PHONE SETUP" mode.
4. Select the cell phone by performing either of the following procedures.
 - Operate the "TUNE/TRACK" dial.
 - Press the talk switch  and say the voice tag.
5. Perform either of the following procedures.
 - Select the "RECORD NAME" menu.

– CONTINUED –

- Press the talk switch .
- 6. Register the voice tag. For details, refer to “Preparation for using the Hands-free system” 5-38.

▽ List phones function

The cell phone voice tags saved in the cell phone list are spoken by using the list phones function.

1. Select the “SETUP” menu.
2. Select the “PHONE SETUP” menu.
3. Select the “LIST PHONES” menu.
 - If no cell phones are registered, “EMPTY” will be displayed and the mode will change to the “PHONE SETUP” mode.
4. Registered cell phones will be displayed in the saved order. While displayed, if the “TUNE/TRACK” dial is turned, the next registered cell phone will be displayed. Press the ON hook button  to close the Hands-free menu.
5. Select a cell phone by performing either of the following procedures.
 - Operate the “TUNE/TRACK” dial.
 - Press the talk switch .
6. After “SELECTED” is displayed, you can select the following menus.
 - “SELECT PHONE” to connect the selected cell phone

- “CHANGE NAME” to change the name (voice tag)
- “DELETE” to delete the selected cell phone from the list
- “GO BACK” to go back to step 4

▽ Setting passkey

1. Select the “SETUP” menu.
2. Select the “PHONE SETUP” menu.
3. Select the “SET PASSKEY” menu.
 - After the currently set passkey is displayed, a new passkey can be entered.
4. Input the new passkey by operating the “TUNE/TRACK” dial.
5. Select the “CONFIRM” menu.
 - The new passkey will be displayed, the passkey will be changed and the mode will change to the “PHONE SETUP” mode.

▽ Deleting registered cell phone from the list

1. Select the “SETUP” menu.
2. Select the “PHONE SETUP” menu.
3. Select the “DELETE” menu.
4. Select a cell phone to be deleted by performing either of the following procedures.
 - Operate the “TUNE/TRACK” dial.

- Press the talk switch  and say the voice tag.

5. Select the “CONFIRM” menu.
 - “DELETED” will be displayed, the data will be deleted and the mode will change to the “PHONE SETUP” mode.

▼ System setup

▽ Setting guidance volume

To set the guidance volume, perform the following procedure.

1. Select the “SETUP” menu.
2. Select the “SYSTEM SETUP” menu.
3. Select the “GUIDANCE VOL” menu.
4. Set the guidance volume by operating the “TUNE/TRACK” dial.

▽ Initializing the registered data

To initialize the registered data, perform the following procedure.

1. Select the “SETUP” menu.
2. Select the “SYSTEM SETUP” menu.
3. Select the “INITIALIZE” menu.
4. Select the “CONFIRM” menu.
 - First “PLEASE WAIT”, then “INITIALIZED” will be displayed. The registered data will be initialized and the mode will change to the last mode.

■ Tips for the Hands-free system

▼ Bluetooth®

It is possible to connect a cell phone to the in-vehicle equipment through the **Bluetooth®** format (wireless) to make a phone call from the in-vehicle equipment or take an incoming phone call.

Since the **Bluetooth®** format is wireless, a connection between the in-vehicle equipment and the cell phone can be made without placing them in close vicinity of each other. The cell phone can be used with it left in the breast pocket or bag.

NOTE

- The Hands-free system may not operate properly under the following conditions.
 - The cell phone is turned off.
 - The cell phone is not in the phone call area.
 - The battery of the cell phone has run down.
 - The cell phone is not connected to the Hands-free system.
 - The cell phone is behind the seat or in the glove box.
 - A metal material covers or touches the cell phone.
- Depending on the type of cell phone

that is used, the screen on the cell phone may remain illuminated while the ignition switch is in the “ON” position. If this occurs, turn the illumination off by adjusting the cell phone settings.

- Depending on the setting of the cell phone, the dial lock function may be activated after making a call. Deactivate the automatic dial lock function of the cell phone before using the Hands-free system.
- Depending on the type of cell phone that is used, operation and the sound volume may be different from those of cell phones currently used.
- When the ignition switch is turned to the “LOCK”/“OFF” position during a call, the call may be disconnected or continued on the cell phone depending on the type of cell phone that is used. Note that operation of the cell phone may be necessary if the call is continued on the cell phone.
- Do not speak at the same time as the other party during a call. If you and the other party speak at the same time, it may be difficult for the other party to hear your voice and vice versa. This is normal.
- The receiver sound volume should be set as low as possible. Otherwise,

the party you are calling may notice an undesirable echo sound.

- Speak clearly and loudly.
- It may be difficult for the other party to hear your voice under the following conditions.
 - Driving on a rough road.
 - Driving at a high speed.
 - Driving with a window open.
 - When air from the ventilator blows directly towards the microphone.
 - When the sound coming from the ventilator is loud.
 - When the cell phone is too close to the microphone.
- The sound quality may degrade due to the influence of the cell phone that is connected to the system or the circumstances of the Bluetooth network.
- When another Bluetooth® device is simultaneously connected, noise may be heard in the voice coming from the hands-free phone.

▼ Corresponding profiles for the cell phone

- HFP (Hands Free Profile): Ver. 1.5
- OPP (Object Push Profile): Ver. 1.1

■ Certification for the Hands-free system**▼ Declaration of conformity in accordance with the radio and telecommunications terminal equipment directive 1999/5/EC**

Hereby, Clarion Co., Ltd., declares that these PF-3488, PF-3489, PF-3490, PF-3492, PF-3493, PF-3494 and PF-3495 are in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

▼ Other technical information

- For Paraguay models:
 - Manufacturer: Clarion Co., Ltd.
 - Vendor: Tokyo Motors S.A.
 - Vendor address: Avda. Eusebio Ayala 4649 kg 5 1/2 Asuncion, Paraguay
 - Record Number:
2012-05-I-0111 (PF-3490)
2012-05-I-0110 (PF-3495)

Módulo Bluetooth instalado en el interior de la radio

COFETEL RCPCLPF12-0524

Clarion PF-3490

COFETEL RCPCLPF12-0525

Clarion PF-3495

La operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes dos condiciones:

- (1) es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y
- (2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.

500673

Mexico models

Este equipo opera a título secundario, consecuentemente, debe aceptar interferencias perjudiciales incluyendo equipos de la misma clase y puede no causar interferencias a sistemas operando a título primario.

500612

Mexico models

TRA

**REGISTERED No:
ER0086800/12**

**DEALER No:
DA0054309/10**

500674

UAE models (PF-3488)

TRA**REGISTERED No:**
ER0086796/12**DEALER No:**
DA0054309/10

500675

UAE models (PF-3493)**第十二條**

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

第十四條

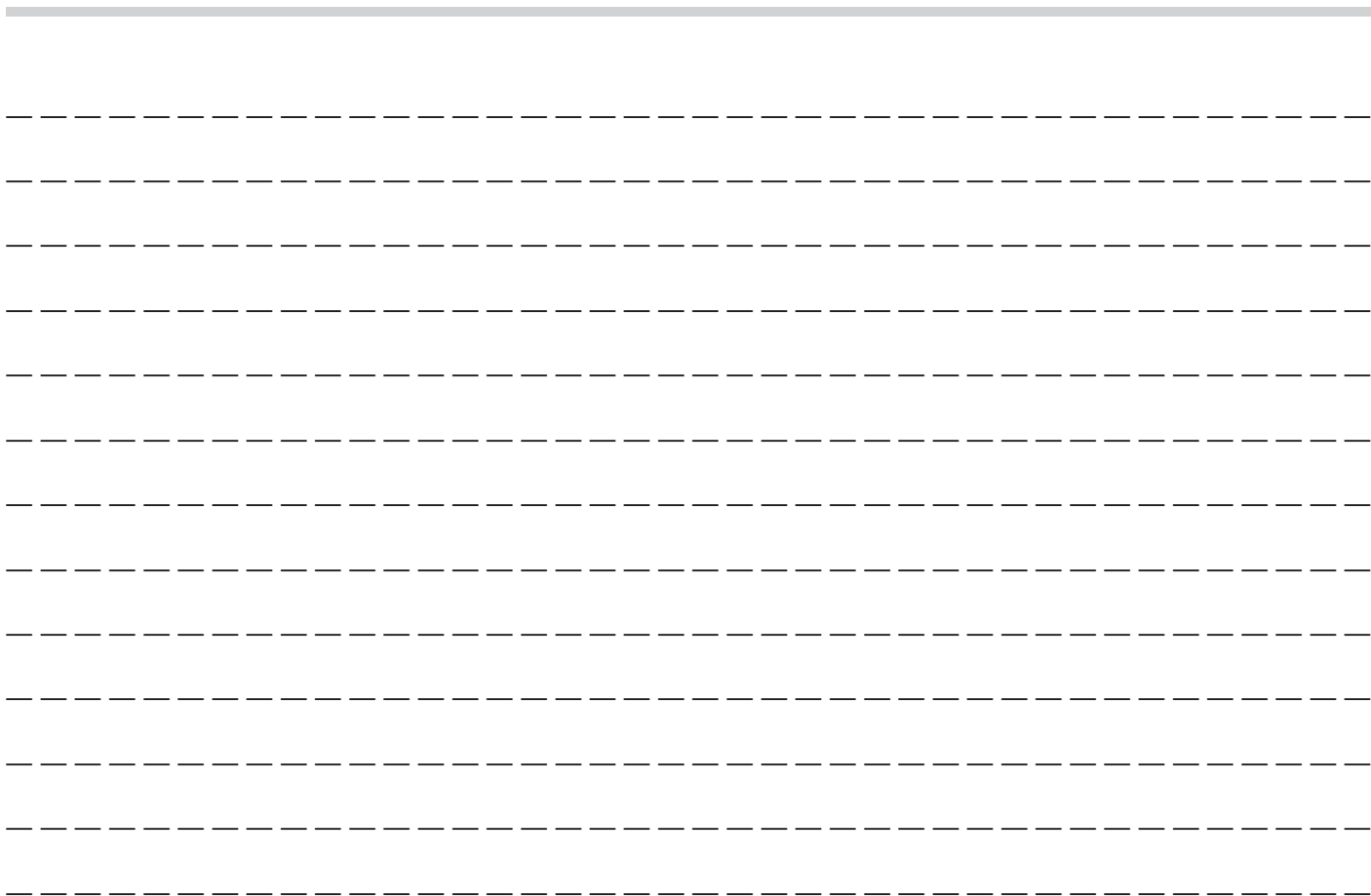
低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。

低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

500631

Taiwan models



Interior light	6-2	Floor mat (if equipped)	6-11
Dome light	6-2	Coat hook	6-12
Cargo area light	6-2	Shopping bag hook	6-13
Map lights	6-2	Convenient hook	6-13
OFF delay timer	6-3	Cargo area cover	6-14
Sun visors	6-4	Using the cover	6-14
Sun visor extension plate	6-4	To install the front cover	6-14
Vanity mirror	6-5	To remove the front cover	6-14
Storage compartment	6-5	To remove the cover	6-15
Glove box	6-5	Stowage of the cargo area cover	6-15
Center console	6-6	To install the cover housing	6-16
Overhead console (if equipped)	6-6	Cargo tie-down hooks	6-16
Cup holders	6-7	Under-floor storage compartment (if equipped)	6-17
Front passenger's cup holder	6-7	Rear view camera (if equipped)	6-17
Rear passenger's cup holder (if equipped)	6-7	How to use the rear view camera	6-18
Bottle holders	6-8	Viewing range on the screen	6-19
Accessory power outlets	6-9	Help line	6-20
Cigarette lighter (if equipped)	6-10		
Ashtray (if equipped)	6-11		

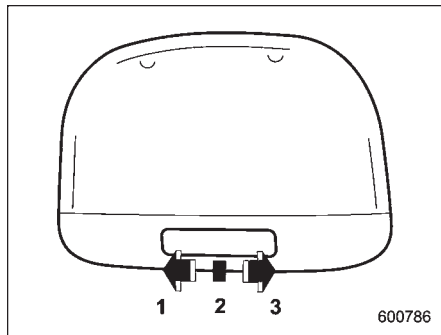
Interior light



CAUTION

When leaving your vehicle, make sure the lights are turned off to avoid battery discharge.

■ Dome light



- 1) ON
- 2) DOOR
- 3) OFF

The dome light switch has the following positions.

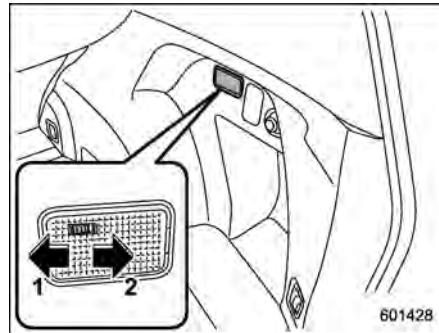
ON: The light remains on continuously.

OFF: The light remains off.

DOOR: The dome light illuminates automatically in the following cases.

- Any of the doors or the rear gate is opened.
- The doors or the rear gate are unlocked using the keyless access function (if equipped). Refer to “Locking and unlocking with “keyless access” entry function” 2-11.
- The doors or the rear gate are unlocked using the remote keyless entry system. Refer to “Remote keyless entry system” 2-16.
- The ignition switch is turned to the “LOCK”/“OFF” position.

■ Cargo area light

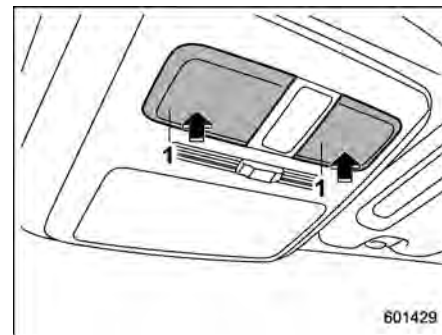


- 1) ON
- 2) OFF

ON: The light illuminates when the rear gate is opened. The light remains illuminated for several seconds and gradually turns off after the rear gate is closed.

OFF: The light remains off.

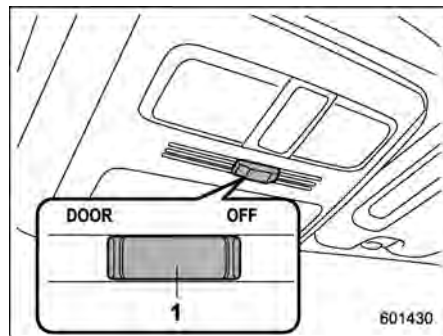
■ Map lights



- 1) Map light switch (lens)

To turn on the map light, push the lens.
To turn it off, push the lens again.

▼ Door interlock switch



1) Door interlock switch

Although the map light switches (lenses) are in the OFF position (manually off), the map lights can be set to illuminate automatically in conjunction with a door opening, etc. by use of the door interlock switch. The door interlock switch has the following positions.

OFF: The map lights do not illuminate automatically in conjunction with a door opening. However, the lights can be turned on manually by pushing the map light switches (lenses).

DOOR: The map lights illuminate automatically in the following cases.

- Any of the doors other than the rear gate is opened. (The map lights do not

illuminate when only the rear gate is opened.)

- The doors are unlocked using the keyless access function (if equipped). Refer to "Locking and unlocking with "keyless access" entry function" 2-11.
- The doors are unlocked using the remote keyless entry system. Refer to "Remote keyless entry system" 2-16.
- The ignition switch is turned from the "ACC" position to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position.

■ OFF delay timer

The following lights have an automatic illumination function.

- dome light
- map light
- cargo area light

After being illuminated automatically, these lights remain on for several seconds and then gradually turn off under the following conditions.

- after all doors and the rear gate are closed (dome light)
- after all doors are closed (map light)
- after the rear gate is closed (cargo area light)

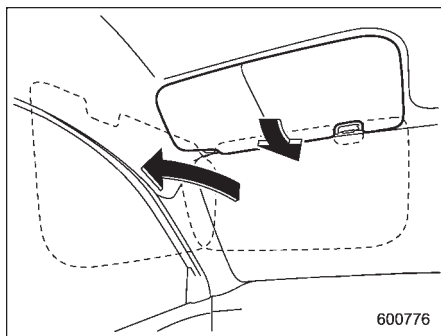
While the lights are illuminated, if any of the following operations are performed,

the lights turn off immediately.

- The ignition switch is turned from the "LOCK"/"OFF" position to the "ACC" or "ON" position.
- All doors and the rear gate are locked using the keyless access function (if equipped).
- All doors and the rear gate are locked using the remote keyless entry system.

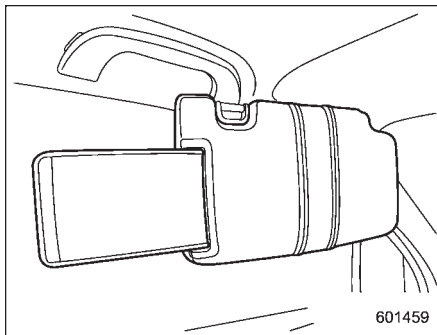
The setting for the period of time in which the lights remain on (OFF delay timer) can be changed by a SUBARU dealer. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for details. For models with multi function display, the setting can be changed by operating the multi function display. For details, refer to "Interior light off delay timer setting" 3-82.

Sun visors

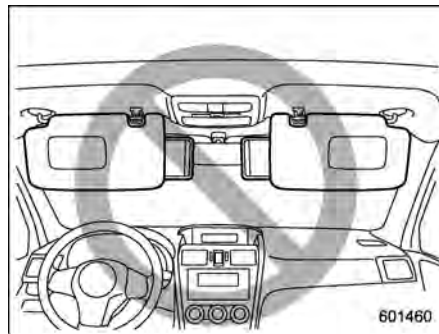


To block out glare, swing down the visors. To use the sun visor at a side window, swing it down and move it sideways.

■ Sun visor extension plate



With the sun visor positioned over the side window, you can use the sun visor extension plate to prevent glare through the gap between the sun visor and center pillar. To use the extension plate, pull it toward the rear of the vehicle. When you have finished using it, stow it by pushing it toward the front of the vehicle.



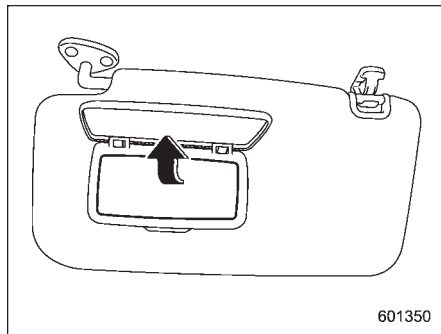
CAUTION

Do not pull out the extension plate with the sun visor positioned over the windshield. The extension plate would obstruct your view of the rearview mirror.

■ Vanity mirror

⚠ CAUTION

Keep the vanity mirror cover closed while the car is being driven to avoid being blinded by glare.



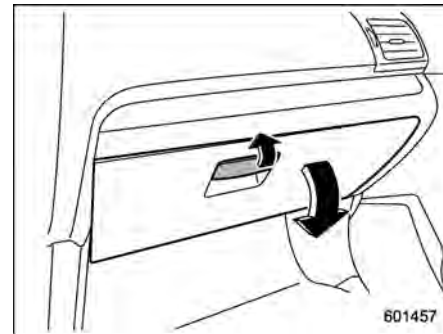
To use the vanity mirror, swing down the sun visor and open the vanity mirror cover.

Storage compartment

⚠ CAUTION

- Always keep the storage compartment closed while driving to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden stops or an accident.
- Do not store spray cans, containers with flammable or corrosive liquids or any other dangerous items in the storage compartment.

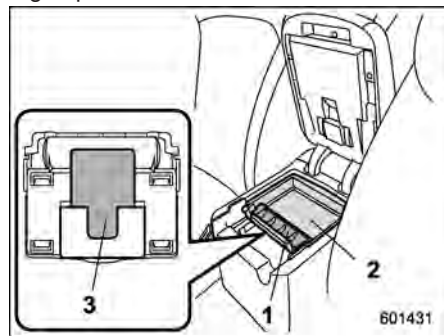
■ Glove box



To open the glove box, pull the handle. To close it, push the lid firmly upward.

■ Center console

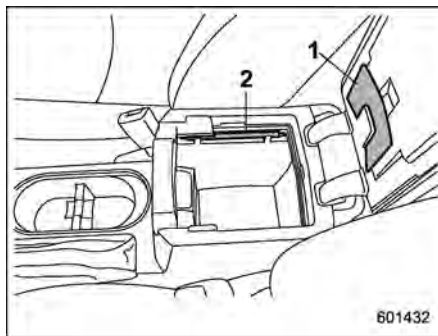
The center console box provides a storage space.



- 1) Coin tray
- 2) Accessory tray
- 3) Card holder

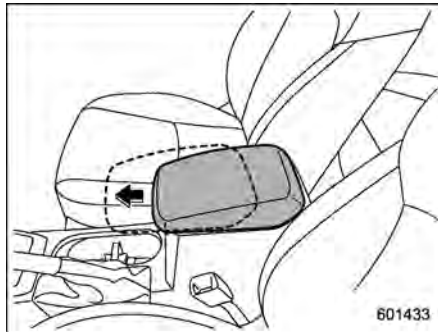
The lid located inside the center console can be used as a coin tray or an accessory tray for small items. There is a card holder on the reverse side of the lid.

When the lid inside the center console is removed, you can use a pen holder.



- 1) Paper holder (if equipped)
- 2) Pen holder

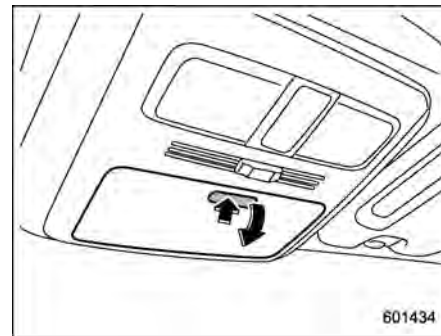
The top of the console can be used as an armrest.



For some models, the armrest is adjustable. Slide the armrest to the desired

position.

■ Overhead console (if equipped)



To open the console, push on the console lid lightly and the lid will automatically open.



CAUTION

When your vehicle is in the sun or on a warm day, the inside of the overhead console heats up. Avoid storing plastic or other heat-vulnerable or flammable articles such as a lighter in the overhead console.

Cup holders

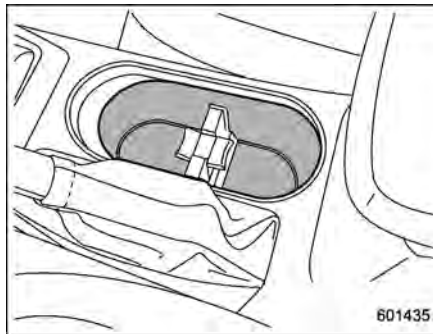
CAUTION

Take care to avoid spills. Beverages, if hot, might burn you and/or your passengers. Spilled beverages may also damage upholstery, carpets or audio equipment.

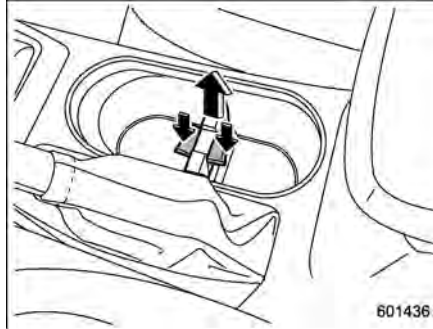
■ Front passenger's cup holder

CAUTION

Do not pick up a cup from the cup holder or put a cup in the holder while you are driving, as this may distract you and lead to an accident.



A dual cup holder is built into the console.



The divider in the cup holder can be pulled out.

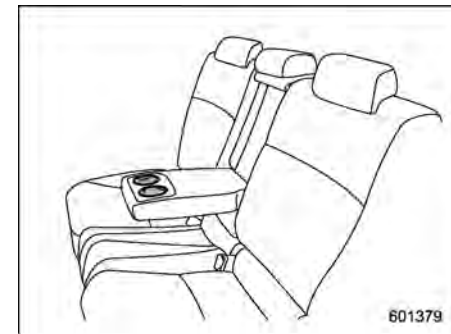
NOTE

- The shape of the front passenger's cup holder may be slightly different depending on the model.
- With the divider taken out, the cup holder can be used as a storage box.

■ Rear passenger's cup holder (if equipped)

CAUTION

When a cup in the rear passenger's cup holder contains a beverage, do not fold down the rear seatback. Otherwise, the beverage could spill and, if the beverage is hot, it could burn you and/or your passengers.



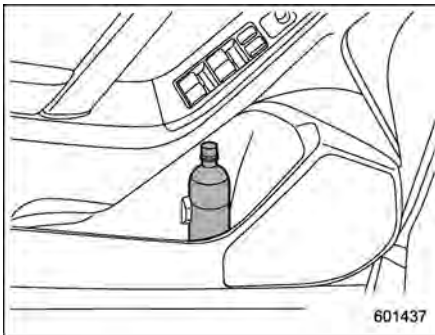
A dual cup holder is built into the armrest.

Bottle holders



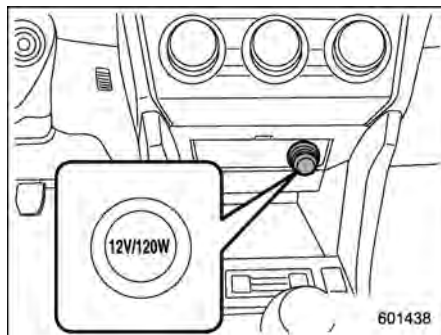
CAUTION

- Do not pick up a bottle from the bottle holder or put a bottle in the holder while you are driving, as this may distract you and lead to an accident.
- When placing a beverage in a bottle holder, make sure it is capped. Otherwise, the beverage could spill when opening/closing the door or while driving and, if the beverage is hot, it could burn you and/or your passengers.

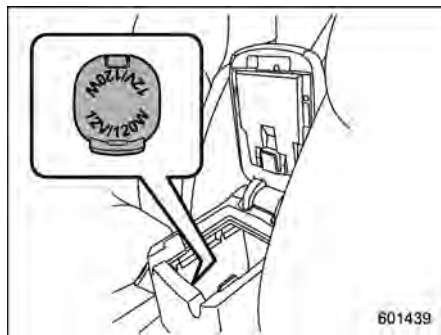


The bottle holder equipped on each door trim can be used to hold beverage bottles and other items.

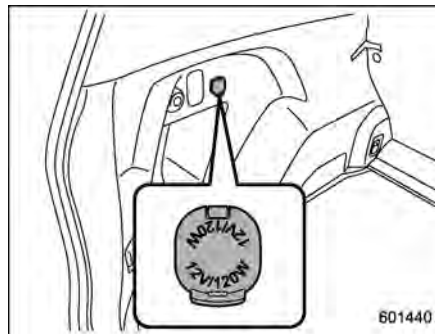
Accessory power outlets



Power outlet below the climate control



Power outlet in the center console



Power outlet in the cargo area

Accessory power outlets are provided below the climate control, in the center console and in the cargo area. Electrical power (12V DC) from the battery is available at any of the outlets when the ignition switch is in either the "ACC" or "ON" position.

You can use an electrical appliance by connecting it to an outlet.

The maximum power rating of an appliance that can be connected is **120W**. Do not use an appliance which exceeds the indicated wattage for each outlet.

When using appliances connected to two or more outlets simultaneously, the total power consumed by them must not exceed 120W.

CAUTION

- Do not attempt to use a cigarette lighter in the accessory power outlets.
- Do not place any foreign objects, especially metal ones such as coins or aluminum foil, into the accessory power outlet. That could cause a short circuit. Always put the cap on the accessory power outlet when it is not in use.
- Use only electrical appliances which are designed for 12V DC.

The maximum power rating of an appliance that can be connected is 120W. Do not use an appliance which exceeds the indicated wattage for each outlet.

When using appliances connected to two or more outlets simultaneously, the total power consumed by them must not exceed 120W. Overloading the accessory power outlet can cause a short circuit. Do not use double adapters or more than one electrical appliance.

- If the plug on your electric appliance is either too loose or too tight for the accessory power outlet, this can result in poor contact or cause the plug to get stuck. Only use plugs that fit properly.
- Use of an electric appliance in the accessory power outlet for a long period of time while the engine is not running can cause battery discharge.
- Before driving your vehicle, make sure that the plug and the cord on your electrical appliance will not interfere with your shifting gears and operating the accelerator and brake pedals. If they do, do not use the electrical appliance while driving.

■ Cigarette lighter (if equipped)

A cigarette lighter may be installed in place of an accessory power outlet. The cigarette lighter assembly is available from your SUBARU dealer.

The cigarette lighter operates only when the ignition switch is in the "ON" or "ACC" position.

To use the cigarette lighter, push in the

knob and wait a few moments. It will automatically spring up when ready for use.



WARNING

To avoid being burned, never grasp the lighter by the end with the heating element. Doing so could result in injury and could also damage the heating element.



CAUTION

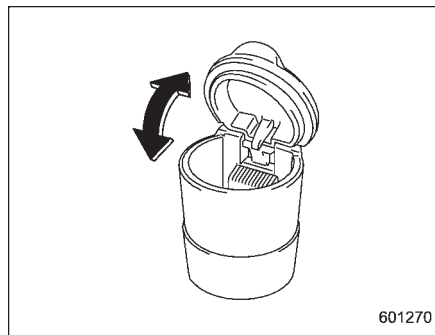
- Do not hold the lighter pushed in, because it will overheat.
- Do not use non-genuine cigarette lighter plugs in the socket. Doing so may cause a short-circuit and overheating, resulting in a fire.
- If the socket is ever used for a plug-in accessory such as a cell phone, that may damage the portion of the socket's internal mechanism that causes a cigarette lighter plug to "pop out" after its lighter element is heated. Therefore, do not place a cigarette lighter plug in a socket that has been used, even once, to power a plug-in accessory. Doing so may cause the plug to stick

and overheat, creating a potential fire hazard.

Ashtray (if equipped)

CAUTION

- Do not use ashtrays as waste receptacles or leave a lighted cigarette in an ashtray. This could cause a fire.
- Always extinguish matches and cigarettes before putting them into the ashtray, and then close the ashtray securely. If you keep the ashtray open, the fire of the cigarette may spread to another cigarette butt and start a fire.
- Do not put flammable material in the ashtray.
- Do not leave a lot of cigarette butts in the ashtray.



The portable ashtray can be installed in each cup holder or bottle holder. For the locations of the cup holders, refer to "Cup holders" 6-7. For the locations of the bottle holders, refer to "Bottle holders" 6-8.

When using the ashtray, open the lid of the ashtray. Fully close the lid after using the ashtray to help reduce residual smoke.

NOTE

Particles of ash and tobacco will accumulate around the hinges of the ashtray's inner lid. Clean them off using a toothbrush or another narrow-ended implement.

Floor mat (if equipped)

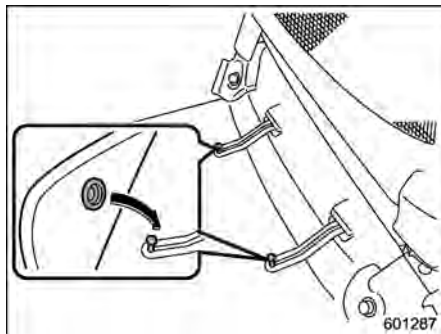


CAUTION

If the floor mat slips forward and interferes with the movement of the pedals during driving, it could cause an accident. Observe the following precautions to prevent the floor mat from slipping forward.

- Be sure to use a genuine SUBARU floor mat or an equivalent designed with grommets in the correct locations.
- Make sure that the driver's floor mat is placed in its proper location and is correctly secured on its retaining pins.

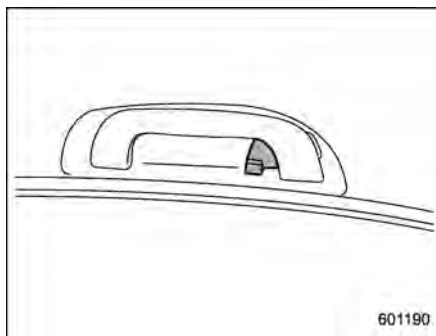
- Do not use more than one floor mat.



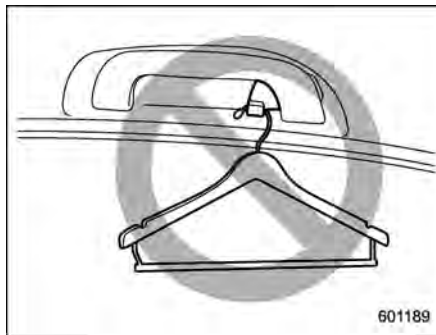
Retaining pins are located on the driver's side floor.

The driver's floor mat should be properly secured using the built-in grommets, by placing the grommets over the pins and pushing them downward.

Coat hook



A coat hook is attached to the rear passenger's hand grip.



WARNING

Hang clothing directly on the coat hooks without using hangers. Do not hang coat hangers or other hard or pointed objects on the coat hooks. If such items are hanging on the coat hooks, when the SRS curtain airbags deploy, they could cause serious injuries by coming off the coat hooks and being thrown through the cabin or by preventing correct airbag deployment. Before hanging clothing on the coat hooks, make sure there are no pointed objects in the pockets.



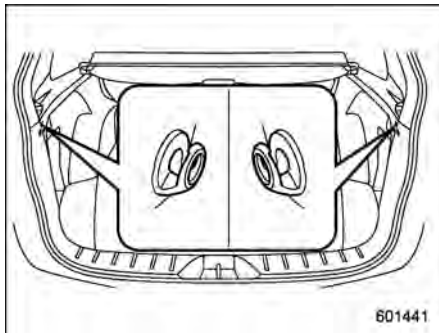
CAUTION

Never hang anything on the coat hook that might obstruct the driver's view or that could cause injury in sudden stops or in a collision.

Shopping bag hook

CAUTION

Do not hang items on the shopping bag hook that weigh 3 kg (6 lbs) or more.

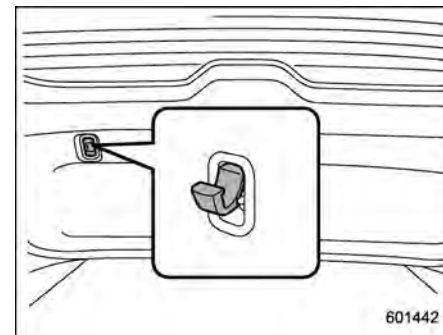


A shopping bag hook is attached to each side of the cargo area.

Convenient hook

CAUTION

- Do not hang items on the convenient hook that weigh 3 kg (6 lbs) or more. Depending on the conditions of use (for example, in low temperatures, etc.), the rear gate may lower even with lighter loads. However, this is not a malfunction. Be careful not to hit your head or other body parts.
- When using the convenient hook, do not try to close the rear gate. Doing so may cause the item on the hook to be jammed in the rear gate and damaged. Remove the item from the hook before closing the rear gate.

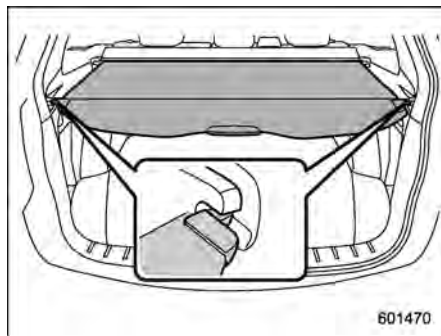


A convenient hook is attached to the rear gate trim. When the rear gate is open, you can hang a candle lantern, wet suit, etc. on the hook.

Cargo area cover

The cargo area cover is provided for covering the cargo area and to protect its contents from direct sunlight. This cover is detachable to make room for additional cargo.

■ Using the cover



To extend the cover, pull the end of the cover out of the housing, then insert its hooks into the catches as shown. To rewind it, unhook it from the catches and it will rewind automatically. You should hold on to the cover and guide it back into the cover housing while it is rewinding.

⚠ WARNING

Do not place anything on the extended cover. Putting excessive weight on the extended cover can break it and an object on the cover could tumble forward in the event of a sudden stop or collision. This could cause serious injury.

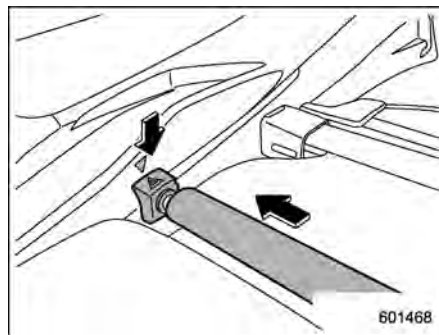
⚠ CAUTION

Be careful not to scratch the rear gate stays while extending and rewinding the cover. Scratches on the stays could cause leakage of gas from the stays, which may result in their inability to hold the rear gate open.

■ To install the front cover

⚠ CAUTION

For models with a rear seat reclining mechanism, when reclining the rear seatback, move the front cover backward so that the cover is not damaged.



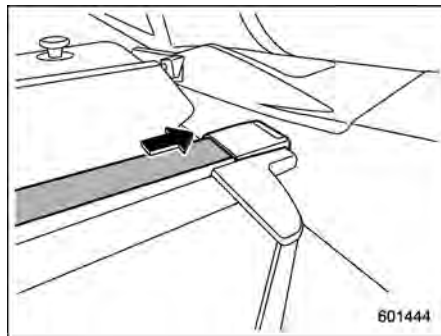
1. Align the right side of the front cover with the triangle mark before fixing the cover in place.
2. Push the front cover to the right side and shorten the bar.
3. Align the left side of the front cover with the triangle mark before fixing the cover in place.

■ To remove the front cover

1. Push the front cover to the right side and shorten the bar.
2. Remove the front cover.

■ To remove the cover

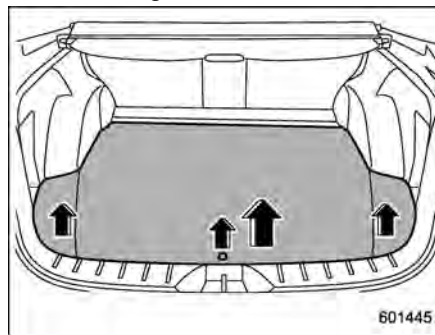
1. Rewind the cover.



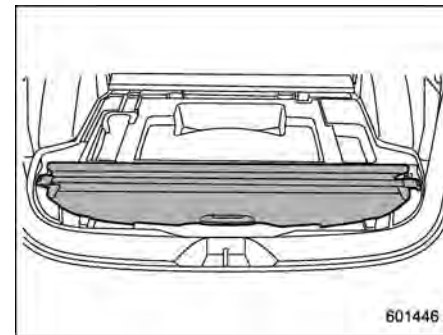
2. Push the bar to the right side and shorten the bar.
3. Take it off the retainer.

■ Stowage of the cargo area cover

The cargo area cover can be stowed under the cargo floor.



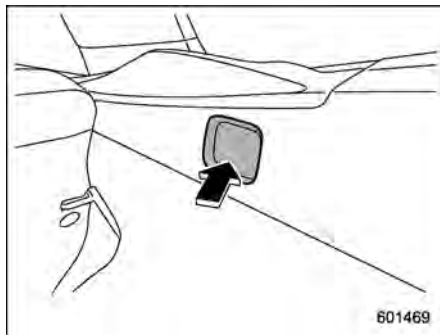
1. Pull the strap to open the center part of the cargo floor lid, and then remove the lid.
2. Remove the left and right parts of the cargo floor lid.



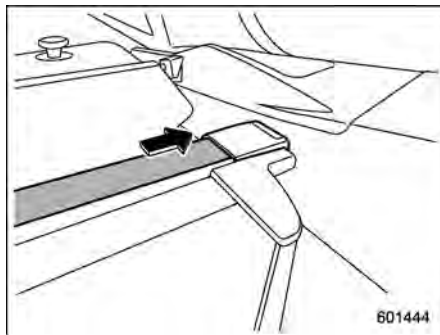
3. Stow the cover housing in the cargo area end.

6-16 Interior equipment/Cargo tie-down hooks

■ To install the cover housing



1. Insert the protrusion located on the right end of the sleeve into the recess of the retainer.

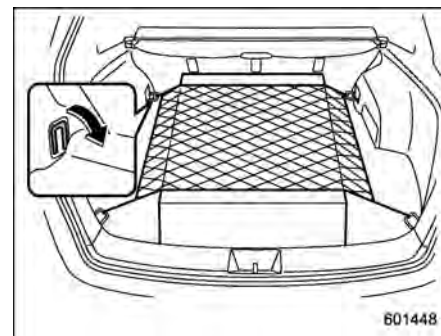


2. Push the cover housing to the right

side and shorten the bar.

3. Insert the other protrusion into the recess of the other retainer.

Cargo tie-down hooks



The cargo area is equipped with four tie-down hooks so that cargo can be secured with a cargo net or ropes.

When using the front tie-down hooks, turn them down out of the storing recesses.



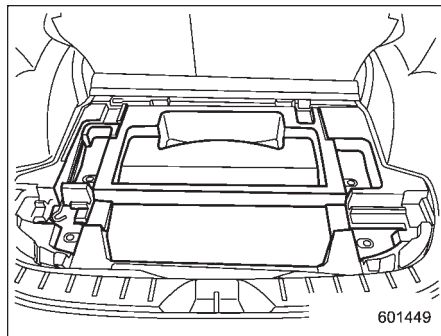
CAUTION

The cargo tie-down hooks are designed only for securing light cargo. Never try to secure cargo that exceeds the capacity of the hooks. The maximum load capacity is 20 kg (44 lbs) per hook.

Under-floor storage compartment (if equipped)

NOTE

The shape of the storage compartment may be different depending on the model.



The storage compartment is located under the floor of the cargo area and can be used to store small items. Pull the strap to open the center part of the cargo floor lid, and then remove the lid.



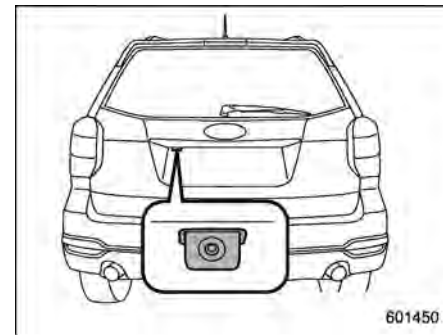
CAUTION

- Always keep the lid of the storage compartment closed while driving to reduce the risk of injury in

the event of sudden stop or an accident.

- Do not store spray cans, containers with flammable or corrosive liquids or any other dangerous items in the storage compartment.

Rear view camera (if equipped)



A rear view camera is attached to the rear gate. When the ignition switch is "ON" and the shift lever (MT models) or select lever (CVT models) is set to "R", the rear view camera automatically displays the rear view image behind the vehicle on the monitor of the navigation system (if equipped) or the multi function display (if equipped).



WARNING

- Since the rear view camera uses a wide-angle lens, the image on the monitor is different from the actual view in terms of distance.

- Since the range of the image on the monitor is limited, you should always check the rear view and the surrounding area with your eyes and mirrors, and move backward at a slow speed. Moving backward only by checking the rear view image from the camera could cause an accident.
- Do not disassemble or modify the camera, switch or wiring. If smoke comes out or you smell a strange odor, stop using the rear view camera immediately. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for an inspection. Continued use may result in accident, fire or electric shock.

**CAUTION**

- If your vehicle is washed with a high-pressure washer, do not allow water to contact the camera directly. Entry of water into the camera lens may result in condensation, malfunction, fire or electric shock.
- Since the camera is a precision device, do not subject it to strong

impacts. Otherwise, malfunction, fire or electric shock may occur.

- If mud or snow sticks to or is frozen on the camera, you must be very careful when removing it. Otherwise, damage to the camera may cause a fire or electric shock. Pour water or lukewarm water over the camera to remove mud and ice, and wipe it with a soft, dry cloth.
- Do not put a flame close to the camera or wiring. Otherwise, damage or fire may occur.
- When replacing the fuse, be sure to use a fuse with the specified rating. Use of a fuse with a different rating may result in a malfunction.
- If the rear view camera is used for a long time while the engine is not operated, the battery may become completely discharged.

NOTE

- Do not wipe the camera with alcohol, benzine or paint thinner. Otherwise, discoloration may occur. To remove contamination, wipe the camera with a cloth moistened with a diluted neutral

detergent and then wipe it with a soft, dry cloth.

- When waxing the vehicle, be careful not to apply the wax to the camera. If it comes in contact with the camera, moisten a clean cloth with a diluted neutral detergent to remove the wax.
- The camera lens has hard coating to help prevent scratches. However, when washing the vehicle or cleaning the camera lens, be careful not to scratch the camera lens. Do not use a washing brush directly on the camera lens. The image quality of the rear view camera may deteriorate.
- Strong light shined on the camera lens may develop vertical lines around the light source. This is not a malfunction.
- Under the fluorescent light, the display may flicker. However, this is not a malfunction.
- The image of the rear view camera may be slightly different from the actual color of the objects.

■ How to use the rear view camera

When the shift lever/select lever is set to "R", the rear view camera automatically displays the rear view image from the vehicle. When the lever is set to other

positions, the image before setting to "R" is displayed.

1. Set the ignition switch to "ON".
2. Set the shift lever/select lever to "R".

NOTE

- For models with the genuine SUBARU navigation system, the image of the rear view camera has priority over other screen displays. However, while the navigation system is activated, the image of the rear view camera is not displayed.

- The image of the rear view camera is horizontally reversed as is the case with the vehicle rearview mirror or the side view mirror.

- It may be difficult to see the image of the rear view camera in the following cases. This is not a malfunction of the camera.

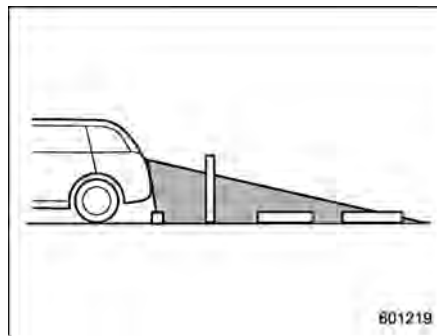
- The vehicle is in a dark place (at night, in a tunnel, etc.).
- The vehicle is in an extremely hot or cold place.
- An object (such as raindrops, snow, dirt, etc.) that disturbs the view of the rear view camera sticks to the lens of the camera.
- Strong light shined directly on the camera lens (occasionally, there

are vertical lines on the screen).

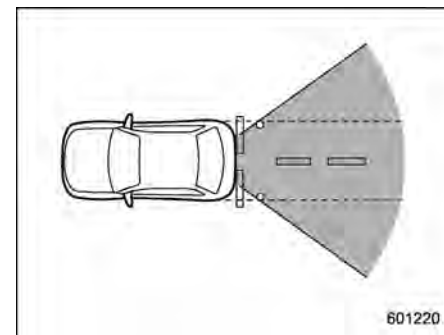
■ Viewing range on the screen

⚠ CAUTION

The range that can be viewed with the rear view camera is limited. Always be sure to check with your eyes when moving backward and proceed slowly.



Range of view



Range of view

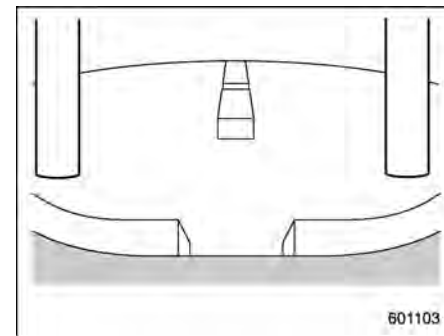
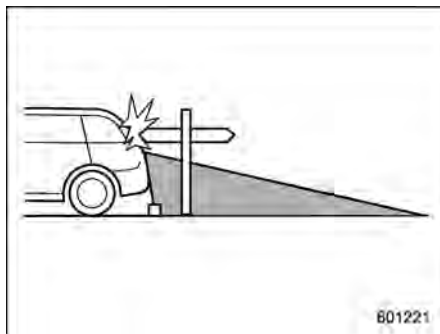


Image from camera

The area from the rear end of the bumper can be viewed. Areas at both ends of the bumper and areas just under the bumper cannot be viewed.

Also, the image from the rear view camera looks shorter than the actual distance.



Range of view

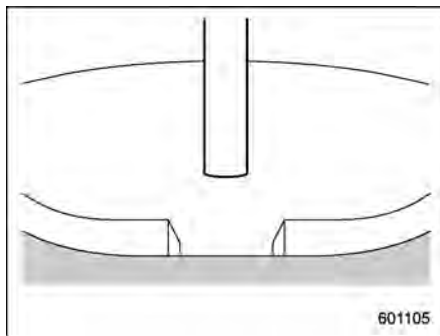


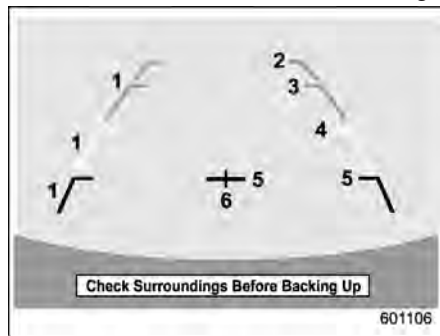
Image from camera

The area above the camera cannot be viewed. If there is an object that has a

wide projection on its upper part such as a sign pole behind the vehicle, the projection cannot be seen on the screen.

■ Help line

The help line (distance marker and vehicle width line) is a guide to help you realize the actual distance from the screen image.



- 1) Vehicle width line (oblique vertical line)
- 2) Approx. 3 m (10 feet) from the bumper (green horizontal line)
- 3) Approx. 2 m (6.5 feet) from the bumper (green horizontal line)
- 4) Approx. 1 m (3 feet) from the bumper (yellow horizontal line)
- 5) Approx. 0.5 m (1.5 feet) from the bumper (red horizontal line)
- 6) Vehicle centerline

When the shift lever or select lever is set to position "R", the monitor screen dis-

plays the help lines together with the rear view image.



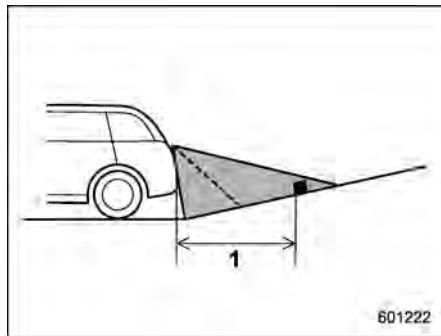
CAUTION

- When moving backward, always check the back with your eyes without relying on the help lines.
- The actual position may be different from the indication of the help lines.
- Differences may occur due to number of passengers or loaded cargo.
- When the vehicle is on a slope or when the vehicle is inclined against the road, the indication is different from the actual position.

▼ Difference between screen image and actual road

The distance markers show the distance for a level road when the vehicle is not loaded. It may be different from the actual distance depending on the loading conditions or road conditions.

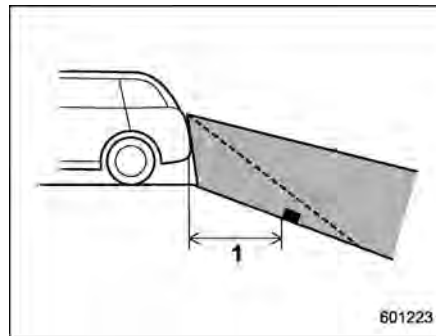
▽ When there is an upward slope at the back



1) 1 m (3 feet)

The distance on the screen looks farther than the actual distance.

▽ When there is a downward slope at the back



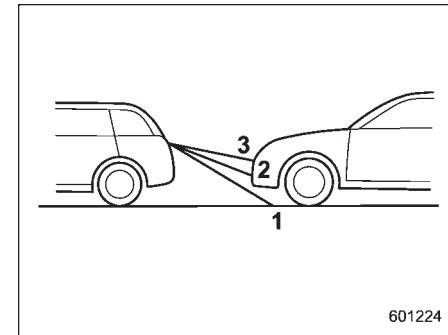
1) 1 m (3 feet)

The distance on the screen looks nearer than the actual distance.

NOTE

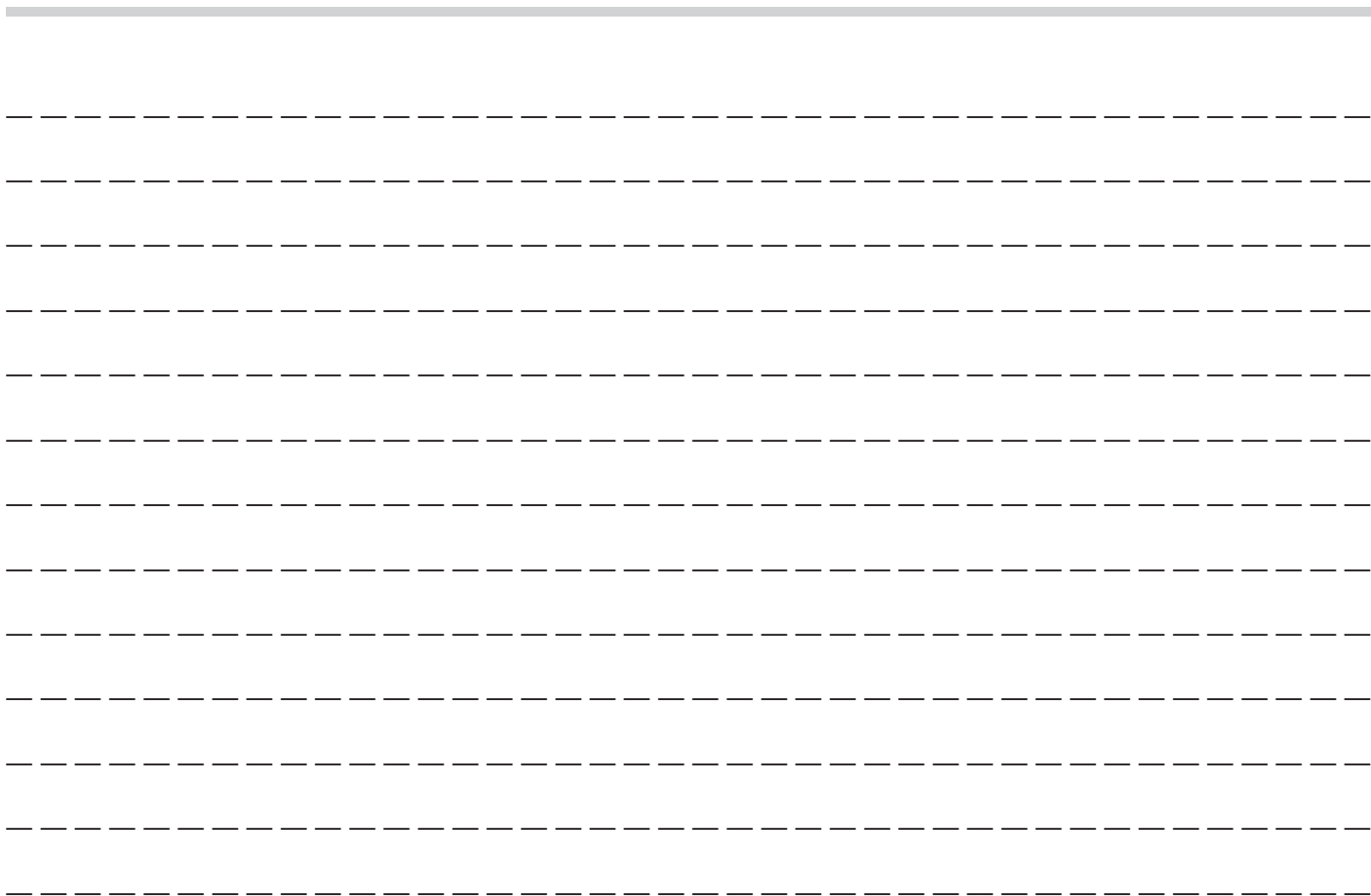
When cargo is loaded, the rear view distance on the screen looks farther than the actual distance as in an upward slope.

▼ Feature of distance marker



- 1) 1 m (3 feet) line
- 2) 2 m (6.5 feet) line
- 3) 3 m (10 feet) line

The distance marker shows the distance on the road. If there is a car or other object close behind, distance cannot be correctly displayed.



Fuel	7-3	Power steering	7-25
Fuel requirements for petrol engine models	7-3	Braking	7-26
Fuel requirements for diesel engine models	7-3	Braking tips	7-26
Fuel filler lid and cap	7-4	Brake system	7-26
Preparing to drive	7-6	Disc brake pad wear warning indicators	7-27
Starting and stopping engine (models without push-button start system)	7-7	ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)	7-28
Starting engine.....	7-7	ABS system self-check	7-28
Stopping engine	7-9	ABS warning light.....	7-28
Starting and stopping engine (models with push-button start system)	7-10	Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system	7-29
Safety precautions	7-10	Steps to take if EBD system fails	7-29
Operating range for push-button start system.....	7-10	Vehicle Dynamics Control system	7-30
Starting engine.....	7-10	Vehicle Dynamics Control system monitor.....	7-32
Stopping engine	7-12	Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch	7-32
When access key does not operate properly	7-12	X mode (if equipped)	7-33
Manual transmission	7-13	To activate/deactivate the X mode	7-34
Shifting speeds	7-14	Hill descent control function	7-35
Driving tips	7-16	Parking your vehicle	7-36
Continuously variable transmission	7-16	Parking brake	7-36
Select lever	7-17	Parking tips	7-36
Selection of manual mode (if equipped)	7-19	Hill start assist system	7-37
Selection of “L” (if equipped).....	7-20	To activate/deactivate the Hill start assist system	7-38
Shift lock function	7-21	Hill start assist warning light/Hill start assist OFF indicator light	7-40
Driving tips	7-22	Cruise control (if equipped)	7-40
SI-DRIVE (if equipped)	7-22	To set cruise control	7-40
Intelligent (I) mode	7-22	To temporarily cancel the cruise control	7-41
Sport (S) mode.....	7-23	To turn off the cruise control.....	7-42
Sport Sharp (S#) mode (if equipped)	7-23	To change the cruising speed	7-42
SI-DRIVE switches.....	7-24		

Cruise control indicator light	7-43
Cruise control set indicator light.....	7-43
Auto Start Stop system (if equipped)	7-44
System operation	7-44

Displaying the Auto Start Stop system status	7-47
System warning.....	7-47

Fuel

■ Fuel requirements for petrol engine models

CAUTION

- Use of a fuel which is low in quality or use of an inappropriate fuel additive may cause engine damage.
- Do not let fuel spill on the exterior surfaces of the vehicle. Because fuel may damage the paint, be sure to wipe off any spilled fuel quickly. Paint damage caused by spilled fuel is not covered under the SUBARU Limited Warranty.
- The neck of the fuel filler pipe is designed to accept only an unleaded petrol filler nozzle. Under no circumstances should leaded petrol be used because it will damage the emission control system and may impair driveability and fuel economy. Also, this can increase maintenance costs.

▼ Non-turbo petrol engine models

2.5 L models and Australia models:

Your engine is designed to use only **unleaded petrol**. The use of unleaded petrol with an octane rating of **90 or higher** is recommended. This octane rating is the Research Octane number.

For optimum engine performance and driveability, it is recommended that you use premium grade unleaded petrol.

Other models:

Your engine is designed to use only **unleaded petrol**. The use of unleaded petrol with an octane rating of **95 or higher** is recommended. This octane rating is the Research Octane number.

If unleaded petrol with an octane rating of 95 or higher is not available, unleaded petrol with an octane rating of 90 or higher may be used.

▼ Turbo petrol engine models

The engine is designed to use only **unleaded petrol** with an octane rating of **95 or higher**. This octane rating is the Research Octane number.

■ Fuel requirements for diesel engine models

Your engine is designed to use only **diesel** fuel that conforms to the specification of **EN590** or an equivalent.

CAUTION

- Never use fuels other than those that conform to the specification of **EN590** or an equivalent for your vehicle. If an inappropriate fuel is used, it could cause not only lower engine performance but also serious damage to the engine and fuel system. To avoid damaging the engine, you must conform to the following instructions.
 - Never use petrol or a diesel fuel mixed with petrol.
 - Never use paraffin, heating oils, etc.
 - Never use marine diesel fuel.
 - Never add any fuel additives or cleaning agents to the diesel fuel.
- Do not let fuel spill on the exterior surfaces of the vehicle. Because fuel may damage the paint, be sure to wipe off any spilled fuel

quickly. Paint damage caused by spilled fuel is not covered under the SUBARU Limited Warranty.

▼ Winter diesel

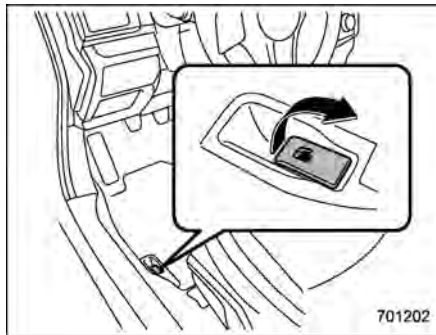
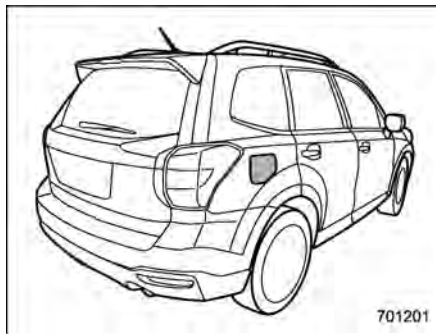
In order to avoid operational problems at low fuel temperatures, diesel fuels with improved cold flow qualities are available during the winter season. However, the specification of the diesel fuel for the winter season depends on the climate of the area where the vehicle is driven. For more details about the winter diesel fuel, we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer.

■ Fuel filler lid and cap

▼ Refueling

Only one person should be involved in refueling. Do not allow others to approach the area of the vehicle near the fuel filler pipe while refueling is in progress.

Be sure to observe any other precautions that are posted at the service station.

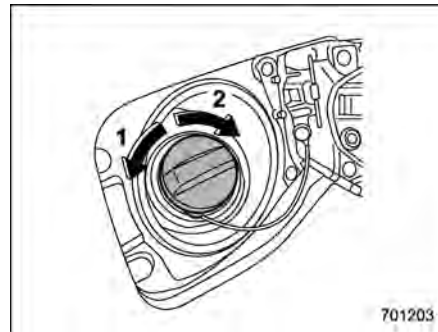


1. To open the fuel filler lid, pull the lid release lever up. The lever is on the floor of the driver's seat.



WARNING

Before opening the fuel filler cap, first touch the vehicle body or a metal portion of the fuel pump or similar object to discharge any static electricity that may be present on your body. If your body is carrying an electrostatic charge, there is a possibility that an electric spark could ignite the fuel, which could burn you. To avoid acquiring a new static electric charge, do not get back into the vehicle while refueling is in progress.



- 1) Open
- 2) Close

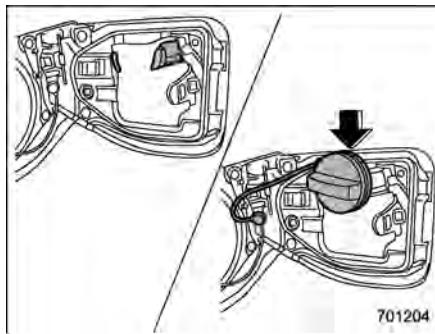
2. Remove the fuel filler cap by turning it

slowly counterclockwise.



WARNING

- Fuel vapor is highly flammable. Before refueling, always first stop the engine and close all vehicle doors and windows. Make sure that there are no lighted cigarettes, open flames or electrical sparks in the adjacent area. Only handle fuel outdoors. Quickly wipe up any spilled fuel.
- When opening the cap, grasp it firmly and turn it slowly counterclockwise. Do not remove the cap quickly. Fuel may be under pressure and spray out of the fuel filler neck, especially in hot weather. If you hear a hissing sound while you are removing the cap, wait for the sound to stop and then slowly open the cap to prevent fuel from spraying out and creating a fire hazard.



3. Set the fuel filler cap on the cap holder inside the fuel filler lid.



WARNING

- When refueling, insert the fuel nozzle securely into the fuel filler pipe. If the nozzle is lifted or not fully inserted, its automatic stopping mechanism may not function, causing fuel to overflow the tank and creating a fire hazard.

- Stop refueling when the automatic stop mechanism on the fuel nozzle activates. If you continue to add fuel, temperature changes or other conditions may cause fuel to overflow from the tank and create a fire hazard.

4. Stop filling the tank after the fuel filler pump automatically stops. Do not add any more fuel.
 5. Put the cap back on, turn it clockwise until you hear a clicking noise. Be certain not to catch the tether under the cap while tightening.
 6. Close the fuel filler lid completely.
- If you spill any fuel on the painted surface, rinse it off immediately. Otherwise, the painted surface could be damaged.

NOTE

You will see the “▶” sign in the fuel gauge. This indicates that the fuel filler door (lid) is located on the right side of the vehicle.

**CAUTION**

- Never add any cleaning agents to the fuel tank. The addition of a cleaning agent may cause damage to the fuel system.
- After refueling, turn the cap clockwise until it clicks to ensure that it is fully tightened. If the cap is not securely tightened, fuel may leak out while the vehicle is being driven or fuel spillage could occur in the event of an accident, creating a fire hazard.
- Do not let fuel spill on the exterior surfaces of the vehicle. Because fuel may damage the paint, be sure to wipe off any spilled fuel quickly. Paint damage caused by spilled fuel is not covered under the SUBARU Limited Warranty.
- We recommend that you always use a genuine SUBARU fuel filler cap. If you use the wrong cap, it may not fit or have proper venting and your fuel tank and emission control system may be damaged. It could also lead to fuel spillage and a fire.
- Immediately put fuel in the tank whenever the low fuel warning

light illuminates. Engine misfires as a result of an empty tank could cause damage to the engine.

Preparing to drive

You should perform the following checks and adjustments every day before you start driving.

1. Check that all windows, mirrors, and lights are clean and unobstructed.
2. Check the appearance and condition of the tires. Also check tires for proper inflation.
3. Look under the vehicle for any sign of leaks.
4. Check that the hood and rear gate are fully closed.
5. Check the adjustment of the seat.
6. Check the adjustment of the inside and outside mirrors.
7. Fasten your seatbelt. Check that your passengers have fastened their seatbelts.
8. Check the operation of the warning and indicator lights when the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position.
9. Check the gauges, indicator and warning lights after starting the engine.

NOTE

Engine oil, engine coolant, brake fluid, washer fluid and other fluid levels should be checked daily, weekly or at fuel stops.

Starting and stopping engine (models without push-button start system)

■ Starting engine

CAUTION

Do not operate the starter motor continuously for more than 10 seconds. If the engine fails to start after operating the starter for 5 to 10 seconds, wait for 10 seconds or more before trying again.

NOTE

It may be difficult to start the engine when the battery has been disconnected and reconnected (for maintenance or other purposes). This difficulty is caused by the electronically controlled throttle's self-diagnosis function. To overcome it, keep the ignition switch in the "ON" position for approximately 10 seconds before starting the engine.

▼ General precautions when starting engine

WARNING

- Never start the engine from outside the vehicle. It may result in an accident.
- Do not leave the engine running in locations with poor ventilation, such as a garage and indoors. The exhaust gas may enter the vehicle or indoors, and it may result in carbon monoxide poisoning.
- Do not start the engine near dry foliage, paper, or other flammable substances. The exhaust pipe and exhaust emissions can create a fire hazard at high temperatures.

CAUTION

- If the engine is stopped during driving, the catalyst may overheat and burn.
- When starting the engine, be sure to sit in the driver's seat.

NOTE

- Avoid rapid racing and rapid acceleration immediately after the engine has started.
- For a short time after the engine has started, the engine speed is kept high. When the warm-up is completed, the engine speed lowers automatically.
- On rare occasions, it may be difficult to start the engine depending on the fuel and the usage condition (repeated driving of a distance in which the engine has not warmed up sufficiently). In such a case, it is recommended that you change to a different brand of fuel.
- On rare occasions, transient knocking may be heard from the engine when the accelerator is operated rapidly such as a rapid start-up and a rapid acceleration. This is not a malfunction.
- The engine starts more easily when the headlights, air conditioner and rear window defogger are turned off.
- After the engine starts, the engine speed will be kept high until the engine has warmed up sufficiently.

▼ MT petrol engine models

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Turn off unnecessary lights and accessories.
3. Depress the clutch pedal to the floor and shift the shift lever into neutral. Hold the clutch pedal to the floor while starting the engine.
4. Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position and check the operation of the warning and indicator lights. Refer to "Warning and indicator lights" 3-12.
5. Turn the ignition switch to the "START" position **without** depressing the accelerator pedal. Release the key immediately after the engine has started.

If the engine does not start, try the following procedure.

- (1) Turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK" position and wait for at least 10 seconds. After checking that the parking brake is firmly set, turn the ignition switch to the "START" position while depressing the accelerator pedal slightly (approximately a quarter of the full stroke). Release the accelerator pedal as soon as the engine starts.
- (2) If this fails to start the engine, turn the ignition switch back to the "LOCK" position and wait for at least 10 seconds. Then fully depress the accel-

erator pedal and turn the ignition switch to the "START" position. If the engine starts, quickly release the accelerator pedal.

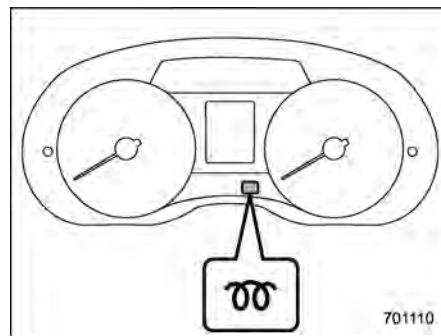
(3) If this fails to start the engine, turn the ignition switch again to the "LOCK" position. After waiting for 10 seconds or longer, turn the ignition switch to the "START" position without depressing the accelerator pedal.

(4) If the engine still does not start, we recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer for assistance.

6. Confirm that all warning and indicator lights have turned off after the engine has started. The fuel injection system automatically lowers the idle speed as the engine warms up.

▼ MT diesel engine models

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Turn off unnecessary lights and accessories.
3. Depress the clutch pedal to the floor and shift the shift lever into neutral. Hold the clutch pedal to the floor while starting the engine.



Preheating indicator light

4. Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position and check the operation of the warning and indicator lights. At this time, confirm that the preheating indicator light has illuminated for a few seconds and has turned off. Refer to "Warning and indicator lights" 3-12.
5. Turn the ignition switch to the "START" position **without** depressing the accelerator pedal. Release the key immediately after the engine has started.
6. Confirm that all warning and indicator lights have turned off after the engine has started. The fuel injection system automatically lowers the idle speed as the engine warms up.

NOTE

You may feel vibration during engine idling for several tens of seconds. This vibration is caused by a self-learning procedure of the injector. This learning procedure is necessary to stabilize the best engine performance. Therefore, it does not indicate a malfunction.

▼ CVT models

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Turn off unnecessary lights and accessories.
3. Shift the select lever to the "P" or "N" position (preferably "P" position).
4. Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position and check the operation of the warning and indicator lights. Refer to "Warning and indicator lights" 3-12.
5. Turn the ignition switch to the "START" position **without** depressing the accelerator pedal. Release the key immediately after the engine has started.

If the engine does not start, perform the following procedures.

- (1) Turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK" position and wait for at least 10 seconds. After checking that the parking brake is firmly set, turn the ignition switch to the "START" position while depressing the accelerator pedal

slightly (approximately a quarter of the full stroke). Release the accelerator pedal as soon as the engine starts.

(2) If this fails to start the engine, turn the ignition switch back to the "LOCK" position and wait for at least 10 seconds. Then fully depress the accelerator pedal and turn the ignition switch to the "START" position. If the engine starts, quickly release the accelerator pedal.

(3) If this fails to start the engine, turn the ignition switch again to the "LOCK" position. After waiting for 10 seconds or longer, turn the ignition switch to the "START" position without depressing the accelerator pedal.

(4) If the engine still does not start, we recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer for assistance.

6. Confirm that all warning and indicator lights have turned off after the engine has started. The fuel injection system automatically lowers the idle speed as the engine warms up.

While the engine is warming up, make sure that the select lever is at the "P" or "N" position and that the parking brake is applied.

**CAUTION**

If you restart the engine while the vehicle is moving, shift the select lever into the "N" position. Do not attempt to place the select lever of a moving vehicle into the "P" position.

■ Stopping engine

The ignition switch should be turned off only when the vehicle is stopped and the engine is idling.

**WARNING**

Do not stop the engine when the vehicle is moving. This will cause loss of power to the power steering and the brake booster, making steering and braking more difficult. It could also result in accidental activation of the "LOCK" position on the ignition switch, causing the steering wheel to lock.

Starting and stopping engine (models with push-button start system)

Once you enter the vehicle carrying the access key, the power can be switched and the engine can be started.

■ Safety precautions

Refer to “Safety precautions” 2-8.

■ Operating range for push-button start system

Refer to “Operating range for push-button start system” 3-6.

■ Starting engine

WARNING

- There are some general precautions when starting the engine. Carefully read the precautions described in “General precautions when starting engine” 7-7.
- If the indicator on the push-button ignition switch flashes in green after the engine has started, never drive the vehicle.

The steering wheel is still locked, and it may result in an accident. To release the steering lock, press the push-button ignition switch again while moving the steering wheel right and left and depressing the brake pedal.

CAUTION

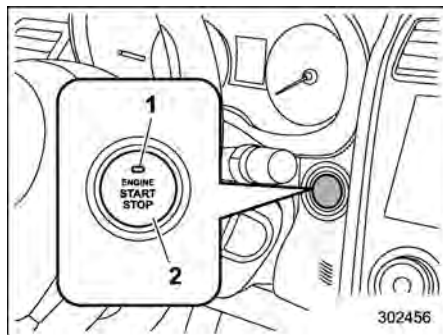
- When the operation indicator on the push-button ignition switch is flashing in orange, there may be a malfunction with the vehicle. We recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer immediately.
- Do not continue pushing the push-button ignition switch for more than 10 seconds. Doing so could cause a malfunction. If the engine does not start, stop pushing the push-button ignition switch and turn off the engine. Wait 10 seconds, and then push the push-button ignition switch to start the engine.
- After the engine starts, the engine speed will be kept high until the coolant temperature low indicator light turns off. Refer to “Coolant temperature low indica-

tor light/Coolant temperature high warning light” 3-17.

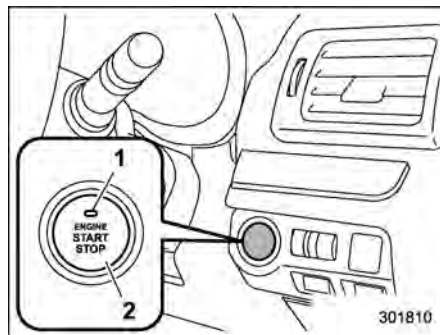
NOTE

- When the push-button ignition switch is pressed while depressing the clutch pedal (MT models) or the brake pedal (CVT models), the engine starter operates for a maximum of 10 seconds and after starting the engine, the starter stops automatically.
- When the push-button ignition switch is pressed while depressing the clutch pedal (MT models) or the brake pedal (CVT models), the engine can be started regardless of the status of the push-button ignition switch.
- If the immobilizer indicator light illuminates when you attempt to start the engine but the engine does not start, press the push-button ignition switch to switch the power to “OFF” and then try to start the engine again.
- If the engine does not start, press the push-button ignition switch without depressing the clutch pedal (MT models) or the brake pedal (CVT models) to switch the power to “OFF”. Then, while depressing the clutch pedal (MT models) or the brake pedal (CVT models) more forcefully, press the push-button ignition switch.

- The engine start procedures may not function depending on the radio wave conditions around the vehicle. In such a case, refer to “Starting engine” 9-17.
- If the vehicle battery is discharged, the steering cannot be unlocked. Charge the battery.



Left-hand drive models



Right-hand drive models

- 1) Operation indicator
- 2) Push-button ignition switch

When the push-button ignition switch is pressed while depressing the clutch pedal (MT models)/brake pedal (CVT models), the engine will start. The start procedure of the engine is as follows.

▼ MT models

1. Carry the access key, and sit in the driver's seat.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Shift the shift lever in neutral.
4. Depress the brake pedal.
5. Depress the clutch pedal until the indicator on the push-button ignition switch turns green.
6. While depressing the clutch pedal,

press the push-button ignition switch.

NOTE

- In case the engine does not start by the normal engine start procedure, move the shift lever to the neutral position, and switch the power to “ACC”. Depress the clutch pedal, and press the push-button ignition switch for at least 15 seconds. The engine may start. Only use this engine start procedure in case of emergency.
- For diesel engine models, the engine will not start until the preheating indicator light has turned off.
- For diesel engine models, you may feel vibration during engine idling for several tens of seconds. This vibration is caused by the self-learning procedure of the injector. This learning procedure is necessary for optimum engine performance. This does not indicate a malfunction.

▼ CVT models

1. Carry the access key, and sit in the driver's seat.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Shift the select lever in the “P” position. The engine can also start when the select lever is in the “N” position, however, for safety reasons, start in the “P” position.

– CONTINUED –

4. Depress the brake pedal until the operation indicator on the push-button ignition switch turns green. When starting with the select lever in the "N" position, the indicator does not turn green.
5. While depressing the brake pedal, press the push-button ignition switch.

NOTE

- While pressing the select lever button in, the indicator on the push-button ignition switch will not turn green even when the select lever is in the "P" position.
- In case the engine does not start by the normal engine start procedure, move the select lever to the "P" position, and switch the power to "ACC". Depress the brake pedal, and press the push-button ignition switch for at least 15 seconds. The engine may start. Only use this engine start procedure in case of emergency.
- When the engine is not started, the brake pedal may feel stiff. In such a case, depress the brake pedal more forcefully than usual. Check that the operation indicator on the push-button ignition switch turns green, and press the push-button ignition switch to start the engine.

■ Stopping engine

1. Stop the vehicle completely.
2. Move the select lever to the "P" position (CVT models).
3. Press the push-button ignition switch. The engine will stop, and the power will be switched to "OFF".



WARNING

- Do not touch the push-button ignition switch during driving.
When the push-button ignition switch is operated as follows, the engine will stop.

- The switch is pressed and held for 3 seconds or longer.
- The switch is pressed briefly 3 times or more in succession.

When the engine stops, the brake booster will not function. A greater foot pressure will be required on the brake pedal.

The power steering system will not operate either. A greater force will be required to steer, and it may result in an accident.

- If the engine stops during driving, do not operate the push-button ignition switch or open any of the

doors until the vehicle is stopped in a safe location. It is dangerous because the steering lock may be activated. Stop the vehicle in a safe place, and we recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer immediately.



CAUTION

For CVT models:

- Do not stop the engine while the select lever is in a position other than the "P" position.
- If the engine is stopped while the select lever is in a position other than the "P" position, the power will be in "ACC". If the vehicle is left in this condition, the battery may be discharged.

NOTE

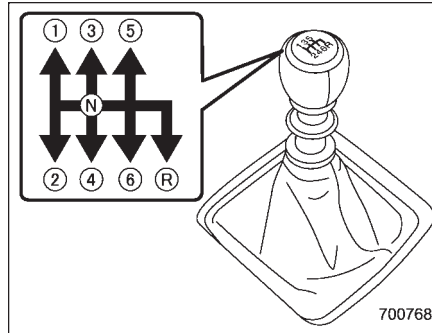
Although you can stop the engine by operating the push-button ignition switch, do not stop the engine during driving except in an emergency.

■ When access key does not operate properly

Refer to "Access key – if access key does

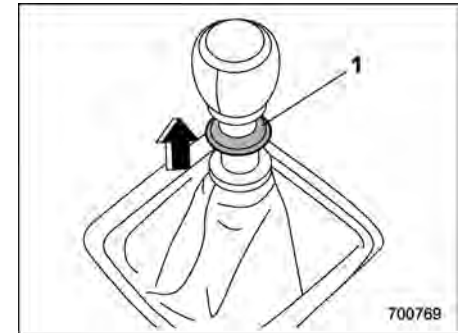
not operate properly" 9-16.

Manual transmission



This manual transmission is a completely synchromesh, 6-forward-speed and 1-reverse-speed transmission.

The shift pattern is shown on the shift lever knob.



1) Slider

You must raise the slider and hold it in that position before you can move the shift lever to the "R" position.

To change gears, fully depress the clutch pedal, move the shift lever, and gradually let up on the clutch pedal.

If it is difficult to shift into gear, put the transmission in neutral, release the clutch pedal momentarily, and then try again.



WARNING

- Do not drive the vehicle with the clutch disengaged (i.e., when the clutch pedal is depressed) or with the shift lever in the neutral position. Engine braking has no effect in either of these conditions and the risk of an accident is consequently increased.
- Do not engage the clutch (i.e., release the clutch pedal) suddenly when starting the vehicle. By doing so the vehicle might unexpectedly accelerate or the transmission could malfunction.



CAUTION

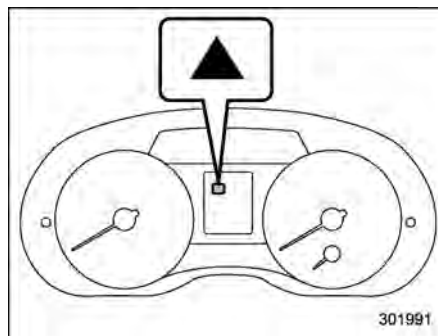
Shift into reverse **ONLY** when the vehicle has completely stopped. It may cause damage to the transmission to try shifting into reverse when the vehicle is moving.

Shifting speeds

Recommended shifting speeds

The best compromise between fuel economy and vehicle performance during normal driving is ensured by shifting up at the speeds listed in the following table.

Shift up	km/h (mph)
1st to 2nd	24 (15)
2nd to 3rd	40 (25)
3rd to 4th	64 (40)
4th to 5th	72 (45)
5th to 6th	80 (50)



The shift-up indicator illuminates to inform the driver about the upshift timing.

The shift-up indicator can be activated or deactivated. For details, refer to “Shift-up indicator light (MT models)” 3-30.

Maximum allowable speeds

The following table shows the maximum speeds that are possible with each different gear. The tachometer’s needle will enter the red area if these speeds are exceeded.

With the exception of cases where sudden acceleration is required, the vehicle should not be driven with the tachometer’s needle inside the red area. Failure to observe this precaution can lead to excessive engine wear and poor fuel economy.

Gear	km/h (mph)	
	Petrol engine models	Diesel engine models
1st	44 (27)	35 (22)
2nd	88 (54)	65 (40)
3rd	132 (82)	115 (71)
4th	166 (103)	156 (97)
5th	207 (129)	193 (120)
6th	Top speed	Top speed

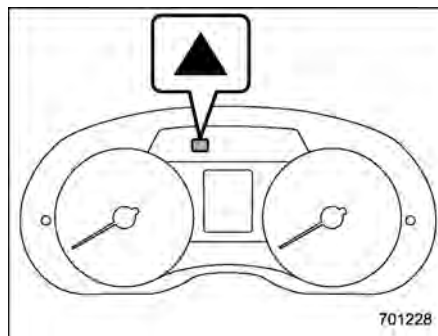
NOTE

Never exceed posted speed limits.

**WARNING**

When shifting down a gear, ensure that the vehicle is not travelling at a speed exceeding the Maximum Allowable Speed for the gear which is about to be selected. Failure to observe this precaution can lead to engine over-revving and this in turn can result in engine damage. In addition, sudden application of engine brakes when the vehicle is travelling on a slippery surface can lead to wheel locking; as a consequence, control of the vehicle may be lost and the risk of an accident increased.

▽ **Over-revving warning (diesel engine models)**

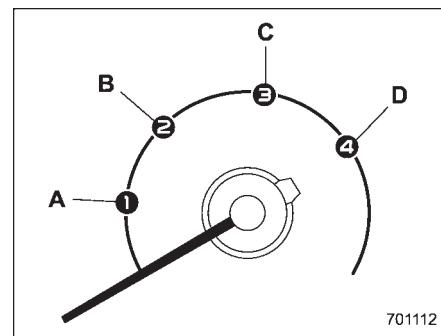


Over-rev warning light

**CAUTION**

When performing the down shifting procedure by depressing the clutch pedal and moving the shift lever into a lower gear, if the warning system determines that it is highly likely that over-revving will occur if the clutch is engaged (clutch pedal is released) in that position, a buzzer will sound and the over-rev warning light on the combination meter will flash in yellow. In this case, do not engage the clutch in that position. Shift the gear up properly while

keeping the clutch pedal depressed. Not doing so could result in serious engine damage.

**Speedometer dial**

- A) Maximum allowable speed for 1st gear
- B) Maximum allowable speed for 2nd gear
- C) Maximum allowable speed for 3rd gear
- D) Maximum allowable speed for 4th gear

The maximum allowable speed for each gear position is displayed on the speedometer dial. For example in the previous illustration, after starting your vehicle in 1st gear, before the speedometer needle reaches the speed "A" [38 km/h (23 mph)] that is marked with "①", you should shift up to the 2nd gear. Thus the speed with a "①" marking means the maximum allowable speed for the 1st

gear.

Before shifting down a gear, refer to the allowable gear position for the current vehicle speed on the speedometer dial.

■ Driving tips

Do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal and do not use the clutch to hold your vehicle at a standstill on an upgrade. Either of those actions may cause clutch damage.

Do not drive with your hand resting on the shift lever. This may cause wear on the transmission components.

When it is necessary to reduce vehicle speed due to slow traffic, turning corners, or driving up steep hills, downshift to a lower gear before the engine starts to labor.

On steep downgrades, downshift the transmission to 5th, 4th, 3rd or 2nd gear as necessary; this helps to maintain a safe speed and to extend brake pad life.

In this way, the engine provides a braking effect. Remember, if you “ride” (over use) the brakes while descending a hill, they may overheat and not work properly.

The engine may, on rare occasions, knock when the vehicle rapidly accelerates or rapidly pulls away from a standstill. This

phenomenon does not indicate a problem.

Continuously variable transmission

The continuously variable transmission is electronically controlled and provides an infinite number of forward speeds and 1 reverse speed. For some models, it also has a manual mode or an “L” position.



WARNING

Do not shift from the “P” or “N” position into the “D” or “R” position while depressing the accelerator pedal. This may cause the vehicle to lurch forward or backward.



CAUTION

- Shift into the “P” or “R” position only after the vehicle is completely stopped. Shifting while the vehicle is moving may cause damage to the transmission.
- Do not race the engine for more than 5 seconds in any position except the “N” or “P” position when the brake is applied or when chocks are used in the wheels. This may cause the transmission fluid to overheat.

- Avoid shifting from one of the forward driving positions into the “R” position or vice versa until the vehicle has completely stopped. Such shifting may cause damage to the transmission.
- When parking the vehicle, first securely apply the parking brake and then place the select lever in the “P” position. Avoid parking for a long time with the select lever in any other position as doing so could result in a dead battery.

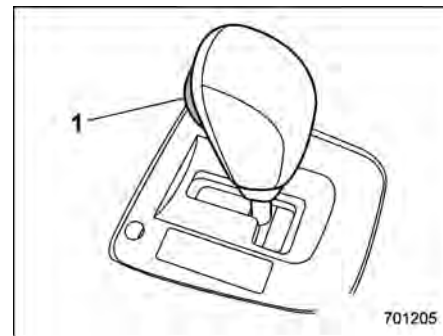
NOTE

- Immediately after transmission fluid is replaced, you may feel that the transmission operation is somewhat unusual. This results from invalidation of data which the on-board computer has collected and stored in the memory to allow the transmission to shift at the most appropriate times for the current condition of your vehicle. Optimized shifting will be restored as the vehicle continues to be driven for a while.
- When driving a vehicle that is equipped with CVT under continuous heavy load conditions such as towing a

camper or climbing a long, steep hill, the engine speed or the vehicle speed may automatically be reduced. This is not a malfunction. This phenomenon results from the engine control function maintaining the cooling performance of the vehicle. The engine and vehicle speed will return to a normal speed when the engine is able to maintain the optimum cooling performance after the heavy load decreases. Driving under a heavy load must be performed with extreme care. Do not try to pass a vehicle in front when driving on an uphill slope while towing.

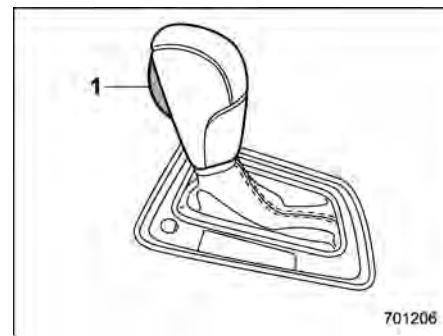
- The continuously variable transmission is a chain type system that provides superior transmission efficiency for maximum fuel economy. At times, depending on varying driving conditions, a chain operating sound may be heard that is characteristic of this type of system.

Select lever



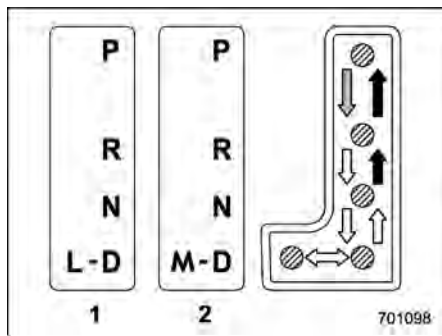
Type A

- 1) Select lever button



Type B

- 1) Select lever button



- 1) Models with "L" position
- 2) Models with manual mode

- ➡ : With the brake pedal depressed, shift while pressing the select lever button in.
- ➡ : Shift while pressing the select lever button in.
- ⇨ : Shift without pressing the select lever button.

The select lever has four positions, "P", "R", "N", "D" and it also has an "L" or "M" gate.

▼ P (Park)

This position is for parking the vehicle and starting the engine. In this position, the transmission is mechanically locked to prevent the vehicle from rolling freely.

When you park the vehicle, first apply the parking brake firmly, then shift into the "P"

position. Do not hold the vehicle with only the mechanical friction of the transmission.

To shift the select lever from the "P" to any other position, you should depress the brake pedal fully then move the select lever. This prevents the vehicle from lurching when it is started.

▼ R (Reverse)

This position is for backing the vehicle. To shift from the "N" to "R" position, stop the vehicle completely then move the lever to the "R" position while pressing the select lever button in.

When the ignition switch has been turned to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position, movement of the select lever from the "N" to "R" position is possible for a limited time period by depressing the brake pedal, and then it becomes impossible. For details, refer to "Shift lock function" 7-21.

▼ N (Neutral)

This position is for restarting a stalled engine. In this position, the transmission is neutral, meaning that the wheels and transmission are not locked. Therefore, the vehicle will roll freely, even on the slightest incline unless the parking brake or foot brake is applied.

Avoid coasting with the transmission in

neutral. Engine braking has no effect in this condition.



WARNING

Do not drive the vehicle with the select lever in the "N" (neutral) position. Engine braking has no effect in this condition and the risk of an accident is consequently increased.

NOTE

If the select lever is in the "N" position when you stop the engine for parking, you may not subsequently be able to move it to the "R" and "P" positions. If this happens, turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position. You will then be able to move the select lever to the "P" position.

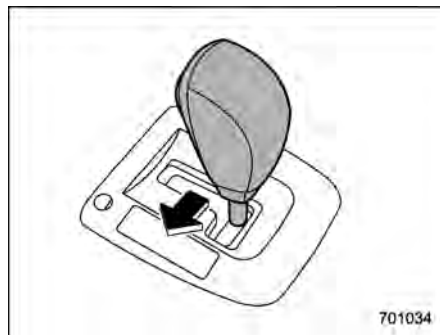
▼ D (Drive)

This position is for normal driving. The transmission shifts automatically and continuously into a suitable gear according to the vehicle speed and the acceleration you require. Also, while driving up and down a hill, the transmission assists and controls the driving performance and engine braking while corresponding to the road grade.

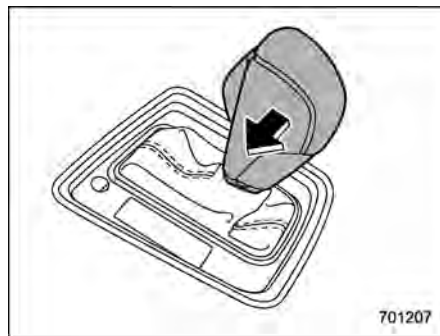
When more acceleration is required in the “D” position, depress the accelerator pedal fully to the floor and hold that position. The transmission will automatically downshift. When you release the pedal, the transmission will return to the original gear position.

For models with manual mode, if one of the shift paddles behind the steering wheel is operated while driving in the “D” position, the transmission will temporarily switch to the manual mode. In this mode, you can shift into any gear position using the shift paddles. For details about the manual mode, refer to “Selection of manual mode” 7-19. Once the vehicle speed stabilizes, the transmission will switch from the manual mode back to the “D” position for normal driving.

■ Selection of manual mode (if equipped)



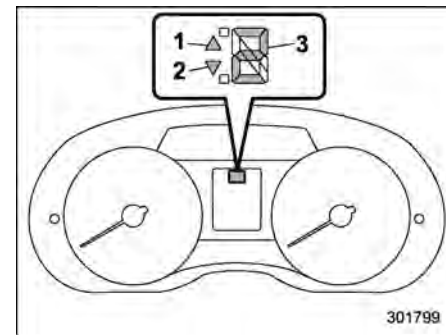
Type A



Type B

With the vehicle either moving or stationary, move the select lever from the “D”

position to the “M” position to select the manual mode.



- 1) Upshift indicator
- 2) Downshift indicator
- 3) Gear position indicator

When the manual mode is selected, the gear position indicator and upshift indicator and/or downshift indicator on the combination meter illuminate.

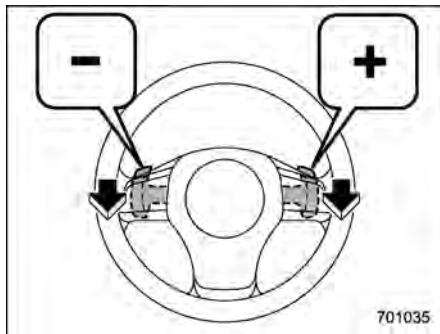
The gear position indicator shows the currently selected gear in the following range.

- 1st-to-8th-gear (when the Sport Sharp (S#) mode is selected (if equipped))
- 1st-to-6th-gear (in other situations)

The upshift and downshift indicators show when a gear shift is possible. When the

upshift indicator “▲” illuminates, upshifting is possible. When the downshift indicator “▼” illuminates, downshifting is possible. When both indicators illuminate, upshifting and downshifting are both possible. When the vehicle stops (for example, at traffic signals), the downshift indicator turns off.

Gearshifts can be performed using the shift paddle behind the steering wheel.



To upshift to the next higher gear position, pull the shift paddle that has “+” indicated on it. To downshift to the next lower gear position, pull the shift paddle that has “-” indicated on it.

To deselect the manual mode, return the select lever to the “D” position from the “M” position.

**CAUTION**

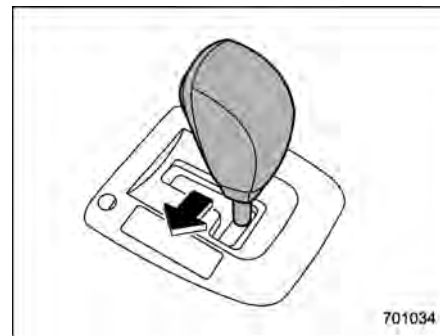
Do not place or hang anything on the shift paddles. Doing so may result in accidental gear shifting.

NOTE

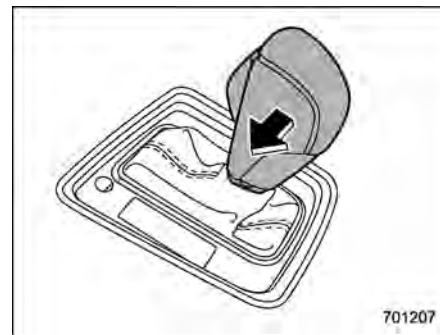
Please read the following points carefully and bear them in mind when using the manual mode.

- If you attempt to shift down when the engine speed is too high, i.e., when a downshift would push the tachometer needle beyond the red zone, beeps will be emitted to warn you that the downshift is not possible.
- If you attempt to shift up when the vehicle speed is too low, the transmission will not respond.
- You can perform a skip-shift (for example, from 4th to 2nd) by operating the shift paddle twice in rapid succession.
- The transmission automatically selects 1st gear when the vehicle stops moving.
- If the temperature of the transmission fluid becomes too high, the “AT OIL TEMP” warning light on the combination meter will illuminate. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe location

and let the engine idle until the warning light turns off.

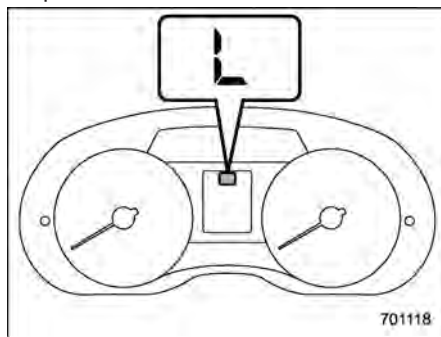
■ Selection of “L” (if equipped)

Type A



Type B

"L" is for using engine braking when going down a hill, etc. To select this mode, move the select lever from the "D" position to the "L" position.



When selected, the indicator "L" will illuminate on the combination meter.

To deselect "L", move the select lever to the "D" position.

■ Shift lock function

The shift lock function helps prevent the improper operation of the select lever.

- The select lever cannot be operated unless the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position and the brake pedal is depressed.
- The select lever cannot be moved from the "P" position to any other position

before the brake pedal is depressed. Depress the brake pedal first, and then operate the select lever.

- Only the "P" position allows you to turn the ignition switch from the "ACC" position to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position and remove the key from the ignition switch.
- If the ignition switch is turned to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position while the select lever is in the "N" position, the select lever may not be moved to the "P" position after a period of time. Therefore, move the select lever to the "P" position with the brake pedal depressed soon after the ignition switch is turned to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position.

▼ Shift lock release

If the select lever cannot be operated, turn the ignition switch back to the "ON" position then move the select lever to the "P" position with the select lever button pressed and brake pedal depressed.

If the select lever does not move after performing the above procedure, perform the following steps.

• When the select lever cannot be shifted from "P" to "N":

Refer to "Shift lock release using the shift lock release button" 7-21.

• When the select lever cannot be shifted from "N" to "R", "P":

Within 60 seconds after placing the ignition switch in the "ACC" position, move the select lever to the "P" position with the select lever button pressed and brake pedal depressed.

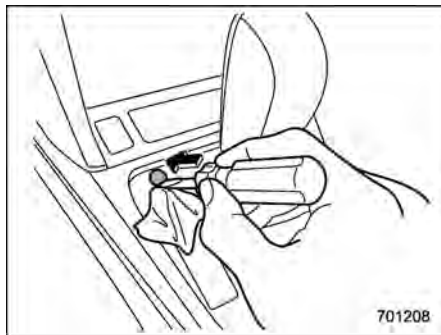
If you must perform the above procedure, the shift lock system (or the vehicle control system) may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer for an inspection as soon as possible.

If the select lever does not move after performing the above procedure, refer to "Shift lock release using the shift lock release button" 7-21.

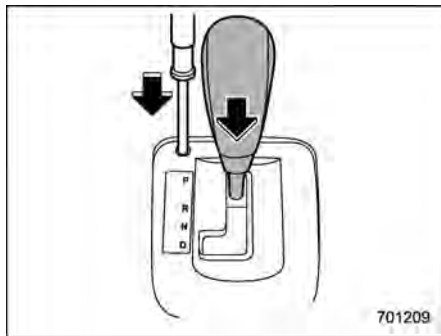
▼ Shift lock release using the shift lock release button

Perform the following procedure to release the shift lock.

1. Apply the parking brake and stop the engine.



2. Wrap the tip of a flat-head screwdriver with vinyl tape or a cloth and use it to remove the shift lock cover. The shift lock release button is located under the shift lock cover.



3. While depressing the brake pedal,

insert a screwdriver into the hole, press the shift lock release button using a screwdriver, and then move the select lever.

If the select lever does not move after performing the above procedure, the shift lock system may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you contact a SUBARU dealer for an inspection as soon as possible.

■ Driving tips

- Always apply the foot or parking brake when the vehicle is stopped in the "D" or "R" position.
- Always apply the parking brake when parking your vehicle. Do not hold the vehicle with only the mechanical friction of the transmission.
- Do not keep the vehicle in a stationary position on an uphill grade by using the "D" position. Use the brake instead.
- The engine may, on rare occasions, knock when the vehicle rapidly accelerates or rapidly pulls away from a standstill. This phenomenon does not indicate a malfunction.

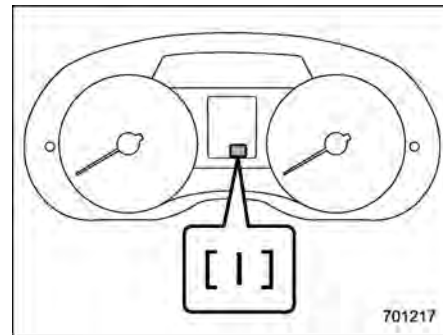
SI-DRIVE (if equipped)

SI-DRIVE (SUBARU Intelligent Drive) works to maximize engine performance, control and efficiency.

This system consists of two or three modes: Intelligent (I), Sport (S), and Sport Sharp (S#) (if equipped). By operating the SI-DRIVE switches, the character of the power unit changes.

■ Intelligent (I) mode

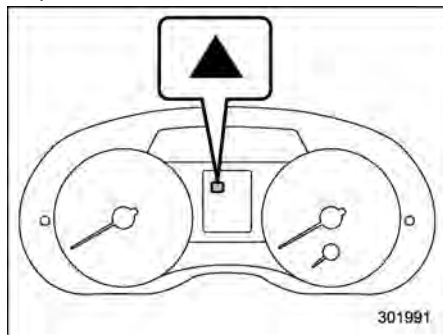
▼ For smooth, efficient performance driving



The linear acceleration characteristic of the Intelligent (I) mode is ideal for normal driving usage.

The Intelligent (I) mode provides well-

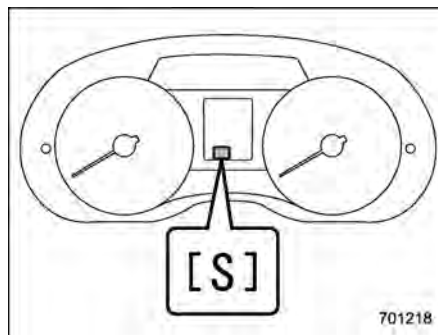
balanced performance with greater fuel efficiency and smooth driveability without stress. Power delivery is moderate during acceleration for maximum fuel efficiency. This is ideal for around-town driving and situations that do not require full power output. It provides better control in difficult driving conditions, such as slippery roads or loose surfaces, due to gentler throttle response.



For MT models, when Intelligent (I) mode is selected, a shift-up indicator “▲” on the combination meter will blink to signal the best time to shift gears for maximum fuel efficiency.

■ Sport (S) mode

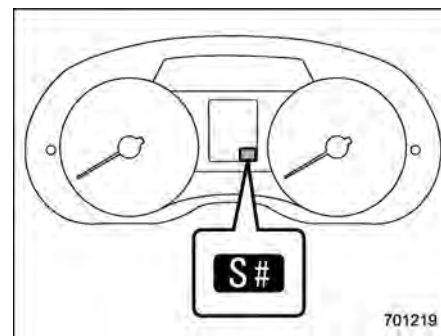
▼ For all-around performance driving



The Sport (S) mode provides the engine power desired by those who want to make the driving experience their own personal adventure.

■ Sport Sharp (S#) mode (if equipped)

▼ For maximum performance driving



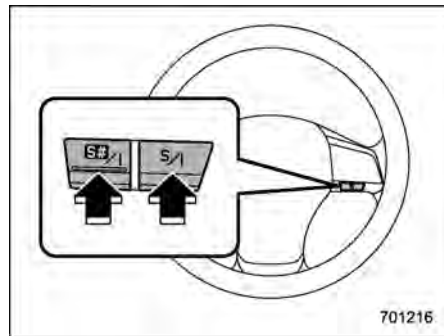
For sports-minded drivers, the Sport Sharp (S#) mode offers an exhilarating level of engine performance and control. The throttle becomes more responsive regardless of the engine speed. Delivering maximum driving enjoyment, this mode is ideal for tackling twisting roads and for merging or overtaking other vehicles on the freeway with confidence.

■ SI-DRIVE switches

NOTE

If any of the SI-DRIVE indicators blink, the SI-DRIVE system may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

▼ Models with Sport Sharp (S#) mode



SI-DRIVE switches

To select the Intelligent (I) mode, perform either of the following procedures.

- Press the "S/I" switch when the Sport (S) mode is selected
- Press the "S#/I" switch when the Sport Sharp (S#) mode is selected

To select the Sport (S) mode, press the "S/I" switch when any mode other than Sport (S) mode is selected.

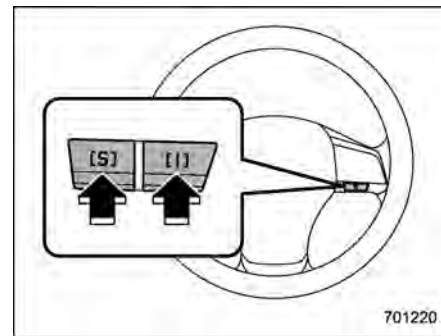
To select the Sport Sharp (S#) mode, press the "S#/I" switch when any mode other than Sport Sharp (S#) mode is selected.

NOTE

- The next time you turn on the engine, after you turned off the engine in the Sport Sharp (S#) mode, the SI-DRIVE mode changes to the Sport (S) mode.
- The next time you turn on the engine, after you turned off the engine in the Sport (S) mode or Intelligent (I) mode, the SI-DRIVE mode will stay in the same mode as when the engine was turned off.
- While the engine is running, if the malfunction indicator light/CHECK ENGINE warning light illuminates, the SI-DRIVE mode changes to the Sport (S) mode. In this case, it is not possible to change to the Sport Sharp (S#) mode or Intelligent (I) mode.

- If there is a possibility that the engine could overheat because of a temperature increase of the engine coolant, it is not possible to change to the Sport Sharp (S#) mode. While the vehicle is in the Sport Sharp (S#) mode, it changes to the Sport (S) mode when the engine coolant temperature increases.

▼ Models without Sport Sharp (S#) mode



SI-DRIVE switches

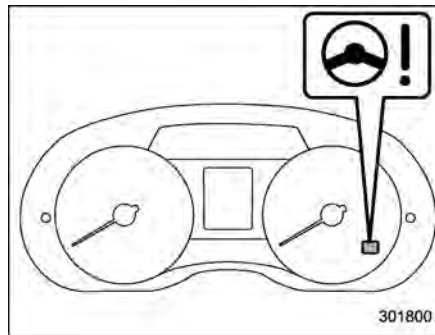
To select the Intelligent (I) mode, press the "I" switch. To select the Sport (S) mode, press the "S" switch.

NOTE

The next time you turn on the engine, the SI-DRIVE mode will stay in the same mode as when the engine was turned off.

Power steering

This vehicle is equipped with an electric power steering system. The power steering system operates only while the engine is running.

**Power steering warning light**

When the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position, the power steering warning light on the combination meter illuminates to inform the driver that the warning system is functioning properly. Then, if the engine started, the warning light turns off to inform the driver that the steering power assist is operational.

CAUTION

While the power steering warning light is illuminated, there may be more resistance when the steering wheel is operated. We recommend that you drive carefully to the nearest SUBARU dealer and have the vehicle inspected immediately.

NOTE

If the steering wheel is operated in the following ways, the power steering control system may temporarily limit the power assist in order to prevent the system components, such as the control computer and drive motor, from overheating.

- The steering wheel is operated frequently and turned sharply while the vehicle is maneuvered at extremely low speeds, such as while frequently turning the steering wheel during parallel parking.
- The steering wheel remains in the fully turned position for a long period of time.

At this time, there will be more resistance when steering. However this is not a malfunction. Normal steering force will be restored after the steering

wheel is not operated for a while and the power steering control system has an opportunity to cool down. However, if the power steering is operated in a non-standard way which causes power assist limitation to occur too frequently, this may result in a malfunction of the power steering control system.

Braking

■ Braking tips



WARNING

Never rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving. This can cause dangerous overheating of the brakes and needless wear on the brake pads and linings.

▼ When the brakes get wet

When driving in rain or after washing the vehicle, the brakes may get wet. As a result, brake stopping distance will be longer. To dry the brakes, drive the vehicle at a safe speed while lightly depressing the brake pedal to heat up the brakes.

▼ Use of engine braking

Remember to make use of engine braking in addition to foot braking. When descending a grade, if only the foot brake is used, the brakes may start working improperly because of brake fluid overheating, caused by overheated brake pads. To help prevent this, shift into a lower gear to get stronger engine braking.

▼ Braking when a tire is punctured

Do not depress the brake pedal suddenly when a tire is punctured. This could cause a loss of control of the vehicle. Keep driving straight ahead while gradually reducing speed. Then slowly pull off the road to a safe place.

■ Brake system

▼ Two separate circuits

Your vehicle has two separate circuit brake systems. Each circuit works diagonally across the vehicle. If one circuit of the brake system should fail, the other half of the system still works. If one circuit fails, the brake pedal will go down much closer to the floor than usual and you will need to press it down much harder. And a much longer distance will be needed to stop the vehicle.

▼ Brake booster

The brake booster uses engine manifold vacuum to assist braking force. Do not turn off the engine while driving because that will turn off the brake booster, resulting in poor braking power.

The brakes will continue to work even when the brake booster completely stops functioning. If this happens, however, you will have to depress the pedal much

harder than normal and the braking distance will increase.

▼ Brake assist system



WARNING

Do not be overconfident about the brake assist. It is not a system that brings more braking ability to the vehicle beyond its braking capability. Always use the utmost care when driving regarding vehicle speed and safe distance.



CAUTION

When you need to brake suddenly, continue depressing the brake pedal strongly to bring the effect of the brake assist.

Brake assist is a driver assistance system. It assists the brake power when the driver cannot depress the brake pedal strongly and the brake power is insufficient.

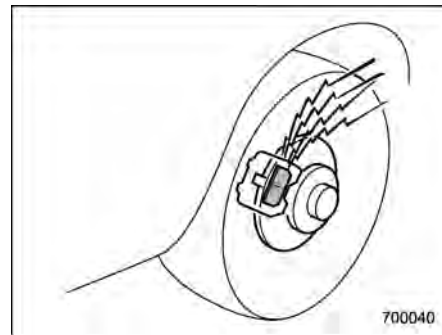
Brake assist generates the brake power according to the speed at which the driver depresses the brake pedal.

NOTE

When you depress the brake pedal strongly or suddenly, the following phenomena occur. However, even though these occur, they do not indicate any malfunctions, and the brake assist system is operating properly.

- You might feel that the brake pedal is applied by lighter force and generates a greater braking force.
- You might hear the sound of the ABS operating from the engine compartment.

■ Disc brake pad wear warning indicators



The disc brake pad wear warning indicators on the disc brakes give a warning noise when the brake pads are worn.

If a squeaking or scraping noise is heard from the disc brakes while braking, we recommend that you immediately have your vehicle checked by your SUBARU dealer.

ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)

The ABS system prevents the lock-up of wheels which may occur during sudden braking or braking on slippery road surfaces. This helps prevent the loss of steering control and directional stability caused by wheel lock-up.

When the ABS system is operating, you may hear a chattering noise or feel a slight vibration in the brake pedal. This is normal when the ABS operates.

The ABS system will not operate when the vehicle speed is below approximately 10 km/h (6 mph).



WARNING

Always use the utmost care in driving – overconfidence because you are driving with an ABS equipped vehicle could easily lead to a serious accident.



CAUTION

- **The ABS system does not always decrease stopping distance. You should always maintain a safe**

following distance from other vehicles.

- **When driving on badly surfaced roads, gravel roads, icy roads, or over deep newly fallen snow, stopping distances may be longer for a vehicle with the ABS system than one without. When driving under these conditions, therefore, reduce your speed and leave ample distance from other vehicles.**
- **When tire chains are installed, stopping distances may be longer for a vehicle with the ABS system than one without. Be sure to reduce your speed and maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front.**
- **When you feel the ABS system operating, you should maintain constant brake pedal pressure. Do not pump the brake pedal since doing so may defeat the operation of the ABS system.**

■ ABS system self-check

Just after the vehicle is started, you may feel on the brake pedal a vibration similar to when the ABS operates, and you may

also hear the sound of the ABS working from the engine compartment. This is caused by an automatic functional test of the ABS system being carried out and does not indicate any abnormal condition.

■ ABS warning light

Refer to “ABS warning light” 3-20.

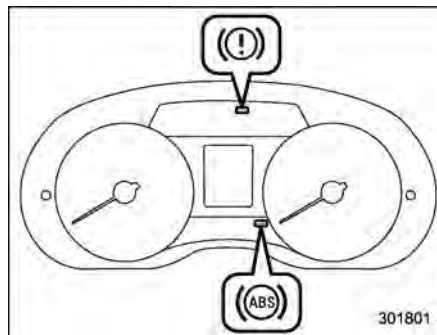
Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system

The EBD system maximizes the effectiveness of the brakes by allowing the rear brakes to supply a greater proportion of the braking force. It functions by adjusting the distribution of braking force to the rear wheels in accordance with the vehicle's loading condition and speed.

The EBD system is an integral part of the ABS system and uses some of the ABS system's components to perform its function of optimizing the distribution of braking force. If any of the ABS components used by the EBD system malfunction, the EBD system also stops working.

When the EBD system is operating, you may hear a chattering noise or feel a slight vibration in the brake pedal. This is normal and does not indicate a malfunction.

■ Steps to take if EBD system fails



If a malfunction occurs in the EBD system, the system stops working and the brake system warning light and ABS warning light illuminate simultaneously.

The EBD system may be malfunctioning if the brake system warning light and ABS warning light illuminate simultaneously during driving.

Even if the EBD system malfunctions, the conventional braking system will still function. However, the rear wheels will be more prone to locking when the brakes are applied harder than usual and the vehicle's motion may therefore become somewhat harder to control.

If the brake system warning light and ABS

warning light illuminate simultaneously, take the following steps.

1. Stop the vehicle in the nearest safe, flat location.
2. Shut down the engine, apply the parking brake, and then restart it.
3. Release the parking brake. If both warning lights turn off, the EBD system may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you drive carefully to the nearest SUBARU dealer and have the system inspected.
4. If both warning lights illuminate again and remain illuminated after the engine has been restarted, shut down the engine again, apply the parking brake, and check the brake fluid level. Refer to "Brake fluid" 11-27.
5. If the brake fluid level is not below the "MIN" mark, the EBD system may be malfunctioning. We recommend that you drive carefully to the nearest SUBARU dealer and have the system inspected.
6. If the brake fluid level is below the "MIN" mark, DO NOT drive the vehicle. Instead, we recommend that you have the vehicle towed to the nearest SUBARU dealer for repair.



WARNING

- Driving with the brake system warning light illuminated is dangerous. This indicates your brake system may not be working properly. If the light remains illuminated, we recommend that you have the brakes inspected by a SUBARU dealer immediately.
- If at all in doubt about whether the brakes are operating properly, do not drive the vehicle. We recommend that you have your vehicle towed to the nearest SUBARU dealer for repair.

Vehicle Dynamics Control system



WARNING

Always use the utmost care in driving – overconfidence because you are driving a vehicle with the Vehicle Dynamics Control system could easily lead to a serious accident.



CAUTION

- Even if your vehicle is equipped with Vehicle Dynamics Control, winter tires or snow chains should be used when driving on snow-covered or icy roads; in addition, vehicle speed should be reduced considerably. Simply having a Vehicle Dynamics Control system does not guarantee that the vehicle will be able to avoid accidents in any situation.
- When a vehicle is fitted with snow chains, the effectiveness of the Vehicle Dynamics Control system is reduced and this should be taken into account

when driving the vehicle in such a condition.

- Activation of the Vehicle Dynamics Control system is an indication that the road being travelled on has a slippery surface; since having Vehicle Dynamics Control is no guarantee that full vehicle control will be maintained at all times and under all conditions, its activation should be seen as a sign that the speed of the vehicle should be reduced considerably.
- Whenever suspension components, steering components, or an axle are removed from a vehicle, we recommend that you have an inspection of that system performed by an authorized SUBARU dealer.
- The following precautions should be observed in order to ensure that the Vehicle Dynamics Control system is operating properly:
 - All four wheels should be fitted with tires of the same size, type, and brand. Furthermore, the amount of wear should be the same for all four tires.

- Keep the tire pressure at the proper level as shown on the label attached to the vehicle's door pillar.
- Use only the special temporary spare tire to replace a flat tire. With a temporary spare tire, the effectiveness of the Vehicle Dynamics Control system is reduced and this should be taken into account when driving the vehicle in such a condition.
- If non-matching tires are used, the Vehicle Dynamics Control system may not operate correctly.
- The Vehicle Dynamics Control system helps prevent unstable vehicle motion such as skidding using control of the brakes and engine power. Do not turn off the Vehicle Dynamics Control system unless it is absolutely necessary. If you must turn off the Vehicle Dynamics Control system, drive very carefully according to the road surface condition.

In the event of wheelspin and/or skidding on a slippery road surface and/or during cornering and/or an evasive maneuver,

the Vehicle Dynamics Control system adjusts the engine's output and the wheels' respective braking forces to help maintain traction and directional control.

• Traction Control Function

The traction control function is designed to prevent spinning of the driving wheels on slippery road surfaces, thereby helping to maintain traction and directional control. Activation of this function is shown by flashing the Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light.

• Skid Suppression Function

The skid suppression function is designed to help maintain directional stability by suppressing the wheels' tendency to slide sideways during steering operations. Activation of this function is shown by flashing of the Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light.

NOTE

- The Vehicle Dynamics Control system may be considered normal when the following conditions occur.
 - Slight twitching of the brake pedal is felt.
 - The vehicle or steering wheel shakes to a small degree.
 - An operating sound from the engine compartment is heard

briefly when starting the engine and when driving off after starting the engine.

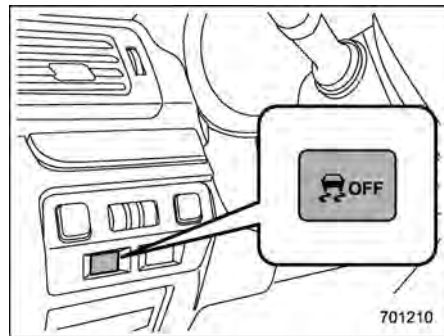
- The brake pedal seems to jolt when driving off after starting the engine.
- In the following circumstances, the vehicle may be less stable than it feels to the driver. The Vehicle Dynamics Control System may therefore operate. Such operation does not indicate a system malfunction.
 - on gravel-covered or rutted roads
 - on unfinished roads
 - when the vehicle is towing a trailer
 - when the vehicle is fitted with snow tires or winter tires
- Activation of the Vehicle Dynamics Control system will cause operation of the steering wheel to feel slightly different compared to that for normal conditions.
- It is always important to reduce speed when approaching a corner, even if your vehicle is equipped with the Vehicle Dynamics Control system.

• Always turn off the engine before replacing a tire. Failure to do so may render the Vehicle Dynamics Control system unable to operate correctly.

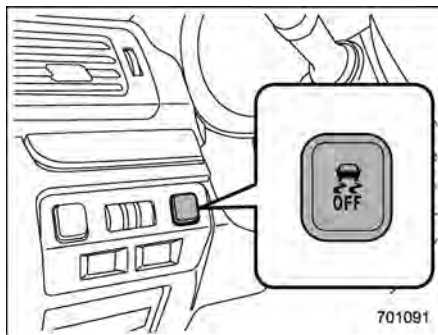
■ Vehicle Dynamics Control system monitor

Refer to “Vehicle Dynamics Control warning light/Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light” 3-20 and “Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light” 3-22.

■ Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch



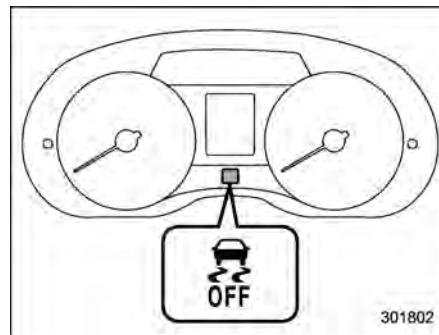
Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch
(models with power rear gate)



Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch
(models without power rear gate)

Pressing the switch to deactivate the Vehicle Dynamics Control system can facilitate the following operations:

- a standing start on a steeply sloping road with a snowy, gravel-covered, or otherwise slippery surface
- extrication of the vehicle when its wheels are stuck in mud or deep snow



Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light

When the switch is pressed during engine operation, the Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light illuminates. The Vehicle Dynamics Control system will be deactivated and the vehicle will behave like a model not equipped with the Vehicle Dynamics Control system. When the switch is pressed again to reactivate the Vehicle Dynamics Control system, the indicator light turns off.

With the Vehicle Dynamics Control system deactivated, traction and stability enhancement offered by Vehicle Dynamics Control system is unavailable. Therefore you should not deactivate the Vehicle Dynamics Control system except under above-mentioned situations.

NOTE

- The Vehicle Dynamics Control system will be activated automatically when the engine is started.
- If the switch is pressed and held for 30 seconds or longer, the indicator light turns off, the Vehicle Dynamics Control system is activated, and the system ignores any further pressing of the switch. To make the switch usable again, turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position and restart the engine.
- When the switch is pressed to deactivate the Vehicle Dynamics Control system, the vehicle's running performance is comparable with that of a vehicle that does not have a Vehicle Dynamics Control system. Do not deactivate the Vehicle Dynamics Control system except when absolutely necessary.
- Even when the Vehicle Dynamics Control system is deactivated, components of the brake control system may still activate. When the brake control system is activated, the Vehicle Dynamics Control operation indicator light illuminates.

X mode (if equipped)**WARNING**

- Always use the utmost care in driving – overconfidence because you are driving a vehicle with X mode could easily lead to a serious accident.
- Always use the utmost care in driving – overconfidence because you are driving a vehicle with hill descent control function could easily lead to a serious accident. Be especially careful, and depress the brake pedal if necessary when driving on extremely steep downhill, frozen, muddy or sandy roads. Failure to control the vehicle's speed may cause a loss of control and result in a serious accident.

**CAUTION**

- Even if your vehicle is equipped with X mode, winter tires or snow chains should be used when driving on snow-covered or icy roads; in addition, vehicle speed should be reduced considerably.

Simply having X mode does not guarantee that the vehicle will be able to avoid accidents in any situation.

- Activating the X mode should be done when you encounter a very slippery surface at low speed. However, having X mode is no guarantee that full vehicle control will be maintained at all times and under all conditions. When activating X mode, the speed of the vehicle should be reduced considerably.
- Whenever suspension components, steering components, or an axle are removed from a vehicle, we recommend that you have the system inspected by an authorized SUBARU dealer.
- The following precautions should be observed in order to ensure that the X mode is operating properly:
 - All four wheels should be fitted with tires of the same size, type, and brand. Furthermore, the amount of wear should be the same for all four tires.
 - Keep the tire pressure at the

proper level as shown on the label attached to the vehicle's door pillar.

- Use only the special temporary spare tire to replace a flat tire. With a normal temporary spare tire, the effectiveness of the X mode is reduced and this should be taken into account when driving the vehicle in such a condition.
- If the hill descent control function has operated continuously for a long time, the temperature of the brake disc may increase and the hill descent control function may be temporarily disabled. In this case, the hill descent control indicator light will turn off. When the hill descent control indicator light turns off, the hill descent control function is disabled.

X mode is the integrated control system of the engine, AWD and Vehicle Dynamics Control system, etc. to drive on a road with bad conditions. Using X mode, you can drive more comfortably even in slippery road conditions including uphill and downhill.

X mode has the following functions.

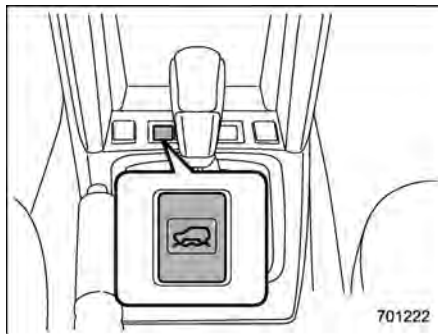
- **Hill descent control function:**

Using the hill descent control function, you can keep the vehicle at a consistent speed driving downhill. If the vehicle speed is likely to increase, the brake control system will be activated to adjust the vehicle speed.

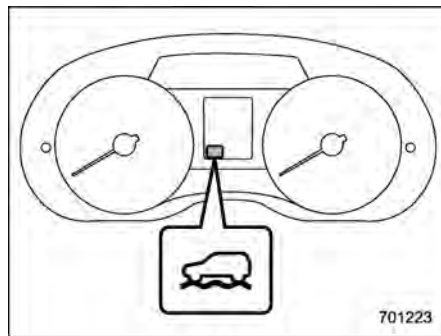
- **Driving ability control:**

This mode increases the hill-climbing ability and driving ability as well as enabling smooth acceleration of torque for easier control of the steering wheel.

■ To activate/deactivate the X mode



X mode switch



X mode indicator light

To activate:

Press the X mode switch. While the X mode is activated, the X mode indicator light illuminates.

To deactivate:

Press the X mode switch again. The X mode indicator light will turn off when the X mode is deactivated.

NOTE

- Even if you try to activate the X mode by pressing the X mode switch when the vehicle speed is 20 km/h (12 mph) or more, the X mode will not be activated. At this time, the buzzer will sound twice.

- If the vehicle speed reaches 40 km/h

(25 mph) or more while the X mode is activated, the buzzer will sound once and the X mode will be deactivated.

- For models with SI-DRIVE, the SI-DRIVE mode will change to the Intelligent (I) mode when the X mode is deactivated.

- For models with SI-DRIVE, the SI-DRIVE mode will not be affected even if the SI-DRIVE switch is pressed while the X mode is activated. At this time, the buzzer will sound twice.

- For models with Auto Start Stop system, the system will be stopped while the X mode is activated.

■ Hill descent control function

The hill descent control function will be in standby mode when the X mode is activated and the vehicle speed is less than approximately 20 km/h (12 mph).

The function will operate when the vehicle speed is less than approximately 20 km/h (12 mph) and the accelerator ratio is less than approximately 10%.

The function will turn off when the vehicle speed is more than approximately 20 km/h (12 mph) and the accelerator pedal is depressed.

NOTE

- Even while the hill descent control function is operating, you can vary the vehicle speed by using the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.

- During braking by the hill descent control function, the brake system warning light will illuminate.

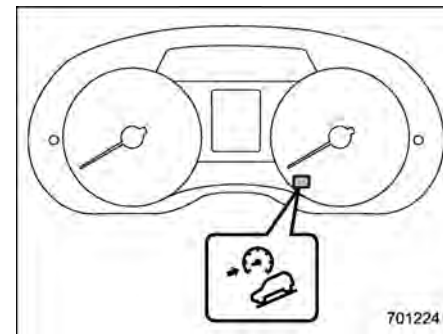
- The hill descent control function is operable regardless of the gradient of the road.

- The hill descent control function may be considered normal when the following conditions occur.

- An operating sound is heard briefly from the engine compartment while the hill descent control function is operating.

- The sensation of depressing the brake pedal is different, (harder than usual etc.) when the brake pedal is depressed during hill descent control function operation.

▼ Hill descent control indicator light

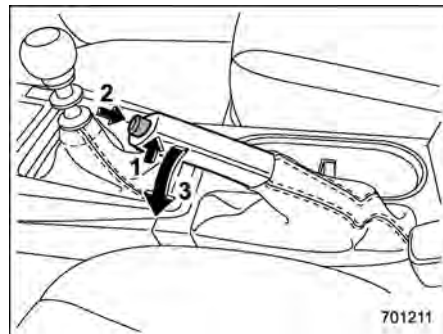


This light illuminates while the hill descent control function is in the standby mode. It flashes while the function is operating. It will turn off when the function is in the disabled mode. When this function is changed from operational to non-operational, it will turn off when the vehicle speed reaches more than approximately 30 km/h (18 mph).

Parking your vehicle

■ Parking brake

To set the parking brake, depress the brake pedal firmly and hold it down until the parking brake lever is fully pulled up.



To release the parking brake, perform the following procedure.

1. Pull the lever up slightly.
2. Press the release button.
3. Lower the lever while keeping the button pressed.

When the parking brake is set while the engine is running, the parking brake warning light illuminates. After starting the vehicle, be sure that the warning light has turned off before the vehicle is driven. Refer to "Brake system warning light" 3-

22.

⚠ CAUTION

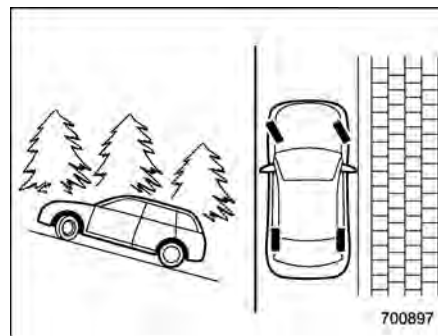
Never drive while the parking brake is set because this will cause unnecessary wear on the brake linings. Before starting to drive, always make sure that the parking brake has been fully released.

■ Parking tips

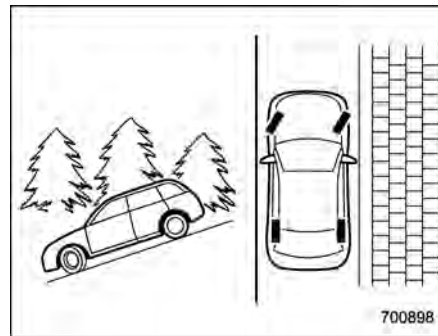
When parking your vehicle, always perform the following items.

- Apply the parking brake.
- For MT models, put the shift lever in the "1" (1st) for upgrade or "R" (Reverse) for a downgrade.
- For CVT models, put the select lever in the "P" (Park) position.

Never rely on the mechanical friction of the transmission alone to hold the vehicle.



When parking on a hill, always turn the steering wheel. When the vehicle is headed up the hill, the front wheels should be turned away from the curb.



When facing downhill, the front wheels should be turned into the curb.

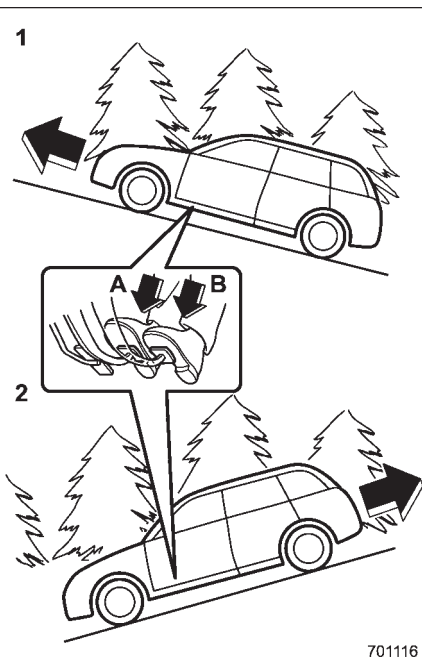
**WARNING**

- Never leave unattended children or pets in the vehicle. They could accidentally injure themselves or others through inadvertent operation of the vehicle. Also, on hot or sunny days, the temperature in a closed vehicle could quickly become high enough to cause severe or possibly fatal injuries to people.
- Do not park the vehicle over flammable materials such as dry grass, waste paper or rags, as they may burn easily if they come near hot engine or exhaust system parts.
- Be sure to stop the engine if you take a nap in the vehicle. If engine exhaust gas enters the passenger compartment, occupants in the vehicle could die from carbon monoxide (CO) contained in the exhaust gas.

Hill start assist system**CAUTION**

The Hill start assist system is a device only for helping the driver to **START** the vehicle on an uphill grade. To prevent accidents when the vehicle is parked on a slope, be sure to firmly set the parking brake. When setting the parking brake, make sure that the vehicle remains stationary when the clutch pedal (MT models) and brake pedal (both MT and CVT models) is released.

The Hill start assist system is a device to make the following vehicle operations easier.



701116

- 1) Starting forward facing uphill
- 2) Starting backward facing downhill
- A) Brake pedal (both MT models and CVT models)
- B) Clutch pedal (MT models only)

In both these cases, the Hill start assist system operates under the following con-

– **CONTINUED** –

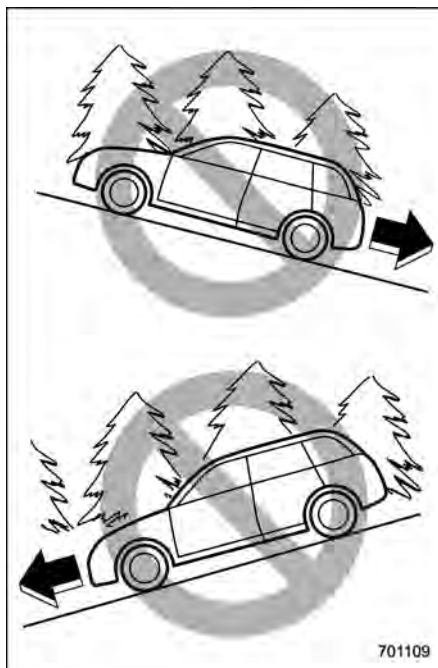
ditions.

- when the clutch pedal is depressed while the brake pedal is also depressed (MT models)
- when the vehicle has stopped with the brake pedal depressed (CVT models)

Braking power is maintained temporarily (for approximately 2 seconds) by the Hill start assist system after the brake pedal is released. The driver is therefore able to start the vehicle in the same way as on a level grade, just using the clutch pedal (MT models only) and accelerator pedal (all models).

If the braking power of the Hill start assist system is insufficient after the brake pedal is released, apply more braking power by depressing the brake pedal again.

The Hill start assist system may not operate on slight grades. Also, the Hill start assist system does not operate in the following cases.



- when starting backward facing uphill
- when starting forward facing downhill
- while the parking brake is applied
- while the ignition switch is in the "ACC" or "LOCK"/"OFF" position
- while the Hill start assist warning light/

Hill start assist OFF indicator light is illuminated

When starting in reverse and using the Hill start assist system, a braking effect may be felt even after the brake pedal has been released. However, this braking effect should disappear once the clutch pedal is released.

NOTE

A slight jolt may be felt when the vehicle begins to move forward after being reversed.

■ To activate/deactivate the Hill start assist system



CAUTION

While the Hill start assist system is deactivated, when starting on an uphill grade, braking power is not maintained if the brake pedal is released. Start on an uphill grade by using the parking brake.

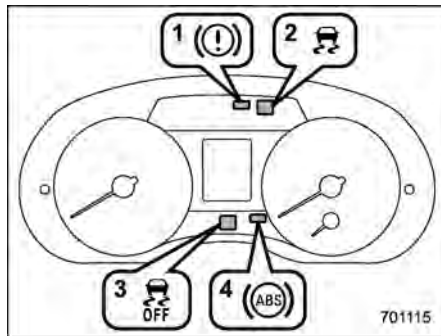
You can activate/deactivate the Hill start assist system according to the following procedure.

NOTE

If an incorrect operation is performed, place the ignition switch in the "LOCK"/"OFF" position and then start over again.

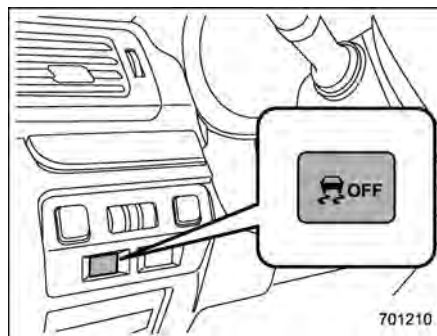
▼ **To deactivate**

1. Park your vehicle in a flat and safe location and apply the parking brake.
2. Turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position.
3. Restart the engine.

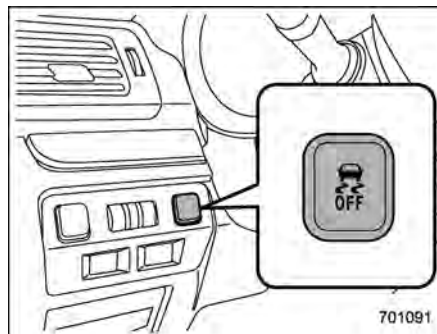


4. Confirm the following items.
 - (1) The Brake system warning light illuminates.
 - (2) The Vehicle Dynamics Control warning light turns off.
 - (3) The Vehicle Dynamics Control

- OFF indicator light turns off.
- (4) The ABS warning light turns off.

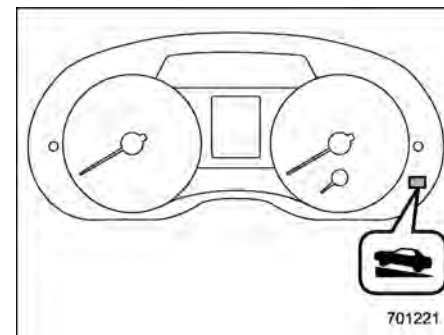


Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch
(models with power rear gate)



Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch
(models without power rear gate)

5. Press the Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch and hold it until the Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light on the combination meter illuminates for several seconds and then turns off.
6. Within 5 seconds after the Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF indicator light turns off, release the Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch.



Hill start assist OFF indicator light

7. Within 2 seconds after releasing the Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch, press the Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF switch once again. Then the Hill start assist OFF indicator light illuminates.
8. Turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position. The hill start assist system has now been deactivated.

NOTE

While the Hill start assist system is deactivated, the Hill start assist OFF indicator light illuminates continuously.

▼ To activate

When the procedure to deactivate the Hill start assist system is performed again, the system is activated. When the Hill start assist system is activated, the Hill start assist OFF indicator light turns off.

■ Hill start assist warning light/ Hill start assist OFF indicator light

Refer to "Hill start assist warning light/Hill start assist OFF indicator light" 3-23.

Cruise control (if equipped)

NOTE

For models with EyeSight system: Refer to the Owner's Manual supplement for the EyeSight system.

Cruise control enables you to maintain a constant vehicle speed without holding your foot on the accelerator pedal and it is operative when the vehicle speed is 40 km/h (25 mph) or more.



WARNING

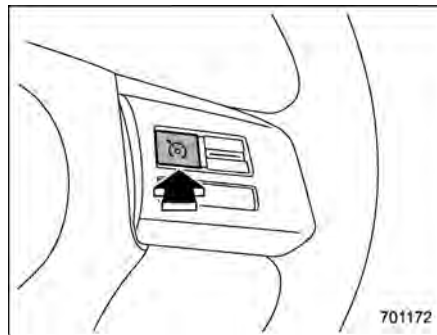
Do not use the cruise control under any of the following conditions. These may cause loss of vehicle control.

- driving up or down a steep grade
- driving on slippery or winding roads
- driving in heavy traffic
- towing a trailer

NOTE

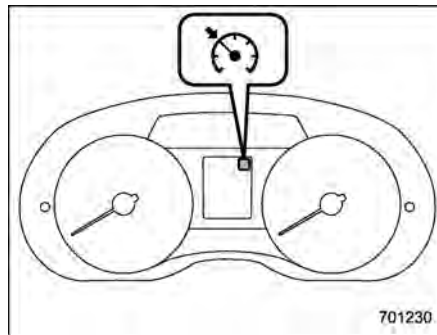
Make sure the cruise control system is turned off when the cruise control is not in use to avoid unintentionally setting of the cruise control.

■ To set cruise control



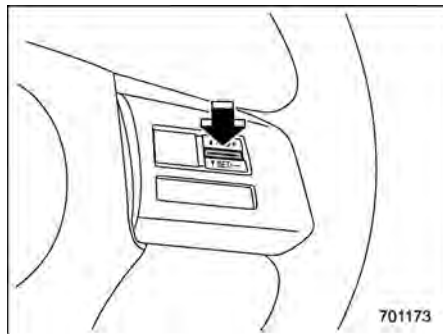
Cruise control main button

1. Press the cruise control main button.

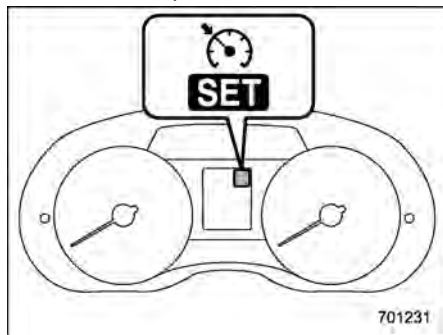


The cruise control indicator light on the combination meter will illuminate.

2. Depress the accelerator pedal until the vehicle reaches the desired speed.



3. Press the "RES/SET" switch to the "SET" side and release it. Then release the accelerator pedal.



At this time, the cruise control set indicator

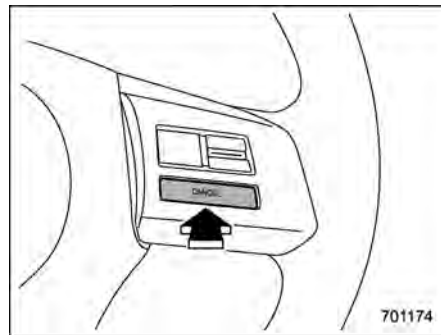
light is illuminated in the combination meter.

The vehicle will maintain the desired speed.

Vehicle speed can be temporarily increased while driving with the cruise control activated. Simply depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle. When the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle will return to and maintain the previous cruising speed.

■ To temporarily cancel the cruise control

The cruise control can be temporarily canceled in the following ways.



- Press the "CANCEL" button.
- Press the X mode switch to activate the

X mode (models with X mode)

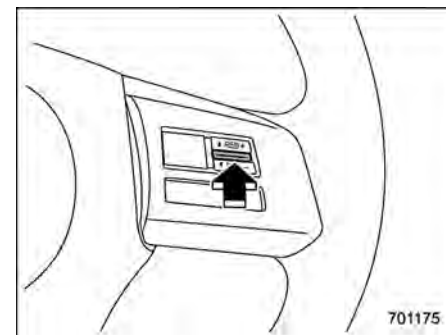
- Depress the brake pedal.
- Depress the clutch pedal (MT models only).



WARNING

For CVT models, you can cancel the cruise control by shifting the select lever into the "N" position. However, do not shift the lever into the "N" position while driving except in case of emergency. If the select lever is shifted into the "N" position, the engine brake will no longer work. This could result in an accident.

The cruise control set indicator light in the combination meter turns off when the cruise control is canceled.



To resume the cruise control after it has been temporarily canceled and with vehicle speed of approximately 32 km/h (20 mph) or more, press the “RES/SET” switch to the “RES” side to return to the original cruising speed automatically.

The cruise control set indicator light in the combination meter will automatically illuminate at this time.

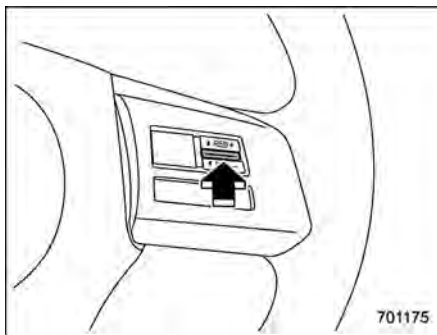
■ To turn off the cruise control

There are two ways to turn off the cruise control:

- Press the cruise control main button again.
- Turn the ignition switch to the “ACC” or “LOCK/OFF” position (but only when the vehicle is completely stopped).

■ To change the cruising speed

▼ To increase the speed (by the “RES/SET” switch)



Press the “RES/SET” switch to the “RES” side and hold it until the vehicle reaches the desired speed. Then, release the switch. The vehicle speed at that moment will be memorized and treated as the new set speed.

U.K. models:

When the difference between the actual vehicle speed and the set speed is less than 4 mph (6.8 km/h), the set speed can be increased 1 mph (1.6 km/h) each time by pressing the “RES/SET” switch to the “RES” side quickly.

Except U.K. models:

When the difference between the actual vehicle speed and the set speed is less than 4.4 km/h (3 mph), the set speed can be increased 1 km/h (0.6 mph) each time by pressing the “RES/SET” switch to the “RES” side quickly.

▼ To increase the speed (by accelerator pedal)

1. Depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle to the desired speed.
2. Press the “RES/SET” switch to the “SET” side once. Now the desired speed is set and the vehicle will keep running at that speed without depressing the accelerator pedal.

NOTE

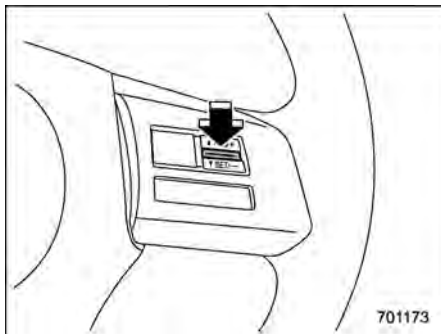
● U.K. models:

If the difference between the actual vehicle speed when the switch is pressed and the speed last time you set is less than 4 mph (6.8 km/h), the vehicle speed will be lowered by 1 mph (1.6 km/h). This occurs because the cruise control system regards this operation as that intended to decrease the vehicle speed.

- **Except U.K. models:**

If the difference between the actual vehicle speed when the switch is pressed and the speed last time you set is less than 4.4 km/h (3 mph), the vehicle speed will be lowered by 1 km/h (0.6 mph). This occurs because the cruise control system regards this operation as that intended to decrease the vehicle speed.

▼ **To decrease the speed (by the “RES/SET” switch)**



Press the “RES/SET” switch to the “SET” side and hold it until the vehicle reaches the desired speed. Then, release the switch. The vehicle speed at that moment will be memorized and treated as the new set speed.

U.K. models:

When the difference between the actual vehicle speed and the set speed is less than 4 mph (6.8 km/h), the set speed can be lowered 1 mph (1.6 km/h) each time by pressing the “RES/SET” switch to the “SET” side quickly.

Except U.K. models:

When the difference between the actual vehicle speed and the set speed is less than 4.4 km/h (3 mph), the set speed can be lowered 1 km/h (0.6 mph) each time by pressing the “RES/SET” switch to the “SET” side quickly.

▼ **To decrease the speed (by brake pedal)**

1. Depress the brake pedal to release cruise control temporarily.
2. When the speed decreases to the desired speed, press the “RES/SET” switch to the “SET” side once. Now the desired speed is set and the vehicle will keep running at that speed without depressing the accelerator pedal.

■ **Cruise control set indicator light**

Refer to “Cruise control set indicator light”
 ☞ 3-31.

■ **Cruise control set indicator light**

Refer to “Cruise control set indicator light”
 ☞ 3-32.

Auto Start Stop system (if equipped)

The Auto Start Stop system is designed to automatically stop and restart the engine when the vehicle is stationary for a short period of time (while waiting for a traffic light or in a traffic jam, etc.) after the engine has warmed up, in order to reduce fuel consumption and exhaust emissions, as well as undesired idling noise.

■ System operation



CAUTION

- The Auto Start Stop system is designed to automatically stop and restart the engine for a short period of time during idling. Do not use the system when parking the vehicle normally.
- If the Auto Start Stop system operates when a trailer hitch connector is connected, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer. Continuing to drive the vehicle while using the system in this condition could result in lurching down downhill slopes or rolling back on downhill slopes, or could cause da-

mage to the transmission.

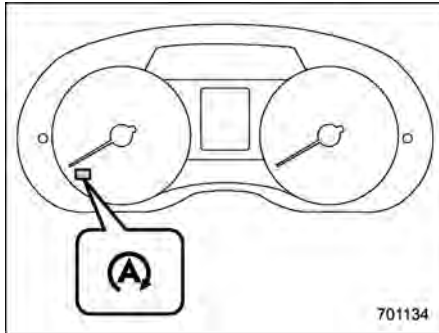
So that it can be used safely and comfortably, in addition to driver operations, the Auto Start Stop system is designed to constantly monitor the vehicle conditions as well as the environment inside and outside the vehicle, in order to control stopping and restarting of the engine. The engine can be automatically stopped by the system when all of the following conditions are met.

- when the vehicle has been driven once after the engine was started (If the vehicle is left continuously idling without being driven, the engine will not be stopped automatically. Also, the engine will not be stopped and restarted repeatedly while the vehicle is stationary.)
- the engine is sufficiently warmed up
- the vehicle battery is in good condition
- the engine hood is closed
- all doors are closed (including the rear gate)
- the driver's seatbelt is fastened
- the rear window defogger is not in use
- the climate control function is not used or used with a negligible temperature difference between the setting temperature and the temperature inside the vehicle

- the vehicle is at an altitude of less than approximately 1,500 m (4,900 ft)
- the outside temperature is higher than approximately -10°C (14°F)
- the Auto Start Stop warning light is not illuminated
- the malfunction indicator light (Check Engine light) is off
- the steering wheel is in the straight ahead position
- the steering wheel is not being operated
- the vehicle is not be used for towing
- the vehicle is not stopped on a road that has a steep slope
- the hazard warning flasher is not in use
- negative pressure in the brake booster is sufficient
- the shift lever is in the "N" position (MT models)
- the clutch pedal is not depressed (MT models)
- the brake pedal is firmly depressed fully after it has been depressed to stop the vehicle (CVT models) (The system may not operate in some cases if the brake pedal is not fully depressed or if the brake is applied suddenly.)
- the select lever is in the "D" position (CVT models)
- the CVT fluid is sufficiently warmed up

(CVT models)

- the temperature of the CVT fluid is not abnormally high (CVT models)
- The X mode is turned off (if equipped)
- The power rear gate is not being used (if equipped)



Auto Start Stop indicator light (green)

If the engine is temporarily stopped by the system, the Auto Start Stop indicator light on the combination meter will illuminate. This indicator light will turn off when the system restarts the engine.

NOTE

- Vehicles that are equipped with the Auto Start Stop system are also equipped with a special high-performance battery. When replacing the

vehicle battery, be sure to replace it with a genuine SUBARU battery (or equivalent) designed specifically for use in a vehicle equipped with the Auto Start Stop system. For details, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer.

- In the following cases, it may take some time for the Auto Start Stop system to operate.

- when the battery is discharged because the vehicle has not been used for a long period of time, etc.
- when the outside temperature is very high, or when it is very low
- when the battery terminals are disconnected after replacing the battery

▼ MT models

! CAUTION

Be sure to depress the clutch pedal firmly and operate the shift lever.

After depressing the brake pedal and stopping the vehicle, the engine will temporarily stop if you release the clutch pedal with the shift lever in the “N” position.

If the clutch pedal is fully depressed, the engine will be automatically restarted.

▼ CVT models

After depressing the brake pedal with the select lever in the “D” position and stopping the vehicle, if the brake pedal is further depressed, the engine will be automatically stopped.

If you release the brake pedal with the select lever in the “D” position, the engine will be automatically restarted.

- ▼ Restarting the engine after it has been temporarily stopped by the Auto Start Stop system

! CAUTION

While the engine is temporarily stopped by the Auto Start Stop system, if the engine does not restart, even if you release the brake pedal (CVT models) or you fully depress the clutch pedal (MT models), we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by a SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

NOTE

- When the engine has been restarted by the Auto Start Stop system, the voltage of the accessory power outlets will be reduced. Because of this, the

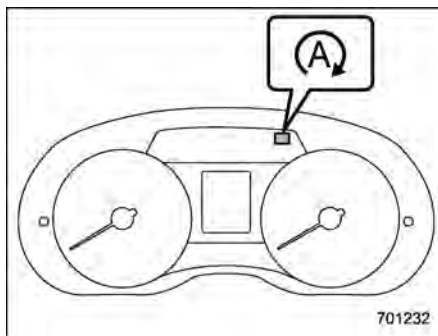
power of any electrical appliances that are connected may be temporarily turned off.

- If any of the operating conditions of the Auto Start Stop system are no longer met while either of the following occurs, the engine will not be restarted even if normal use is restored.

- Any door other than the driver's door is left open for a period of time.
- The shift lever is left in any position other than the "N" position for a period of time (MT models).

If any one of the conditions for Auto Start Stop operation can no longer be met, the engine will be automatically restarted. However, in order to ensure safety, the engine will not be automatically restarted if either of the following operations is performed, even if you release the brake pedal (CVT models) or fully depress the clutch pedal (MT models).

- the engine hood is opened
- the driver's seat seatbelt is unfastened
- the driver's door is opened



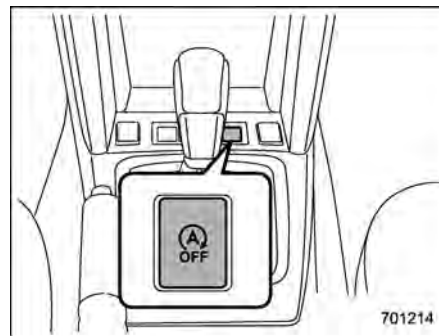
Auto Start Stop warning light (yellow)

When the engine is temporarily stopped by the system, the Auto Start Stop warning light will illuminate if any of the previous operations are performed.

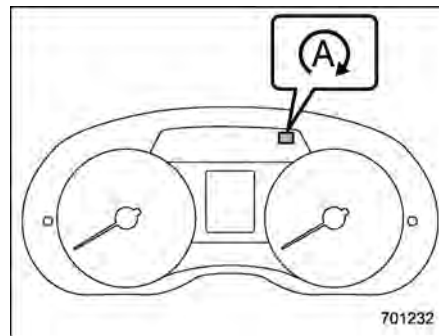
Also, in the following cases, the length of time that the engine is temporarily stopped by the Auto Start Stop system may be shorter.

- when the outside temperature is high, or when it is low (because the air conditioner can no longer maintain the set temperature)
- when consumption of electricity by electrical components is high

▼ Auto Start Stop OFF switch



Auto Start Stop OFF switch



Auto Start Stop OFF indicator light (yellow)

If the Auto Start Stop OFF switch is pressed, operation of the Auto Start Stop system will be disabled. The Auto Start

Stop OFF indicator light on the combination meter will then illuminate. If the switch is pressed once more, the Auto Start Stop system will turn on again. The Auto Start Stop OFF indicator light will then turn off.

While the engine is temporarily stopped by the system, if the Auto Start Stop OFF switch is pressed and held, the engine will be restarted even if you do not release the brake pedal (CVT models) or the clutch pedal is not fully depressed (MT models).

NOTE

- **If the engine is restarted when the Auto Start Stop system is not operational and the ignition switch has been turned to the “LOCK”/“OFF” position, the Auto Start Stop system will turn on again.**
- **Be sure to turn the ignition switch to the “LOCK”/“OFF” position when leaving the vehicle. Failure to do so could result in the battery discharging.**

■ Displaying the Auto Start Stop system status

Approximate indications of the time that the engine has been stopped by the Auto Start Stop system and/or the amount of fuel saved can be displayed on the information display or the multi function

display. For details, refer to “Auto Start Stop time (models with Auto Start Stop system)” 3-39 or “Basic screens” 3-44.

■ System warning

So that it can be used safely and comfortably, the Auto Start Stop system is designed to constantly monitor the vehicle conditions as well as the environment inside and outside the vehicle in addition to driver operations, and to provide various warnings to the driver via the warning light and/or indicator light illuminating or flashing and a buzzer sounding. For details about the warning light and indicator light, refer to “Auto Start Stop warning light/Auto Start Stop OFF indicator light (yellow)” 3-34 and “Auto Start Stop indicator light (green)” 3-34.

▼ Warning buzzer

If either of the following operations is performed while the engine is temporarily stopped by the Auto Start Stop system, a buzzer will sound to notify the driver that the engine is currently stopped.

- any door except the driver's door is opened
- the shift lever is placed in any position except the “N” position (MT models)

In this case, the buzzer will stop sounding when the following operations are performed.

- the corresponding door is closed
- the shift lever is returned to the “N” position (MT models)

The buzzer will also sound when either of the following operations is performed while the engine is stopped by the Auto Start Stop system.

- the engine hood is opened
- the driver's seatbelt is unfastened
- the driver's door is opened

When this occurs, the buzzer will stop sounding when the following operations are performed.

- the engine is restarted by normal operation (refer to “Preparing to drive” 7-6)
- the ignition switch is turned to the “LOCK”/“OFF” position

▼ Display of warning messages (models with multi function display)

If a warning message is displayed on the multi function display while the vehicle is being driven, a malfunction may have occurred in the Auto Start Stop system. In this case, the Auto Start Stop warning light will illuminate or flash. We recommend that you have your vehicle in-

spected at a SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

New vehicle break-in driving – the first 1,600 km (1,000 miles)	8-2
Fuel economy hints	8-2
Engine exhaust gas (carbon monoxide).....	8-2
Catalytic converter	8-3
Diesel particulate filter (diesel engine models)	8-4
Periodic inspections	8-5
Driving in foreign countries	8-5
Driving in a foreign country in which the vehicular lane is different to your country	8-5
Driving tips for AWD models.....	8-8
On-road and off-road driving.....	8-10
Winter driving.....	8-12
Operation during cold weather.....	8-12
Driving on snowy and icy roads	8-13
Corrosion protection	8-14

Snow tires	8-14
Tire chains	8-15
Rocking the vehicle	8-15
Loading your vehicle.....	8-16
Roof molding and load carrier (if equipped).....	8-16
Roof rails (if equipped)	8-18
Trailer towing	8-18
Maintenance	8-19
Towing weight	8-19
Trailer hitches.....	8-19
When you do not tow a trailer	8-19
Trailer safety chains.....	8-20
Side mirrors	8-20
Trailer lights	8-20
Tires.....	8-20
Trailer towing tips.....	8-21
Additional information for Europe	8-23

New vehicle break-in driving – the first 1,600 km (1,000 miles)

The performance and long life of your vehicle are dependent on how you handle and care for your vehicle while it is new. Follow these instructions during the first 1,600 km (1,000 miles):

- For petrol engine models, do not allow the engine speed to exceed 4,000 rpm except in an emergency.
- For diesel engine models, do not allow the engine speed to exceed 3,500 rpm except in an emergency.
- Do not drive at one constant engine or vehicle speed for a long time, either fast or slow.
- Avoid starting suddenly and rapid acceleration, except in an emergency.
- Avoid hard braking, except in an emergency.

The same break-in procedures should be applied to an overhauled engine, newly mounted engine or when brake pads or brake linings are replaced with new ones.

Fuel economy hints

The following suggestions will help to save your fuel.

- Select the proper gear position for the speed and road conditions.
- Avoid sudden acceleration or deceleration. Always accelerate gently until you reach the desired speed. Then try to maintain that speed for as long as possible.
- Do not pump the accelerator pedal and avoid racing the engine.
- Avoid unnecessary engine idling.
- Keep the engine properly tuned.
- Keep the tires inflated to the correct pressure shown on the tire placard, which is located under the door latch on the driver's side. Low pressure will increase tire wear and fuel consumption.
- Use the air conditioner only when necessary.
- Keep the front and rear wheels in proper alignment.
- Avoid carrying unnecessary luggage or cargo.

Engine exhaust gas (carbon monoxide)



WARNING

- **Never inhale engine exhaust gas.** Engine exhaust gas contains carbon monoxide, a colorless and odorless gas which is dangerous, or even lethal, if inhaled.
- **Always properly maintain the engine exhaust system to prevent engine exhaust gas from entering the vehicle.**
- **Never run the engine in a closed space, such as a garage, except for the brief time needed to drive the vehicle in or out of it.**
- **Avoid remaining in a parked vehicle for a lengthy time while the engine is running. If that is unavoidable, then use the ventilation fan to force fresh air into the vehicle.**
- **Always keep the front ventilator inlet grille free from snow, leaves or other obstructions to ensure that the ventilation system always works properly.**
- **If at any time you suspect that**

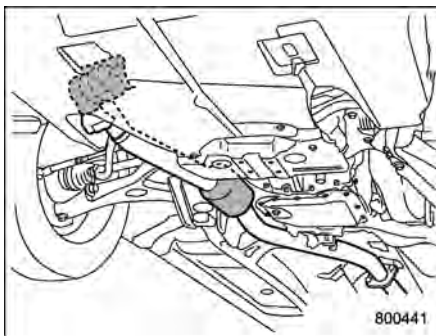
exhaust fumes are entering the vehicle, have the problem checked and corrected as soon as possible. If you must drive under these conditions, drive only with all windows fully open.

- Keep the rear gate closed while driving to prevent exhaust gas from entering the vehicle.

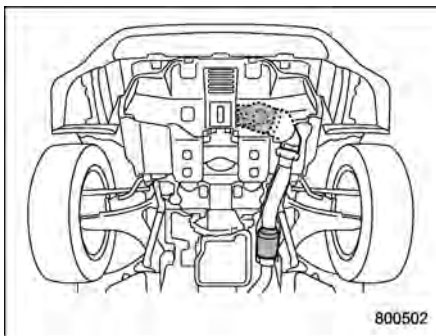
NOTE

Due to the expansion and contraction of the metals used in the manufacture of the exhaust system, you may hear a crackling sound coming from the exhaust system for a short time after the engine has been shut off. This sound is normal.

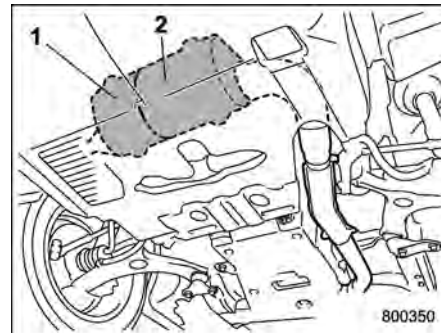
Catalytic converter



Non-turbo models



Turbo petrol engine models



Diesel engine models

- 1) Catalytic converter
- 2) Diesel particulate filter

The catalytic converter is installed in the exhaust system. It serves as catalyst to reduce HC, CO and NOx in exhaust gases, thus providing cleaner exhaust.

To avoid damage to the catalytic converter:

- For petrol engine models, use only unleaded petrol. Even a small amount of leaded fuel will damage the catalytic converter.
- For diesel engine models, use only diesel fuel that conforms to the specification of EN590 or an equivalent.
- Never start the engine by pushing or pulling the vehicle.

8-4 Driving tips/Diesel particulate filter (diesel engine models)

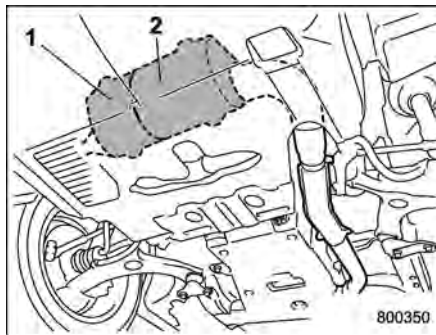
- Avoid racing the engine.
- Never turn off the ignition switch while the vehicle is moving.
- Keep your engine tuned-up. If you feel the engine running rough (misfiring, backfiring or incomplete combustion), we recommend that you have your vehicle checked and repaired by an authorized SUBARU dealer.
- Do not apply undercoating or rust prevention treatment to the heat shield of catalytic converter and the exhaust system.
- Do not drive with an extremely low fuel level.



WARNING

- **Avoid fire hazards. Do not drive or park the vehicle anywhere near flammable materials (e.g. grass, paper, rags or leaves), because the catalytic converter operates at very high temperatures.**
- **Keep everyone and flammable materials away from the exhaust pipe while the engine is running. The exhaust gas is very hot.**

Diesel particulate filter (diesel engine models)



- 1) Catalytic converter
- 2) Diesel particulate filter

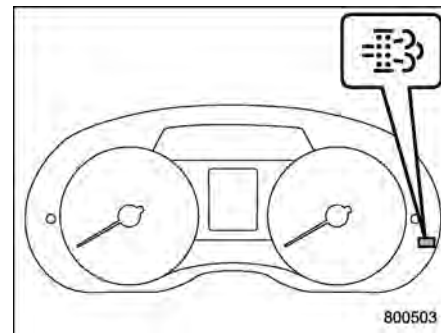
The diesel particulate filter is a device that eliminates particulate matter in the exhaust gas of a diesel engine.

In most cases, the accumulated soot is automatically burned in the filter while driving. However, accumulated soot in the filter is not burned if you drive the vehicle under the following conditions.

- when the vehicle is continuously driven at 15 km/h (9 mph) or less
- when the vehicle is driven without sufficient preheating or the vehicle is repeatedly driven for only a short period

of time

- when the vehicle is idling for a long time



The diesel particulate filter warning light will illuminate when the accumulated particulate matter exceeds the specified limit. When the warning light illuminates, refer to "Diesel particulate filter warning light (diesel engine models)" 3-33.



WARNING

- **Avoid fire hazards. Do not drive or park the vehicle anywhere near flammable materials (e.g., grass, paper, rags or leaves), because the diesel particulate filter operates at very high temperatures.**

- Keep everyone and flammable materials away from the diesel particulate filter and exhaust pipe while the engine is running. The exhaust gas is very hot.

NOTE

- While the soot is burning in the diesel particulate filter, the driveability, engine revolutions, engine sound and smell of emission gas may change.
- If any service or maintenance is necessary for the diesel particulate filter, it should be performed by a well-trained expert. In some cases, the work requires maintenance of the on-board computer system using a special tool. Otherwise, the diesel particulate filter warning light will not operate properly. Therefore, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for service or maintenance of the diesel particulate filter. Fully trained mechanics are on standby at the SUBARU dealer to utilize the special tools and spare parts.

Periodic inspections

To keep your vehicle in the best condition at all times, always have the recommended maintenance services listed in the maintenance schedule performed at the specified time or mileage intervals.

Driving in foreign countries

When planning to use your vehicle in another country:

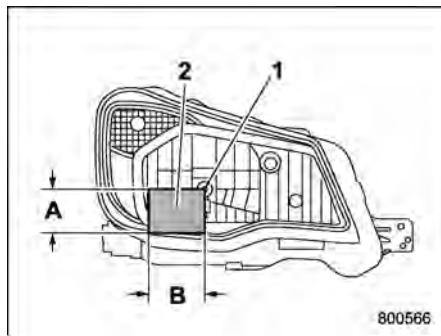
- Confirm the availability of the correct fuel. Refer to "Fuel" 7-3.
- Comply with all regulations and requirements of each country.

■ Driving in a foreign country in which the vehicular lane is different to your country

When you drive in a foreign country in which the vehicular lane (left-hand traffic or right-hand traffic) is different from your country, to avoid blinding the oncoming driver, you need to block a part of the headlight lenses.

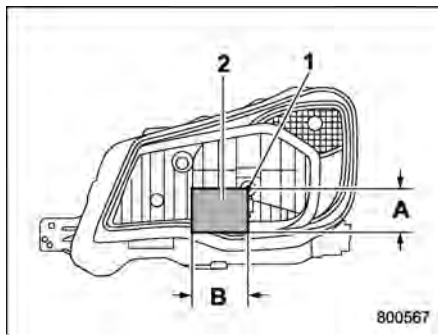
We recommend that you consult a SUBARU dealer concerning whether the headlight of your vehicle is designed for left-hand traffic or right-hand traffic. Refer to the following method when you attach lightproof adhesive tape to the headlight lenses.

- ▼ When you drive a vehicle that is designed for left-hand traffic in right-hand traffic countries (models with halogen light)



Right side headlight

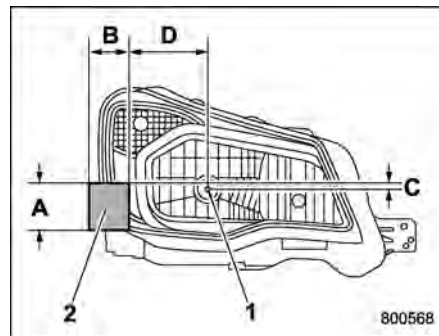
- 1) Bulb center
- 2) Lightproof adhesive tape
- A) 25 mm (0.98 in)
- B) 32 mm (1.26 in)



Left side headlight

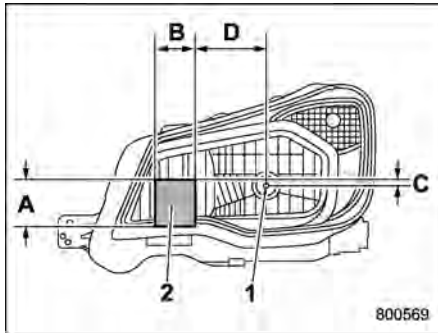
- 1) Bulb center
- 2) Lightproof adhesive tape
- A) 25 mm (0.98 in)
- B) 32 mm (1.26 in)

- ▼ When you drive a vehicle that is designed for left-hand traffic in right-hand traffic countries (models with HID light)



Right side headlight

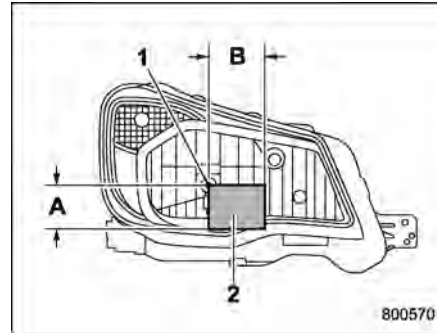
- 1) Bulb center
- 2) Lightproof adhesive tape
- A) 30.5 mm (1.20 in)
- B) 23 mm (0.91 in)
- C) 3.5 mm (0.14 in)
- D) 32 mm (1.26 in)



Left side headlight

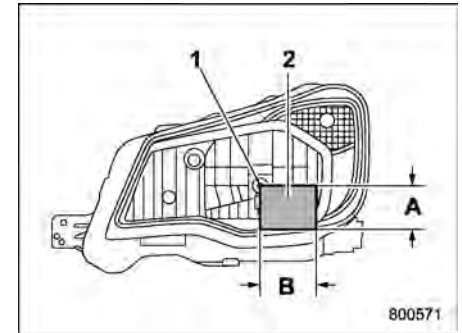
- 1) Bulb center
- 2) Lightproof adhesive tape
- A) 30.5 mm (1.20 in)
- B) 23 mm (0.91 in)
- C) 3.5 mm (0.14 in)
- D) 32 mm (1.26 in)

▼ When you drive a vehicle that is designed for right-hand traffic in left-hand traffic countries (models with halogen light)



Right side headlight

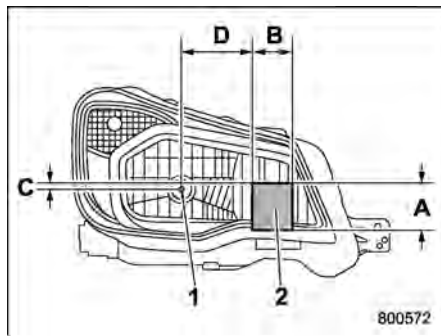
- 1) Bulb center
- 2) Lightproof adhesive tape
- A) 25 mm (0.98 in)
- B) 32 mm (1.26 in)



Left side headlight

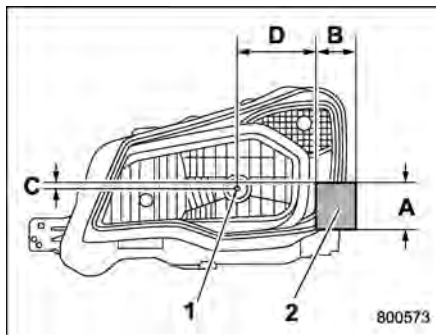
- 1) Bulb center
- 2) Lightproof adhesive tape
- A) 25 mm (0.98 in)
- B) 32 mm (1.26 in)

- ▼ When you drive a vehicle that is designed for right-hand traffic in left-hand traffic countries (models with HID light)



Right side headlight

- 1) Bulb center
- 2) Lightproof adhesive tape
- A) 30.5 mm (1.20 in)
- B) 23 mm (0.91 in)
- C) 3.5 mm (0.14 in)
- D) 32 mm (1.26 in)



Left side headlight

- 1) Bulb center
- 2) Lightproof adhesive tape
- A) 30.5 mm (1.20 in)
- B) 23 mm (0.91 in)
- C) 3.5 mm (0.14 in)
- D) 32 mm (1.26 in)

Driving tips for AWD models



WARNING

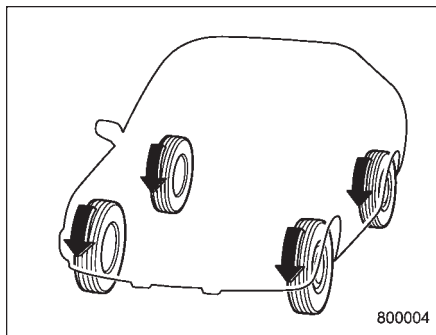
- Always maintain a safe driving speed according to the road and weather conditions in order to avoid having an accident on a sharp turn, during sudden braking or under other similar conditions.
- Always use the utmost care in driving – overconfidence because you are driving an All-Wheel Drive vehicle could easily lead to a serious accident.
- When replacing a tire, you must use a tire that is of the same size, circumference, speed symbol and load index as the original tires listed on the tire placard. Using tires of other sizes, circumferences or constructions may result in severe mechanical damage to the drive train of your vehicle and may affect ride, handling, braking, speedometer/odometer calibration, and clearance between the body and tires. It also may be dangerous and lead to loss of vehicle control.

- You must install four tires that are of the same size, circumference, construction, manufacturer, brand (tread pattern), degree of wear, speed symbol and load index. Mixing tires of other sizes, circumferences or constructions may result in severe mechanical damage to the drive train of your vehicle and may affect ride, handling, braking and speedometer/odometer calibration. It also may be dangerous and lead to loss of vehicle control.



CAUTION

If you use a temporary spare tire to replace a flat tire, be sure to use the original temporary spare tire stored in the vehicle. Using other sizes may result in severe mechanical damage to the drive train of your vehicle.



All-Wheel Drive distributes the engine power to all four wheels. AWD models provide better traction when driving on slippery, wet or snow-covered roads and when moving out of mud, sand or dirt.

For safety purpose as well as to avoid damaging the AWD system, you should keep the following tips in mind:

- An AWD vehicle is better able to climb steeper roads under snowy or slippery conditions than a front wheel drive vehicle. There is little difference in handling, however, during extremely sharp turns or sudden braking. Therefore, when driving down a slope or turning corners, be sure to reduce your speed and maintain an ample distance from other vehicles.
- Always check the cold tire pressure before starting to drive. The recom-

mended tire pressure is provided on the tire placard, which is located under the door latch on the driver's side.

- Tire chains should always be placed on the front wheels only.
- Frequent driving of an AWD vehicle under hard-driving conditions such as steep hills or dusty roads will necessitate more frequent replacement of the following items than that specified in "Maintenance schedule" 11-3.
 - Engine oil
 - Brake fluid
 - Rear differential gear oil
 - Manual transmission oil (MT models)
 - Continuously variable transmission fluid (CVT models)
 - Front differential gear oil (CVT models)
- There are some precautions that you must observe when towing your vehicle. For detail information, refer to "Towing" 9-12.

On-road and off-road driving



WARNING

- In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seatbelt. You the driver and all your passengers should fasten the seatbelts before starting to drive in order to minimize the chance of serious injury or death.
- Do not make sharp turns and quick maneuvers unless absolutely unavoidable. Such actions are dangerous as you may lose control, possibly resulting in a rollover which could cause death or serious injury.
- Always maintain a safe driving speed according to the road and weather conditions in order to avoid having an accident on a sharp turn, during sudden braking or under other similar conditions.
- Whenever strong crosswinds are present, slow down sufficiently to maintain control of your vehicle. Remember that your vehicle, with its higher profile and center

of gravity, is more likely to be affected by crosswinds than ordinary passenger cars.

- Always use the utmost care in driving – overconfidence because you are driving an All-Wheel Drive model could easily lead to a serious accident.

Your vehicle is classified as a utility vehicle. Utility vehicles feature a higher ground clearance which enables them to be used for wide applications including off-road driving. But please keep in mind that your vehicle is neither a conventional off-road vehicle nor an all-terrain vehicle. A higher center of gravity in relation to the tread width as compared with ordinary passenger cars makes vehicles of this type more likely to roll over. In reality, utility vehicles have a significantly higher roll-over rate than other types of vehicles. The high ground clearance of this vehicle is a real advantage, giving you a better view of the road and allowing you to anticipate problems earlier. However, remember that your utility vehicle is not designed for high-speed cornering comparable to ordinary passenger cars and that your vehicle could roll over if you make a sharp turn at high speed.

If you take your SUBARU off-road, certain

common sense precautions such as the following should be taken:

- Make certain that you and all of your passengers are wearing seatbelts.
- Carry some emergency equipment, such as a towing rope or chain, a shovel, wheel blocks, first aid kit and cell phone or citizens band radio.
- Drive carefully. Do not take unnecessary risks by driving in dangerous areas or over rough terrain.
- Slow down and employ extra caution at all times. When driving off-road, you will not have the benefit of marked traffic lanes, banked curves, traffic signs and the like.
- Do not drive across steep slopes. Instead, drive either straight up or straight down the slopes. A vehicle can much more easily tip over sideways than it can end over end. Avoid driving straight up or down slopes that are too steep.
- Avoid sharp turning maneuvers, especially at higher speeds.
- Do not grip the inside or spokes of the steering wheel. A bad bump could jerk the wheel and injure your hands. Instead drive with your fingers and thumbs on the outside of the rim.
- If driving through water, such as when crossing shallow streams, first check the

depth of the water and the bottom of the stream bed for firmness and ensure that the bed of the stream is flat. Drive slowly and cross the stream without stopping. The water should be shallow enough that it does not reach the vehicle's undercarriage. Water entering the engine air intake or the exhaust pipe or water splashing onto electrical parts may damage your vehicle and may cause it to stall. Never attempt to drive through rushing water; regardless of its depth, it can wash away the ground from under your tires, resulting in possible loss of traction and even vehicle rollover.

- Always check your brakes for effectiveness immediately after driving in sand, mud or water. Do this by driving slowly and stepping on the brake pedal. Repeat that process several times to dry out the brake discs and brake pads.

- Do not drive or park over or near flammable materials such as dry grass or fallen leaves, as they may burn easily. The exhaust system is very hot while the engine is running and right after engine stops. This could create a fire hazard.

- After driving through tall grass, mud, rocks, sand, rivers, etc., check that there is no grass, bush, paper, rags, stones, sand, etc. adhering to or trapped on the underbody. Clear off any such matter from

the underbody. If the vehicle is used with these materials trapped or adhering to the underbody, a mechanical breakdown or fire could occur.

- Secure all cargo carried inside the vehicle and make certain that it is not piled higher than the seatbacks. During sudden stops or jolts, unsecured cargo could be thrown around in the vehicle and cause injury. Do not pile heavy loads on the roof. Those loads raise the vehicle's center of gravity and make it more prone to tip over.

- If you must rock the vehicle to free it from sand or mud, depress the accelerator pedal slightly and move the select lever back and forth between "1"/"D" and "R" repeatedly. Do not race the engine. For the best possible traction, avoid spinning the wheels when trying to free the vehicle.

- When the road surface is extremely slippery, you can obtain better traction by starting the vehicle with the transmission in 2nd than 1st (CVT models with manual mode and MT models).

- Never equip your vehicle with tires larger than those specified in this manual.

- Wash the vehicle's underbody after off-road driving. Suspension components are particularly prone to dirt buildup, so they need to be washed thoroughly.

- Frequent driving of an AWD model

under hard-driving conditions such as rough roads or off roads will necessitate more frequent replacement of the following items than that specified in "Maintenance schedule" 11-3.

- Engine oil
- Brake fluid
- Rear differential gear oil
- Manual transmission oil (MT models)
- Continuously variable transmission fluid (CVT models)
- Front differential gear oil (CVT models)

Remember that damage done to your SUBARU while operating it off-road and not using common sense precautions such as those listed above is not eligible for warranty coverage.

Winter driving

■ Operation during cold weather

Carry some emergency equipment, such as tire chains, a window scraper, a bag of sand, flares, a small shovel, and jumper cables.

Check the battery and cables. Cold temperatures reduce battery capacity. The battery must be in good condition to provide enough power for cold winter starts.

It normally takes longer to start the engine in very cold weather conditions. Use an engine oil of a suitable grade and viscosity for cold weather. Using heavy summer oil will make it harder to start the engine.

Keep the door locks from freezing by squirting them with deicer or glycerin.

Forcing a frozen door open may damage or separate the rubber weather strips around the door. If the door is frozen, use hot water to melt the ice, and afterwards thoroughly wipe the water away.

Use a windshield washer fluid that contains an antifreeze solution. Do not use engine antifreeze or other substitutes because they may damage the paint of

the vehicle.

SUBARU Windshield Washer Fluid contains 58.5% methyl alcohol and 41.5% surfactant, by volume. Its freezing temperature varies according to how much it is diluted, as indicated in the following table.

Washer Fluid Concentration	Freezing Temperature
30%	-12°C (10.4°F)
50%	-20°C (-4°F)
100%	-45°C (-49°F)

In order to prevent freezing of washer fluid, check the freezing temperatures in the table above when adjusting the fluid concentration to the outside temperature. If you fill the reservoir tank with a fluid with a different concentration from the one used previously, purge the old fluid from the piping between the reservoir tank and washer nozzles by operating the washer for a certain period of time. Otherwise, if the concentration of the fluid remaining in the piping is too low for the outside temperature, it may freeze and block the nozzles.



CAUTION

Adjust the washer fluid concentra-

tion appropriately for the outside temperature. If the concentration is inappropriate, sprayed washer fluid may freeze on the windshield and obstruct your view, and the fluid may freeze in the reservoir tank.

▼ Before driving your vehicle

Before entering the vehicle, remove any snow or ice from your shoes because that could make the pedals slippery and driving dangerous.

While warming up the vehicle before driving, check that the accelerator pedal, brake pedal, and all other controls operate smoothly.

Clear away ice and snow that has accumulated under the fenders to avoid making steering difficult. During severe winter driving, stop when and where it is safe to do so and check under the fenders periodically.

▼ Parking in cold weather

Do not use the parking brake when parking for long periods in cold weather since it could freeze in that position. Instead, observe the following.

1. Place the shift lever in "1" or "R" for MT models, or the select lever in "P" for CVT models.

2. Use tire stops under the tires to prevent the vehicle from moving.

When the vehicle is parked in snow or when it snows, raise the wiper blades off the glass to prevent damage to them.

When the vehicle has been left parked after use on roads heavily covered with snow, or has been left parked during a snowstorm, icing may develop on the brake system, which could cause poor braking action. Check for snow or ice buildup on the suspension, disc brakes and brake hoses underneath the vehicle. If there is caked snow or ice, remove it, being careful not to damage the disc brakes and brake hoses and ABS harness.



WARNING

Snow can trap dangerous exhaust gases under your vehicle. Keep snow clear of the exhaust pipe and from around your vehicle if you park the vehicle in snow with the engine running.

▼ **Refueling in cold weather**

Petrol engine models:

To help prevent moisture from forming in the fuel system and the risk of its freezing, use of an antifreeze additive in the fuel tank is recommended during cold weather. Use only additives that are specifically designed for this purpose. When an antifreeze additive is used, its effect lasts longer if the tank is refilled whenever the fuel level reaches half empty.

If your SUBARU is not going to be used for an extended period, it is best to have the fuel tank filled to capacity.

Diesel engine models:

For information about refueling in cold weather, refer to "Fuel requirements for diesel engine models" 7-3.

▼ **Opening rear gate (models with power rear gate)**



CAUTION

Before operating the power rear gate, check that there is no frost or snow between the power rear gate and the vehicle body. If you notice frost or snow etc. on the power rear gate, remove it. If you forcibly operate the power rear gate with

frost or snow, it may cause a malfunction.

■ **Driving on snowy and icy roads**

To prevent skidding and slipping, avoid sudden braking, abrupt acceleration, high-speed driving, and sharp turning when driving on snowy or icy roads.

Always maintain ample distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you to avoid the need for sudden braking.

To supplement the foot brake, use the engine brake effectively to control the vehicle speed. (Shift into a lower gear when necessary.)

Avoid shifting down abruptly. Such behavior can cause the wheels to lock, possibly leading to loss of vehicle control.

An anti-lock brake system (ABS) enhances your vehicle's braking performance on snowy and icy roads. For information about braking on slippery surfaces, refer to "ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)" 7-28 and "Vehicle Dynamics Control system" 7-30.



WARNING

Do not use the cruise control on slippery roads such as snowy or icy

roads. This may cause loss of vehicle control.

**CAUTION**

Avoid prolonged continuous driving in snowstorms. Snow will enter the engine's intake system and may hinder the airflow, which could result in engine shutdown or even breakdown.

▼ Wiper operation when snowing

Before driving in cold weather, make sure the wiper blades are not frozen to the windshield or rear window.

If the wiper blades are frozen to the windshield or rear window, perform the following procedure.

- To thaw the windshield wiper blades, use the defroster and set the temperature for maximum warmth until the wiper blades are completely thawed. Refer to "Defrosting" 4-10.
- If your vehicle is equipped with a wiper deicer, use it. It is helpful to thaw the windshield wiper blades. Refer to "Defogger and deicer" 3-106.
- To thaw the rear wiper blade, use the rear window defogger. Refer to "Defogger

and deicer" 3-106.

When driving in snow, if frozen snow starts to stick on the surface of the windshield despite wiper operation, use the defroster and set the temperature for maximum warmth. After the windshield gets warmed enough to melt the frozen snow on it, wash it away using the windshield washer. Refer to "Windshield washer" 3-102.

Snow stuck on the wiper arm prevents the wiper from working effectively. If snow is stuck on the wiper arm, pull off the road to a safe place, then remove it. If you stop the vehicle at road side, use the hazard warning flasher to alert other drivers. Refer to "Hazard warning flasher" 3-8.

We recommend use of non-freezing type wiper blades (winter blades) during the seasons you could have snow and freezing temperatures.

Blades of this type give superior wiping performance in snowy conditions. Be sure to use blades that are suitable for your vehicle.

**CAUTION**

During high-speed driving, non-freezing type wiper blades may not perform as well as standard wiper blades. If this happens, reduce the

vehicle speed.

NOTE

When the season requiring non-freezing type wiper blades is over, replace them with standard wiper blades.

■ Corrosion protection

Refer to "Corrosion protection" 10-4.

■ Snow tires**WARNING**

- **When replacing original tires with winter (snow) tires, make sure you use only tires of the same size, circumference, speed symbol and load index as the original tires listed on the tire placard. Using tires of other sizes and constructions may affect speedometer/odometer calibration and clearance between the body and tires. It also may be dangerous and lead to loss of vehicle control.**
- **You must install four winter tires that are of the same size, circumference, construction, manufac-**

turer, brand (tread pattern), degree of wear, speed symbol and load index. Mixing tires of other sizes, circumferences or constructions may result in severe mechanical damage to the drive train of your vehicle and may affect ride, handling, braking and speedometer/odometer calibration. It also may be dangerous and lead to loss of vehicle control.

- **Do not use a combination of radial, belted bias or bias tires since it may cause dangerous handling characteristics and lead to an accident.**

In winter, it may be possible to enhance performance through use of tires designed specifically for winter driving conditions. If you choose to install winter tires on your vehicle, be sure to use the correct tire size and type. All four tires must be of the same size, construction, brand and load index and you should never mix radial, belted bias or bias tires since this may result in dangerous handling characteristics. Remember to drive with care at all times regardless of the type of tires on your vehicle.

When using winter tires (speed symbol Q,

T or H) never exceed 160 km/h (99 mph), 190 km/h (118 mph) or 210 km/h (130 mph), respectively.

■ Tire chains

If it is necessary to use the tire chains for driving on snowy grades or icy roads, observe the following precautions:

- Put the chains on the front wheels only.
- Use only chains that are of the correct size for your tires so as not to damage the vehicle body or suspension.
- Do not put a tire chain on the temporary spare tire.
- When driving with tire chains, drive at speeds below 30 km/h (19 mph).

Always use the utmost care when driving with tire chains – overconfidence because you are driving with tire chains could easily lead to a serious accident.

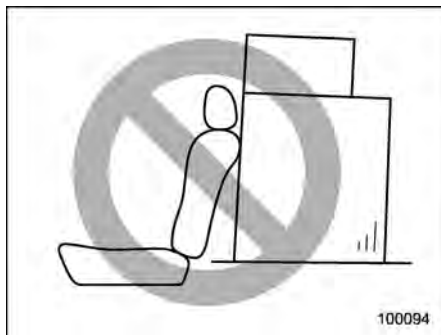
■ Rocking the vehicle

If you must rock the vehicle to free it from snow, sand, or mud, depress the accelerator pedal slightly and move the shift lever/select lever back and forth between “1”/“D” and “R” repeatedly. Do not race the engine. For the best possible traction, avoid spinning the wheels when trying to free the vehicle.

When the road surface is extremely slippery, you can obtain better traction by starting the vehicle with the transmission in 2nd than 1st (MT models and CVT models with manual mode).

If your vehicle is a CVT model with manual mode, for information about holding the transmission in the 2nd position, refer to “Selection of manual mode” Ⓖ7-19.

Loading your vehicle



WARNING

- Never stack luggage or other cargo higher than the top of the seatback because it could tumble forward and injure passengers in the event of a sudden stop or accident. Keep luggage or cargo low, as close to the floor as possible.
- Never allow passengers to ride on a folded rear seatback or in the cargo area. Doing so may result in serious injury.
- When you carry something inside the vehicle, secure it whenever

you can to prevent it from being thrown around inside the vehicle during sudden stops, sharp turns or in an accident.

- Do not pile heavy loads on the roof. These loads raise the vehicle's center of gravity and make it more prone to tip over.
- Secure lengthy items properly to prevent them from shooting forward and causing serious injury during a sudden stop.
- Do not place anything on the extended cargo area cover. Such items could tumble forward in the event of a sudden stop or a collision. This could cause serious injury.



CAUTION

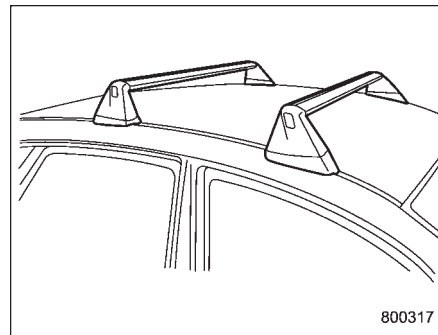
- Do not carry spray cans, containers with flammable or corrosive liquids or any other dangerous items inside the vehicle.
- Do not close the rear gate with cargo protruding from the cargo area. The cargo may be damaged. In models with power rear gate, the rear gate may open via reverse function.

- In models with power rear gate, be careful not to allow collision between the rear gate and the cargo when you are loading cargo on the roof. Otherwise, the rear gate will hit the cargo when opening and may cause damage to both the cargo and the rear gate.

NOTE

For better fuel economy, do not carry unneeded cargo.

■ Roof molding and load carrier (if equipped)



**CAUTION**

- For cargo carrying purposes, the roof moldings must be used together with a load carrier kit and the appropriate carrying attachments. Otherwise, damage to the roof or paint or a dangerous road hazard due to loss of cargo could result.
- When using the load carrier kit, make sure that the total weight of the load carrier kit, carrying attachments and cargo does not exceed the maximum load limit. Overloading may cause damage to the vehicle and create a safety hazard.

Cargo can be carried after securing the load carrier kit to the roof moldings and installing the appropriate carrying attachments. When installing the load carrier kit, follow the manufacturer's instructions.

The maximum load limit of the cargo, load carrier kit and carrying attachments must not exceed **80 kg (176 lbs)**. Place the heaviest load at the bottom, nearest the roof, and evenly distribute the cargo. Always properly secure all cargo.

▼ Installing carrying attachments on the load carrier

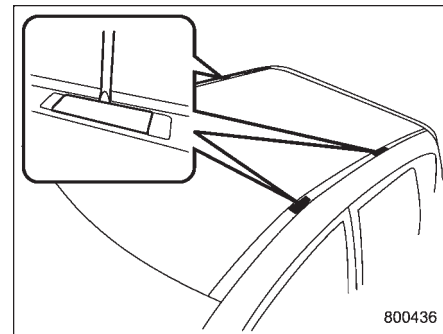
When installing any carrying attachments such as a bike carrier, ski carrier, kayak carrier, cargo basket, etc. on the load carrier, follow the manufacturer's instructions and make sure that the attachments are securely fixed to the load carrier. Use only attachments designed specifically for the load carrier. A set of the load carrier is designed to carry loads (cargo and attachments) of not more than **75 kg (165 lbs)**. Before operating the vehicle, make sure that the cargo is properly secured on the attachments.

NOTE

Remember that the vehicle's center of gravity is altered with the weight of the load on the roof, thus affecting the driving characteristics.

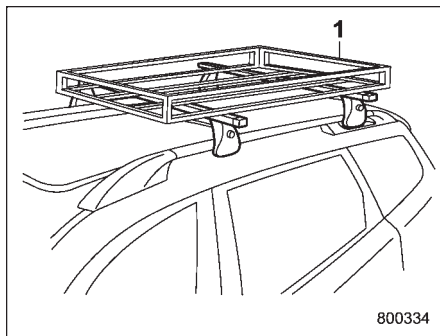
Drive carefully. Avoid rapid starts, hard cornering and abrupt stops. Crosswind effects will be increased.

▼ Removal and installation of the load carrier



Each of the two roof moldings has two mounting points for the load carrier kit. Each mounting point is fitted with a cover. Use a flat-head screwdriver to remove the covers. When installing the load carrier kit on the roof moldings, follow the manufacturer's instructions.

■ Roof rails (if equipped)



1) Roof rack

Luggage can be carried on the roof after securing the roof rack to the roof rails. When installing the roof rack on the roof rails, follow the manufacturer's instructions. The roof rails are designed to carry loads (luggage and roof rack) of no more than **80 kg (176 lbs)**.



CAUTION

- When using the roof rack, make sure that the total carry load of the roof rack and luggage does not exceed 80 kg (176 lbs). Overloading may cause damage to the vehicle.
- For cargo carrying purposes, the

roof rails must be used together with the roof rack. The roof rails must never be used alone to carry cargo. Otherwise, damage to the roof or paint, or a dangerous road hazard due to loss of cargo could result.

NOTE

Remember that the vehicle's center of gravity is altered with the weight of the load on the roof, thus affecting driving characteristics.

Drive carefully. Avoid rapid starts, hard cornering and abrupt stops. Crosswind effects will be increased.

Trailer towing

Your vehicle is designed and intended to be used primarily as a passenger-carrying vehicle. Towing a trailer puts additional loads on your vehicle's engine, drive train, brakes, tires and suspension and has an adverse effect on fuel economy.

In some countries, there are some regulations which you have to observe when towing a trailer. If you do decide to tow a trailer, your safety and satisfaction depend upon proper use of correct equipment and cautious operation of your vehicle. We recommend that you seek the advice of your SUBARU dealer to assist you in purchasing a hitch and other necessary towing equipment appropriate for your vehicle. In addition, be sure to follow the instructions on correct installation and use provided by the trailer and other towing equipment manufacturers.

SUBARU assumes no responsibility for injuries or vehicle damage that result from trailer towing equipment, or from any errors or omissions in the instructions accompanying such equipment or for your failure to follow the proper instructions.

NOTE

For the model with Auto Start Stop system:

Auto Start Stop system will not operate when towing a trailer. Refer to “Auto Start Stop system” 7-44.

■ Maintenance

If you use your vehicle to tow a trailer, more frequent maintenance will be required due to the additional load. Refer to “Maintenance schedule” 11-3.

Under no circumstances should a trailer be towed with a new vehicle or a vehicle with any new powertrain component (engine, transmission, differential, wheel bearings, etc.) for the first 1,600 km (1,000 miles) of driving.

■ Towing weight

Before towing a trailer, we recommend that you confirm the towing capacity and ball coupling load with your nearest SUBARU dealer or the vehicle registration documents and make sure your trailer is within the towing capacity.

The total trailer weight (trailer weight with brakes plus its cargo weight) must never exceed maximum towing weight.

Remember that the ball coupling load will increase the load on the vehicle. Both the

maximum permissible weight (MPW) and maximum permissible rear axle weight (rear MPAW) must not be exceeded.

**WARNING**

Never exceed the maximum towing weight. Exceeding the maximum towing weight could cause personal injury and/or vehicle damage.

▼ Non-turbo models and diesel engine models

The stated trailer weights are only valid for elevations up to 1,000 m (3,250 ft) above sea level. At higher altitudes, the engine loses power as the elevation increases, resulting in a reduction of vehicle towing performance. Under these conditions, the “Maximum combined weight” should be reduced by 10% per 1,000 m (3,250 ft) of increased altitude. Please consider weight before driving.

NOTE

The “Maximum combined weight” is the sum of the “Maximum permissible weight” (MPW) and the “Maximum trailer weight”.

■ Trailer hitches

The use of a genuine SUBARU trailer hitch is recommended. Genuine SUBARU hitches are available from your SUBARU dealer.

Regularly check that the hitch mounting bolts and nuts are tight.

**CAUTION**

Do not modify the vehicle exhaust system, brake system, or other system when installing a hitch or other trailer towing equipment.

■ When you do not tow a trailer**CAUTION**

The housing should be kept dirt and corrosion-free at the points of contact. The surfaces only require cleaning with a cloth. Grease or other lubricants should never be used.

- If the hitch ball is a detachable type, the dummy should be inserted while the ball is uninstalled to prevent dirt.
- When the ball is not used, store the ball in the case or put the cap on.

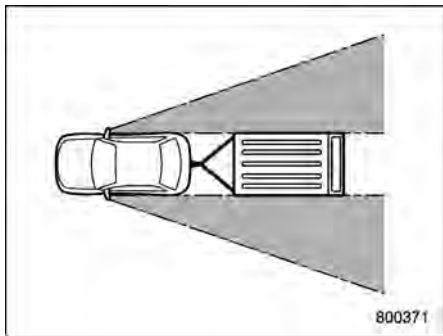
■ Trailer safety chains

In case the trailer hitch connector or hitch ball should break or become disconnected, the trailer could get loose and create a traffic safety hazard.

For safety, always connect the towing vehicle and trailer with trailer safety chains. Two chains should be used in total, one for the right side and one for the left side trailer tongues. Pass the chains crossing each other under the trailer tongue to prevent the trailer from dropping onto the ground in case the trailer tongue should disconnect from the hitch ball. Allow sufficient slack in the chains taking tight-turn situations into account; however, be careful not to let them drag on the ground.

For more information about the safety chain connection, refer to the instructions for your hitch and trailer.

■ Side mirrors



Many countries have regulations requiring special outside mirrors when towing a trailer. After hitching a trailer to your vehicle, check that the standard side mirrors provide a good rearward field of view without significant blind spots. If significant blind spots occur with the vehicle's standard side mirrors, use additional outside mirrors that conform with regulations.

■ Trailer lights

Connection of trailer lights to your vehicle's electrical system requires modifications to the vehicle's lighting circuit to increase its capacity and accommodate wiring changes. To ensure the trailer lights are connected properly, we recommend

that you consult your SUBARU dealer. Check for proper operation of the turn signals and the brake lights each time you hitch up.



CAUTION

Direct splicing or other improper connection of trailer lights may damage your vehicle's electrical system and cause a malfunction of your vehicle lighting system.

■ Tires

Make sure that all the tires on your vehicle are inflated to the pressure under towing conditions as shown on the tire placard located on the door pillar on the driver's side. Trailer tire condition, size, load rating and proper inflation pressure should be in accordance with the trailer manufacturer's specifications.



WARNING

Never tow a trailer when the temporary spare tire is used. The temporary spare tire is not designed to sustain the towing load. Use of the temporary spare tire when towing can result in failure of the spare tire and/or less stability of the vehicle

and may lead to an accident.

■ Trailer towing tips



WARNING

- Never exceed 80 km/h (50 mph) or legal towing speed limit, whichever is lower. Exceeding the speed limit could cause loss of vehicle stability and/or could lead to an accident.
- When towing a trailer, steering, stability, stopping distance and braking performance will be different from normal operation. For safety, you should use extra caution when towing a trailer and never speed. You should also keep the following tips in mind.



CAUTION

Diesel engine models only:
The vehicle speed may decrease when climbing up a slope or during continuous high-load driving while towing a trailer. Therefore, please use extra caution when climbing up

slopes while towing a trailer (for example, never attempt to pass vehicles while driving uphill, etc.). This control system is necessary for maintaining the ability of the vehicle cooling performance and does not indicate a malfunction. The vehicle speed performance while towing a trailer will return to normal when the load of the vehicle is decreased and the cooling performance returns to normal.

If your vehicle is equipped with SI-DRIVE, and when towing a trailer on an uphill slope, do not drive in the Intelligent (I) mode. It is recommend that you drive in the Sport (S) mode, or you may drive in the Sport Sharp (S#) mode (if equipped). However, it is possible to tow a trailer in any mode of the SI-DRIVE on a downhill slope.

▼ Before starting out on a trip

- Be sure to check regulations concerning the maximum speed or driving restrictions for vehicles towing trailers. If you are driving across several countries, check each country's requirement before leaving home, because regulations may vary.
- Check that the vehicle and vehicle-to-hitch mounting are in good condition. If

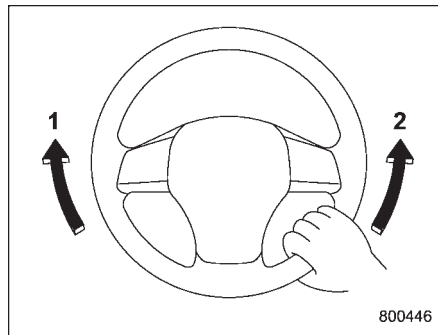
any problems are apparent, do not tow the trailer.

- Check that the vehicle sits horizontally with the trailer attached. If the vehicle is tipped sharply up at the front and tipped down at the rear, check that the drawbar weight and the weight on the rear axle do not exceed the maximum permissible rear axle weight.
- Check that the tire pressures are correct.
- Check that the vehicle and trailer are connected properly. Confirm that
 - the trailer tongue is connected properly to the hitch ball.
 - the trailer lights connector is connected properly and trailer's brake lights illuminate when the vehicle's brake pedal is depressed, and that the trailer's turn signal lights flash when the vehicle's turn signal lever is operated.
 - the safety chains are connected properly.
 - all cargo in the trailer is secured safely in position.
 - the side mirrors provide a good rearward field of view without a significant blind spot.

▼ Driving with a trailer

- You should allow for considerably more stopping distance when towing a trailer. Avoid sudden braking because it may result in skidding or jackknifing and loss of control.
- Avoid abrupt starts and sudden accelerations. For MT models, always start out in first gear and release the clutch pedal at moderate engine revolution.
- Avoid uneven steering, sharp turns and rapid lane changes.
- Slow down before turning. Make a longer than normal turning radius because the trailer wheels will be closer than the vehicle wheels to the inside of the turn. In a tight turn, the trailer could hit your vehicle.
- Sufficient time should be taken to learn the “feel” of the vehicle/trailer combination before starting out on a trip. In an area free of traffic, practice turning, stopping and backing up.
- Crosswinds will adversely affect the handling of your vehicle and trailer, causing sway. Crosswinds can be due to weather conditions or the passing of large trucks or buses. If swaying occurs, firmly grip the steering wheel and slow down immediately but gradually.
- When passing other vehicles, consid-

erable distance is required because of the added weight and length caused by attaching the trailer to your vehicle.



- 1) Left turn
- 2) Right turn

- Backing up with a trailer is difficult and takes practice. When backing up with a trailer, never accelerate or steer rapidly. When turning back, grip the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand and turn it to the left for a left turn, and turn it to the right for a right turn.
- If the ABS warning light illuminates while the vehicle is in motion, stop towing the trailer. We recommend that you have repairs performed immediately by the nearest SUBARU dealer.

▼ Driving on grades

- Before going down a steep hill, slow down and shift into lower gear (if necessary, use 1st gear) in order to utilize the engine braking effect and prevent overheating of your vehicle's brakes. Do not make sudden downshifts.
- When driving uphill in hot weather, the air conditioner may turn off automatically to protect the engine from overheating.
- When driving uphill in hot weather, pay attention to the following indicators because the engine and transmission are relatively prone to overheating.
 - Coolant temperature high warning light
 - AT OIL TEMP warning light (CVT models)
- If any of the following conditions occur, immediately turn off the air conditioner and stop the vehicle in the nearest safe location. Refer to “If you park your vehicle in case of an emergency” 9-2 and “Engine overheating” 9-11.
 - Coolant temperature high warning light illuminates. Refer to “Coolant temperature low indicator light/Coolant temperature high warning light” 3-17.
 - AT OIL TEMP warning light illuminates (CVT models). Refer to “AT OIL

TEMP warning light (CVT models)"
3-19.

- For CVT models, avoid using the accelerator pedal to stay stationary on an uphill slope instead of using the parking brake or foot brake. That may cause the transmission fluid to overheat.
- For CVT models, place the select lever as follows.

Uphill slopes: "D" position

Downhill slopes: A low-speed gear position to use engine braking (models with manual mode)/"L" position (models with "L" position)

▼ Parking on a grade

Always block the wheels under both vehicle and trailer when parking. Apply the parking brake firmly. You should not park on a hill or slope. But if parking on a hill or slope cannot be avoided, you should take the following steps:

1. Apply the brakes and hold the pedal down.
2. Have someone place wheel blocks under both the vehicle and trailer wheels.
3. When the wheel blocks are in place, release the regular brakes slowly until the blocks absorb the load.
4. Apply the regular brakes and then apply the parking brake; slowly release

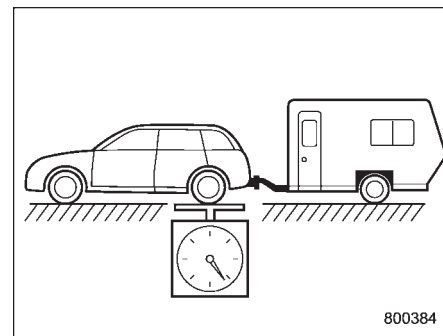
the regular brakes.

5. Shift into 1st or reverse gear (MT models) or "P" (CVT models) and shut off the engine.

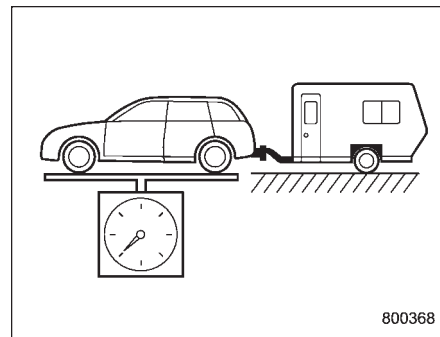
■ Additional information for Europe

The following information represents the European statutory and regulatory requirements of 95/48/EC (92/21/EEC).

▼ Maximum permissible vehicle weight (MPW) and maximum permissible rear axle weight (rear MPAW) for trailer towing



Rear MPAW



MPW

8-24 *Driving tips/Trailer towing*

Model			MPW at towing (kg)	MPAW at towing (kg)
Petrol engine models	Non-turbo models	6MT	2,065	1,175
		CVT	2,065	1,175
	Turbo models	CVT	2,160	1,175
Diesel engine models		6MT	2,130	1,175

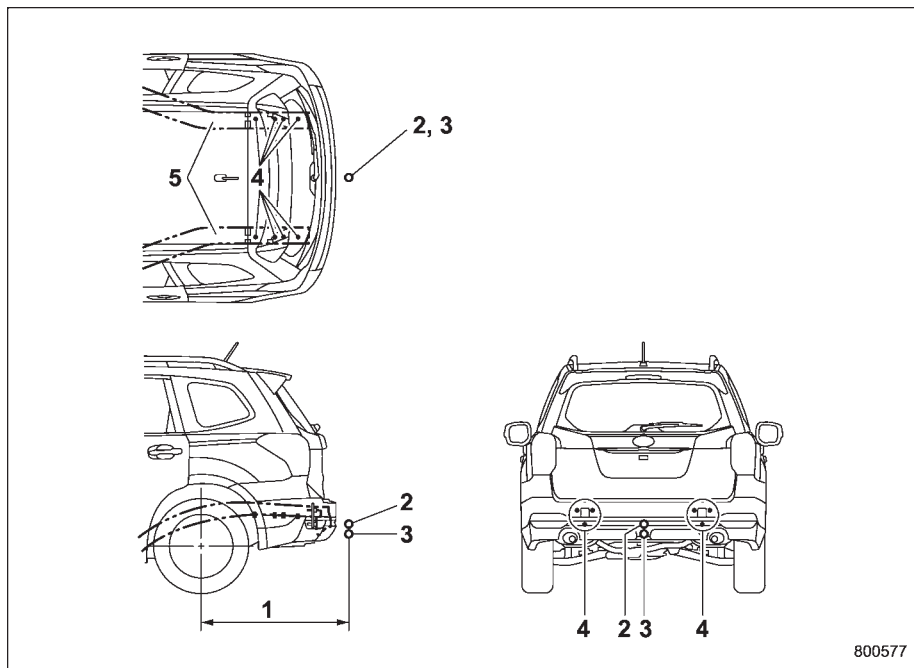
6MT: 6-speed manual transmission
CVT: Continuously variable transmission

▼ Maximum permissible static vertical load on the coupling device

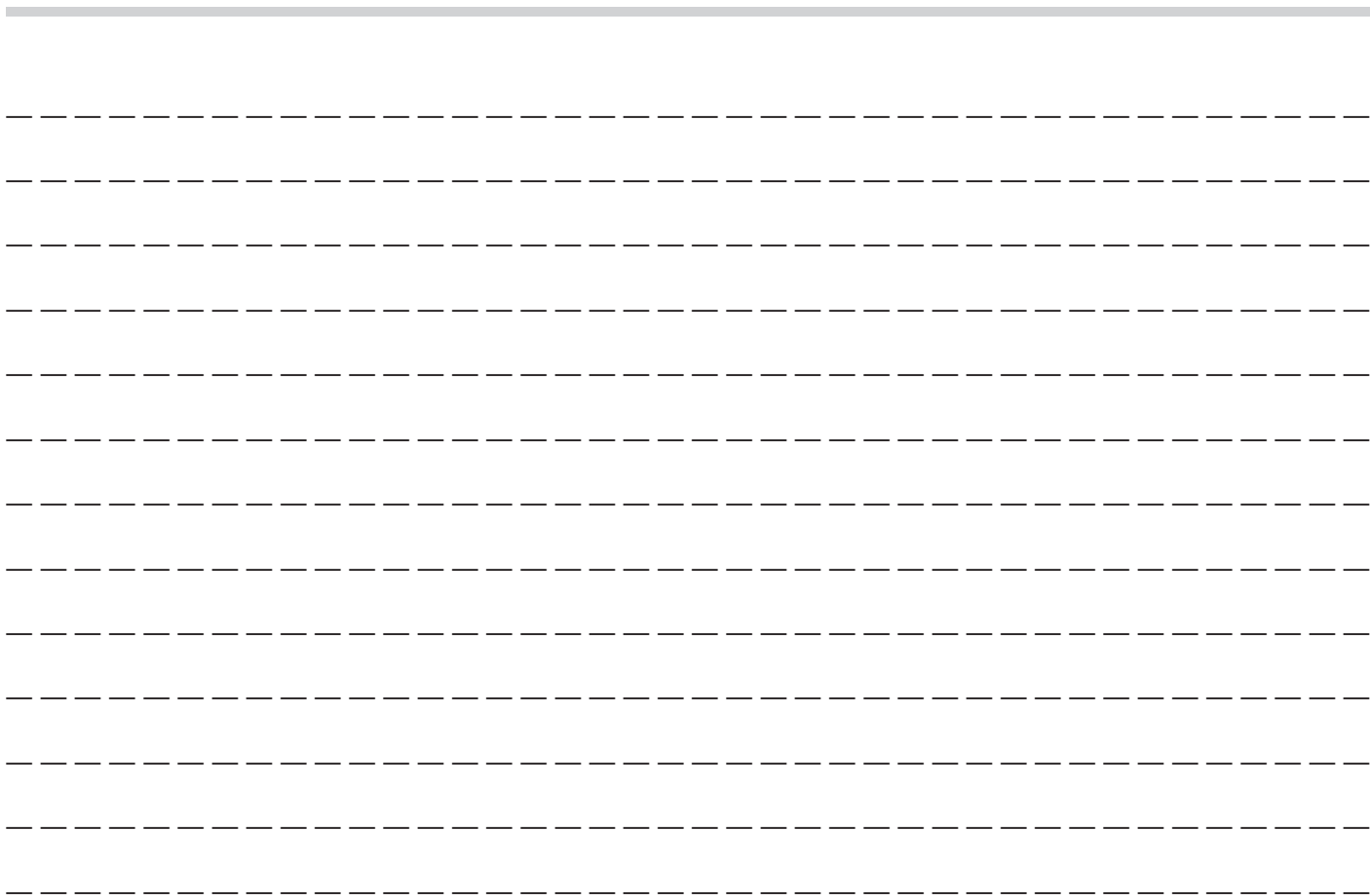
80 kg

▼ Mounting points of the coupling device

The mounting points of the coupling device are shown in the diagram.



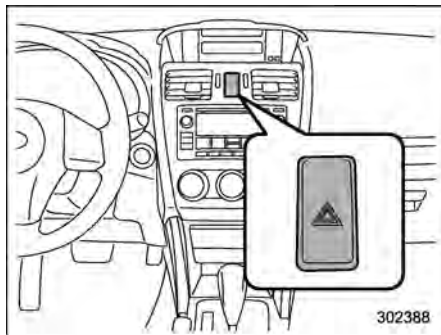
- 1) Maximum permissible overhang of the coupling device: 1,091 mm (43 in)
- 2) Coupling (models without self levelizer)
- 3) Coupling (models with self levelizer)
- 4) Fixing points: Four places under the rear frame and three places on the rear side of the rear frame for each side
- 5) Rear frame



If you park your vehicle in case of an emergency	9-2
Temporary spare tire (if equipped)	9-2
Maintenance tools	9-3
Screwdriver and wheel nut wrench	9-4
Under the rear floor	9-4
Flat tires	9-5
Changing flat tire	9-5
Jump starting	9-8
Battery Precautions!	9-8
Precautions when jump starting!	9-9
How to jump start	9-9
Engine overheating	9-11
If steam is coming from the engine compartment	9-11
If no steam is coming from the engine compartment	9-11

Towing	9-12
Towing and tie-down hooks	9-12
Using a flat-bed truck	9-14
Towing with all wheels on the ground	9-15
Access key – if access key does not operate properly	9-16
Locking and unlocking	9-16
Switching power	9-16
Starting engine	9-17
Rear gate – if the rear gate cannot be opened	9-17
Models with double locking system	9-18
Power rear gate - if power rear gate does not operate properly	9-18
When the power rear gate is deactivated	9-18
When the rear gate cannot be unlocked	9-19
When the rear gate cannot be closed	9-19
Running out of fuel (diesel engine models)	9-20

If you park your vehicle in case of an emergency



The hazard warning flasher should be used in day or night to warn other drivers when you have to park your vehicle under emergency conditions.

Avoid stopping on the road. It is best to safely pull off the road if a problem occurs.

The hazard warning flasher can be activated regardless of the ignition switch position.

Turn on the hazard warning by pushing the hazard warning flasher switch. Turn it off by pushing the switch again.

NOTE

When the hazard warning flasher is on, the turn signals do not work.

Temporary spare tire (if equipped)



WARNING

Never tow a trailer when the temporary spare tire is used. The temporary spare tire is not designed to sustain the towing load. Use of the temporary spare tire when towing can result in failure of the spare tire and/or less stability of the vehicle and may lead to an accident.



CAUTION

Never use any temporary spare tire other than the original. Using other sizes may result in severe mechanical damage to the drive train of your vehicle.

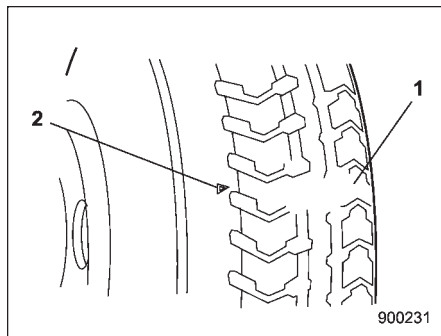
The temporary spare tire is smaller and lighter than a conventional tire and is designed for emergency use only. Remove the temporary spare tire and re-install the conventional tire as soon as possible because the spare tire is designed only for temporary use.

Check the inflation pressure of the tem-

porary spare tire periodically to keep the tire ready for use. For the correct pressure, refer to "Tires" 12-11.

When using the temporary spare tire, note the following.

- Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Do not put a tire chain on the temporary spare tire. Because of the smaller tire size, a tire chain will not fit properly.
- Do not use two or more temporary spare tires at the same time.
- Do not drive over obstacles. This tire has a smaller diameter, so road clearance is reduced.



- 1) Tread wear indicator bar
- 2) Indicator location mark

- When the wear indicator appears on the tread, replace the tire.

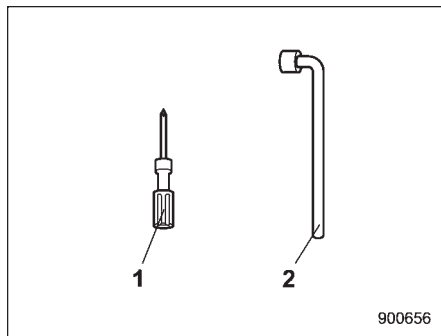
- The temporary spare tire must be used only on a rear wheel. If a front wheel tire gets punctured, replace the wheel with a rear wheel and install the temporary spare tire in place of the removed rear wheel.

Maintenance tools

Your vehicle is equipped with the following maintenance tools:

- Jack
- Jack handle
- Screwdriver
- Towing hook (eye bolt)
- Wheel nut wrench

■ Screwdriver and wheel nut wrench



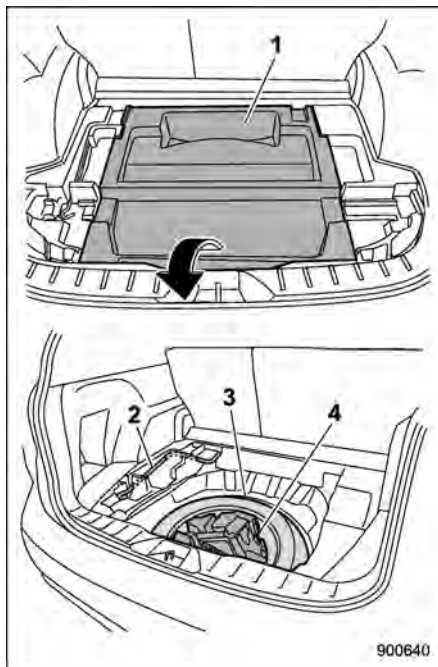
- 1) Screwdriver
- 2) Wheel nut wrench

The screwdriver, wheel nut wrench, etc. are stored in your vehicle.

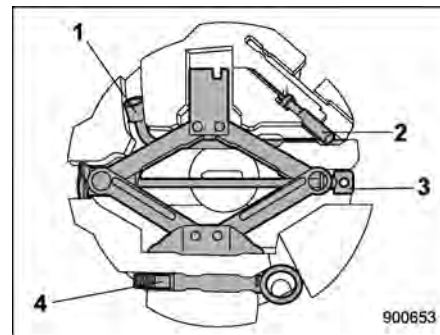
The tools can also be stored in the tool bucket.

■ Under the rear floor

The jack, jack handle and towing hook are stored as shown in the following illustrations.



- 1) Under-floor storage compartment (if equipped) (Refer to "Under-floor storage compartment" 6-17.)
- 2) Jack handle
- 3) Spare tire
- 4) Tool bucket



- 1) Wheel nut wrench
- 2) Screwdriver
- 3) Jack
- 4) Towing hook (eye bolt)

NOTE

- For how to use the jack, refer to "Flat tires" 9-5.
- The following items may be different depending on the model.
 - The shape of the storage compartment
 - The locations of some maintenance tools

Flat tires

If you have a flat tire while driving, never brake suddenly; keep driving straight ahead while gradually reducing speed. Then slowly pull off the road to a safe place.

■ Changing flat tire

▼ Safety precautions



WARNING

- Do not jack up the vehicle on an incline or a loose road surface. The jack can come out of the jacking point or sink into the ground and this can result in a serious accident.
- Use only the jack provided with your vehicle. The jack supplied with the vehicle is designed only for changing a tire. Never get under the vehicle while supporting the vehicle with this jack.

- Always turn off the engine before raising the flat tire off the ground using the jack. Never swing or push the vehicle supported with the jack. The jack can come out of the jacking point due to a jolt and this can result in a serious accident.

▽ Australia and New Zealand models



WARNING

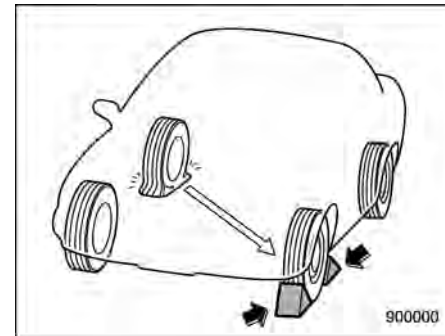
For Australia and New Zealand, the following instructions are supplied by the Australian/New Zealand Standard™ (AS/NZS 2693:2007). Be sure to obey the following instructions for your safety.

- That the jack should be used on level firm ground wherever possible.
- That it is recommended that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person should remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.
- That no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a

jack.

▼ Procedure

1. Park on a hard, level surface, whenever possible, then stop the engine.
2. Set the parking brake securely and shift the shift lever in reverse (MT models) or the select lever in the "P" (Park) position (CVT models).
3. Turn on the hazard warning flasher and have everyone get out of the vehicle.

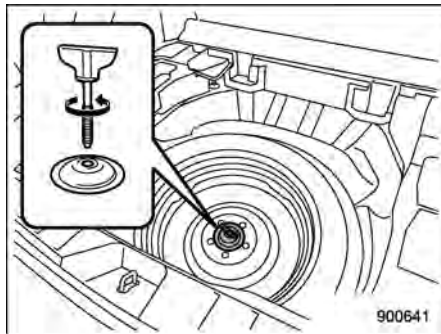


4. Put wheel blocks at the front and rear of the tire diagonally opposite the flat tire.
 5. Take out the jack, jack handle and wheel nut wrench.
- Refer to "Maintenance tools" 9-3.

9-6 In case of emergency/Flat tires

NOTE

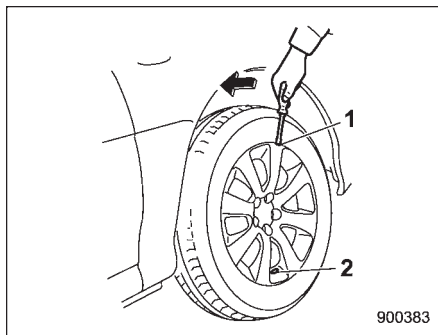
Make sure that the jack is well lubricated before using it.



6. Turn the attaching bolt counterclockwise, then take the spare tire out.

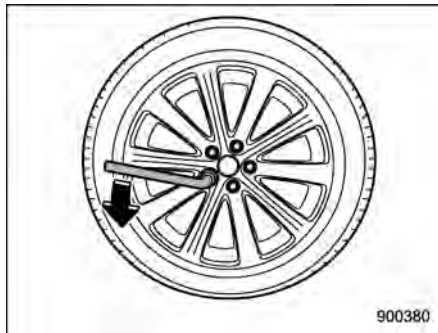
NOTE

If the spare tire provided in your vehicle is a temporary spare tire, read carefully "Temporary spare tire" 9-2 and strictly follow the instructions.

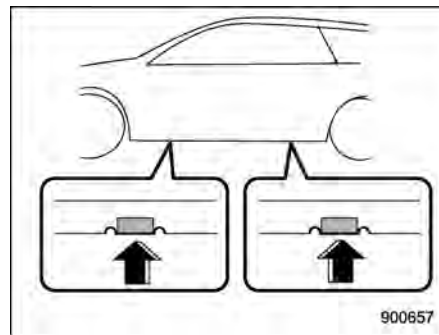


- 1) Notch
- 2) Valve hole

7. If your vehicle has wheel covers, insert a flat-head screwdriver into the notch part on the opposite side of the valve hole to remove the wheel cover.

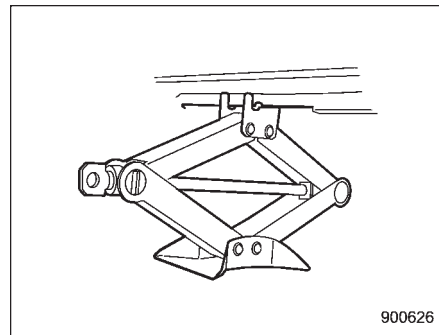


8. Loosen the wheel nuts using the wheel nut wrench but do not remove the nuts.

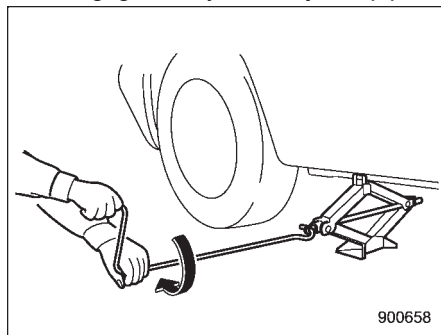


Jack-up points

9. Place the jack under the side sill at the front or rear jack-up point closest to the flat tire.

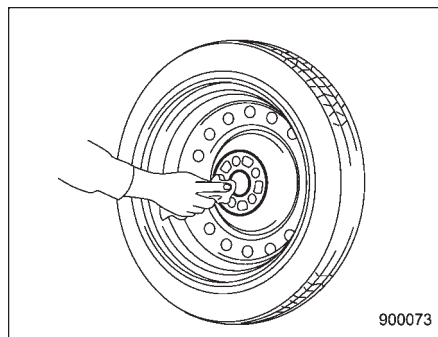
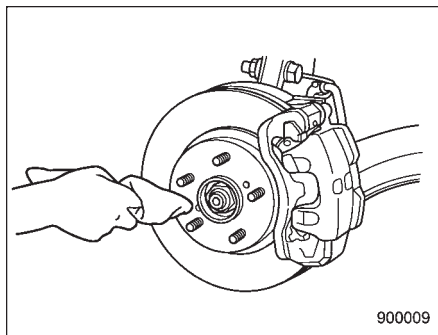


Turn the jackscrew by hand until the jack head engages firmly into the jack-up point.



10. Insert the jack handle into the jackscrew, and turn the handle until the tire clears the ground. Do not raise the vehicle higher than necessary.

11. Remove the wheel nuts and the flat tire.



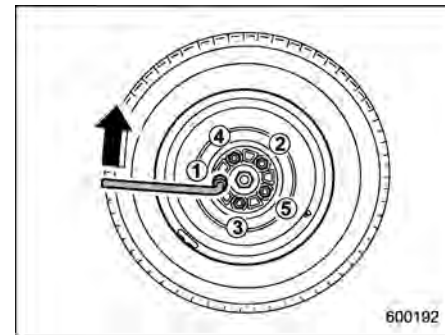
12. Before putting the spare tire on, clean the mounting surface of the wheel and hub with a cloth.

13. Put on the spare tire. Replace the wheel nuts. Tighten them by hand.

WARNING

Do not use oil or grease on the wheel studs or nuts when the spare tire is installed. This could cause the nuts to become loose and lead to an accident.

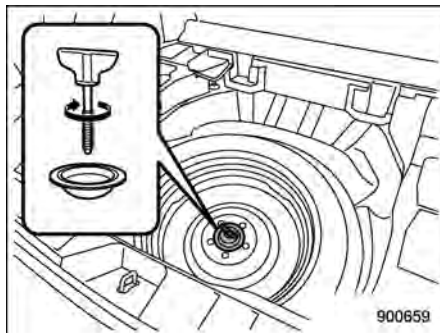
14. Turn the jack handle counterclockwise to lower the vehicle.



15. Use the wheel nut wrench to securely tighten the wheel nuts to the specified torque, following the tightening order in the illustration.

For the wheel nut tightening torque, refer to "Tires" 12-11. Never use your foot on the wheel nut wrench or a pipe extension on the wrench because you may exceed the specified torque. Have the wheel nut

torque checked at the nearest automotive service facility.



16. Store the flat tire in the spare tire compartment. Put the spacer and tighten the attaching bolt firmly.

Also store the jack, jack handle and wheel nut wrench in their storage locations.

WARNING

Never place a flat tire or tire changing tools in the passenger compartment after changing a flat tire. In a sudden stop or collisions, loose equipment could strike occupants and cause injury. Store the tire and all tools in the proper place.

Jump starting

Battery Precautions!

WARNING

 Read these instructions carefully:

To ensure safe and correct handling of your battery, read the following precautions carefully before using the battery or inspecting it.

 Wear eye protection:

Always wear eye protection when working near your vehicle's battery. Battery fluid contains sulfuric acid, so it can cause blindness if splashed into your eyes. Also, batteries emit highly flammable, explosive hydrogen gas. Eye protection is vital for protection in the event that this gas ignites.

 Battery fluid contains sulfuric acid:

Since battery fluid contains sulfuric acid, be sure to wear eye protection

and protective gloves when inspecting your vehicle's battery. Avoid tipping the battery and subjecting it to shocks since this could cause fluid to spill.

Under no circumstances allow battery fluid to make contact with your skin, eyes, or clothing since this can cause blindness and burns. If battery fluid splashes onto your skin, eyes or clothing, wash it away immediately with plenty of water. If battery fluid splashes into your eyes, seek medical attention immediately.

If battery fluid is accidentally swallowed, immediately drink a large amount of milk or water, and seek medical attention immediately.

Battery fluid is corrosive. If it splashes onto your vehicle's paintwork or fabrics, wash it away immediately with plenty of water.

 Keep children away:

Batteries must be handled only by persons who are aware of the potential hazards. Take particular care to keep children away from your vehicle's battery. Improper handling

can cause blindness and burns.



Keep flames away:

Before working on or near your vehicle's battery, extinguish all cigarettes, matches, and lighters. Also, keep the battery away from flammable items and electrical sparks. Since batteries emit highly flammable, explosive hydrogen gas, any flames or sparks in the vicinity could cause an explosion.

When working near your vehicle's battery, take care that metal tools do not short-circuit the battery's (+) and (-) terminals or connect the battery's (+) terminal to the vehicle's body. A short circuit could create electrical sparks and lead to an explosion.

To prevent electrical sparks, all rings, wristwatches, and other metal accessories must be taken off before work is carried out on or near the battery.



Prevent explosions:

While being charged, batteries emit highly flammable, explosive hydro-

gen gas. To prevent an explosion, charge your vehicle's battery in a well ventilated area and keep flames away.

■ Precautions when jump starting!



WARNING

- Never attempt jump starting if the discharged battery is frozen. It could cause the battery to burst or explode.
- Be sure the jumper cables and clamps on them do not have loose or missing insulation.
Do not jump start unless cables in suitable condition are available.
- A running engine can be dangerous. Keep your fingers, hands, clothing, hair and tools away from the cooling fan, belts and any other moving engine parts. Removing rings, watches and ties is advisable.
- Jump starting is dangerous if it done incorrectly. If you are unsure about the proper procedure

for jump starting, consult a competent mechanic.



CAUTION

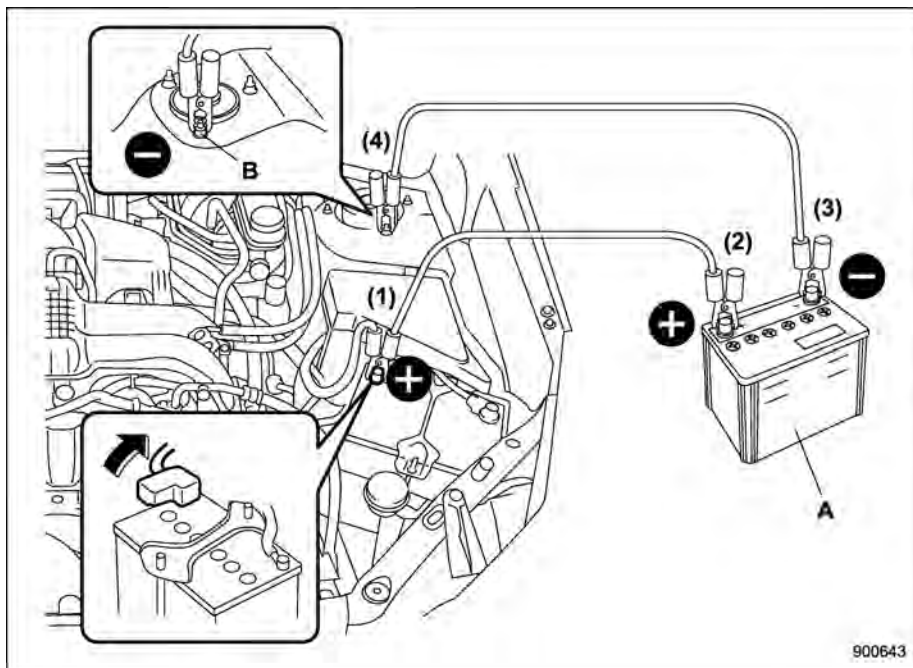
The battery used for boosting must be 12 V. Do not jump start unless you are sure that the booster battery is correct.

When your vehicle does not start due to a run down (discharged) battery, the vehicle may be jump started by connecting your battery to another battery (called the booster battery) with jumper cables.

■ How to jump start

1. Make sure the booster battery is 12 volts and the negative terminal is grounded.
2. If the booster battery is in another vehicle, do not let the two vehicles touch.
3. Turn off all unnecessary lights and accessories.
4. Connect the jumper cables exactly in the sequence illustrated.

9-10 In case of emergency/Jump starting



- A) Booster battery
B) Strut mounting nut

(1) Connect one jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal on the discharged battery.

(2) Connect the other end of the jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster battery.

(3) Connect one end of the other cable to the negative (-) terminal of the booster battery.

(4) Connect the other end of the cable to the strut mounting nut.

Make sure that the cables are not near any moving parts and that the cable clamps are not in contact with any other metal.

5. Start the engine of the vehicle with the booster battery and run it at moderate speed. Then start the engine of the vehicle that has the discharged battery.

6. When finished, carefully disconnect the cables in exactly the reverse order.

900643

Engine overheating



WARNING

Never attempt to remove the radiator cap until the engine has been shut off and has fully cooled down. When the engine is hot, the coolant is under pressure. Removing the cap while the engine is still hot could release a spray of boiling hot coolant, which could burn you very seriously.

If the engine overheats, safely pull off the road and stop the vehicle in a safe location.

■ If steam is coming from the engine compartment

- Turn off the engine and get everyone away from the vehicle until it cools down.
- We recommend that you contact an authorized SUBARU dealer.

■ If no steam is coming from the engine compartment

1. Keep the engine running at idling speed.
2. Open the engine hood to ventilate the

engine compartment. Refer to “Engine hood” 11-10.

Confirm that the cooling fan is turning. If the fan is not turning, immediately turn off the engine and contact your authorized dealer for repair.

3. After the coolant temperature high warning light that has blinked or illuminated in **RED** turns off, turn off the engine. For details about the warning light, refer to “Coolant temperature low indicator light/ Coolant temperature high warning light” 3-17.

4. After the engine has fully cooled down, check the coolant level in the reserve tank. If the coolant level is below the “LOW” mark, add coolant up to the “FULL” mark.

NOTE

For details about how to check the coolant level or how to add coolant, refer to “Engine coolant” 11-20.

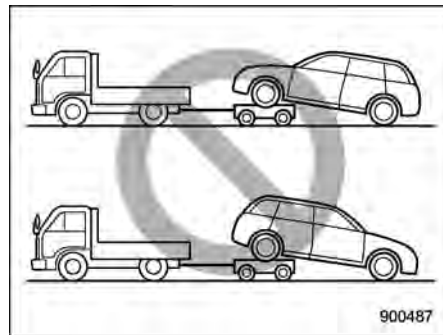
5. If there is no coolant in the reserve tank, add coolant to the reserve tank. Then remove the radiator cap and fill the radiator with coolant.

If you have to remove the radiator cap from a hot radiator, first wrap a thick cloth around the radiator cap, then turn the cap counterclockwise slowly without pressing

down until it stops. Release the pressure from the radiator. After the pressure has been fully released, remove the cap by pressing down and turning it.

Towing

If towing is necessary, it is best done by your SUBARU dealer or a commercial towing service. Observe the following procedures for safety.



WARNING

Never tow AWD models (both CVT and MT) with the front wheels raised off the ground while the rear wheels are on the ground, or with the rear wheels raised off the ground while the front wheels are on the ground. This will cause the vehicle to spin away due to the operation or deterioration of the center differential.

■ Towing and tie-down hooks

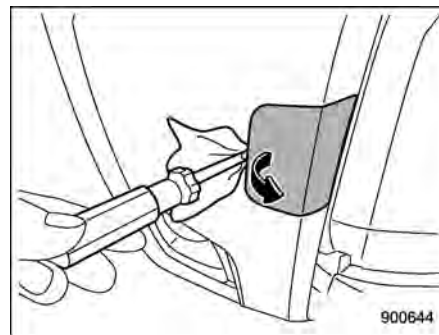
The towing hooks should be used only in an emergency (e.g., to free a stuck vehicle from mud, sand or snow).

CAUTION

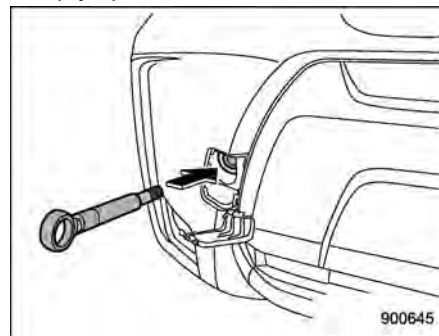
- Use only the specified towing hook and tie-down hook. Never use suspension parts or other parts of the body for towing or tie-down purposes.
- To prevent deformation to the front bumper and the towing hook, do not apply excessive lateral load to the towing hook.

Front towing hook:

1. Take the towing hook, screwdriver and jack handle out of the cargo area.

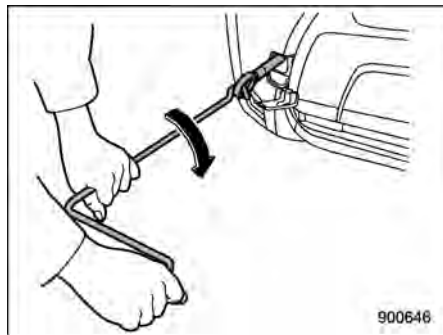


2. Cover the tip of a flat-head screwdriver with vinyl tape or cloth so that it will not scratch the bumper. Insert the flat-head screwdriver into the cutout of the cover and pry open the cover.



3. Screw the towing hook into the thread

hole until its thread can no longer be seen.



4. Tighten the towing hook securely using the jack handle.

After towing, remove the towing hook from the vehicle and return it to its storage position.

Fit the towing hook cover on the bumper.



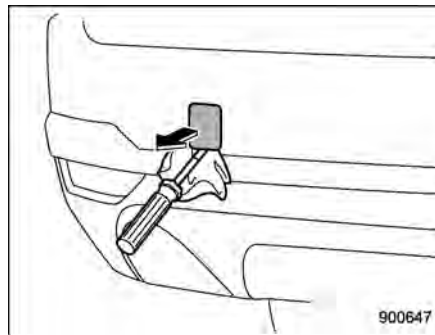
WARNING

- **Do not use the towing hook except when towing your vehicle.**

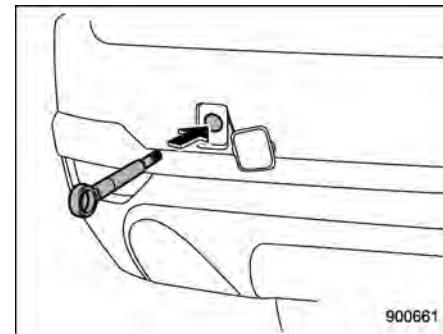
- **Be sure to remove the towing hook after towing. Leaving the towing hook mounted on the vehicle could interfere with proper operation of the SRS airbag system in a frontal collision.**

Rear towing hook:

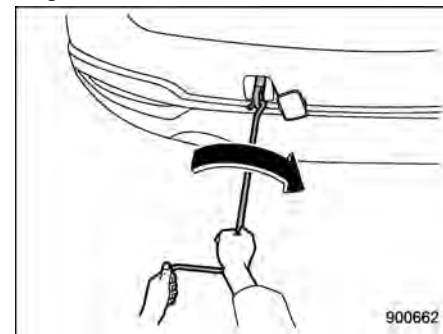
1. Take the towing hook, screwdriver and jack handle out of the cargo area.



2. Pry off the cover on the rear bumper using a screwdriver, and you will find a threaded hole for attaching the towing hook.



3. Screw the towing hook into the threaded hole until its thread can no longer be seen.



4. Tighten the towing hook securely using the jack handle.

9-14 In case of emergency/Towing

After towing, remove the towing hook from the vehicle and return it to its storage position.

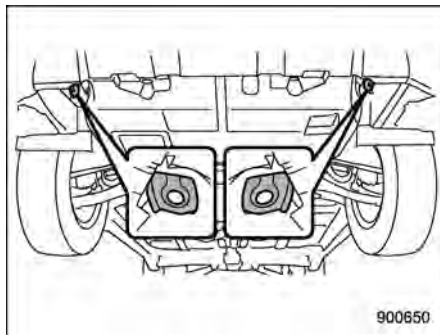
Fit the towing hook cover on the bumper.



WARNING

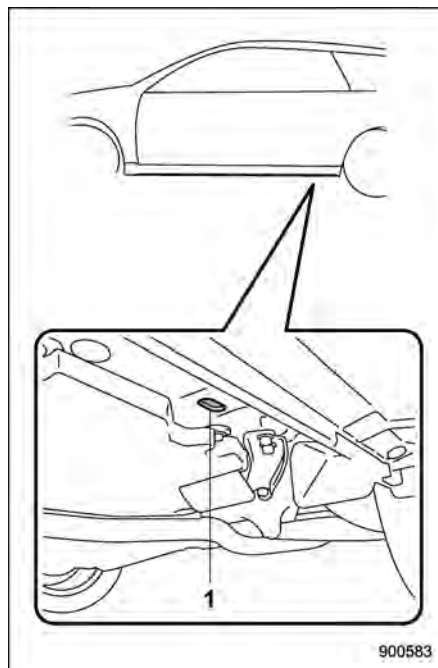
Do not use the towing hook except when towing your vehicle.

Front tie-down hooks:



The front tie-down hooks are located between each of the front tires and the front bumper.

Rear tie-down holes:



1) Rear tie-down hole

The rear tie-down holes are located near each of the jack-up reinforcements.

There is a plug in each rear tie-down hole. To use the rear tie-down holes, remove

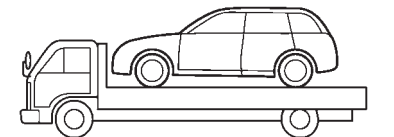
the plugs. After using the rear tie-down holes, return the plugs to their original places.



WARNING

Use the rear tie-down holes only for downward anchoring. If they are used to anchor the vehicle in any other direction, cables may slip out of the holes, possibly causing a dangerous situation.

■ Using a flat-bed truck



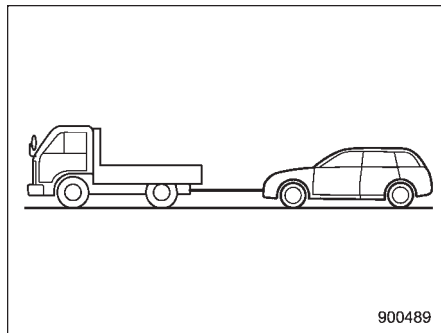
This is the best way to transport your vehicle. Use the following procedures to ensure safe transportation.

1. Shift the select lever into the “P” position for CVT models or the shift lever

into "1st" for MT models.

2. Apply the parking brake firmly.
3. Secure the vehicle onto the carrier properly with safety chains. Each of safety chain should be equally tightened and care must be taken not to pull the chains so tightly that the suspension bottoms out.

■ Towing with all wheels on the ground



1. Release the parking brake and put the transmission in neutral.
2. The ignition switch should be in the "ACC" position while the vehicle is being towed.
3. Take up slack in the towline slowly to prevent damage to the vehicle.



WARNING

- Never turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position while the vehicle is being towed because the steering wheel and the direction of the wheels will be locked.
- Remember that the brake booster and power steering do not function when the engine is not running. Because the engine is turned off, it will take greater effort to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel.



CAUTION

- If transmission failure occurs, transport your vehicle on a flat-bed truck.
- Do not run the engine while being towed in this method. Transmission damage could result if the vehicle is towed with engine running.
- For CVT models, the traveling speed must be limited to less than 30 km/h (20 mph) and the traveling distance to less than 50 km (31 miles). For greater speeds

and distances, transport your vehicle on a flat-bed truck.

Access key – if access key does not operate properly

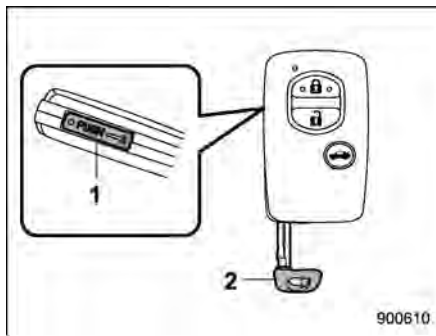


CAUTION

Keep metallic objects, magnetic sources and signal transmitters away from the area between the access key and the push-button ignition switch. They may interfere with the communication between the access key and the push-button ignition switch.

If the locking/unlocking procedures, power switch procedures or engine start procedures cannot be operated because of strong radio signals in the surrounding area or low battery condition of the access key, perform the following procedure. When the battery of the access key is discharged, replace it with a new one. Refer to “Replacing battery of access key” 11-54.

Locking and unlocking



- 1) Release button
- 2) Mechanical key

While pressing the release button of the access key, take out the mechanical key. Lock or unlock the driver's door with the mechanical key.

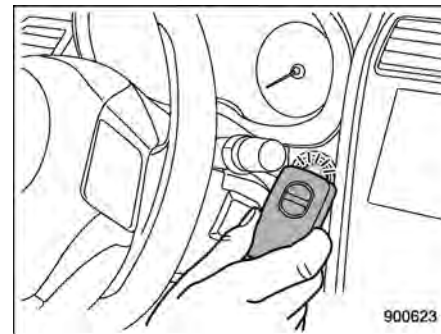
NOTE

After locking or unlocking, be sure to reinsert the mechanical key into the access key.

Switching power

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Shift the shift lever into neutral (MT models) or the select lever into the “P” position (CVT models).

3. Depress the clutch pedal (MT models) or brake pedal (CVT models).



4. Hold the access key with the buttons facing you, and touch the push-button ignition switch with it.

When the communication between the access key and the vehicle is completed, a chime (ding) will sound, and the operation indicator on the push-button ignition switch illuminates in green. At the same time, the status of the push-button ignition switch changes to either of the following.

- When the keyless access with push-button start system is deactivated: “ACC”
- Under other conditions: “ON”

5. When the keyless access with push-button start system is deactivated, press the push-button ignition switch with the

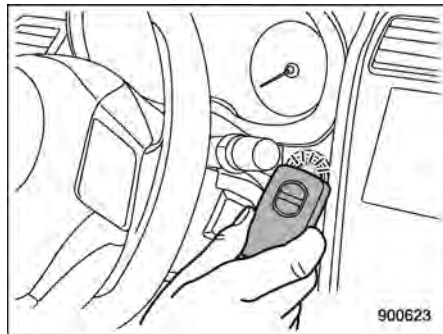
clutch pedal (MT models) or brake pedal (CVT models) released. The status of the push-button ignition switch then changes to "ON".

NOTE

If the power does not switch even though the above procedure was followed precisely, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

■ Starting engine

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Shift the shift lever into neutral (MT models) or the select lever into the "P" position (CVT models).
3. Depress the brake pedal.
4. Depress the clutch pedal (MT models).



5. Hold the access key with the buttons facing you, and touch the push-button ignition switch with it.

When the communication between the access key and the vehicle is completed, a chime (ding) will sound, and the operation indicator on the push-button ignition switch illuminates in green. At the same time, the push-button ignition switch turns to the "ACC" or "ON" position.

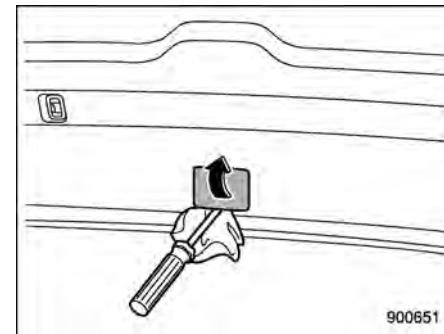
6. Within 5 seconds after the operation indicator illuminates in green, while depressing the brake pedal (all models) and the clutch pedal (MT models), press the push-button ignition switch.

NOTE

If the engine does not start even though the above procedure was followed precisely, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

Rear gate – if the rear gate cannot be opened

In the event that you cannot open the rear gate by operating the rear gate opener, you can open it from inside the cargo area.



1. Remove the access cover at the bottom-center of the rear gate trim.
2. Locate the rear gate open lever behind the rear gate trim panel.

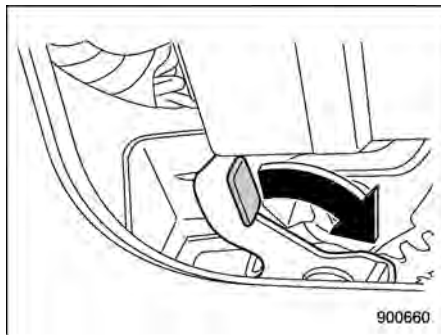


CAUTION

Never operate the rear gate open lever with your fingers because doing so may cause an injury. Always use a flat-head screwdriver or a similar tool.



Models without power rear gate



Models with power rear gate

3. To open the rear gate, turn the lever to the right position using a flat-head screwdriver or a similar tool.

■ Models with double locking system

NOTE

For models with the double locking system, the rear gate open lever is still shielded with an anti-theft cover. So, remove the anti-theft cover using a Phillips screwdriver to access the rear gate open lever.

Power rear gate - if power rear gate does not operate properly

■ When the power rear gate is deactivated

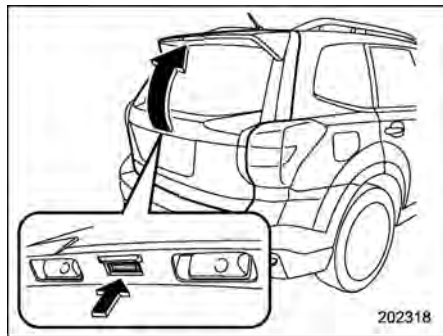
NOTE

- After deactivating automatic opening and closing, the rear gate may open or close automatically, moving little by little. This movement is to prevent the rear gate from quickly opening and closing and it will continue for approximately 15 seconds but it is not a malfunction.
- While the power rear gate is temporarily deactivated, if it is struck by body parts or objects and sustains a strong impact, the temporary deactivation may be canceled. The purpose of this is to absorb the impact of the collision and it is not a malfunction. In this case, the rear gate will not open or close automatically.

If the power rear gate senses a malfunction, an electronic chirp will sound and automatic opening and closing will be deactivated. The rear gate will automatically open or close depending on the degree it is open to at this time.

In order for the rear gate to open and close automatically, carry out the following operation. If the rear gate does not open and close automatically after carrying out this operation, we recommend that you have the vehicle checked at a SUBARU dealer.

▼ **When the rear gate is closed**



1. Press and hold the rear gate opener button. If the rear gate does not open, perform the procedure described in “Rear gate – if the rear gate cannot be opened” 9-17.
2. Gently close the rear gate by hand until it reaches the half-shut position.
3. Press and hold either of the power rear gate buttons.

▼ **When the rear gate is stuck at the fully open position or does not fully close**

1. Gently close the rear gate by hand until it reaches the half-shut position. If the rear gate does not close, perform the procedure described in “Rear gate – if the rear gate cannot be opened” 9-17.
2. Press and hold either of the power rear gate buttons.

■ **When the rear gate cannot be unlocked**

Perform the procedure described in “Rear gate – if the rear gate cannot be opened” 9-17.

■ **When the rear gate cannot be closed**

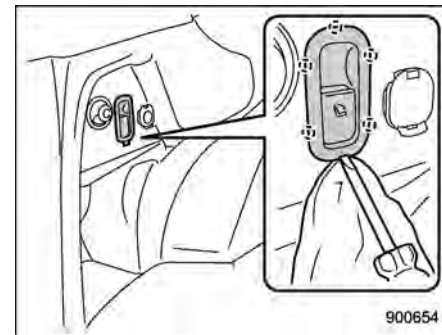
CAUTION

- On areas which are not flat, such as hills, do not conduct any of the following actions. The rear gate may close suddenly and hit someone’s head, face or catch fingers and body parts in it, resulting in injury.
- Even while conducting the following actions on a flat surface,

be careful not to be injured by getting caught in or hit by the rear gate.

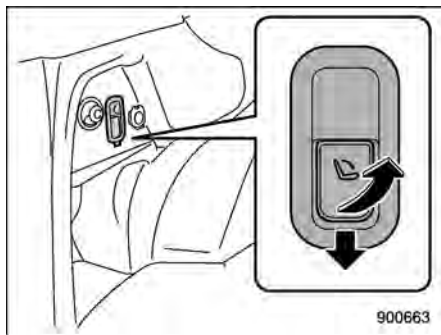
- After closing the rear gate by the following methods, we recommend that you have the vehicle checked at a SUBARU dealer.

If the rear gate cannot be closed due to a flat battery, etc., while the rear gate is stopped midway, it can be closed by the following methods.

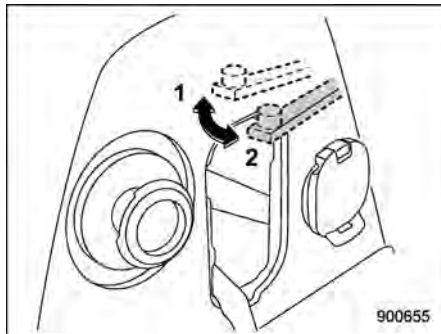


1. Release the fitting on the left side rear seat release latch.

9-20 In case of emergency/Running out of fuel (diesel engine models)



2. After pushing the rear seat release latch down once, remove the latch.



- 1) Unlock
- 2) Lock

3. Using a flat-head screw driver, push the lever inwards for temporary deactiva-

tion of the rear gate.

Running out of fuel (diesel engine models)

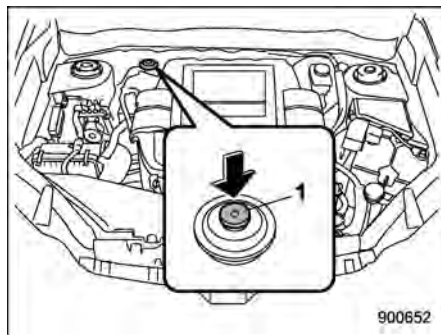
CAUTION

- Do not try to start the engine before refueling and operating the priming pump. Doing so could damage the engine and fuel system.
- Do not operate the starter motor for more than 30 seconds total. Doing so could overheat the starter motor and discharge the vehicle battery.

Perform the following procedure to restart the engine.

1. Refuel your vehicle.

For the fuel requirements and refueling procedure, refer to "Fuel"  7-3.



1) Priming pump

2. Operate the priming pump located in the front passenger's side of the engine compartment by depressing the pumping knob until you feel strong resistance to bleed the trapped air from the fuel system.

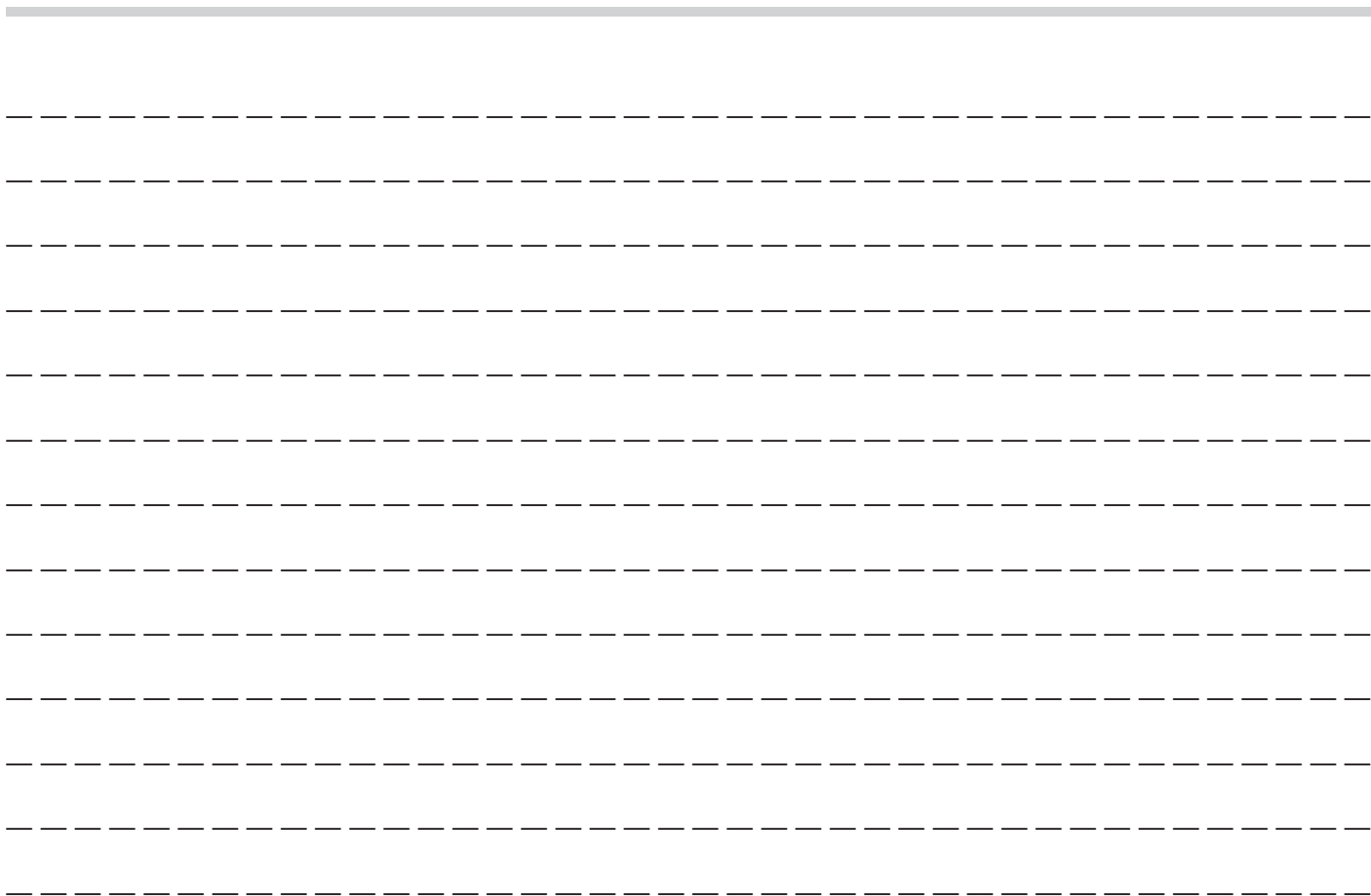
3. Try to start the engine within 15 seconds of starter motor operation.

If the engine does not start, perform step 2 once again and restart the engine within 15 seconds of starter motor operation.

If the engine still does not start the second time, we recommend that you contact your nearest SUBARU dealer for assistance.

4. After starting the engine, depress the accelerator pedal lightly until the engine runs smoothly. Also, confirm that all warning and indicator lights have turned

off. The fuel injection system automatically lowers the idle speed as the engine warms up.



Exterior care	10-2
Washing.....	10-2
Waxing and polishing.....	10-3
Cleaning aluminum wheels.....	10-4
Corrosion protection.....	10-4
Most common causes of corrosion.....	10-4
To help prevent corrosion.....	10-4

Cleaning the interior.....	10-5
Seat fabric.....	10-5
Leather seat materials.....	10-5
Synthetic leather upholstery.....	10-6
Climate control panel, audio panel, instrument panel, console panel, switches, combination meter, and other plastic surfaces	10-6
Monitor (if equipped).....	10-6
Select lever (luster black type) (if equipped)	10-7

Exterior care

■ Washing

The best way to preserve your vehicle's beauty is frequent washing. Wash the vehicle at least once a month to avoid contamination by road grime.

Wash dirt off with a wet sponge and plenty of lukewarm or cold water. Do not wash the vehicle with hot water and in direct sunlight.

Salt, chemicals, insects, tar, soot, tree sap, and bird droppings should be washed off by using a light detergent, as required. If you use a light detergent, make certain that it is a neutral detergent. Do not use strong soap or chemical detergents. All cleaning agents should be promptly flushed from the surface and not allowed to dry there. Rinse the vehicle thoroughly with plenty of lukewarm water. Wipe the remaining water off with a chamois or soft cloth.

▼ Safety precautions



CAUTION

- When washing the vehicle, the brakes may get wet. As a result, the brake stopping distance will

be longer. To dry the brakes, drive the vehicle at a safe speed while lightly depressing the brake pedal to heat up the brakes.

- Do not wash the engine compartment and area adjacent to it. If water enters the engine air intake or electrical parts, it will cause engine trouble or a malfunction of the power steering.
- Do not use organic solvents when washing the surface of the bulb assembly cover. However, if a detergent with organic solvents is used to wash the surface, completely rinse off the detergent with water. Otherwise, the surface may be damaged.
- Models with automatic rain sensing windshield wipers: When washing the vehicle, turn off the wiper. If the wiper switch is in the "AUTO" position, the wipers may operate unexpectedly while washing the vehicle and cause injury.
- Since your vehicle is equipped with a rear wiper, automatic carwash brushes could become tangled around it, damaging the

wiper arm and other components. Ask the automatic carwash operator not to let the brushes touch the wiper arm or to fix the wiper arm on the rear window glass with adhesive tape before operating the machine.

NOTE

When having your vehicle washed in an automatic car wash:

- Make sure beforehand that the car wash is of suitable type.
- When washing a vehicle equipped with automatic rain sensing windshield wipers, make sure that the wiper is turned off. If the wiper switch is in the "AUTO" position, the wipers may operate unexpectedly while washing the vehicle and the wiper blades could be damaged.

▼ Washing the underbody

Chemicals, salts and gravel used for deicing road surfaces are extremely corrosive, accelerating the corrosion of underbody components, such as the exhaust system, fuel and brake lines, brake cables, floor pan and fenders, and suspension.

Thoroughly flush the underbody and in-

side of the fenders with lukewarm or cold water at frequent intervals to reduce the harmful effects of such agents.

Mud and sand adhering to the underbody components may accelerate their corrosion.

After driving off-road or on muddy or sandy roads, wash the mud and sand off the underbody.

Carefully flush the suspension and axle parts, as they are particularly prone to mud and sand buildup. Do not use a sharp-edged tool to remove caked mud.



CAUTION

- **Be careful not to damage brake hoses, sensor harnesses, and other parts when washing suspension components.**
- **Be careful not to flush the engine bottom for a long time. It may cause damage of some electrical parts.**

▼ Using a warm water washer

- Keep a good distance of 30 cm (12 in) or more between the washer nozzle and the vehicle.
- Do not wash the same area continuously.

- If a stain will not come out easily, wash by hand. Some warm water washers are of the high temperature, high pressure type, and they can damage or deform the resin parts such as moldings, or cause water to leak into the vehicle.

■ Waxing and polishing

Always wash and dry the vehicle before waxing and polishing.

Use a good quality polish and wax and apply them according to the manufacturer's instructions. Wax or polish when the painted surface is cool.

Be sure to polish and wax the chrome trim, as well as the painted surfaces. Loss of wax on a painted surface leads to loss of the original luster and also quickens the deterioration of the surface. It is recommended that a coat of wax be applied at least once a month, or whenever the surface no longer repels water.

If the appearance of the paint has diminished to the point where the luster or tone cannot be restored, lightly polish the surface with a fine-grained compound. Never polish just the affected area, but include the surrounding area as well. Always polish in only one direction. A No. 2000 grain compound is recommended. Never use a coarse-grained

compound. Coarser grained compounds have a smaller grain-size number and could damage the paint. After polishing with a compound, coat with wax to restore the original luster. Frequent polishing with a compound or an incorrect polishing technique will result in removing the paint layer and exposing the undercoat. When in doubt, we recommend that you always contact your SUBARU dealer or an auto paint specialist.



CAUTION

Do not use any agents with organic solvents on the surface of the bulb assembly cover. However, if a polish or wax with organic solvents is applied to the cover surface, completely wipe off the polish or wax. Otherwise, the cover surface may be damaged.

NOTE

Be careful not to block the windshield washer nozzles with wax when waxing the vehicle.

■ Cleaning aluminum wheels

- Promptly wipe the aluminum wheels clean of any kind of grime or agent. If dirt is left on too long, it may be difficult to clean off.
- Do not use soap containing grit to clean the wheels. Be sure to use a neutral cleaning agent, and later rinse thoroughly with water. Do not clean the wheels with a stiff brush or expose them to a high-speed washing device.
- Clean the vehicle (including the aluminum wheels) with water as soon as possible when it has been splashed with sea water, exposed to sea breezes, or driven on roads treated with salt or other agents.

Corrosion protection

Your SUBARU has been designed and built to resist corrosion. Special materials and protective finishes have been used on most parts of the vehicle to help maintain fine appearance, strength, and reliable operation.

■ Most common causes of corrosion

The most common causes of corrosion are:

1. The accumulation of moisture retaining dirt and debris in body panel sections, cavities, and other areas.
2. Damage to paint and other protective coatings caused by gravel and stone chips or minor accidents.

Corrosion is accelerated on the vehicle when:

1. It is exposed to road salt or dust control chemicals, or used in coastal areas where there is more salt in the air, or in areas where there is considerable industrial pollution.
2. It is driven in areas of high humidity, especially when temperatures range just above freezing.
3. Dampness in certain parts of the

vehicle remains for a long time, even though other parts of the vehicle may be dry.

4. High temperatures will cause corrosion to parts of the vehicle which cannot dry quickly due to lack of proper ventilation.

■ To help prevent corrosion

Wash the vehicle regularly to prevent corrosion of the body and suspension components. Also, wash the vehicle promptly after driving on any of the following surfaces:

- roads that have been salted to prevent them from freezing in winter
- mud, sand, or gravel
- coastal roads

After the winter has ended, it is recommended that the underbody be given a very thorough washing.

Before the beginning of winter, check the condition of underbody components, such as the exhaust system, fuel and brake lines, brake cables, suspension, steering system, floor pan, and fenders. If any of them are found to be rusted, they should be given an appropriate rust prevention treatment or should be replaced. We recommend that you contact your

SUBARU dealer to perform this kind of maintenance and treatment if you need assistance.

Repair chips and scratches in the paint as soon as you find them.

Check the interior of the vehicle for water and dirt accumulation under the floor mats because that could cause corrosion. Occasionally check under the mats to make sure the area is dry.

Keep your garage dry. Do not park your vehicle in a damp, poorly ventilated garage. In such a garage, corrosion can be caused by dampness. If you wash the vehicle in the garage or put the vehicle into the garage when wet or covered with snow, that can cause dampness.

If your vehicle is operated in cold weather and/or in areas where road salts and other corrosive materials are used, the door hinges and locks and hood latch should be inspected and lubricated periodically.

Cleaning the interior

Use a soft, damp cloth to clean the climate control panel, audio equipment, instrument panel, center console, combination meter panel, and switches. (Do not use organic solvents.)

■ Seat fabric

Remove loose dirt, dust or debris with a vacuum cleaner. If the dirt is caked on the fabric or hard to remove with a vacuum cleaner, use a soft brush then vacuum it.

Wipe the fabric surface with a tightly wrung cloth and dry the seat fabric thoroughly. If the fabric is still dirty, wipe using a solution of mild soap and lukewarm water then dry thoroughly.

If the stain does not come out, try a commercially-available fabric cleaner. Use the cleaner on a hidden place and make sure it does not affect the fabric adversely. Use the cleaner according to its instructions.



CAUTION

When cleaning the seat, do not use benzene, paint thinner, or any similar materials. Doing so could damage the surface and cause the color to deteriorate.

■ Leather seat materials

The leather used by SUBARU is a high quality natural product which will retain its distinctive appearance and feel for many years with proper care.

Allowing dust or road dirt to build up on the surface can cause the material to become brittle and to wear prematurely. Regular cleaning with a soft, moist, natural fiber cloth should be performed monthly, taking care not to soak the leather or allow water to penetrate the stitched seams.

A mild detergent suitable for cleaning woolen fabrics may be used to remove difficult dirt spots, rubbing with a soft, dry cloth afterwards to restore the luster. If your SUBARU is to be parked for a long time in bright sunlight, it is recommended that the seats and head restraints be covered, or the windows shaded, to prevent fading or shrinkage.

Minor surface blemishes or bald patches may be treated with a commercial leather

spray lacquer. You will discover that each leather seat section will develop soft folds or wrinkles, which is characteristic of genuine leather.

■ Synthetic leather upholstery

The synthetic leather material used on the SUBARU may be cleaned using mild soap or detergent and water, after first vacuuming or brushing away loose dirt. Allow the soap to soak in for a few minutes and wipe off with a clean, damp cloth. Commercial foam-type cleaners suitable for synthetic leather materials may be used when necessary.



CAUTION

Strong cleaning agents such as solvents, paint thinners, window cleaner or fuel must never be used on leather or synthetic interior materials. Doing so could damage the surface and cause the color to deteriorate.

■ Climate control panel, audio panel, instrument panel, console panel, switches, combination meter, and other plastic surfaces

Use a soft, damp cloth to clean the climate control panel, audio equipment, instrument panel, center console, combination meter panel, and switches.



CAUTION

- Do not use organic solvents such as paint thinners or fuel, or strong cleaning agents that contain those solvents. Doing so could damage the surface and cause the color to deteriorate.
- Do not use chemical solvents that contain silicone on the vehicle audio system, electrical components of the air-conditioner or any switches. If silicone adheres to these parts, it may cause damage to electrical components.

■ Monitor (if equipped)

To clean the navigation/multi function display monitor, wipe it with a silicone cloth or with a soft cloth. If the monitor is extremely dirty, clean it with a soft cloth moistened with neutral detergent then carefully wipe off any remaining detergent.



CAUTION

- Do not spray neutral detergent directly onto the monitor. Doing so could damage the monitor's components.
- Do not wipe the monitor with a hard cloth. Doing so could scratch the monitor.
- Do not use cleaning fluid that contains thinner, fuel, or any other volatile substance. Such cleaning fluid could erase the lettering on the switches at the bottom of the monitor.

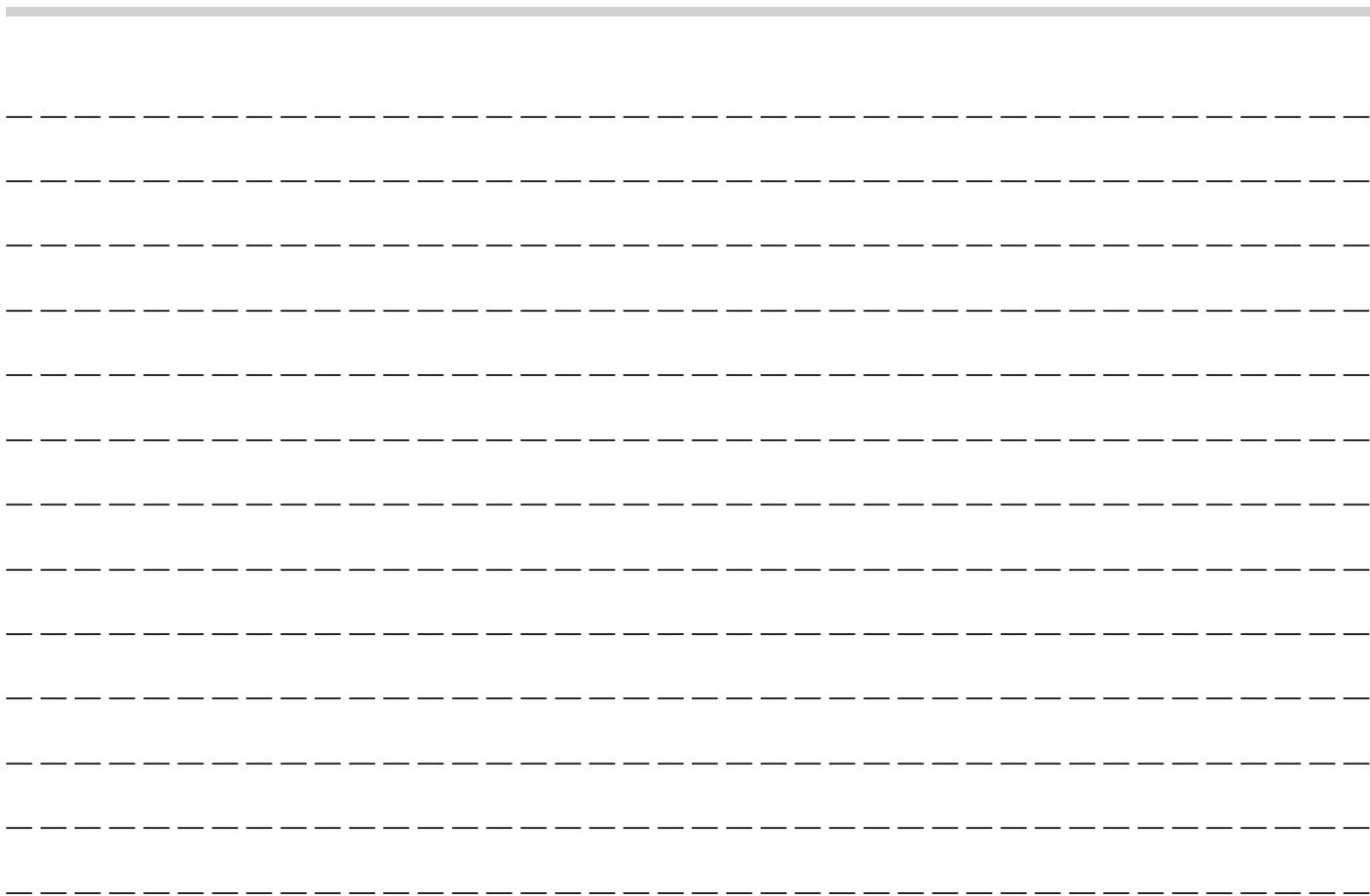
■ Select lever (luster black type) (if equipped)

The select lever has a special treatment surface panel attached. If the panel gets stained, wipe it off with a clean, soft cloth.



CAUTION

Do not scratch it with a hard brush or rub it hard with a rough cloth. Doing so could cause scratch to the surface.



Maintenance schedule	11-3	Front differential gear oil (CVT models).....	11-26
Maintenance precautions.....	11-7	Recommended grade and viscosity	11-26
Before checking or servicing in the engine compartment.....	11-7	Rear differential gear oil.....	11-27
When checking or servicing in the engine compartment (petrol engine models).....	11-8	Recommended grade and viscosity	11-27
When checking or servicing in the engine compartment while the engine is running.....	11-8	Brake fluid	11-27
Maintenance tips	11-9	Checking the fluid level.....	11-27
Removing and reinstalling clips	11-9	Recommended brake fluid	11-28
Engine hood	11-10	Clutch fluid (MT models)	11-28
Engine compartment overview.....	11-12	Checking the fluid level.....	11-28
Non-turbo petrol engine models.....	11-12	Brake booster	11-29
Turbo petrol engine models	11-13	Brake pedal	11-29
Turbo diesel engine models	11-14	Checking the brake pedal free play	11-29
Engine oil.....	11-15	Checking the brake pedal reserve distance.....	11-29
Checking the oil level.....	11-15	Clutch pedal (MT models)	11-30
Changing the oil and oil filter.....	11-17	Checking the clutch function.....	11-30
Recommended grade and viscosity	11-19	Checking the clutch pedal free play.....	11-30
Synthetic oil	11-19	Hill start assist system.....	11-30
Cooling system	11-19	Replacement of brake pad and lining	11-31
Cooling fan, hose and connections	11-20	Breaking-in of new brake pads and linings	11-31
Engine coolant.....	11-20	Parking brake stroke	11-32
Air cleaner element.....	11-22	Tires and wheels.....	11-32
Replacing the air cleaner element	11-22	Types of tires.....	11-32
Spark plugs (petrol engine models)	11-25	Tire inspection.....	11-32
Drive belts	11-25	Tire pressures and wear	11-33
Manual transmission oil	11-26	Wheel balance	11-34
Recommended grade and viscosity	11-26	Wear indicators	11-35
Continuously variable transmission fluid.....	11-26	Tire rotation direction mark.....	11-35
		Tire rotation.....	11-36
		Tire replacement.....	11-36
		Wheel replacement	11-37

Wheel covers (if equipped)	11-37
Aluminum wheels (if equipped)	11-38
Windshield washer fluid	11-38
Adding the windshield washer fluid	11-38
Windshield washer fluid	11-39
Replacement of wiper blades	11-40
Windshield wiper blade assembly	11-40
Windshield wiper blade rubber (type A and type B)	11-41
Rear window wiper blade assembly	11-42
Rear window wiper blade rubber	11-43
Battery	11-44
Battery Precautions!	11-44
Fuses	11-46

Installation of accessories	11-47
Replacing bulbs	11-47
Headlights (models with HID headlights)	11-48
Headlights (models without HID headlights)	11-48
Front turn signal light and position light	11-49
Front fog light and daytime running light (if equipped)	11-50
Side turn signal light (if equipped)	11-51
Rear combination lights	11-52
License plate light	11-53
Other bulbs	11-53
Replacing battery	11-53
Replacing battery of access key	11-54
Replacing battery of transmitter	11-55

Maintenance schedule

To keep your vehicle in proper operating condition and to assure peak performance at all times, the recommended maintenance service should be performed in accordance with the maintenance schedule.

NOTE

- The frequency of scheduled inspection and maintenance services as set forth is minimal. However, it may be necessary that they be performed more frequently depending on road conditions, weather, atmospheric conditions and vehicle usage. These conditions may differ from one country to another. Therefore there may be special requirement in your country. We recommend that you ask your authorized SUBARU dealer for the actual maintenance schedule applied to your vehicle.
- For models with a multi function display, you can set a reminder to be displayed when a scheduled maintenance item is almost due. For details, refer to “Maintenance settings” 3-74.

Continue periodic maintenance beyond 120,000 km (75,000 miles) or 96 months by returning to the third column of the maintenance schedule and adding 120,000 km (75,000 miles) or 96 months to the column headings.

Symbols used:

R: Replace

I: Inspect, and then adjust, correct or replace if necessary.

P: Perform

(I): Recommended service for safe vehicle operation

MAINTENANCE ITEM		MAINTENANCE INTERVAL (Number of months or km (miles), whichever occurs first)									REMARKS
		Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	
		× 1,000 km	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120	
		× 1,000 miles	9	19	28	38	47	56	66	75	
1	Engine oil	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	See NOTE 1)	
2	Engine oil filter	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	See NOTE 1)	

11-4 Maintenance and service/Maintenance schedule

MAINTENANCE ITEM		MAINTENANCE INTERVAL (Number of months or km (miles), whichever occurs first)									REMARKS
		Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	
		× 1,000 km	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120	
		× 1,000 miles	9	19	28	38	47	56	66	75	
3	Drive belt(s)	Petrol engine models		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	Replace every 160,000 km (100,000 miles)
		Diesel engine models		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	
4	Cooling system, hoses and connections			I		I		I		I	
5	Replace engine coolant (SUBARU Super Coolant or equivalent)		1st replacement: 132 months (11 years)/220,000 km (137,500 miles) From the 2nd replacement: 72 months (6 years)/120,000 km (75,000 miles)								
6	Fuel system, lines and connections			I		I		I		I	See NOTE 2)
7	Fuel filter	Petrol engine models	For Europe*							R	Replace every 120,000 km (75,000 miles)
			For General					R			Replace every 90,000 km (56,000 miles)
		Diesel engine models				R				R	
8	Air cleaner element		I	I	R	I	I	R	I	I	Replace every 45,000 km (28,000 miles)
9	Spark plugs	Petrol engine models							R		Replace every 105,000 km (66,000 miles)
10	Transmission/differential (front & rear) lubricants (gear oil)			I		R		I		R	See NOTE 3)

*: Excluding Russia models or Israel models

MAINTENANCE ITEM		MAINTENANCE INTERVAL (Number of months or km (miles), whichever occurs first)								REMARKS	
		Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84		96
		× 1,000 km	15	30	45	60	75	90	105		120
		× 1,000 miles	9	19	28	38	47	56	66		75
11	Continuously variable transmission fluid		I		I		I		I	See NOTE 4)	
12	Brake fluid		R		R		R		R	See NOTE 5)	
13	Disc brake pads and discs/Front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	See NOTE 2)	
14	Brake lining and drums (including parking brake linings and drums)		I		I		I		I	See NOTE 2)	
15	Inspect brake lines and check operation of parking and service brake system		P		P		P		P	See NOTE 2)	
16	Clutch system		I		I		I		I	Adjust pedal free play at 1,600 km (1,000 miles)	
17	Steering and suspension system		I		I		I		I	See NOTE 2)	
18	Front and rear wheel bearing								(I)		
19	Air filter element for the climate control system (except for CIS and Israel)	I	R	I	R	I	R	I	R	See NOTE 6)	
20	Air filter element for the climate control system (for CIS and Israel)	Replace every 12 months or 12,000 km (7,500 miles) whichever occurs first								See NOTE 6)	

NOTE

1) When the vehicle is used under severe driving conditions mentioned in the following examples*, the engine oil and oil filter should be changed more frequently.

2) When the vehicle is used under severe driving conditions mentioned in the following examples*, inspection should be performed at every 15,000 km (9,000 miles) or 12 months whichever occurs first.

3) When the vehicle is frequently operated under severe driving conditions, such as towing a trailer or driving on sand, replacement of differential gear oil (front and rear) and manual transmission gear oil should be performed more frequently.

4) When the vehicle is used under the severe driving conditions mentioned in the following examples*, the continuously variable transmission fluid should be changed every 45,000 km (28,000 miles).

5) When the vehicle is used under following areas, change fluid every 15,000 km (9,000 miles) or 12 months whichever occurs first.

(1) High humidity areas

(2) Mountainous areas

6) When the vehicle is used under severe driving conditions mentioned in the following examples*, the air cleaner element and air filter should be replaced more frequently.

* Examples of severe driving conditions:

(1) Operating in extremely cold weather (items 1, 2 and 17 only)

(2) Towing a trailer (items 1, 2, 10, 11, 13 and 15 only)

(3) Repeated short trips (items 1, 2, 13 and 14 only)

(4) Driving in dusty roads (items 8, 13, 14, 17, 19 and 20 only)

(5) Driving in rough and/or muddy roads (items 13, 14, 17, 19 and 20 only)

(6) Driving in areas using road salt or other corrosive materials (items 6, 13, 14, 15 and 17 only)

(7) Living in coastal areas (items 6, 13, 14, 15 and 17 only)

Maintenance precautions

When maintenance and service are required, it is recommended that all work be done by an authorized SUBARU dealer.

If you perform maintenance and service by yourself, you should familiarize yourself with the information provided in this section on general maintenance and service for your SUBARU.

Incorrect or incomplete service could cause improper or unsafe vehicle operation. Any problems caused by improper maintenance and service performed by you are not eligible for warranty coverage.



WARNING

- Always select a safe area when performing maintenance on your vehicle.
- Always be very careful to avoid injury when working on the vehicle. Remember that some of the materials in the vehicle may be hazardous if improperly used or handled, for example, battery acid.
- Your vehicle should only be serviced by persons fully competent to do so. Serious personal injury

may result to persons not experienced in servicing vehicles.

- Always use the proper tools and make certain that they are well maintained.
- Never get under the vehicle supported only by a jack. Always use safety stands to support the vehicle.
- Never keep the engine running in a poorly ventilated area, such as a garage or other closed areas.
- Do not smoke or allow open flames around the fuel or battery. This will cause a fire.
- Because the fuel system is under pressure, we recommend that you have your SUBARU dealer perform the replacement of the fuel filter.
- Wear adequate eye protection to guard against getting oil or fluids in your eyes. If something does get in your eyes, thoroughly wash them out with clean water.
- Do not tamper with the wiring of the SRS airbag system or seatbelt pretensioner system, or attempt to take its connectors apart, as that may activate the

system or it can render it inoperative when it should be operative. NEVER use a circuit tester for this wiring. If your SRS airbag or seatbelt pretensioner needs service, we recommend that you consult your nearest SUBARU dealer.

■ Before checking or servicing in the engine compartment

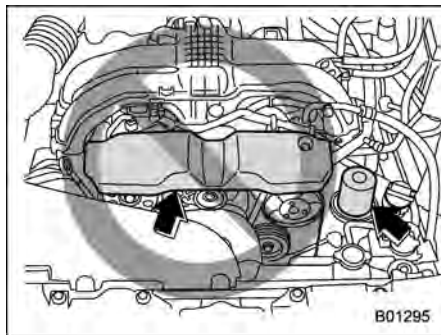


WARNING

- Always stop the engine and set the parking brake firmly to prevent the vehicle from moving.
- Always let the engine cool down. Engine parts become very hot when the engine is running and remain hot for some time after the engine has stopped.
- Do not spill engine oil, engine coolant, brake fluid or any other fluid on hot engine components. This may cause a fire.
- Always remove the key from the ignition switch. When the ignition switch is in the "ON" position, the cooling fan may operate suddenly even when the engine

is stopped.

■ **When checking or servicing in the engine compartment (petrol engine models)**



CAUTION

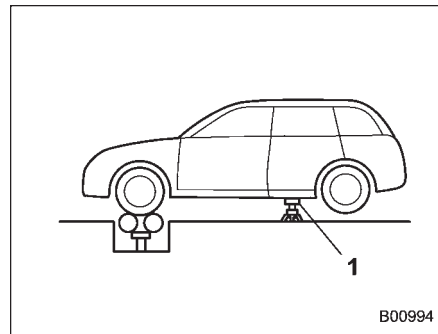
- For models with the drive belt cover, do not contact the cover while checking the components in the engine compartment. Doing so may cause your hand to slip off the drive belt cover and result in an injury.
- Do not touch the oil filter until the engine has cooled down completely. Doing so may result in a

burn or other injury. Note that the oil filter becomes very hot when the engine is running and remains hot for some time after the engine has stopped.

■ **When checking or servicing in the engine compartment while the engine is running**

WARNING

A running engine can be dangerous. Keep your fingers, hands, clothing, hair and tools away from the cooling fan, drive belt and any other moving engine parts. Removing rings, watches and ties is advisable.



1) Safety stand

For any maintenance and inspection performed on AWD models which requires a running engine and wheels turning, jack up all four wheels or use free rollers to prevent the vehicle from moving. Never race the engine or brake suddenly.

Maintenance tips

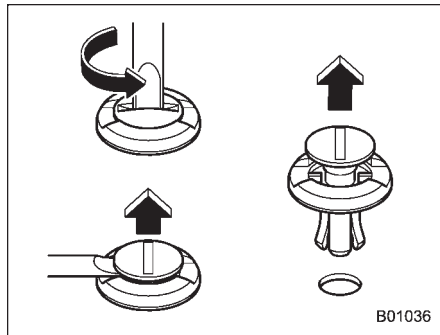
Some clips and fender linings must be removed before replacing the air cleaner elements or specific bulbs.

■ Removing and reinstalling clips

▼ Removing clips

There are several types of clips used for your vehicle.

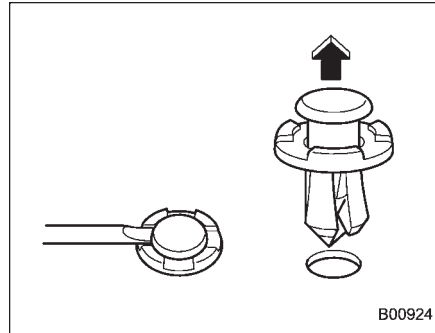
▽ Type A clips



1. Turn the clips counterclockwise using a flat-head screwdriver until the center portion of the clip is raised.
2. Remove the clips with a flat-head screwdriver using leverage.

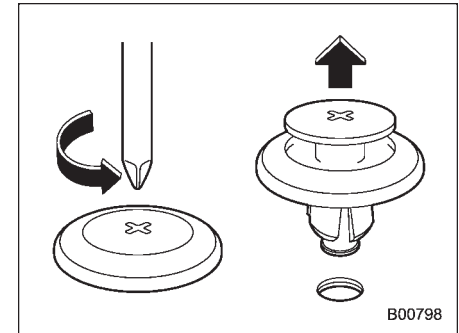
3. Remove the entire clip by pulling it up.

▽ Type B clips



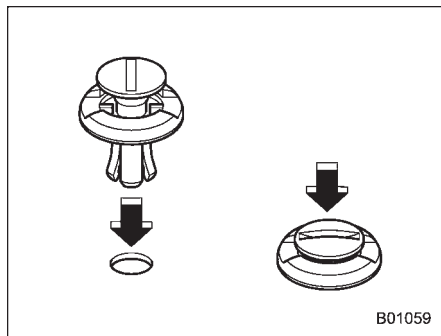
1. Pull out the center portion of the clip using a flat-head screwdriver as shown in the illustration.
2. Pull the protruded center portion to remove the entire body of the clip.

▽ Type C clips

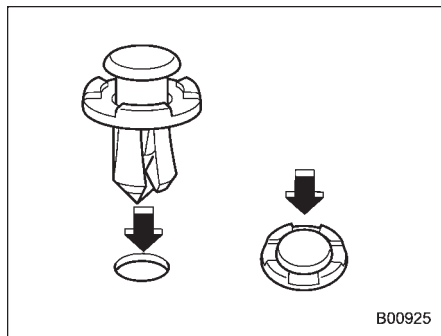


1. Turn the clip counterclockwise using a Phillips screwdriver until the center portion of the clip is raised.
2. Remove the entire clip by pulling it up.

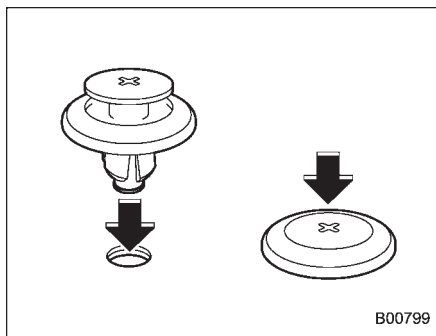
▼ Reinstalling clips



Type A clips



Type B clips



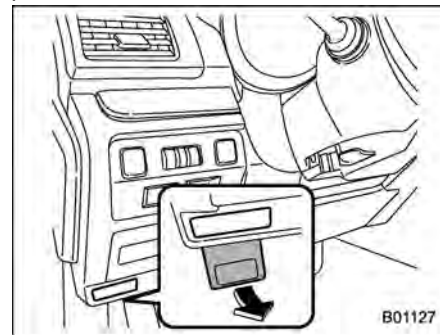
Type C clips

Insert the clip without the center portion first and then push the center portion of the clip into the hole.

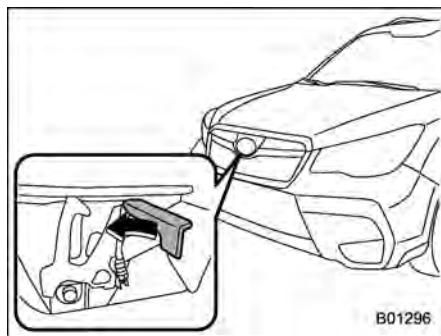
Engine hood

To open the hood:

1. If the wiper blades are lifted off the windshield, return them to their original positions.



2. Pull the hood lock release knob under the instrument panel.



3. Release the secondary hood release by moving the lever between the front grille and the hood toward the left.
4. Lift up the hood.

To close the hood:

1. Lower the hood to a height of approximately 15 cm (5.9 in) above its closed position and then let it drop.
2. After closing the hood, be sure the hood is securely locked.

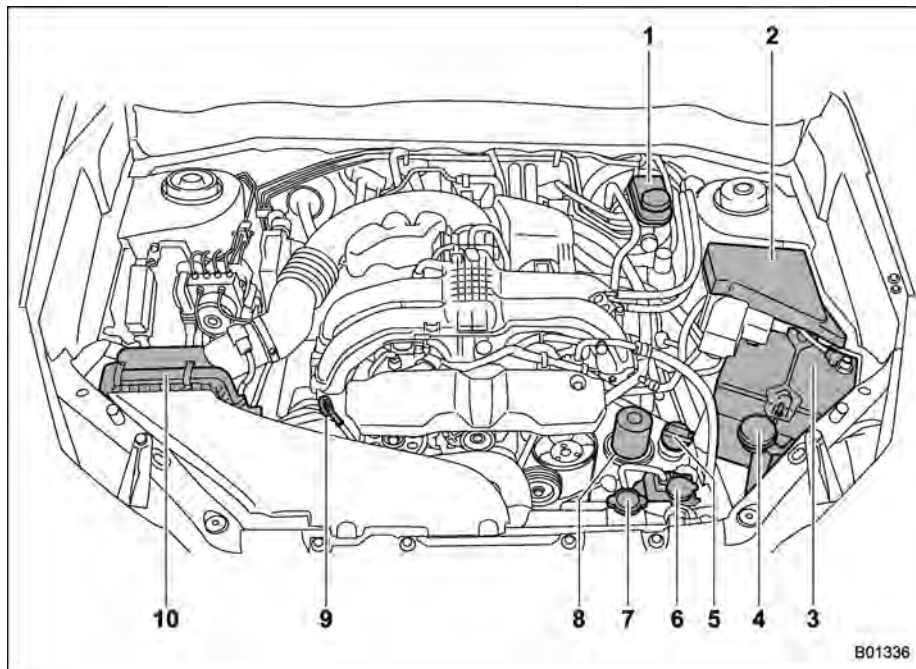
If this does not close the hood, release it from a slightly higher position. Do not push the hood forcibly to close it. It could deform the metal.

**WARNING**

Always check that the hood is properly locked before you start driving. If it is not, it might fly open while the vehicle is moving and block your view, which may cause an accident and serious bodily injury.

Engine compartment overview

■ Non-turbo petrol engine models

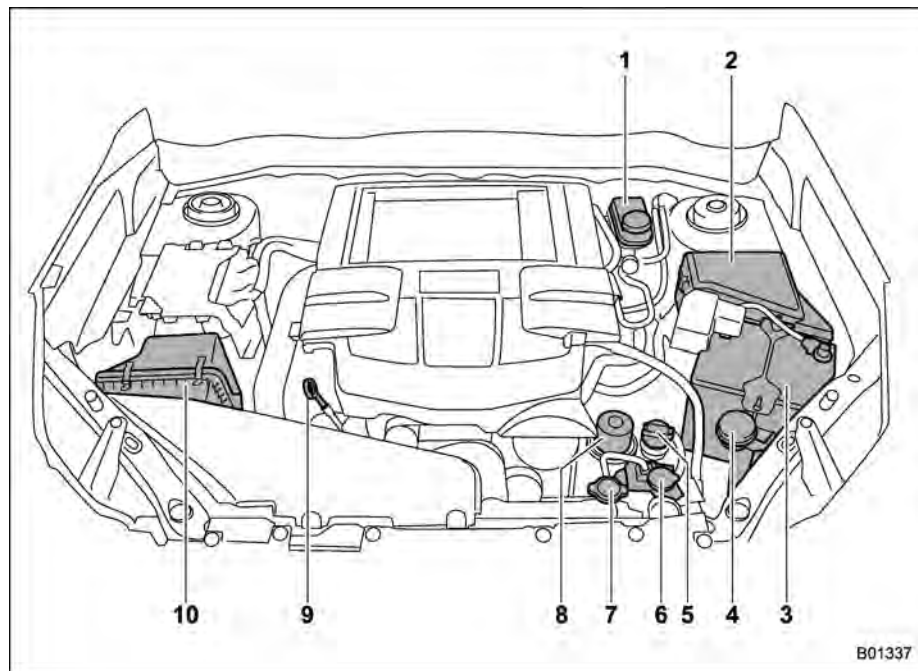


B01336

- 1) Brake fluid reservoir/Clutch fluid reservoir (MT) (page 11-27)
- 2) Fuse box (page 11-46)
- 3) Battery (page 11-44)
- 4) Windshield washer tank (page 11-38)
- 5) Engine oil filler cap (page 11-15)
- 6) Engine coolant reservoir (page 11-20)
- 7) Radiator cap (page 11-20)
- 8) Engine oil filter (page 11-17)
- 9) Engine oil level gauge (page 11-15)
- 10) Air cleaner case (page 11-22)

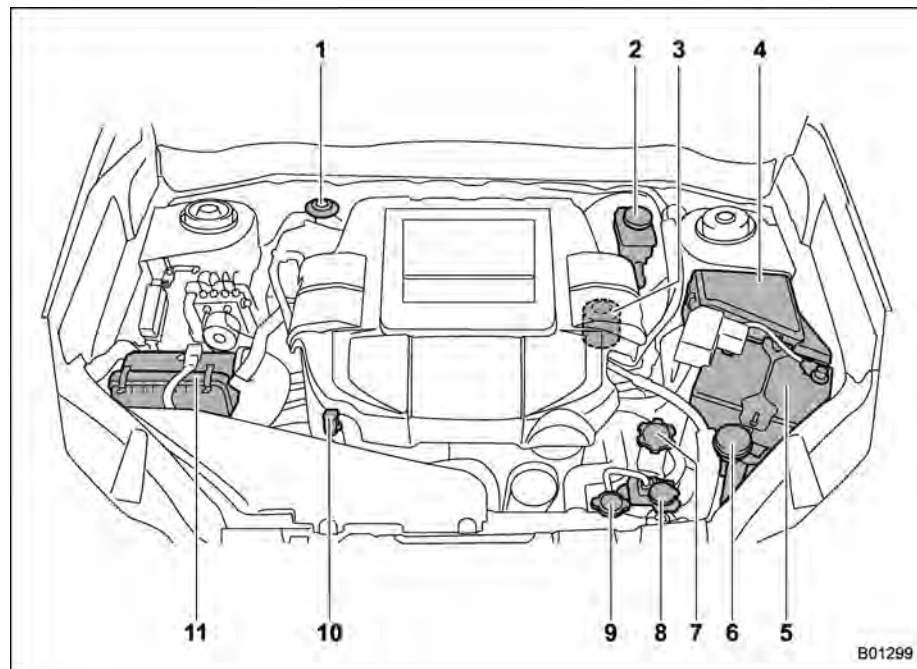
The illustration above is for left-hand drive models. The location of item No. 1 (Brake and clutch fluid reservoir) for right-hand drive models is the opposite of that shown here.

■ Turbo petrol engine models



- 1) Brake fluid reservoir (page 11-27)
- 2) Fuse box (page 11-46)
- 3) Battery (page 11-44)
- 4) Windshield washer tank (page 11-38)
- 5) Engine oil filler cap (page 11-15)
- 6) Engine coolant reservoir (page 11-20)
- 7) Radiator cap (page 11-20)
- 8) Engine oil filter (page 11-17)
- 9) Engine oil level gauge (page 11-15)
- 10) Air cleaner case (page 11-22)

The illustration above is for left-hand drive models. The location of item No. 1 (Brake fluid reservoir) for right-hand drive models is the opposite of that shown here.

■ Turbo diesel engine models

- 1) Priming pump (page 9-20)
- 2) Brake fluid reservoir/Clutch fluid reservoir (page 11-27)
- 3) Engine oil filter (page 11-17)
- 4) Fuse box (page 11-46)
- 5) Battery (page 11-44)
- 6) Windshield washer tank (page 11-38)
- 7) Engine oil filler cap (page 11-15)
- 8) Engine coolant reservoir (page 11-20)
- 9) Radiator cap (page 11-19)
- 10) Engine oil level gauge (page 11-15)
- 11) Air cleaner case (page 11-22)

The illustration above is for a left-hand drive model. The locations of item No. 1 (priming pump) and No. 2 (brake and clutch fluid reservoir) for a right-hand drive model are the opposite of those shown here.

Engine oil

CAUTION

- If the level gauge is not pulled out easily, twist the level gauge right and left, then pull it out. Otherwise, you may be injured accidentally straining yourself.
- Use only engine oil with the recommended grade and viscosity.
- Be careful not to spill engine oil when adding it. If oil touches the exhaust pipe, it may cause a bad smell, smoke, and/or a fire. If engine oil gets on the exhaust pipe, be sure to wipe it off.

NOTE

- The engine oil consumption rate is not stabilized, and therefore cannot be determined until the vehicle has traveled at least several thousand kilometers. When the vehicle is used under severe driving conditions, such as those mentioned earlier in this chapter, engine oil is consumed or deteriorated more quickly than under normal driving conditions. Please check and replace it

more frequently than usual.

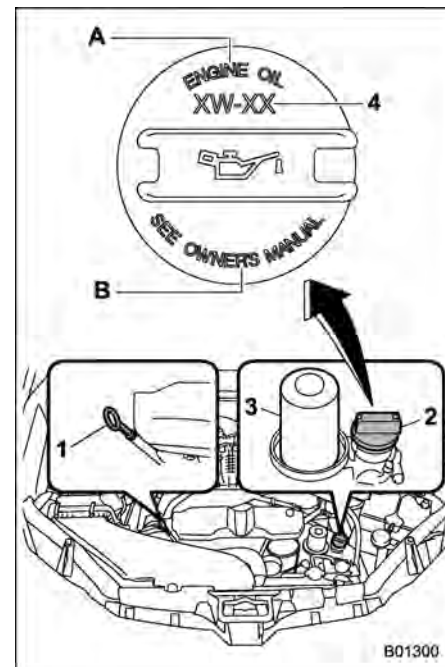
- For petrol engine models, if the oil consumption rate is unusually high after the stabilized period, for example more than 1 liter per 2,000 kilometers, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

Checking the oil level

Check the engine oil level at each fuel stop.

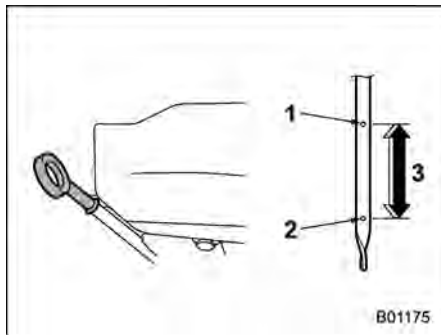
▼ Petrol engine models

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface and stop the engine. If you check the oil level just after stopping the engine, wait a few minutes for the oil to drain back into the oil pan before checking the level.



- 1) Oil level gauge
- 2) Oil filler cap
- 3) Oil filter
- 4) Oil grade
- A) ENGINE OIL
- B) SEE OWNER'S MANUAL

2. Pull out the level gauge, wipe it clean, and insert it again.
3. Be sure the level gauge is correctly inserted until it stops.



- 1) Full level
- 2) Low level
- 3) Approximately 1.0 liter (1.1 US qt, 0.9 Imp qt) from low level to full level

4. Pull out the oil level gauge again.
5. Check the oil levels on both sides of the level gauge. The engine oil level must be judged by the lowest of the two levels. If the oil level is below the low level mark, add oil so that the full level is reached.



CAUTION

Be careful not to touch the engine

oil filter when removing the oil filler cap. Doing so may result in a burn, a pinched finger, or may cause some other injury.

To add engine oil, remove the engine oil filler cap and slowly pour engine oil into the engine, you must use the level gauge to confirm that the oil level is correct.

NOTE

To prevent overfilling the engine oil, do not add any additional oil above the full level when the engine is cold.

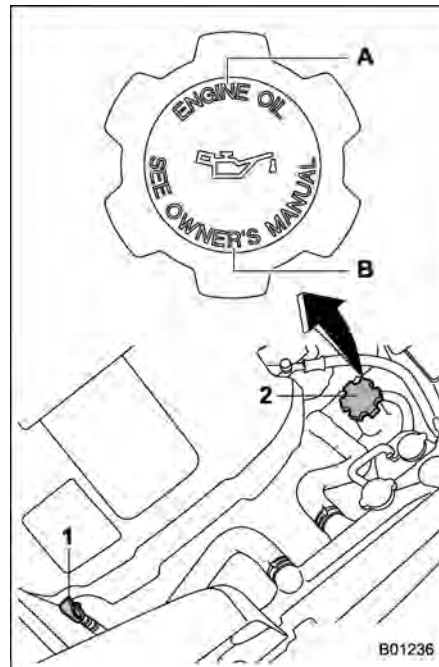
▼ Diesel engine models

NOTE

For diesel engine models, make sure to check the engine oil level 5 minutes after the engine stops. Waiting any longer will prevent accurate oil level measurement.

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.
2. Keep the engine idling until the idle speed stabilizes. When starting the engine from the completely cold state, continue warming up the engine until it reaches the normal operating temperature range, as notified by the turning off of the coolant temperature low indicator light that has

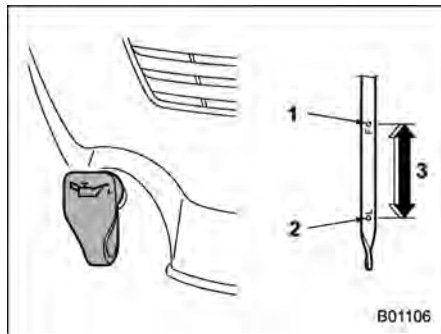
illuminated in blue on the combination meter. After that, stop the engine and wait for 5 minutes.



- 1) Engine oil level gauge
- 2) Engine oil filler cap
- A) ENGINE OIL
- B) SEE OWNER'S MANUAL

3. Pull out the level gauge, wipe it clean, and insert it again.

4. Be sure the level gauge is correctly inserted until it stops with the graphic symbol "油" on its top appearing as shown in the illustration.



- 1) Full level
- 2) Low level
- 3) Approximately 1.0 liter (1.1 US qt, 0.9 Imp qt) from low level to full level

5. Pull out the level gauge again and check the oil level on it. If it is below the low level, it is necessary to add engine oil to bring the level up to the full level.

6. To add engine oil, remove the engine oil filler cap and slowly pour engine oil through the filler neck.

NOTE

To prevent overfilling the engine oil, do not add any additional oil above the full level.

7. Restart the engine and keep the engine idling until the idle speed stabilizes.

8. Stop the engine. After 5 minutes, check the oil level again.

■ Changing the oil and oil filter

Change the oil and oil filter according to the maintenance schedule.

The engine oil and oil filter must be changed more frequently than listed in the maintenance schedule, when short trips are frequently made, when towing a trailer, or when driving in extremely cold weather.

NOTE

● **Changing the engine oil and oil filter should be performed by a well-trained expert. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for changing the engine oil and oil filter. Fully trained mechanics are on standby at a SUBARU dealer to utilize the special tools, spare parts and recommended oil for this work, and also, used oils are properly disposed of.**

● For diesel engine models, the engine oil replacement data that is stored in the on-board computer should be reset using a special tool every time engine oil and the oil filter are replaced. If the data is not reset, the diesel particulate filter warning light does not operate properly. To reset the data of the on-board computer without a special tool, see the following item.

▼ **Resetting the oil replacement data (diesel engine models)**

NOTE

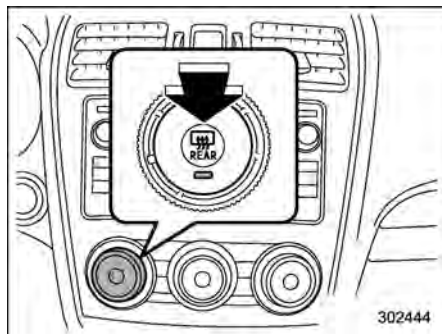
If the resetting procedure was unsuccessful, repeat steps 1) through 5) after performing the following items.

- Wait for 30 seconds with engine idling.
- Turn the engine off, and restart the engine after waiting 15 seconds.

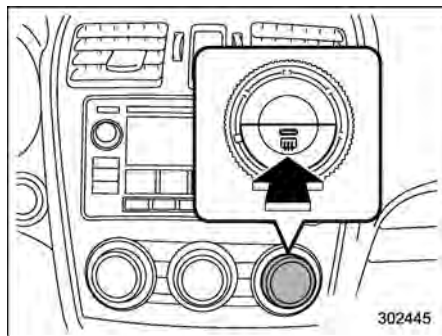
After engine oil and the oil filter have been replaced, the oil replacement data should be reset. To reset the data without a special tool, perform the following procedures.

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Start the engine, and keep it in idling.
3. Release the clutch pedal.
4. With depressing the brake pedal, perform the following:

- (1) Press the rear window defogger switch to ON.



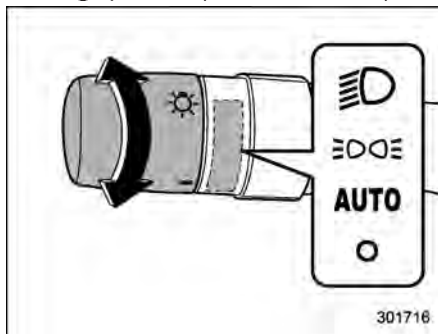
Type A climate control system



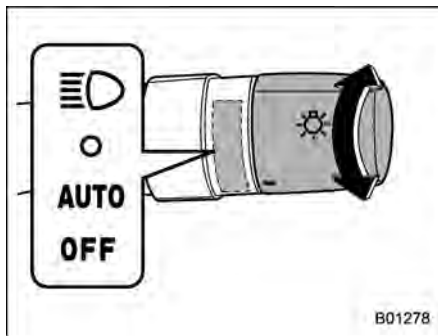
Type B or type C climate control system

- (2) Turn the headlight switch to the following position.

- “ $\Sigma D Q \Sigma$ ” position (except Australia models)
- “O” position (Australia models)



Except Australia models



Australia models

- (3) Press the rear window defogger

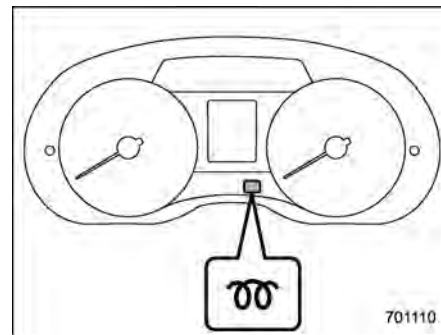
switch to OFF.

- (4) Turn the headlight switch to the following position.

- “O” position (except Australia models)
 - “OFF” position (Australia models)
- (5) Repeat steps 1) through 4) once more, and go to next step.
- (6) Release the brake pedal.

NOTE

Each step between (1) through (6) must be operated within 4 seconds.



5. Preheating indicator light will blink approximately 5 seconds when the data was reset successfully.

■ Recommended grade and viscosity



CAUTION

Use only engine oil with the recommended grade and viscosity.

Refer to "Engine oil" 12-4.

NOTE

Engine oil viscosity (thickness) affects fuel economy. Oils of lower viscosity provide better fuel economy. However, in hot weather, oil of higher viscosity is required to properly lubricate the engine.

■ Synthetic oil

You can use synthetic engine oil that meets the same requirements given for conventional engine oil. When using synthetic oil, you must use oil of the same classification, viscosity and grade shown in this Owner's Manual. Refer to "Engine oil" 12-4. Also, you must follow the oil and filter changing intervals shown in the maintenance schedule. Refer to "Maintenance schedule" 11-3.

NOTE

Synthetic oil of the grade and viscosity noted in chapter 12 is the recommended engine oil for optimum engine performance. Conventional oil may be used with no detriment to engine durability or driveability.

Cooling system



WARNING

Never attempt to remove the radiator cap until the engine has been shut off and has cooled down completely. Since the coolant is under pressure, you may suffer serious burns from a spray of boiling hot coolant when the cap is removed.



CAUTION

- The cooling system has been filled at the factory with a high quality, corrosion-inhibiting, year-around coolant which provides protection against freezing down to -36°C (-33°F). Make sure to always use genuine SUBARU Super Coolant or an equivalent (non-amine type coolant).
- If the coolant requires water dilution, be sure to use soft water (or clear and drinkable water) and to follow the required dilution ratio.
- Mixing with a different coolant

and/or hard water may result in problems including, but not limited to, shortened engine component life, cooling system clogging, coolant leaks and engine damage from overheating. Therefore, never mix different kinds of coolant and/or hard water even if freezing temperatures are not expected.

- Do not splash the engine coolant over painted parts. The alcohol contained in the engine coolant may damage the paint surface.

■ Cooling fan, hose and connections

Your vehicle employs an electric cooling fan which is thermostatically controlled to operate when the engine coolant reaches a specific temperature.

If the radiator cooling fan does not operate even when the coolant temperature high warning light blinks or illuminates in RED, the cooling fan circuit may be defective. Refer to "Coolant temperature low indicator light/Coolant temperature high warning light" 3-17.

Check the fuse and replace it if necessary. Refer to "Fuses" 11-46 and "Fuse panel

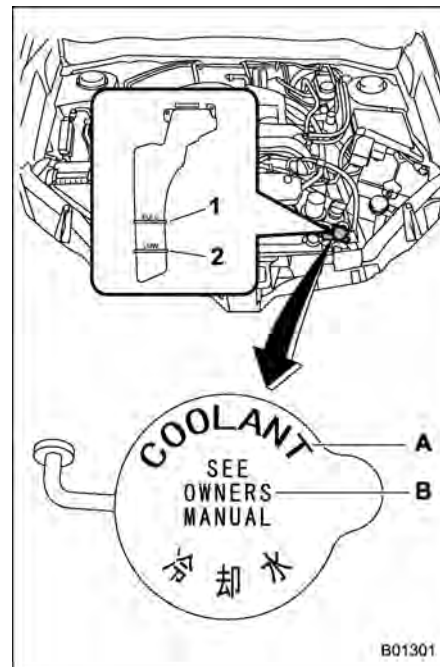
located in the engine compartment" 12-14.

If the fuse is not blown, we recommend that you have the cooling system checked by your SUBARU dealer.

If frequent addition of coolant is necessary, there may be a leak in the engine cooling system. It is recommended that the cooling system and connections be checked for leaks, damage, or looseness.

■ Engine coolant

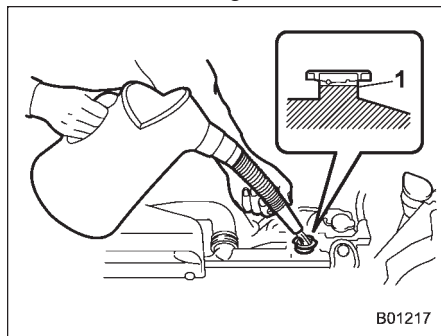
▼ Checking the coolant level



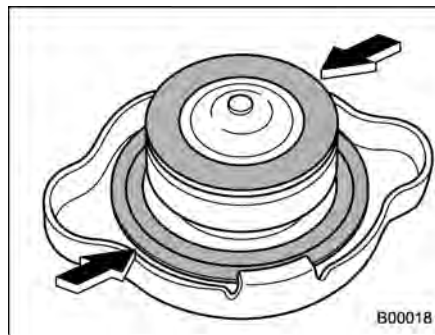
- "FULL" level mark
- "LOW" level mark
- COOLANT
- SEE OWNER'S MANUAL

Check the coolant level at each fuel stop.

1. Check the coolant level on the outside of the reservoir while the engine is cool.
2. If the level is close to or lower than the "LOW" level mark, add coolant up to the "FULL" level mark. If the reserve tank is empty, remove the radiator cap and refill coolant up to just below the filler neck as shown in the following illustration.



- 1) Fill up to this level



3. After refilling the reserve tank and the radiator, reinstall the cap and check that the rubber gaskets inside the radiator cap are in the proper position.



CAUTION

- Be careful not to spill engine coolant when adding it. If coolant touches the exhaust pipe, it may cause a bad smell, smoke, and/or a fire. If engine coolant gets on the exhaust pipe, be sure to wipe it off.
- Do not splash the engine coolant over painted parts. The alcohol contained in the engine coolant may damage the paint surface.

▼ Changing the coolant

It may be difficult to change the coolant. We recommend that you have the coolant changed by your SUBARU dealer if necessary.

The coolant should be changed according to the maintenance schedule in the "Maintenance schedule" 11-3.

Air cleaner element

The air cleaner element functions as a filter screen. When the element is perforated or removed, engine wear will be excessive and engine life shortened.

It is not necessary to clean or wash the air cleaner element.



WARNING

Do not operate the engine with the air cleaner element removed. The air cleaner element not only filters intake air but also stops flames if the engine backfires. If the air cleaner element is not installed when the engine backfires, you could be burned.

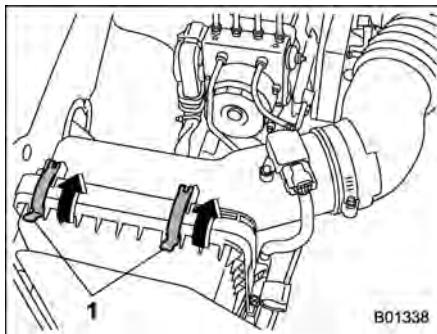


CAUTION

When replacing the air cleaner element, we recommend that you use a genuine SUBARU air cleaner element. If it is not used, there is the possibility of causing a negative effect to the engine.

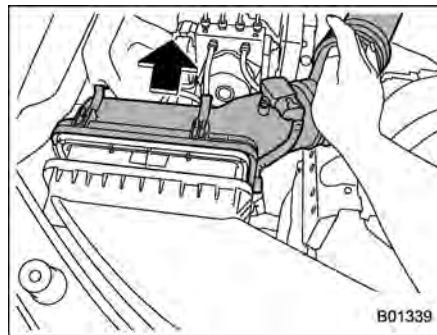
■ Replacing the air cleaner element

▼ Non-turbo models

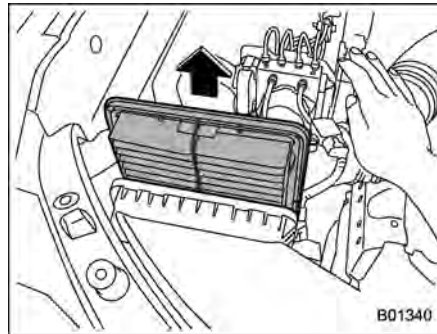


1) Clip

1. Unsnap the two clips holding the air cleaner case cover.

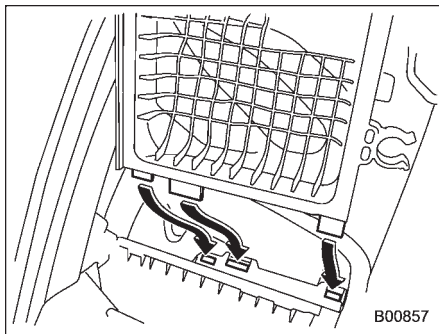


2. Open the air cleaner case cover.



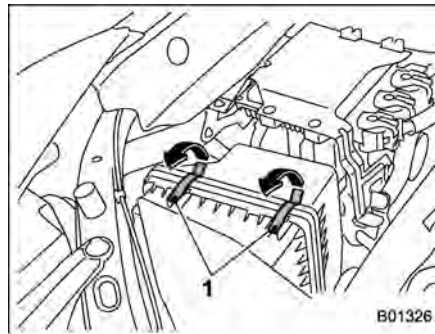
3. Remove the air cleaner element.

4. Clean the inside of the air cleaner case and case cover with a damp cloth and install a new air cleaner element.



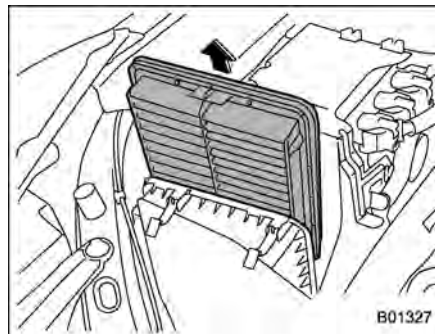
5. To install the air cleaner case, insert the three projections on the air cleaner case into the slits on the air cleaner case cover.
6. Install in the reverse order of removal.

▼ Turbo petrol engine models



1) Clip

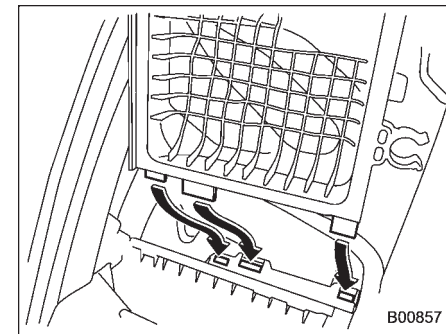
1. Unsnap the two clips holding the air cleaner case cover.



2. Open the air cleaner case and remove

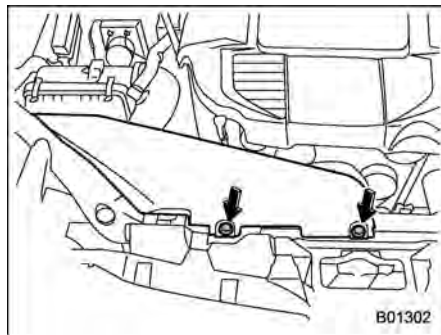
the air cleaner element.

3. Clean the inside of the air cleaner case and case cover with a damp cloth and install a new air cleaner element.

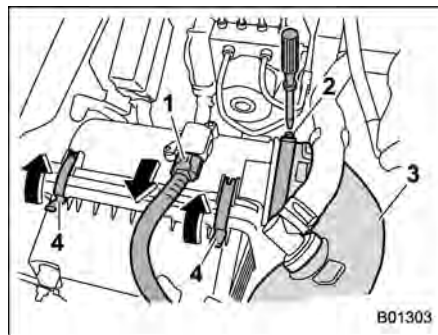


4. To install the air cleaner case, insert the three projections on the air cleaner case into the slits on the air cleaner case cover.
5. Install in the reverse order of removal.

▼ Diesel engine models



1. Use a screwdriver to undo the clips on the air intake duct, then remove the air intake duct.

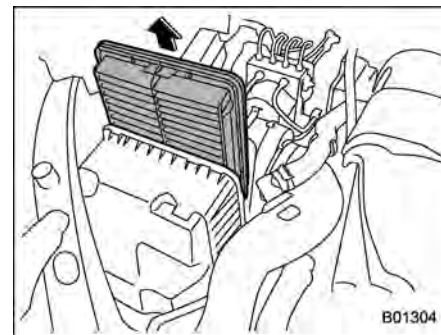


- 1) Connector
- 2) Clamp
- 3) Air intake boot
- 4) Clip

2. Unplug the connector that is attached to the top of the air cleaner case.

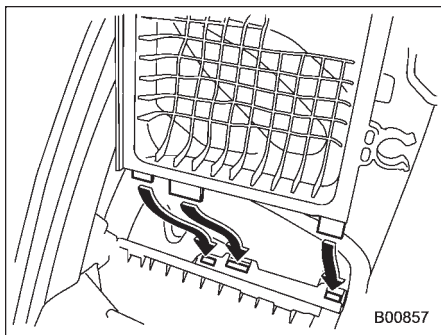
3. Loosen the screw of the clamp and pull the air intake boot out of the air cleaner case.

4. Unsnap the two clips holding the air cleaner case cover.



5. Open the air cleaner case and remove the air cleaner element.

6. Clean the inside of the air cleaner case and case cover with a damp cloth and install a new air cleaner element.



7. To install the air cleaner case, insert the three projections on the air cleaner case into the slits on the air cleaner case cover.

8. Install in the reverse order of removal.

Spark plugs (petrol engine models)

It may be difficult to replace the spark plugs. We recommend that you have the spark plugs replaced by your SUBARU dealer.

The spark plugs should be replaced according to the maintenance schedule in the "Warranty and Maintenance Booklet".

NOTE

For the recommended spark plugs, refer to "Electrical system" 12-10.

Drive belts

It is unnecessary to check the deflection of the drive belt periodically because your engine is equipped with an automatic belt tension adjuster. However, replacement of the belt should be done according to the maintenance schedule in the "Maintenance schedule" 11-3. We recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer for replacement.

If the drive belt is loose, cracked or worn, contact your SUBARU dealer.

Manual transmission oil

It is not necessary to check the transmission oil level. Check that there are no cracks, damage or leakage. However, the oil inspection should be performed according to the maintenance schedule in the "Maintenance schedule" ☞ 11-3. We recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer for details.

■ Recommended grade and viscosity

Each oil manufacturer has its own base oils and additives. Never use different brands together. For details, refer to "Manual transmission, front differential and rear differential gear oil" ☞ 12-8.

Continuously variable transmission fluid

There is no fluid level gauge. It is unnecessary to check the continuously variable transmission fluid level. However, if necessary, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer for inspection.

Front differential gear oil (CVT models)

There is no oil level gauge. To check the front differential gear oil level, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer.

■ Recommended grade and viscosity

Each oil manufacturer has its own base oils and additives. Never use different brands together. For details, refer to "Manual transmission, front differential and rear differential gear oil" ☞ 12-8.

Rear differential gear oil

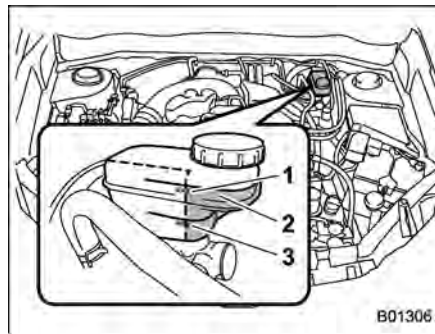
There is no oil level gauge. To check the rear differential gear oil level, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer for inspection.

■ Recommended grade and viscosity

Each oil manufacturer has its own base oils and additives. Never use different brands together. For details, refer to "Manual transmission, front differential and rear differential gear oil" 12-8.

Brake fluid

■ Checking the fluid level



- 1) "MAX" level line
- 2) The fluid level must be checked in this area.
- 3) "MIN" level line

Check the fluid level monthly.

Check the fluid level on the outside of the reservoir. Because this reservoir is used for both the brake and clutch systems and has chambers for each system, be sure to check the fluid level for the brake system at the **front part of the reservoir** (shaded area in the illustration). If the level is below "MIN", add the recommended brake fluid to "MAX".

Use only brake fluid from a sealed container.



WARNING

- Never let brake fluid contact your eyes because brake fluid can be harmful to your eyes. If brake fluid gets in your eyes, immediately flush them thoroughly with clean water. For safety, when performing this work, wearing eye protection is advisable.
- Brake fluid absorbs moisture from the air. Any absorbed moisture can cause a dangerous loss of braking performance. For vehicles with manual transmission, the brake fluid in the brake fluid reservoir is also used as the clutch fluid for the clutch system. Therefore, moisture-absorbed brake fluid may interfere with the proper operation of the clutch system.
- If the vehicle requires frequent refilling, there may be a leak. If you suspect a problem, we recommend that you have the vehicle checked at your SUBARU dealer.



CAUTION

- When adding brake fluid, be careful not to allow any dirt into the reservoir.
- Never splash the brake fluid over painted surfaces or rubber parts. Alcohol contained in the brake fluid may damage them.
- Be careful not to spill brake fluid when adding it. If brake fluid touches the exhaust pipe, it may cause a bad smell, smoke, and/or a fire. If brake fluid gets on the exhaust pipe, be sure to wipe it off.

Recommended brake fluid

Refer to "Fluids" 12-9.

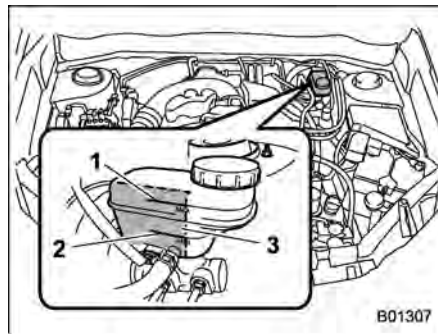


CAUTION

Never use different brands of brake fluid together. Also, avoid mixing DOT 3 and DOT 4 brake fluids even if they are the same brand.

Clutch fluid (MT models)

Checking the fluid level



- 1) "MAX" level line
- 2) "MIN" level line
- 3) The fluid level must be checked in this area.

Check the fluid level monthly.

Check the fluid level on the outside of the reservoir. Because this reservoir is used for both the brake and clutch systems and has chambers for each system, be sure to check the fluid level for the clutch system at the **inboard side of the reservoir** (shaded area in the illustration). If the level is below "MIN", add the recommended brake fluid (clutch fluid) to "MAX".

Use only brake fluid (clutch fluid) from a sealed container.

NOTE

The fluid level for the clutch system must be checked at the inboard side of the reservoir. It cannot be checked at the outboard side of the reservoir.

Brake booster

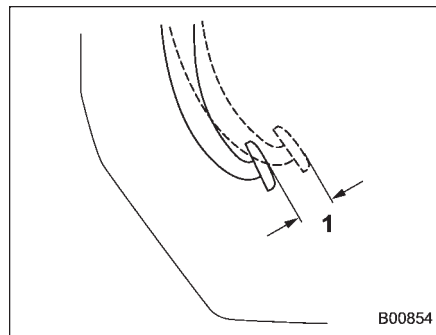
If the brake booster does not operate as described in the following, we recommend that you have it checked by your SUBARU dealer.

1. With the engine off, depress the brake pedal several times, applying the same pedal force each time. The distance the pedal travels should not vary.
2. With the brake pedal depressed, start the engine. The pedal should move slightly down to the floor.
3. With the brake pedal depressed, stop the engine and keep the pedal depressed for 30 seconds. The pedal height should not change.
4. Start the engine again and run for approximately 1 minute then turn it off. Depress the brake pedal several times to check the brake booster. The brake booster operates properly if the pedal stroke decreases with each depression.

Brake pedal

Check the brake pedal free play and reserve distance according to the maintenance schedule.

■ Checking the brake pedal free play

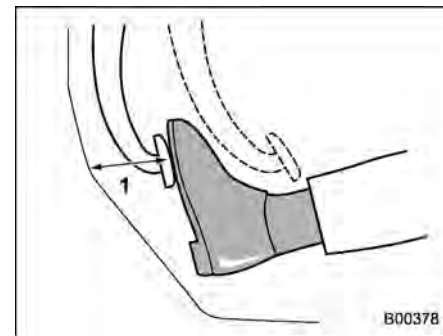


- 1) 0.5 – 2.0 mm (0.02 – 0.08 in)

Stop the engine and firmly depress the brake pedal several times. Then, check the amount of free play by pulling up the brake pedal with a force of less than 10 N (1 kgf, 2 lbf).

If the free play is not within proper specification, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

■ Checking the brake pedal reserve distance



- 1) Left-hand drive models:
More than 65 mm (2.56 in)
Right-hand drive models:
More than 85 mm (3.35 in)

Depress the pedal with a force of approximately 294 N (30 kgf, 66 lbf) and measure the distance between the upper surface of the pedal pad and the floor.

When the measurement is smaller than the specification, or when the pedal does not operate smoothly, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

Clutch pedal (MT models)

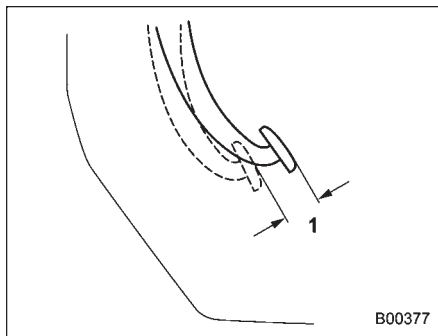
Check the clutch pedal free play and reserve distance according to the maintenance schedule.

■ Checking the clutch function

Check the clutch engagement and disengagement.

1. With the engine idling, check that there are no abnormal noises when the clutch pedal is depressed, and that shifting into 1st or reverse feels smooth.
2. Start the vehicle by releasing the pedal slowly to check that the engine and transmission smoothly couple without any sign of slippage.

■ Checking the clutch pedal free play



1) 4.0 – 11.0 mm (0.16 – 0.43 in)

Lightly depress the clutch pedal down with your finger until you feel resistance, and check the free play.

If the free play is not within proper specification, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

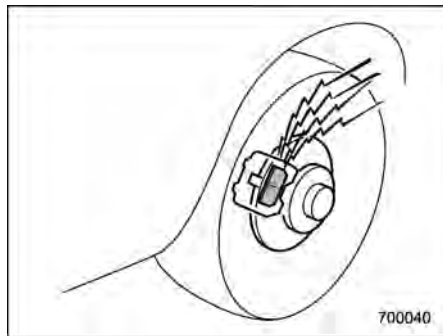
Hill start assist system

Ensure that the Hill start assist system operates properly under the following circumstances.

1. Stop the vehicle on an uphill grade by depressing the brake pedal (all models) and clutch pedal (MT models only), with the engine running.
2. Make sure that the vehicle does not move backward for several seconds after the brake pedal is released.
3. Then make sure the vehicle starts climbing the grade by following the normal starting procedures.

If the Hill start assist system does not operate as described above, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

Replacement of brake pad and lining



The disc brakes have audible wear indicators on the brake pads. If the brake pads wear close to their service limit, the wear indicator makes a very audible scraping noise when the brake pedal is applied.

If you hear this scraping noise each time you apply the brake pedal, we recommend that you have the brake pads serviced by your SUBARU dealer as soon as possible.

CAUTION

If you continue to drive despite the scraping noise from the audible

brake pad wear indicator, it will result in the need for costly brake rotor repair or replacement.

■ Breaking-in of new brake pads and linings

When replacing the brake pad or lining, we recommend that you use only genuine SUBARU parts. After replacement, the new parts must be broken in as follows:

▼ Brake pad and lining

While maintaining a speed of 50 to 65 km/h (30 to 40 mph), step on the brake pedal lightly. Repeat this five or more times.

▼ Parking brake lining

1. Drive the vehicle at a speed of approximately 35 km/h (22 mph).
2. With the parking brake release button pushed in, pull the parking brake lever SLOWLY and GENTLY. [Pulling with a force of approximately 150 N (15 kgf, 33 lbf).]
3. Drive the vehicle for approximately 200 meters (220 yards) in this condition.
4. Wait 5 to 10 minutes for the parking brake to cool down. Repeat this procedure.
5. Check the parking brake stroke. If the

parking brake stroke is out of the specified range, adjust it by turning the adjusting nut located on the parking brake lever.

Parking brake stroke:

7 – 8 notches / 200 N (20.4 kgf, 45 lbf)

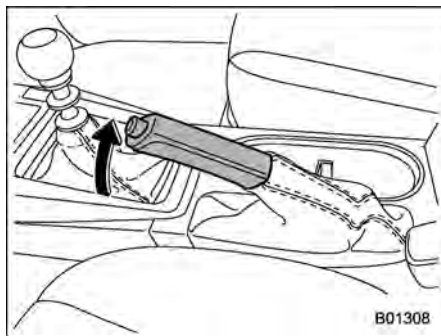
WARNING

A safe location and situation should be selected for break-in driving.

CAUTION

Pulling the parking brake lever too forcefully may cause the rear wheels to lock. To avoid this, be certain to pull the lever up slowly and gently.

Parking brake stroke



Check the parking brake stroke according to the maintenance schedule. When the parking brake is properly adjusted, braking power is fully applied by pulling the lever up 7 to 8 notches gently but firmly (approximately 200 N [20.4 kgf, 45 lbf]). If the parking brake lever stroke is not within the specified range, we recommend that you have the brake system checked and adjusted at your SUBARU dealer.

Tires and wheels

■ Types of tires

You should be familiar with type of tires present on your vehicle.

▼ All season tires

All season tires are designed to provide an adequate measure of traction, handling and braking performance in year-round driving including snowy and icy road conditions. However all season tires do not offer as much traction performance as winter (snow) tires in heavy or loose snow or on icy roads.

All season tires are identified by “ALL SEASON” and/or “M+S” (Mud & Snow) on the tire sidewall.

▼ Summer tires

Summer tires are high-speed capability tires best suited for highway driving under dry conditions.

Summer tires are inadequate for driving on slippery roads such as on snow-covered or icy roads.

If you drive your vehicle on snow-covered or icy roads, we strongly recommend the use of winter (snow) tires.

When installing winter tires, be sure to replace all four tires.

▼ Winter (snow) tires

Winter tires are best suited for driving on snow-covered and icy roads. However winter tires do not perform as well as summer tires and all season tires on roads other than snow-covered and icy roads.

■ Tire inspection

Check on a daily basis that the tires are free from serious damage, nails, and stones. At the same time, check the tires for abnormal wear.

We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer immediately if you find any problem.

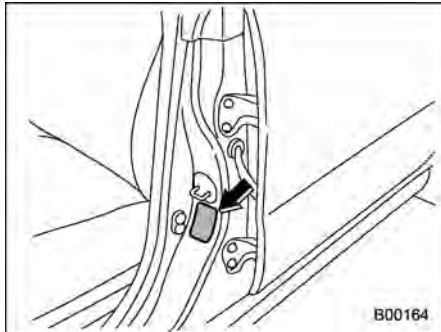
NOTE

- When the wheels and tires strike curbs or are subjected to harsh treatment as when the vehicle is driven on a rough surface, they can suffer damage that cannot be seen with the naked eye. This type of damage does not become evident until time has passed. Try not to drive over curbs, potholes or on other rough surfaces. If doing so is unavoidable, keep the vehicle's speed down to a walking pace or less, and approach the curbs as squarely as possible. Also, make sure the tires are not pressed against the curb when you park the vehicle.

- If you feel unusual vibration while driving or find it difficult to steer the vehicle in a straight line, one of the tires and/or wheels may be damaged. We recommend that you drive slowly to the nearest authorized SUBARU dealer and have the vehicle inspected.

■ Tire pressures and wear

Maintaining the correct tire pressures helps to maximize the tires' service lives and is essential for good running performance. Check and, if necessary, adjust the pressure of each tire (including the spare) at least once a month (for example, during a fuel stop) and before any long journey.



Tire placard

Check the tire pressures when the tires are cold. Use a pressure gauge to adjust the tire pressures to the values shown on the tire placard. The tire placard is located as shown in the illustration.

Driving even a short distance warms up the tires and increases the tire pressures. Also, the tire pressures are affected by the outside temperature. It is best to check tire pressure outdoors before driving the vehicle.

When a tire becomes warm, the air inside it expands, causing the tire pressure to increase. Be careful not to mistakenly release air from a warm tire to reduce its pressure.



WARNING

Do not let air out of warm tires to adjust pressure. Doing so will result in low tire pressure.

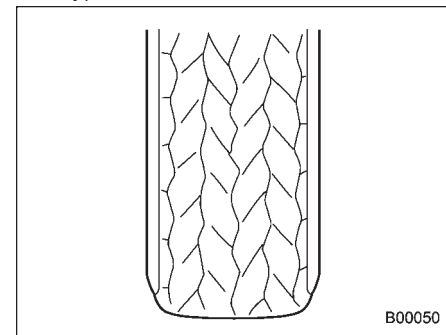
NOTE

- The air pressure in a tire increases by approximately 30 kPa (0.3 kgf/cm², 4.3 psi) when the tire becomes warm.

- The tires are considered cold when the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours or has been driven less than 1.6 km (1 mile).

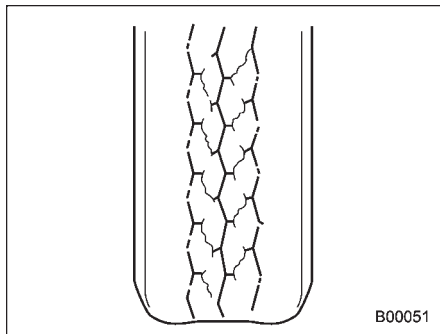
Incorrect tire pressures detract from controllability and ride comfort, and they cause the tires to wear abnormally.

- **Correct tire pressure** (tread worn evenly)



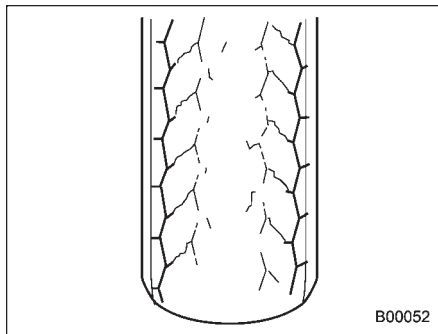
Roadholding is good, and steering is responsive. Rolling resistance is low, so fuel consumption is also lower.

- **Abnormally low tire pressure** (tread worn at shoulders)



Rolling resistance is high, so fuel consumption is also higher.

- **Abnormally high tire pressure** (tread worn in center)



Ride comfort is poor. Also, the tire magnifies the effects of road-surface bumps and dips, possibly resulting in vehicle damage.

If the tire placard shows tire pressures for the vehicle when fully loaded and for the vehicle when towing a trailer, adjust the tire pressures to the values that match current loading conditions.



WARNING

Driving at high speeds with excessively low tire pressures can cause the tires to deform severely and to rapidly become hot. A sharp increase in temperature could cause

tread separation, and destruction of the tires. The resulting loss of vehicle control could lead to an accident.

■ **Wheel balance**

Each wheel was correctly balanced when your vehicle was new, but the wheels will become unbalanced as the tires become worn during use. Wheel imbalance causes the steering wheel to vibrate slightly at certain vehicle speeds and detracts from the vehicle's straight-line stability. It can also cause steering and suspension system problems and abnormal tire wear. If you suspect that the wheels are not correctly balanced, we recommend that you have them checked and adjusted by your SUBARU dealer. Also have them adjusted after tire repairs and after tire rotation.



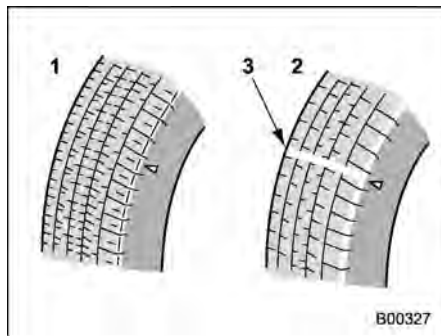
CAUTION

Loss of correct wheel alignment causes the tires to wear on one side and reduces the vehicle's running stability. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer if you notice abnormal tire wear.

NOTE

The suspension system is designed to hold each wheel at a certain alignment (relative to the other wheels and to the road) for optimum straight-line stability and cornering performance.

■ Wear indicators



- 1) New tread
- 2) Worn tread
- 3) Tread wear indicator

Each tire incorporates a tread wear indicator, which becomes visible when the depth of the tread grooves decreases to 1.6 mm (0.063 in). A tire must be replaced when the tread wear indicator appears as a solid band across the tread.

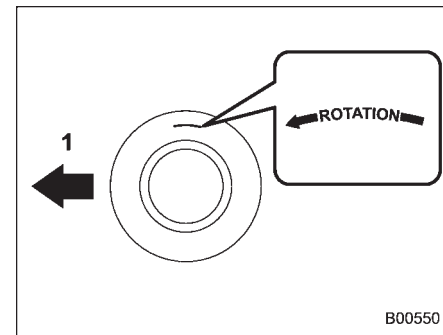
**WARNING**

When a tire's tread wear indicator becomes visible, the tire is worn beyond the acceptable limit and must be replaced immediately. With a tire in this condition, driving at high speeds in wet weather can cause the vehicle to hydroplane. The resulting loss of vehicle control can lead to an accident.

NOTE

For safety, inspect tire tread regularly and replace the tires before their tread wear indicators become visible.

■ Tire rotation direction mark



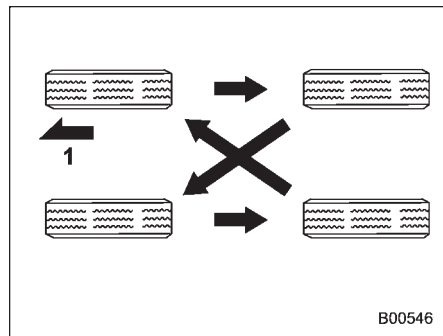
Example of tire rotation direction mark

- 1) Front

If the tire has the rotation direction specification, the tire rotation direction mark is placed on its sidewall.

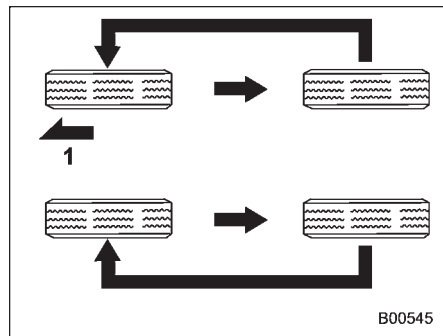
When you install a tire that has the tire rotation direction mark, install the tire with the direction mark facing forward.

■ Tire rotation



Models equipped with 4 non-unidirectional tires

1) Front



Models equipped with unidirectional tires

1) Front

Tire wear varies from wheel to wheel. To maximize the life of each tire and ensure that the tires wear uniformly, it is best to rotate the tires every 10,000 km (6,200 miles). Move the tires to the positions shown in the illustration each time they are rotated.

Replace any damaged or unevenly worn tire at the time of rotation. After tire rotation, adjust the tire pressures and make sure the wheel nuts are correctly tightened.

After driving approximately 1,000 km (600 miles), check the wheel nuts again and retighten any nut that has become loose.

■ Tire replacement

The wheels and tires are important and integral parts of your vehicle's design; they cannot be changed arbitrarily. The tires fitted as standard equipment are optimally matched to the characteristics of the vehicle and were selected to give the best possible combination of running performance, ride comfort, and service life. It is essential for every tire to have a size and construction matching those shown on the tire placard.

Using tires of a non-specified size detracts

from controllability, ride comfort, braking performance, speedometer accuracy and odometer accuracy. It also creates incorrect body-to-tire clearances and inappropriately changes the vehicle's ground clearance.

All four tires must be the same in terms of manufacturer, brand (tread pattern), construction, and size. You are advised to replace the tires with new ones that are identical to those fitted as standard equipment.

For safe vehicle operation, SUBARU recommends replacing all four tires at the same time.



WARNING

- When replacing a tire, you must use a tire that is of the same size, circumference, speed symbol and load index as the original tires listed on the tire placard. Using tires of other sizes, circumferences or constructions may result in severe mechanical damage to the drive train of your vehicle and may affect ride, handling, braking, speedometer/odometer calibration, and clearance between the body and tires. It also may be dangerous and

lead to loss of vehicle control.

- You must install four tires that are of the same size, circumference, construction, manufacturer, brand (tread pattern), degree of wear, speed symbol and load index. Mixing tires of different types, sizes or degrees of wear can result in damage to the vehicle's power train. Use of different types or sizes of tires can also dangerously reduce controllability and braking performance and can lead to an accident.
- Use only radial tires. Do not use radial tires together with belted bias tires and/or bias-ply tires. Doing so can dangerously reduce controllability, resulting in an accident.

■ Wheel replacement

When replacing wheels due, for example, to damage, make sure the replacement wheels match the specifications of the wheels that are fitted as standard equipment. Replacement wheels are available from SUBARU dealers.



WARNING

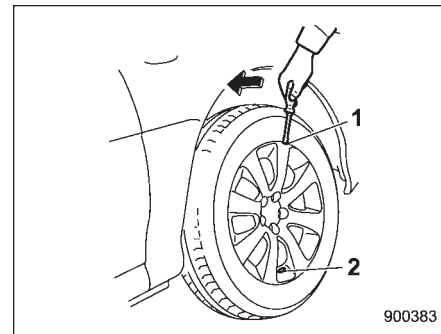
Use only those wheels that are specified for your vehicle. Wheels not meeting specifications could interfere with brake caliper operation and may cause the tires to rub against the wheel well housing during turns. The resulting loss of vehicle control could lead to an accident.

NOTE

When any of the wheels are removed and replaced for tire rotation or to change a flat tire, always check the tightness of the wheel nuts after driving approximately 1,000 km (600 miles). If any nut is loose, tighten it to the specified torque.

■ Wheel covers (if equipped)

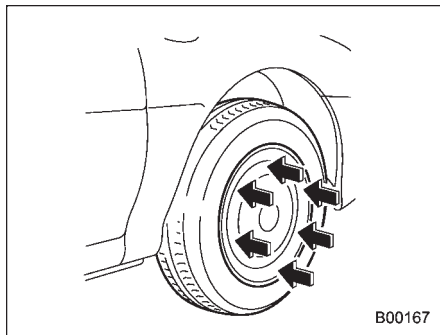
▼ Removing the wheel cover



- 1) Notch
- 2) Valve hole

Insert a flat-head screwdriver into the notch part on the opposite side of the valve hole to remove the wheel cover.

▼ Installing the wheel cover



Align the valve with the valve hole in the cover, then fit the cover on the wheel by tapping your hand evenly around the circumference of the cover.

Aluminum wheels (if equipped)

Aluminum wheels can be scratched and damaged easily. Handle them carefully to maintain their appearance, performance, and safety.

- When any of the wheels are removed and replaced for tire rotation or to change a flat, always check the tightness of the wheel nuts after driving approximately 1,000 km (600 miles). If any nut is loose, tighten it to the specified torque.
- Never apply oil to the threaded parts, wheel nuts, or tapered surface of the wheel.
- Never let the wheel rub against sharp protrusions or curbs.
- Be sure to fit tire chains on uniformly and completely around the tire, otherwise the chains may scratch the wheel.
- When wheel nuts, balance weights, or the center cap is replaced, we recommend that you replace them with genuine SUBARU parts designed for aluminum wheels.

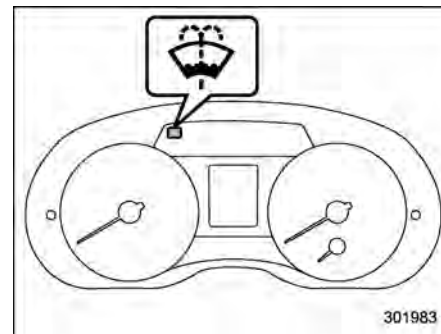
Windshield washer fluid

■ Adding the windshield washer fluid

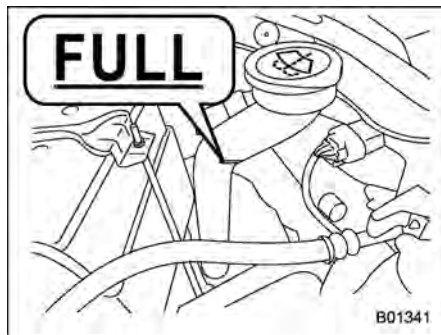


CAUTION

Never use engine coolant as washer fluid because it could cause paint damage.



When there is only a small amount of washer fluid remaining, the windshield washer fluid warning light will illuminate. When this occurs, refill the washer fluid as follows.



Remove the washer tank filler cap, then add windshield washer fluid until it reaches the “FULL” mark on the tank.

■ Windshield washer fluid

Use windshield washer fluid. If windshield washer fluid is unavailable, use clean water.

In areas where water freezes in winter, use an anti-freeze type windshield washer fluid. SUBARU Windshield Washer Fluid contains 58.5% methyl alcohol and 41.5% surfactant, by volume. Its freezing temperature varies according to how much it is diluted, as indicated in the following table.

Washer Fluid Concentration	Freezing Temperature
30%	-12°C (10.4°F)
50%	-20°C (-4°F)
100%	-45°C (-49°F)

In order to prevent freezing of washer fluid, check the freezing temperatures in the table above when adjusting the fluid concentration to the outside temperature.

If you fill the reservoir tank with a fluid with a different concentration from the one used previously, purge the old fluid from the piping between the reservoir tank and washer nozzles by operating the washer for a certain period of time. Otherwise, if the concentration of the fluid remaining in the piping is too low for the outside temperature, it may freeze and block the nozzles.



CAUTION

Adjust the washer fluid concentration appropriately for the outside temperature. If the concentration is inappropriate, sprayed washer fluid may freeze on the windshield and obstruct your view, and the fluid may freeze in the reservoir tank.

Replacement of wiper blades

Grease, wax, insects, or other material on the windshield or the wiper blade results in jerky wiper operation and streaking on the glass. If you cannot remove the streaks after operating the windshield washer or if the wiper operation is jerky, clean the outer surface of the windshield (or rear window) and the wiper blades using a sponge or soft cloth with a neutral detergent or mild-abrasive cleaner. After cleaning, rinse the windshield and wiper blades with clean water. The windshield is clean if beads do not form when you rinse the windshield with water.



CAUTION

- Do not clean the wiper blades with fuel or a solvent, such as paint thinner or benzine. This will cause deterioration of the wiper blades.
- While removing the wiper blades from the wiper arms, do not return the wiper arms to the original positions. Otherwise, the windshield surface may be scratched.
- When returning the raised wiper arms to the original positions,

carefully return the wiper arms on the windshield by hand. You should not return the wiper arms to the windshield only by the return spring. Otherwise, the wiper arms may be deformed and/or the windshield surface may be scratched.

If you cannot eliminate the streaking even after following this method, replace the wiper blades using the following procedures.

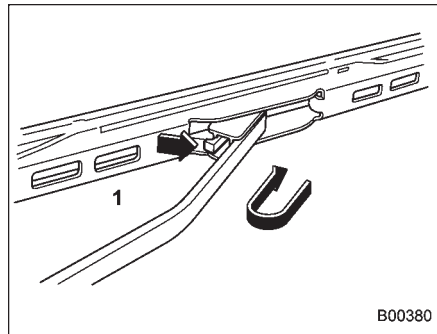
■ Windshield wiper blade assembly

NOTE

Do not lower the wiper arm while the wiper blade assembly is removed.

▼ Type A

1. Raise the wiper arm off the windshield.

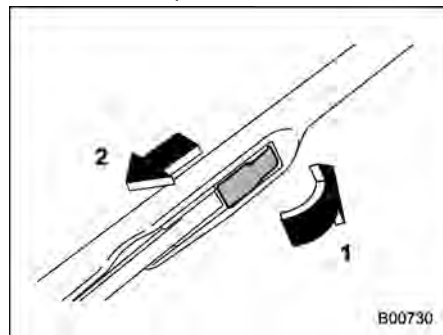


- 1) Stopper

2. Remove the wiper blade assembly by holding its pivot area and pushing it in the direction shown by the arrow while depressing the wiper blade stopper.
3. Install the wiper blade assembly to the wiper arm. Make sure that it locks in place.
4. Hold the wiper arm by hand and slowly lower it into position.

▼ Type B

1. Raise the wiper arm off the windshield.

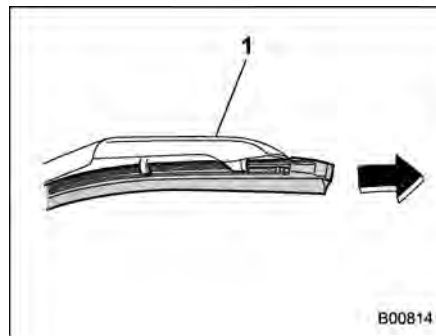


- 1) Open the cover
- 2) Pull down the wiper blade

2. Remove the wiper blade assembly by opening the cover and pulling it down in the direction shown in the illustration.
3. Install the wiper blade assembly to the wiper arm. Make sure that it locks in place.
4. Hold the wiper arm by hand and slowly lower it into position.

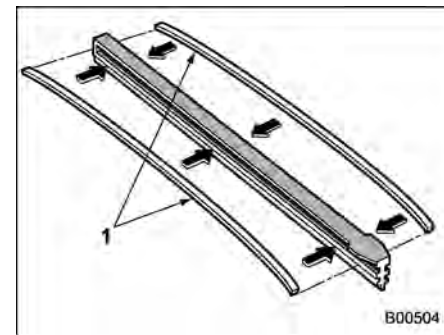
■ Windshield wiper blade rubber (type A and type B)**NOTE**

The following illustrations show the replacement procedures of the blade rubber for a type A wiper blade assembly, however the replacement procedures are the same for a type B wiper blade assembly.



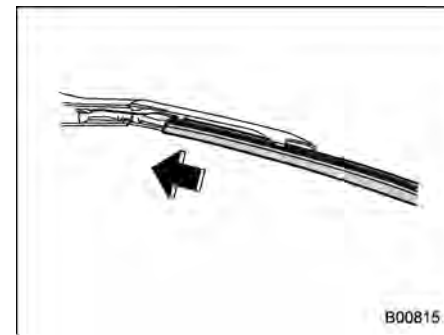
- 1) Support

1. Grasp the locked end of the blade rubber assembly and pull it firmly until the stoppers on the rubber are free of the support.



- 1) Metal spines

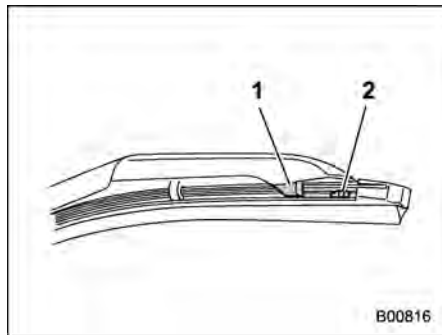
2. If the new blade rubber is not provided with two metal spines, remove the metal spines from the old blade rubber and install them in the new blade rubber.



3. Align the claws of the support with the

– CONTINUED –

grooves in the rubber and slide the blade rubber assembly into the support until it locks.

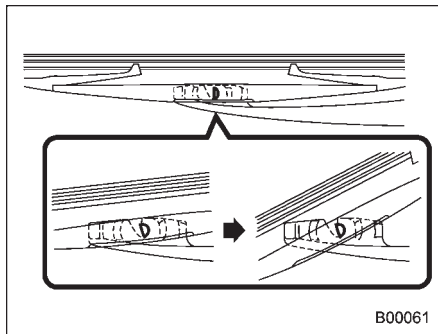


- 1) Claw
- 2) Stopper

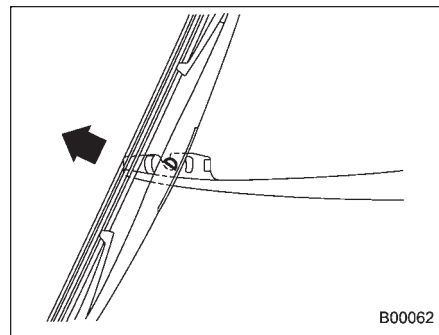
4. Be sure to position the claws at the end of the support between the stoppers on the rubber as shown. If the rubber is not retained properly, the wiper blade may scratch the windshield.

■ Rear window wiper blade assembly

1. Raise the wiper arm off the rear window.

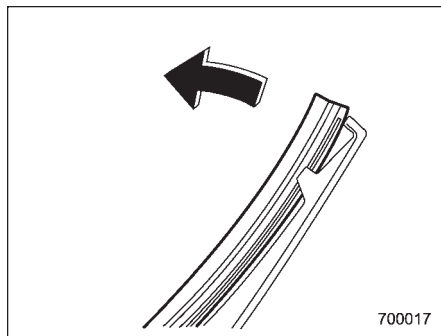


2. Turn the wiper blade assembly counterclockwise.

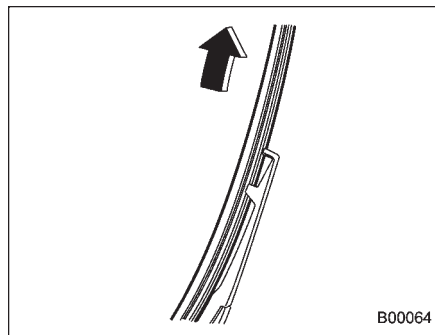


- 3. Pull the wiper blade assembly toward you to remove it from the wiper arm.
- 4. Install the wiper blade assembly to the wiper arm. Make sure that it locks in place.
- 5. Hold the wiper arm by hand and slowly lower it in position.

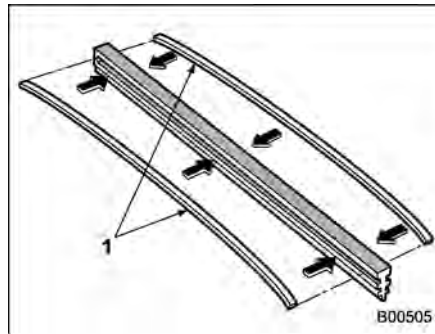
■ Rear window wiper blade rubber



1. Pull out the end of the blade rubber assembly to unlock it from the plastic support.



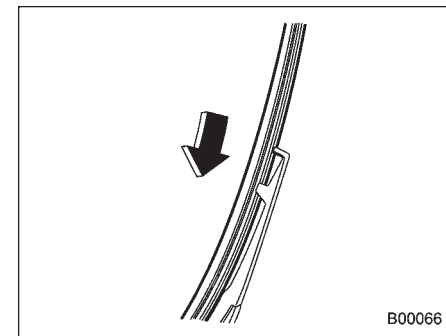
2. Pull the blade rubber assembly out of the plastic support.



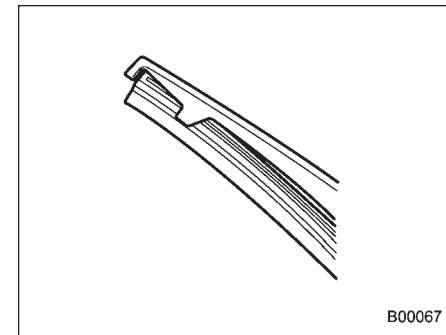
1) Metal spines

3. If the new blade rubber is not provided with two metal spines, remove the metal spines from the old blade rubber and

install them in the new blade rubber.



4. Align the claws of the plastic support with the grooves in the blade rubber assembly, then slide the blade rubber assembly into place.



Securely retain both ends of the rubber

– CONTINUED –

with the stoppers on the plastic support ends. If the rubber is not retained properly, the wiper may scratch the rear window glass.

Battery

■ Battery Precautions!



WARNING



Read these instructions carefully:

To ensure safe and correct handling of your battery, read the following precautions carefully before using the battery or inspecting it.



Wear eye protection:

Always wear eye protection when working near your vehicle's battery. Battery fluid contains sulfuric acid, so it can cause blindness if splashed into your eyes. Also, batteries emit highly flammable, explosive hydrogen gas. Eye protection is vital for protection in the event that this gas ignites.



Battery fluid contains sulfuric acid:

Since battery fluid contains sulfuric acid, be sure to wear eye protection

and protective gloves when inspecting your vehicle's battery. Avoid tipping the battery and subjecting it to shocks since this could cause fluid to spill.

Under no circumstances allow battery fluid to make contact with your skin, eyes, or clothing since this can cause blindness and burns. If battery fluid splashes onto your skin, eyes or clothing, wash it away immediately with plenty of water. If battery fluid splashes into your eyes, seek medical attention immediately.

If battery fluid is accidentally swallowed, immediately drink a large amount of milk or water, and seek medical attention immediately.

Battery fluid is corrosive. If it splashes onto your vehicle's paintwork or fabrics, wash it away immediately with plenty of water.



Keep children away:

Batteries must be handled only by persons who are aware of the potential hazards. Take particular care to keep children away from your vehicle's battery. Improper handling

can cause blindness and burns.



Keep flames away:

Before working on or near your vehicle's battery, extinguish all cigarettes, matches, and lighters. Also, keep the battery away from flammable items and electrical sparks. Since batteries emit highly flammable, explosive hydrogen gas, any flames or sparks in the vicinity could cause an explosion.

When working near your vehicle's battery, take care that metal tools do not short-circuit the battery's (+) and (-) terminals or connect the battery's (+) terminal to the vehicle's body. A short circuit could create electrical sparks and lead to an explosion.

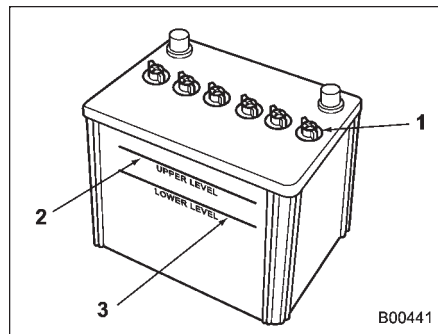
To prevent electrical sparks, all rings, wristwatches, and other metal accessories must be taken off before work is carried out on or near the battery.



Prevent explosions:

While being charged, batteries emit highly flammable, explosive hydro-

gen gas. To prevent an explosion, charge your vehicle's battery in a well ventilated area and keep flames away.



- 1) Cap
- 2) Upper level
- 3) Lower level

It is unnecessary to periodically check the battery fluid level or periodically refill with distilled water.

However, if the battery fluid level is below the lower level, remove the cap. Fill to the upper level with distilled water.



CAUTION

Never use more than 10 amperes when charging the battery because it will shorten battery life.

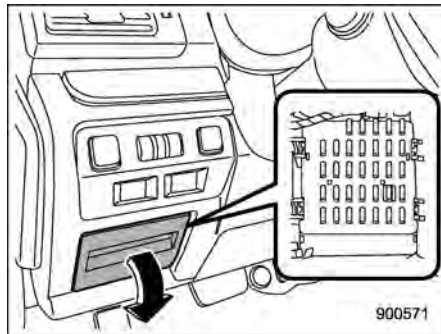
Fuses



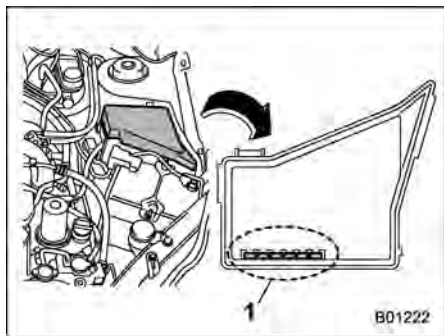
CAUTION

Never replace a fuse with one having a higher rating or with material other than a fuse because serious damage or a fire could result.

The fuses are designed to melt during an overload to prevent damage to the wiring harness and electrical equipment. The fuses are located in two fuse boxes.

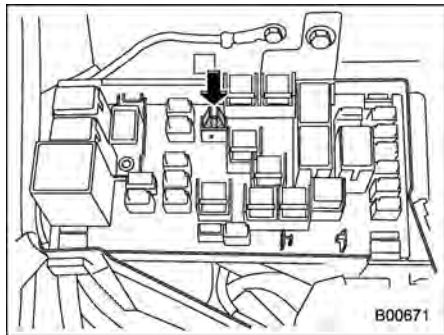


One is located under the instrument panel behind the fuse box cover on the driver's seat side. To remove the cover, pull it out.

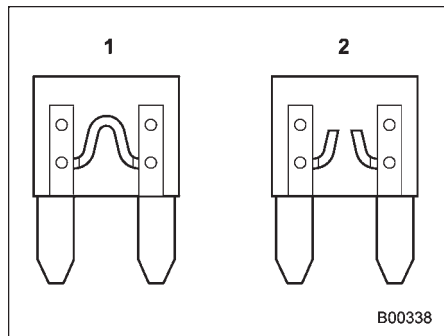


1) Spare fuses

The other one (main fuse box) is housed in the engine compartment. The spare fuses are stored in the fuse box cover.



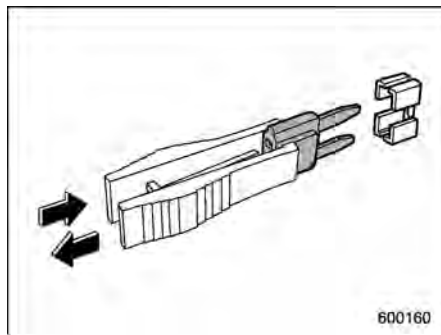
The fuse puller is stored in the main fuse box in the engine compartment.



1) Good
2) Blown

If any lights, accessories or other electrical controls do not operate, inspect the corresponding fuse. If a fuse has blown, replace it.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK"/"OFF" position and turn off all electrical accessories.
2. Remove the cover.
3. Determine which fuse may be blown. Look at the back side of each fuse box cover and refer to "Fuses and circuits" 12-12.



4. Pull out the fuse with the fuse puller.
5. Inspect the fuse. If it has blown, replace it with a spare fuse of the same rating.
6. If the same fuse blows again, this indicates that its system has a problem. We recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer for repairs.

Installation of accessories

We recommend that you always consult your SUBARU dealer before installing fog lights or any other electrical equipment in your vehicle. Such accessories may cause the electronic system to malfunction if they are incorrectly installed or if they are not suited for the vehicle. We recommend that you install only genuine SUBARU accessories on your vehicle.

Also, we recommend that you always consult your SUBARU dealer before installing a radio in your vehicle.

Replacing bulbs



WARNING

Bulbs may become very hot while illuminated. Before replacing bulbs, turn off the lights and wait until the bulbs cool down. Otherwise, there is the risk of sustaining a burn injury.



CAUTION

Replace any bulb only with a new bulb of the specified wattage. Using a bulb of different wattage could result in a fire. For the specified wattage of each bulb, refer to "Bulb chart" 12-16.

■ Headlights (models with HID headlights)



WARNING

High-intensity-discharge (HID) bulbs are used for the low beams of the headlights. These HID bulbs use an extremely high voltage. To avoid the risk of an electric shock that could result in serious injury, observe the following precautions.

- Do not replace any headlight bulbs (both low beam and high beam) by yourself.
- Do not remove/restore the headlight assemblies by yourself.
- Do not remove any headlight-assembly components by yourself.

For replacement, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.

■ Headlights (models without HID headlights)

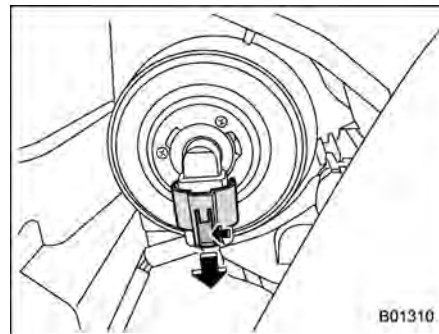


CAUTION

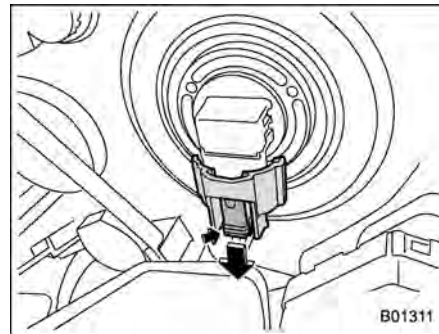
Halogen headlight bulbs become very hot while in use. If you touch the bulb surface with bare hands or greasy gloves, fingerprints or grease on the bulb surface will develop into hot spots, causing the bulb to break. If there are fingerprints or grease on the bulb surface, wipe them away with a soft cloth moistened with alcohol.

NOTE

- If headlight aiming is required, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer for proper adjustment of the headlight aim.
- It may be difficult to replace the bulbs. We recommend that you have the bulbs replaced by your SUBARU dealer if necessary.

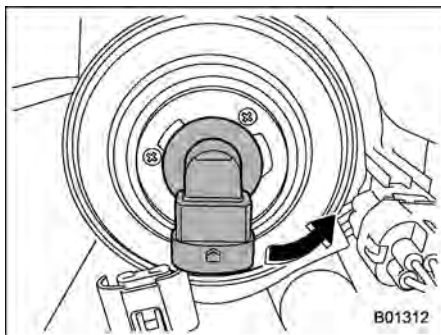
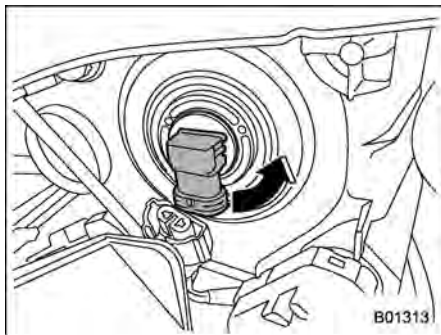


Low beam headlight



High beam headlight

1. Disconnect the electrical connector from the bulb.

**Low beam headlight****High beam headlight**

2. Remove the bulb from the headlight assembly by turning it counterclockwise.
3. Replace the bulb with new one. At this time, use care not to touch the bulb

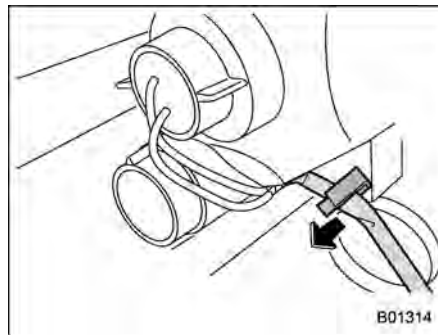
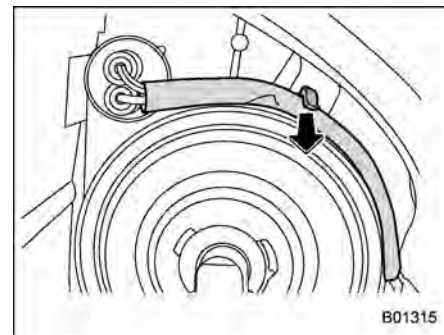
surface.

4. To install the bulb to the headlight assembly, turn it clockwise until it clicks.
5. Reconnect the electrical connector.

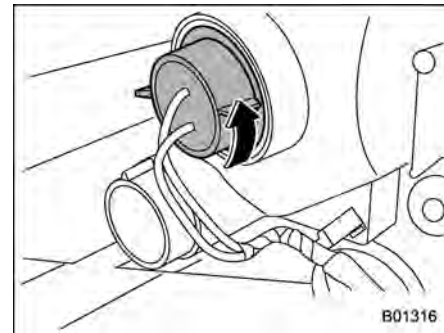
■ Front turn signal light and position light

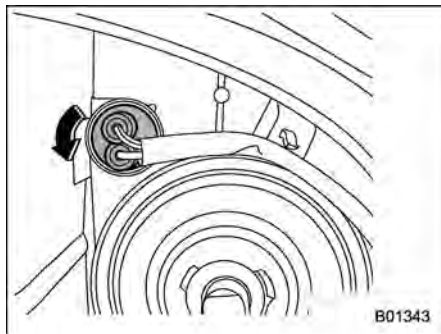
NOTE

It may be difficult to replace the bulbs. We recommend that you have the bulbs replaced by your SUBARU dealer if necessary.

**Front turn signal light****Position light**

1. Remove the electrical connector from the clip.

**Front turn signal light**



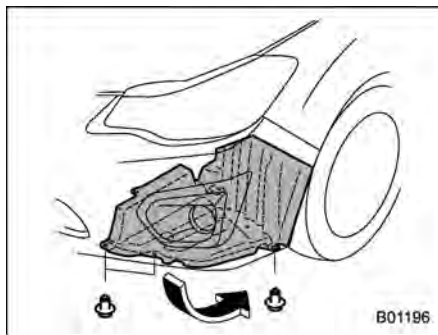
Position light

2. Turn the socket counterclockwise and pull it out.
3. Pull out the bulb from the socket and replace the bulb with a new one.

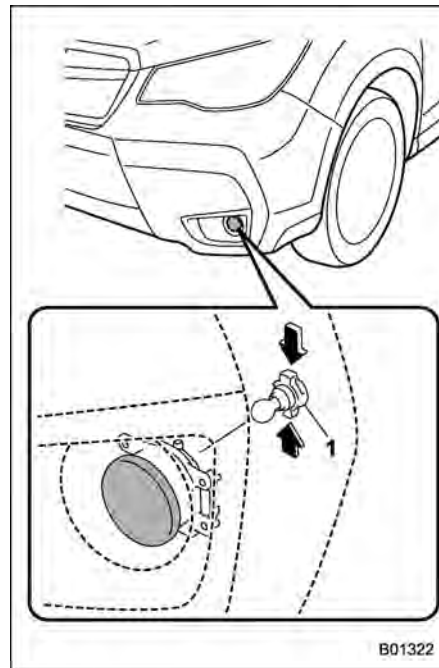
■ Front fog light and daytime running light (if equipped)

NOTE

It may be difficult to replace the bulbs. We recommend that you have the bulbs replaced by your SUBARU dealer if necessary.

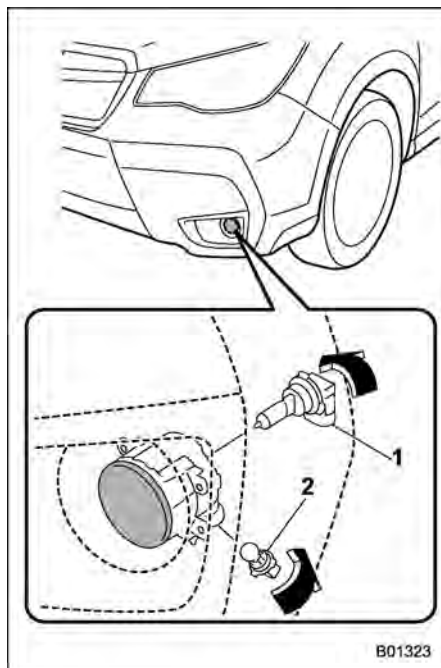


1. Remove the 3 clips and turn over the mud guard.
2. Disconnect the electrical connector from the bulb.

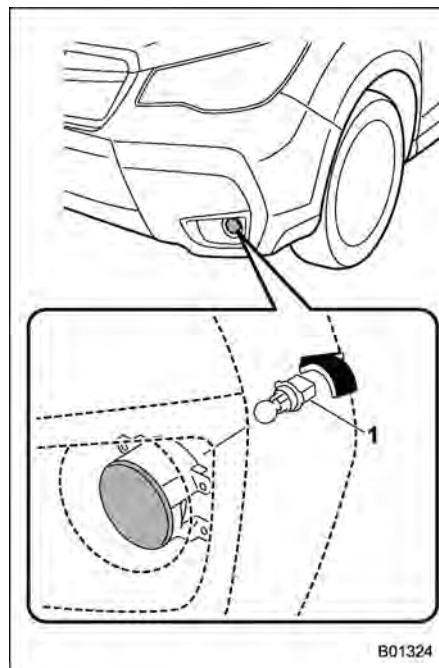


Type A

- 1) Fog light

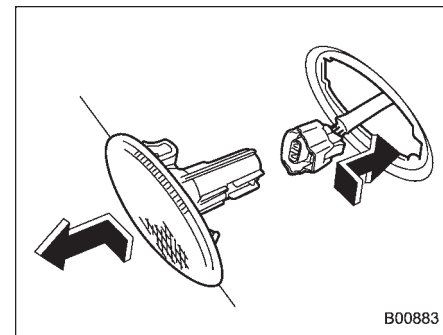
**Type B**

- 1) Fog light
- 2) Daytime running light

**Type C**

- 1) Daytime running light
3. Remove the bulb.
4. Replace the bulb with a new one.
5. After replacing the bulb, reattach the mud guard.

■ Side turn signal light (if equipped)

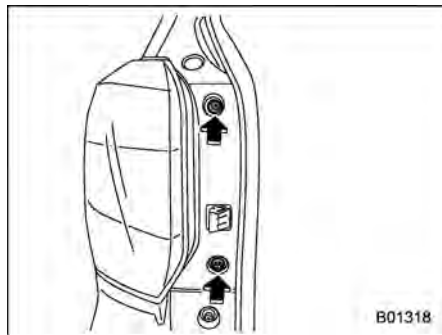


1. Push the lens of the side turn signal light forward and remove it.
2. Pull the connector out of the socket.

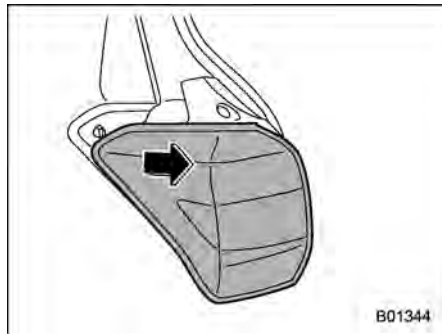
NOTE

The bulb is an integral part of the side turn signal light assembly. If the bulb fails, the whole side turn signal light assembly must be replaced.

■ Rear combination lights

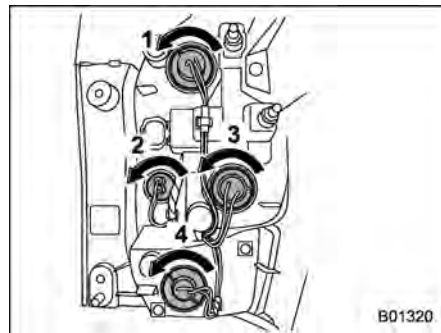


1. Using a Phillips screwdriver, remove the upper and lower screws that secure the rear combination light assembly.



2. Slide the rear combination light as-

sembly rearward and remove it from the vehicle.

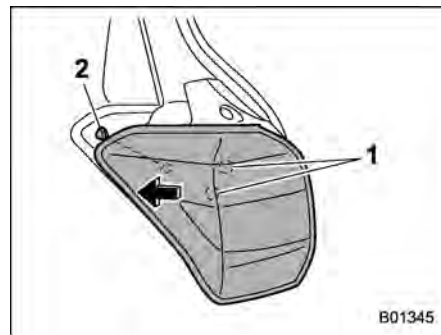


- 1) Brake/tail light
- 2) Back-up light
- 3) Rear turn signal light
- 4) Rear fog light (if equipped)

3. Remove the bulb socket from the rear combination light assembly by turning it counterclockwise.

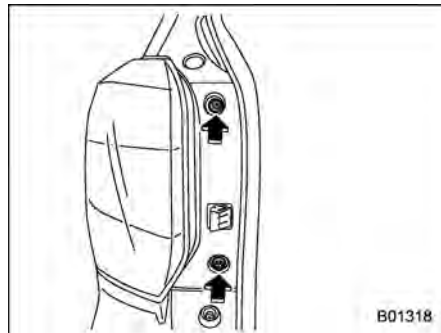
4. Pull the bulb out of the bulb socket and replace it with a new one.

5. Set the bulb socket into the rear combination light assembly and turn it clockwise until it locks.



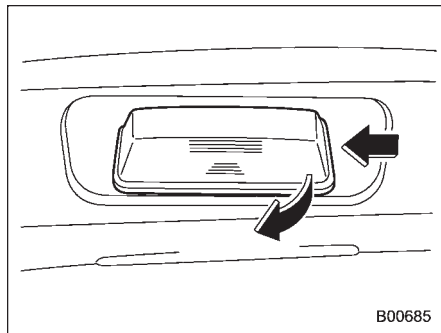
- 1) Guide pins
- 2) Clip

6. Put the rear combination light assembly into place while aligning the 2 guide pins and a catch with the guide holes and a clip on the vehicle.

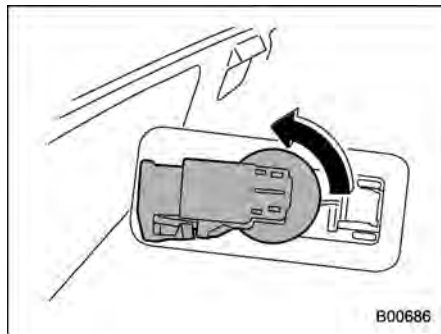


7. Tighten the upper and lower screws.

■ License plate light



1. Insert a finger into the right side of the license plate light cover, then press once to the left and pull out to remove the cover.



2. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and pull out the socket.
3. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
4. Install a new bulb.
5. Reinstall the bulb socket and the license plate light cover.

■ Other bulbs

It may be difficult to replace the bulbs. We recommend that you have the bulbs replaced by your SUBARU dealer if necessary.

Replacing battery

The access key / transmitter battery may be discharged under the following conditions.

- The operation of the keyless access function is unstable
- The operating distance of the remote keyless entry system is unstable
- The transmitter does not operate properly when used within the standard distance

Replace the battery with a new one.



CAUTION

- Do not let dust, oil or water get on or in the access key/transmitter when replacing battery.
- Be careful not to damage the printed circuit board in the access key/transmitter when replacing the battery.
- Be careful not to allow children to touch the battery and any removed parts; children could swallow them.
- Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent

type.

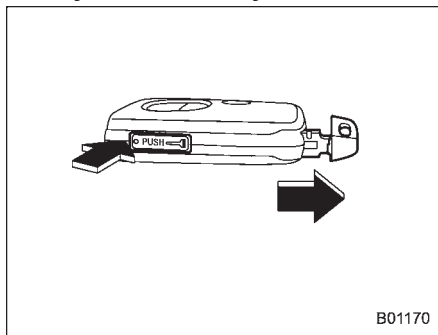
- Batteries shall not be exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like.

NOTE

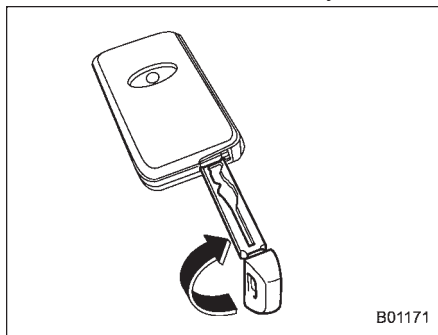
- Replace only with the same or equivalent type of battery recommended by the manufacturer.
- Dispose of used batteries according to the local laws.
- Mount the battery in the correct orientation to prevent fluid leakage. Be careful not to bend the terminals. It may result in a malfunction.
- It is recommended that the battery should be replaced by a SUBARU dealer.
- Use a new battery.
- After replacing the battery, confirm that the access key/transmitter functions properly.

■ Replacing battery of access key

Battery: Button battery CR1632

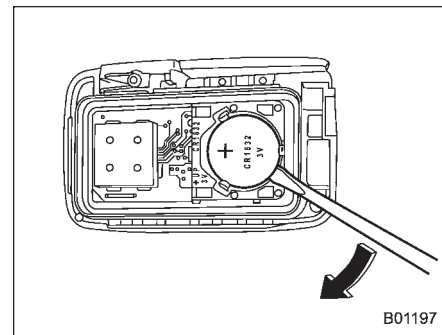


1. Pull out the mechanical key.

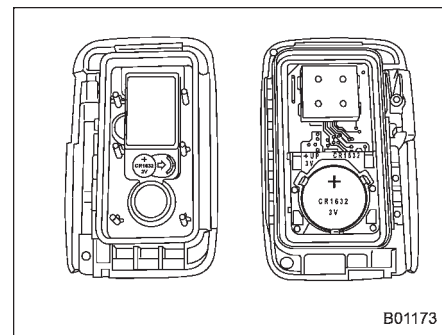


2. Insert the key into the gap and turn it

clockwise to remove the cover.



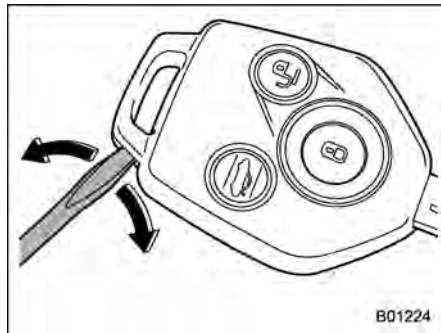
3. Wrap a flat-head screwdriver with insulating tape, and insert it between the battery and the board. Then pry it out from the board.



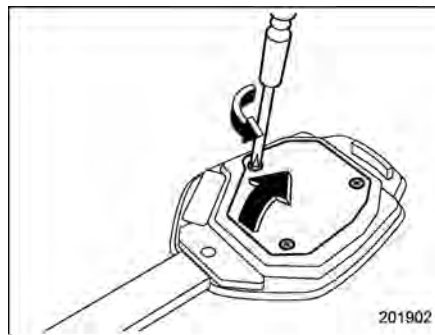
4. Insert a new battery with its positive (+)

side facing upward as shown in the illustration. Attach the cover firmly.

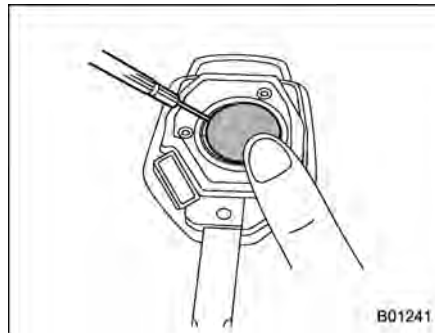
■ Replacing battery of transmitter



1. Open the key head using a flat-head screwdriver.



2. Remove the three screws and then remove the cover.

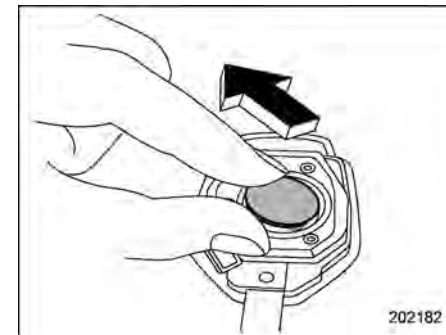


3. Create a gap between the battery and the case by pushing the battery gently with your finger as shown in the illustration. Then, insert a flat-head screwdriver

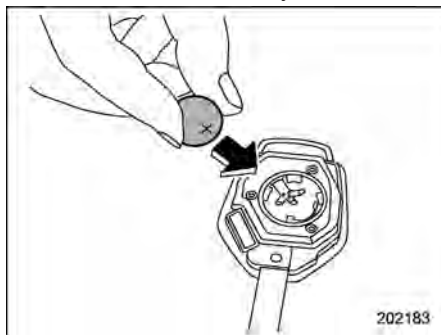
that has been wrapped in insulating tape into the gap.



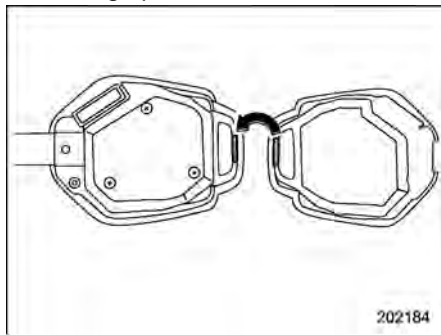
4. Move the flat-head screwdriver in the order shown in 1. and 2., and remove the battery, taking care not to damage the base panel or terminal.



5. Remove the old battery.



6. Fit a new battery (type **CR-1620** or equivalent) in the case with its positive (+) side facing upward.



7. Put the case together by fitting the mating part of the button side into the hook

on the key side.

After the battery is replaced, the transmitter must be synchronized with the remote keyless entry system's control unit. Press either the "⏏" or "⏏" button several times to synchronize the unit.

Specifications	12-2	Temporary spare tires	12-11
Dimensions	12-2	Wheel alignment	12-11
Engine	12-3	Brake disc	12-11
Fuel	12-3	Fuses and circuits	12-12
Engine oil	12-4	Fuse panel located in the passenger compartment	12-12
Manual transmission, front differential and rear differential gear oil	12-8	Fuse panel located in the engine compartment	12-14
Fluids	12-9	Bulb chart	12-16
Engine coolant	12-10	Vehicle identification	12-20
Electrical system	12-10		
Tires	12-11		

Specifications

The following specifications are subject to change without notice.

■ Dimensions

Item		Petrol engine models			Diesel engine models
		2.0 L non-turbo models	2.5 L models	2.0 L turbo models	
Overall length		4,595 (180.9)			
Overall width		1,795 (70.7)			
Overall height		1,735 (68.3)* ²			
		1,685 (66.3)* ³			
Wheel base		2,640 (103.9)			
Tread	Front	1,545 (60.8)			
	Rear	1,550 (61.0)			
Ground clearance* ¹		220 (8.7)			

*1: Measured with vehicle empty
*2: Models with roof rails
*3: Models without roof rails

■ Engine

Engine model	Petrol engine			Diesel engine
	FB20 (2.0 L, DOHC, non-turbo)	FB25 (2.5 L, DOHC, non-turbo)	FA20 (2.0 L, DOHC, turbo)	EE20 (2.0 L, DOHC, turbo)
Engine type	Horizontally opposed, liquid cooled 4 cylinder, 4-stroke petrol engine			Horizontally opposed, liquid cooled 4 cylinder, 4-stroke diesel engine
Displacement cc (cu-in)	1,995 (121.7)	2,498 (152)	1,998 (121.9)	1,998 (121.9)
Bore × Stroke mm (in)	84.0 × 90.0 (3.31 × 3.54)	94.0 × 90.0 (3.7 × 3.5)	86.0 × 86.0 (3.39 × 3.39)	86.0 × 86.0 (3.39 × 3.39)
Compression ratio	10.5 : 1	10.0 : 1	10.6 : 1	16.0 : 1
Firing order	1 – 3 – 2 – 4			1 – 3 – 2 – 4

■ Fuel

Model			Fuel requirement	Fuel tank capacity
Non-turbo models	Australia models		Unleaded petrol with Research Octane number 90 or higher	60 liters (15.9 US gal, 13.2 Imp gal)
	Other models	2.0 L models	Unleaded petrol with Research Octane number 95 or higher * ¹	
		2.5 L models	Unleaded petrol with Research Octane number 90 or higher	
Turbo petrol engine models			Unleaded petrol with Research Octane number 95 or higher	
Diesel engine models			Diesel fuel with a specification of EN590 or an equivalent	

*1: If the specified grade fuel is not available, refer to "Fuel" 7-3.

■ Engine oil

For the checking, adding and replacing procedure or other details, refer to “Engine oil” 11-15.

NOTE

The procedure for changing the engine oil and oil filter should be performed by a properly-trained expert. It is recommended that you have this service performed by your SUBARU dealer.

▼ Approved engine oil

Always use the SUBARU approved engine oil. For further details, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer. If the approved engine oil is unavailable, use the alternative engine oil described on the next page.

▼ Alternative engine oil

If the SUBARU approved oil is unavailable, the following alternative oil can be used.

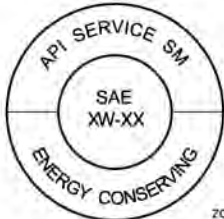
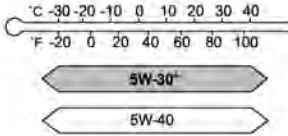
NOTE

Each quantity indicated here is only a guideline. The necessary quantity for replacement may differ slightly depending on the temperature and other factors.

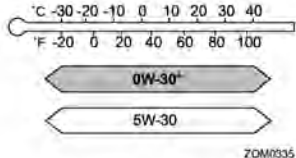
▽ Non-turbo models

Oil grade	SAE viscosity No. and applicable temperature	Oil capacity
API SERVICE SM SAE XW-XX ENERGY CONSERVING ZOM0297 or AMERICAN PETROLEUM INSTITUTE FOR GASOLINE ENGINES CERTIFIED ZOM0293 ILSAC GF-4 or GF-5, which can be identified with the ILSAC certification mark (Starburst mark) or ACEA specification A3 or A5	0W-20* engine oil is recommended for optimum engine performance and protection. 5W-30 or 5W-40 engine oil may be used if replenishment is needed. *: recommended ZOM0333	– Adding the oil from L to F level: 1.0 liter (1.1 US qt, 0.9 Imp qt) – Changing the oil and oil filter: 4.8 liters (5.1 US qt, 4.2 Imp qt)

▽ Turbo petrol engine models

Oil grade	SAE viscosity No. and applicable temperature	Engine oil capacity
 API classification SM or SN with the words "ENERGY CONSERVING" or "RESOURCE CONSERVING" or  ILSAC GF-4 or GF-5, which can be identified with the ILSAC certification mark (Starburst mark) or ACEA specification A3 or A5	5W-30* engine oil is recommended for optimum engine performance and protection. 5W-40 engine oil may be used if replenishment is needed.  *: recommended	· Adding the oil from L to F level: 1.0 liter (1.1 US qt, 0.9 Imp qt) · Changing the oil and oil filter: 5.1 liters (5.4 US qt, 4.6 Imp qt)

▽ Diesel engine models

Oil grade	SAE viscosity No. and applicable temperature	Oil capacity
ACEA specification C2 or C3	0W-30* engine oil is recommended for optimum engine performance and protection. 5W-30 engine oil may be used if replenishment is needed.  *: recommended	– Adding the oil from L to F level: 1.0 liter (1.1 US qt, 0.9 Imp qt) – Changing the oil and oil filter: 5.9 liters (6.2 US qt, 5.2 Imp qt)

Manual transmission, front differential and rear differential gear oil

Oil	Manual transmission oil	Front differential gear oil (CVT models)		Rear differential gear oil
Oil grade	SUBARU Extra MT*3 API classification GL-5 (75W-90)*4	API classification GL-5		
SAE viscosity No. and applicable temperature	—	°C -30 -20 -10 0 10 20 30 40 °F -20 0 20 40 60 80 100 90 75W/90 ZOM0347		
Oil capacity*1	3.3 liters (3.5 US qt, 2.9 Imp qt)	Non-turbo models	1.35 liters (1.43 US qt, 1.19 Imp qt)	0.8 liters (0.8 US qt, 0.7 Imp qt)
		Turbo models	1.4 liters (1.5 US qt, 1.2 Imp qt)	
Remarks*2	"Manual transmission oil" ⓘ11-26	"Front differential gear oil (CVT models)" ⓘ11-26		"Rear differential gear oil" ⓘ11-27

*1: The indicated oil quantity is only a guideline. The necessary quantity for replacement may differ slightly depending on the temperature and other factors. After refilling the gearbox with oil, the oil level should be checked.

*2: For more details about maintenance and service, refer to the indicated section.

*3: The vehicle is filled at the factory with this type of manual transmission oil.

*4: You may use this type of manual transmission oil. However, using this type of oil will detract from driveability and fuel efficiency.

■ Fluids

Fluid	Fluid type*1	Fluid capacity*2	Remarks*3
Continuously variable transmission fluid (CVT models)	We recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer.	Non-turbo models: 12.7 liters (13.4 US qt, 11.2 Imp qt)*4 12.2 liters (12.9 US qt, 10.7 Imp qt)*5 Turbo petrol engine models: 12.7 liters (13.4 US qt, 11.2 Imp qt)*6 12.4 liters (13.1 US qt, 10.9 Imp qt)*7	"Continuously variable transmission fluid" 11-26
Brake fluid	FMVSS No. 116, fresh DOT 3 or DOT 4 brake fluid	—	"Brake fluid" 11-27
Clutch fluid (MT models)		—	"Clutch fluid (MT models)" 11-28

*1: Use one of the indicated types of fluid.

*2: The indicated fluid quantity is only a guideline. The necessary quantity for replacement may differ slightly depending on the temperature and other factors.

*3: For more details about maintenance and service, refer to the indicated section.

*4: Models with Auto Start Stop system

*5: Models without Auto Start Stop system

*6: Models with CVTF cooler

*7: Models without CVTF cooler

■ Engine coolant

Models					Coolant capacity		Coolant type	
Petrol engine models	2.0 L non-turbo models	Models without valve heater	MT models		7.8 liters (8.2 US qt, 6.8 Imp qt)		SUBARU Super Coolant	
			CVT models		8.0 liters (8.5 US qt, 7.0 Imp qt)			
		Models with valve heater	CVT models		8.1 liters (8.6 US qt, 7.1 Imp qt)			
			MT models	RHD models	7.9 liters (8.3 US qt, 6.9 Imp qt)			
				LHD models	7.8 liters (8.2 US qt, 6.8 Imp qt)			
	2.5 L models		7.6 liters (8.0 US qt, 6.7 Imp qt)					
	Turbo models		8.9 liters (9.4 US qt, 7.8 Imp qt)					
Diesel engine models					8.8 liters (9.3 US qt, 7.7 Imp qt)			

The indicated coolant quantity is only a guideline. The necessary quantity for replacement may differ slightly depending on the temperature and other factors. For more details about maintenance and service, refer to "Cooling system" 11-19.

■ Electrical system

Battery type and capacity (5HR)	Petrol engine models	Models without Auto Start Stop system	12V-48AH (55D23L)
		Models with Auto Start Stop system	12V-52AH (Q-85)
	Diesel engine models		12V-64AH (95D26L)
Alternator	Petrol engine models	12V-130A	
	Diesel engine models	12V-150A	
Spark plugs (petrol engine models)	Non-turbo models		SILZKAR7B11 (NGK)
	Turbo models		ILKAR8H6 (NGK)

■ Tires

For the tire specifications, see the tire pressure label located on the door pillar on the driver's side.

■ Temporary spare tires

Temporary spare tire size	T145/80D17	185/65R17
Temporary spare tire inflation pressure (recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	420 kPa (4.2 kgf/cm ² , 60 psi)	290 kPa (2.9 kgf/cm ² , 42 psi)
Wheel nut tightening torque	120 N·m (12 kgf·m, 89 lbf·ft)*1 *2	

*1: This torque is equivalent to applying approximately 40 to 50 kgf (88 to 110 lbf) at the end of the wheel nut wrench. If you have tightened the wheel nuts by yourself, have the tightening torque checked at the nearest automotive service facility as soon as possible.

*2: For the wheel nut tightening procedure, refer to "Changing flat tire" 9-5.

■ Wheel alignment

We recommend that you have your SUBARU dealer check or adjust the wheel alignment.

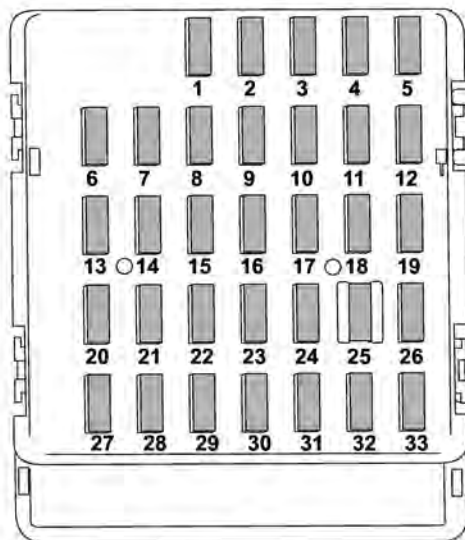
Item		Petrol engine models			Diesel engine models
		2.0 L non-turbo models	2.5 L models	2.0 L turbo models	
Toe	Front	0 mm (0 in), Toe angle (sum of both wheels): 0°			
	Rear	3 mm (0.12 in), Toe angle (sum of both wheels): 0°15'			
Camber	Front	0°00'			
	Rear	-1°00'			

■ Brake disc

If you need information on the usage limit value of brake discs and the method for measuring them, we recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer.

Fuses and circuits

■ Fuse panel located in the passenger compartment



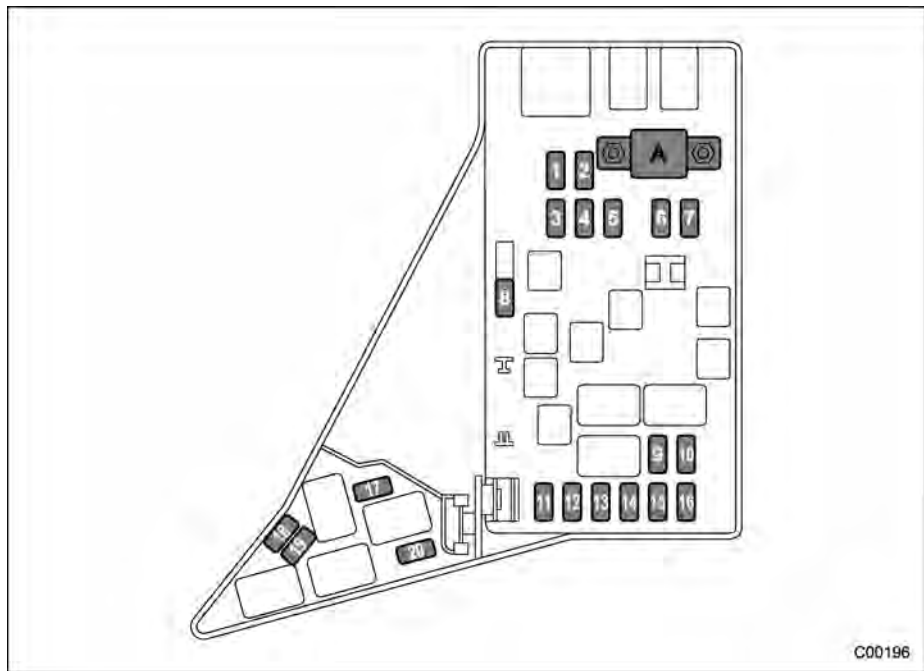
C00123

Fuse panel	Fuse rating	Circuit
1	20A	• Rear fog light • Trailer
2	Empty	
3	15A	• Door locking
4	10A	• Front wiper deicer relay
5	10A	• Combination meter • Clock
6	7.5A	• Remote control rear view mirrors
7	15A	• Integrated unit
8	15A	• Stop light
9	15A	• Front wiper deicer
10	7.5A	• Power supply (battery)
11	7.5A	• Turn signal unit
12	15A	• Transmission control unit • Engine control unit • Integrated unit
13	20A	• Accessory power outlet (center console)
14	15A	• Position light • Tail light • Rear combination light

Fuse panel	Fuse rating	Circuit
15	10A	- Keyless unit - Cargo area light
16	7.5A	Illumination
17	15A	Seat heaters
18	10A	Back-up light
19	7.5A	Daytime running light
20	10A	Accessory power outlet (instrument panel)
21	7.5A	- Starter relay - Auto Start Stop control unit
22	10A	- Air conditioner - Rear window defogger relay coil
23	Empty	
24	10A	- Audio (models without Auto Start Stop system) - Navigation system (models without Auto Start Stop system)
25	15A	SRS airbag system
26	7.5A	- Power window relay - Radiator main fan relay
27	15A	Blower fan
28	15A	Blower fan
29	15A	Fog light

Fuse panel	Fuse rating	Circuit
30	Empty	
31	7.5A	- Auto air conditioner unit - Integrated unit
32	7.5A	Clutch
33	7.5A	ABS/Vehicle Dynamics Control unit

■ Fuse panel located in the engine compartment

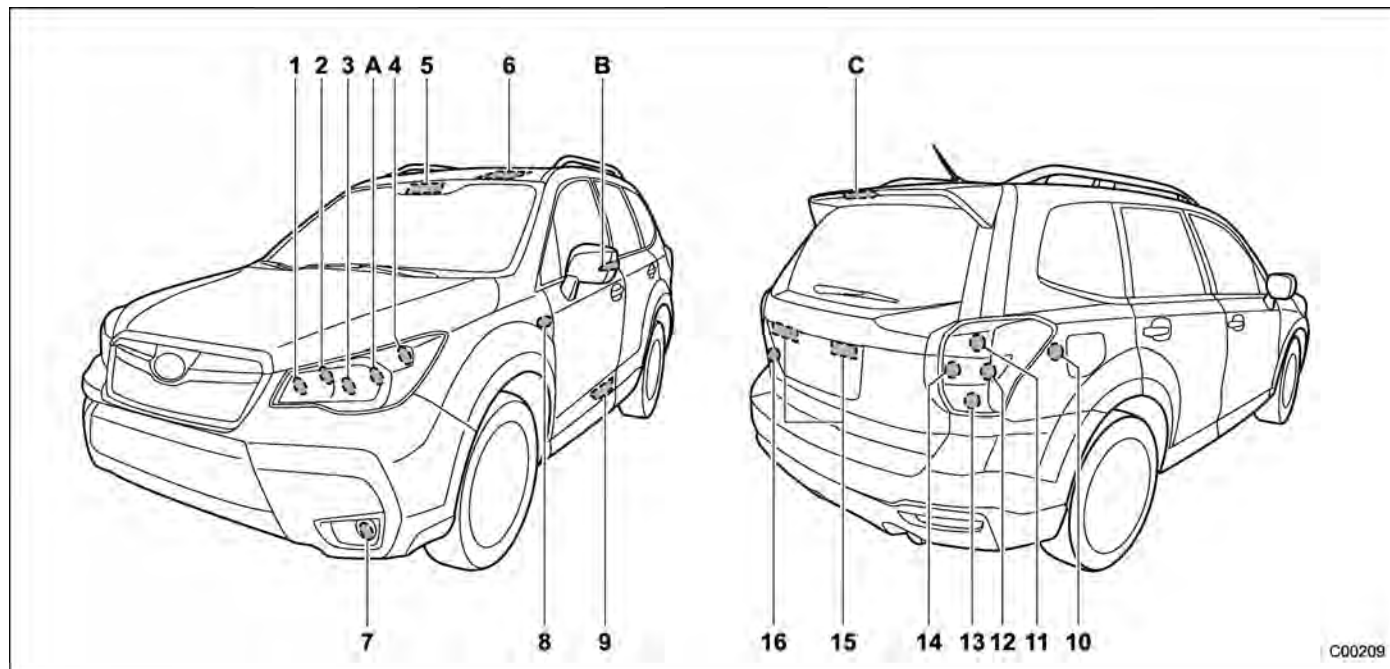


A) Main fuse

Fuse panel	Fuse rating	Circuit
1	30A	• ABS unit • Vehicle Dynamics Control unit
2	25A	• Main fan (cooling fan)
3	25A	• Sub fan (cooling fan)
4	Empty	
5	25A	• Audio
6	30A	• Headlight (low beam)
7	15A	• Headlight (high beam)
8	20A	• Back-up
9	15A	• Horn
10	25A	• Rear window defogger • Mirror heater
11	20A	• Fuel pump
12	20A	• Continuously variable transmission control unit
13	7.5A	• Engine control unit
14	15A	• Turn and hazard warning flasher
15	15A	• Tail and illumination relay
16	7.5A	• Alternator

Fuse panel	Fuse rating	Circuit
17	Empty	
18	Empty	
19	15A	● Headlight (low beam – right hand)
20	15A	● Headlight (low beam – left hand)

Bulb chart



C00209

NOTE

Lights A, B and C are the LED (Light Emitting Diode) type. We recommend that you consult your SUBARU dealer for replacement.

	Wattage	Bulb No.*
1) High beam headlight	12V-60W	HB3
2) Front position light (if equipped)	12V-5W	W5W
3) Low beam headlight		
Models with HID light	12V-35W	D4R
Models with halogen light	12V-55W	H11
4) Front turn signal light	12V-21W	WY21W
5) Map light	12V-8W	—
6) Dome light	12V-8W	—
7) Type A		
Front fog light	12V-19W	H16
Type B		
Front fog light	12V-35W	H8
Daytime running light	12V-13W	P13W
Type C		
Daytime running light	12V-13W	P13W
8) Side turn signal light (if equipped)	12V-5W	W5W
9) Door step light	12V-5W	—
10) Cargo area light	12V-5W	—
11) Brake/Tail light	12V-21/5W	W21/5W
12) Rear turn signal light	12V-21W	WY21W
13) Rear fog light (right-hand drive models) (if equipped)	12V-21W	W21/5W
14) Back-up light	12V-16W	W16W
15) Licence plate light	12V-5W	W5W
16) Rear fog light (left-hand drive models) (if equipped)	12V-21W	W21/5W

- A) Front position light (if equipped)
- B) Side turn signal light (if equipped)
- C) High mount stop light

*: ECE specification

Wattage	Bulb No.*
—	—
—	—
—	—



WARNING

- **Bulbs may become very hot while illuminated. Before replacing bulbs, turn off the lights and wait until the bulbs cool down. Otherwise, there is a risk of sustaining a burn injury.**
- **For models with HID low beam headlights, observe the following precautions. Not doing so carries the risk of an electric shock that could result in serious injury because the HID bulbs use an extremely high voltage.**
 - Do not replace any headlight bulbs (both low beam and high beam) by yourself.
 - Do not remove/restore the headlight assemblies by yourself.
 - Do not remove any headlight-assembly components by yourself.

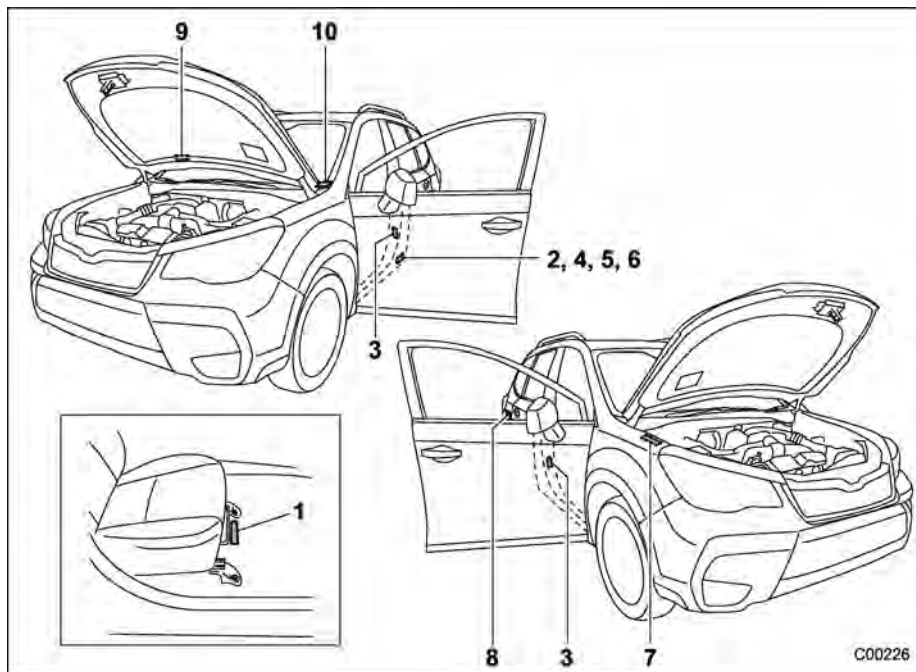
For replacement, we recommend that you contact your SUBARU dealer.



CAUTION

Replace any bulb only with a new bulb of the specified wattage. Using a bulb of different wattage could result in a fire.

Vehicle identification

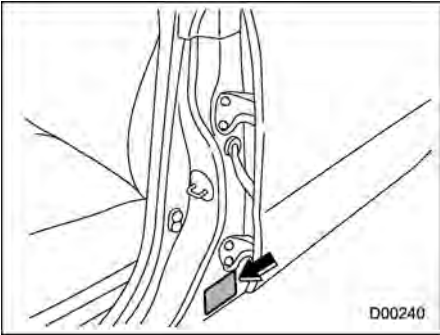


- 1) Vehicle identification number
- 2) ID label (Europe and Russia models)
- 3) Tire inflation pressure label
- 4) Year of manufacture label (Middle East models)
- 5) Model number label (General models)
- 6) Built date label (Australia models)
- 7) ADR compliance plate (Australia models)
- 8) Fuel label
- 9) Air conditioner label
- 10) Vehicle identification number plate

Year of manufacture (Middle East models only).....	13-2
ID label (Russia models).....	13-2
Speed limit, maximum torque and maximum power at rpm (Middle East models only).....	13-2
Fuel consumption and CO ₂ -emissions (EU only)	13-3
Declaration of conformity in accordance with the radio and telecommunications terminal equipment directive 1999/5/EC	13-4
Transmitter for the keyless entry system.....	13-4

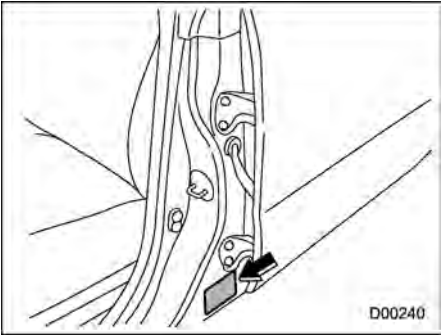
Receiver for the keyless entry system	13-5
Immobilizer.....	13-6
LF Oscillator.....	13-8
Bluetooth® module.....	13-9
Technical information for Singapore models.....	13-10
Access key.....	13-10
Remote keyless entry transmitter	13-10
Keyless access with push-button start system	13-10
Push-button ignition switch.....	13-11

Year of manufacture (Middle East models only)



The calendar year when your vehicle was manufactured is indicated in the “Year of manufacture label” attached to the driver’s door jam.

ID label (Russia models)



The ID label is located on the left side center pillar as shown in the illustration.

Speed limit, maximum torque and maximum power at rpm (Middle East models only)

Model	2.5 L models
	CVT
Speed limit km/h	196
Maximum torque N·m (kgf·m)/rpm	235 (24.0) /4,100
Maximum power kW (PS)/rpm	126 (172) /5,800

- The performance data above is the numeric value measured according to the GSO-ISO-1585-2008 quality norm.
- The performance data above is the numeric value measured from petrol with an octane rating of 95 (Research Octane number).

Fuel consumption and CO₂-emissions (EU only)

Models that conform to “Euro 5”

Model and Type			Fuel consumption according to Regulation (EC) No. 715/2007 - 459/2012J (L/100km)			CO ₂ -emissions according to Regulation (EC) No. 715/2007 - 459/2012J (g/km)		
			Urban	Extra-urban	Total	Urban	Extra-urban	Total
Non-turbo models	Models with 17-inch wheel tires	6MT	8.5	6.0	6.9	197	140	160
		CVT	8.1	5.5	6.5	188	129	150
	Models with 18-inch wheel tires	6MT	8.6	6.1	7.0	199	142	162
		CVT	8.2	5.7	6.6	189	133	153
Turbo petrol engine models		CVT	11.2	7.0	8.5	260	161	197
Diesel engine models	Models with 17-inch wheel tires	6MT	7.0	4.9	5.7	185	130	150
	Models with 18-inch wheel tires	6MT	7.3	5.2	5.9	191	136	156

Declaration of conformity in accordance with the radio and telecommunications terminal equipment directive 1999/5/EC

■ Transmitter for the keyless entry system

 Calsonic Kansai CalsonicKansai Corp. 2-1917, Nishin-cho, Kita-ku, Suitama-shi, Suitama-ken 331-8501, Japan TEL: +81-48-660-4073 FAX: +81-48-661-1026	
DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY	
We, CalsonicKansai Corp. of the above address, hereby declare, at our sole responsibility, that the following product conforms to the Essential Requirements of the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 1999/5/EC in accordance with the tests conducted to the appropriate requirements of the relevant standards, as listed herewith.	
Product:	Keyless Entry System (Transmitter)
Model/ Type Number:	TF001
Directive and Standards used:	Radio: EN 300 220-1 V2.3.1 (2010-02) EN 300 220-2 V2.3.1 (2010-02) EMC : EN 301 489-1 V1.4.1 (2008-04) EN 301 489-3 V1.4.1 (2002-08) Safety: EN 60065 :2002 + Amd.1 :2006 Incl. EN60065:2002+Amd.1:2008
Year of affixing CE marking:	2011
Signature	: <i>Haruyoshi Hayashi</i>
Name	: Haruyoshi Hayashi
Position	: Deputy General Manager Electric Design Group
Date	: August 27, 2011
CAUTION - Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type. CAUTION - Do not exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like.	
D00222	

■ Receiver for the keyless entry system



Calsonic Kasei Corp.
2-1917, Nishino-cho, Kita-ku, Saitama-shi, Saitama-ken
331-8501, Japan
TEL : +81-48-660-4073 FAX : +81-48-661-1026

DECLARATION of CONFORMITY

We, CalsonicKasei Corp. of the above address, hereby declare, at our sole responsibility, that the following product conforms to the Essential Requirements of the Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 1999/5/EC in accordance with the tests conducted to the appropriate requirements of the relevant standards, as listed herewith.

Product: Keyless Entry System (Receiver)
Model/ Type Number: GSRE152
Directive and Standards used:
Radio: EN 300 220-1 V2.3.1 (2010-02)
EN 300 220-2 V2.3.1 (2010-02)
EMC : EN 301 489-1 V1.8.1(2008-04)
EN 301 489-3 V1.4.1 (2002-08)
Safety: EN 60065 :2002 + Amd.1 :2006
Incl. EN60065:2002+Amd.1:2008

Year of affixing CE marking: 2011

Signature : *Haruyoshi Hayashi*
Name : Haruyoshi Hayashi
Position : Deputy General Manager
Electric Design Group
Date : August 27, 2011

D00223

■ Immobilizer

	FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD. SUBARU ENGINEERING DIVISION 1-1 SUBARU-CHO OTA GUNMA 374 8665 JAPAN Fax: +81 276 26 3292	R&TTE Declaration of Conformity	
We,			
Manufacturer's Name: Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd.			
Manufacturer's Address: 1-7-2, Nishishinjuku, Shinjuku, Tokyo, 160-8316 Japan			
hereby declare under our sole responsibility that the product:			
Product Name: Immobilizer			
Product Model: SSPIMB02			
to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the R&TTE Directive (1999/5/EC). The product is compliant with the following standards and/or other normative documents:			
-Health & safety requirements: EN60950-1			
-EMC requirements: EN301 489-1 & EN301 489-3			
-Effective uses of radio spectrum: EN300 330-2			
Supplementary Information:			
* CE mark			
* Member states intended for use	EU and EFTA		
Date: November 24, 2010			
Signature: <u>Takashi Nishida</u>			
		Takashi Nishida	

D00199

Immobilizer for models with “Keyless access with push-button start system”

Hereby, Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., declares that this SSPIMB02 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

TOKAI RIKI

R&TTE Declaration of Conformity

We,

Manufacturer's Name: Tokai Rika Co., Ltd.
Manufacturer's Address: 260, Toyota 3-chome, Oguchi-cho, Niwa-gun, Aichi-ken,
480-0195, Japan

hereby declare under our sole responsibility that the product:

Product Name: Immobilizer
Product Model: RI-38BFH

to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the R&TTE Directive (1999/5/EC). The product is compliant with the following standards and/or other normative documents:

Safety: EN60950-1
EMC: EN301 489-1 & -3
Spectrum: EN300 330-2

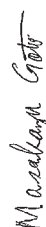
Supplementary information:

* CE mark	
* Member states intended for use	EU and EFTA
* Member states with restrictive use	None

Date:

1 October 2010

Signature:



Position of the signatory:
Masakazu Goto
General Manager,
Electronics Engineering Div.

D00200

Immobilizer for models without "Keyless access with push-button start system"

Hereby, Tokai Rika Co., Ltd., declares that this RI-38BFH is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

■ LF Oscillator

	FUJI HEAVY INDUSTRIES LTD. SUBARU ENGINEERING DIVISION 1-1 SUBARU-CHO OTA GUNMA 372-8555 JAPAN Fax: +81 276-26-3262	R&TTE Declaration of Conformity	We, Manufacturer's Name: Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd. Manufacturer's Address: 1-7-2, Nishishinjuku, Shinjuku, Tokyo, 160-8316 Japan hereby declare under our sole responsibility that the product: Product Name: LF Oscillator Product Model: SSPLF02 to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the R&TTE Directive (1999/5/EC). The product is compliant with the following standards and/or other normative documents: -Health & safety requirements: EN60950-1 -EMC requirements: EN301 489-1 & EN301 489-3 -Effective uses of radio spectrum: EN300 330-2 Supplementary information:
---	---	---	--

* CE mark CE	* Member states intended for use EU and EFTA
---	--

Date: November 24, 2010

Signature: Takashi Nishida
Takashi Nishida

D00198

LF Oscillator for models with “Keyless access with push-button start system”

Hereby, Fuji Heavy Industries Ltd., declares that this SSPLF02 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

Bluetooth® module



Clarion Co., Ltd.
■ Head Office / Technology Center
1-5-50 Higashi-Chuoh, Sakuma-shi, Sakuma 330-0081, Japan
Tel: +81-57-23-1111
■ Manufacturing Office
1-2-1 Minami-Tsutsui, Sakuma-shi, Sakuma 330-8002, Japan
Tel: +81-57-23-7790

EC DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

Document No. 12DC-CT01

We, **Clarion Co., Ltd.**,

(manufacturer)

7-2, Shintoshin, Chuo-ku, Sakuma-shi, Sakuma 330-0081, Japan.

(address)

declare under our sole responsibility that the product

Car Radio with CD Player

Model: PF-3488 / PF-3489 / PF-3490

PF-3492 / PF-3493 / PF-3494 / PF-3495

(name, type or models, possibly sources and numbers of items)

to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the following standard(s)
or other normative document(s)

- EN 300 328 V1.7.1
- EN 301 489-1 V1.8.1
- EN 301 489-17 V1.3.2
- EN 55013:2001 + A1:2003 + A2:2006
- EN 55020:2007
- EN 60950-1:2006 Incl. EN 60950-1:2006 + Amd.11:2009

(title and/or number and date of issue of the standard(s) or other normative document(s))

(if applicable) following the provisions of Directive **1999/5/EC**.

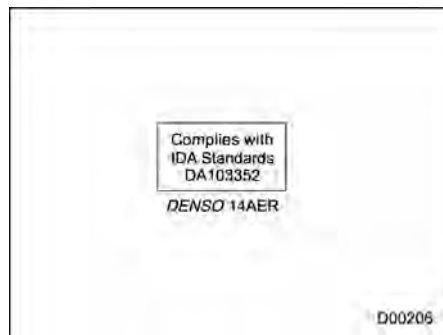
Regarding EN 55013 and EN 55020, refer to the official Journal of EMC Directive.

Sakuma, Japan
3, August, 2012
(Place and date of issue)

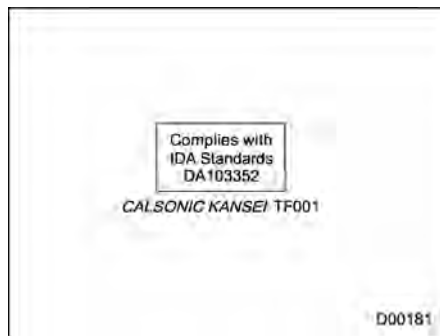
Taro Nishimura
Taro Nishimura
Department Manager, R&D Division
(name and signature or equivalent
marking of authorized person)

Technical information for Singapore models

■ Access key



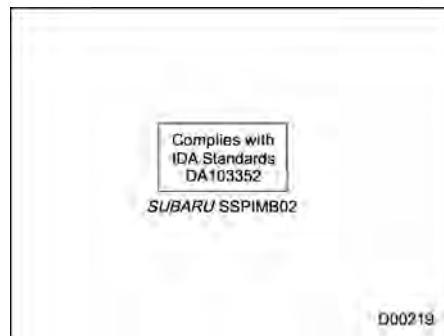
■ Remote keyless entry transmitter

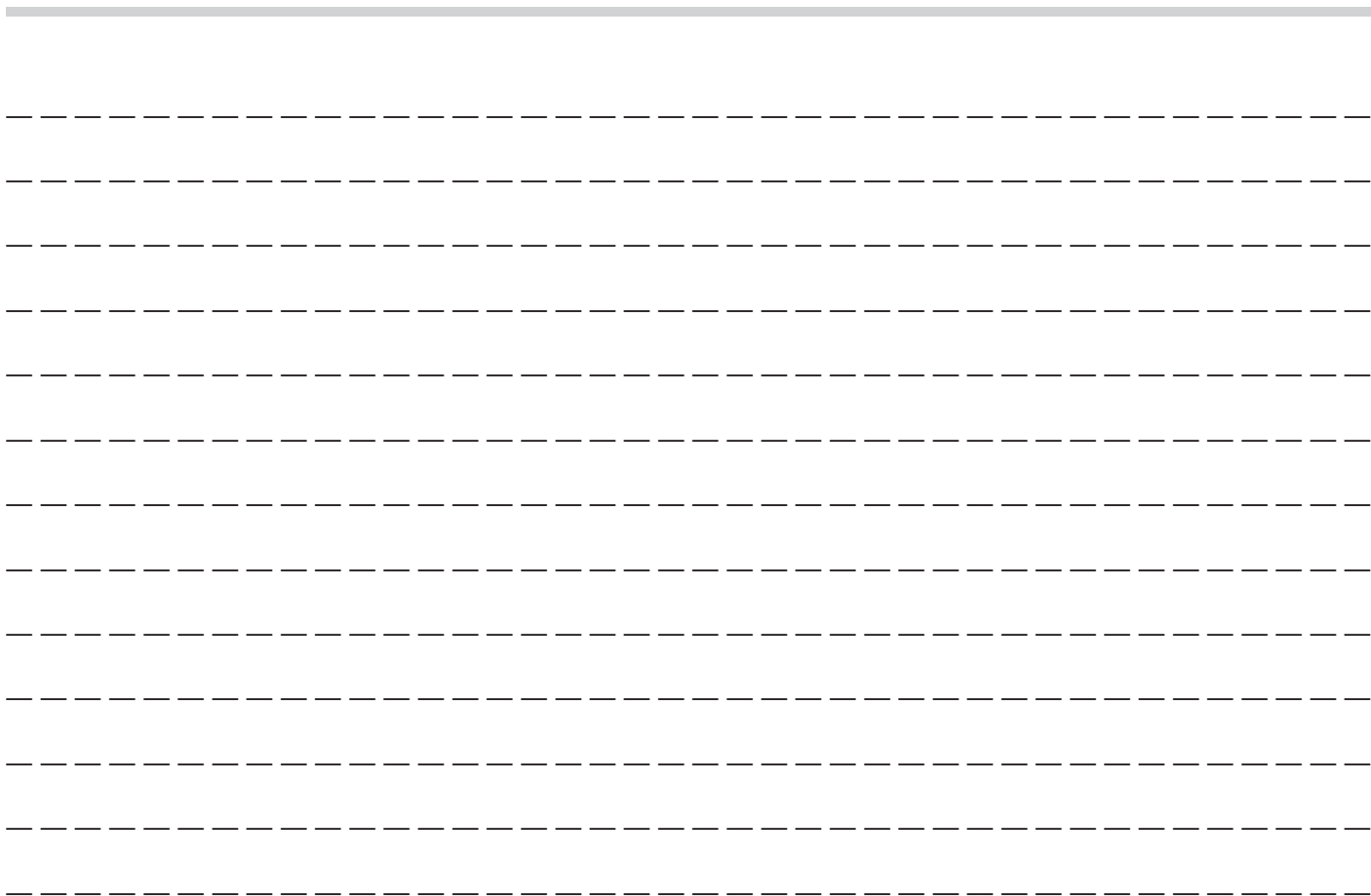


■ Keyless access with push-button start system



■ Push-button ignition switch





A

Abbreviation	2
ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)	7-28
Warning light	3-20
Access key	2-7
Warning light	3-25
Accessories	5-4, 11-47
Accessory power outlet	6-9
Additional information for Europe	8-23
Air cleaner element	11-22
Air conditioner	
Automatic climate control	4-6
Manual climate control	4-7
Air filtration system	4-12
Air flow mode	4-7
All-Wheel Drive warning light	3-24
Aluminum wheel	11-38
Cleaning	10-4
Antenna system	5-3
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)	7-28
Armrest	1-8
Ashtray	6-11
AT OIL TEMP warning light	3-19
Audio	
Antenna system	5-3
Auxiliary input jack	5-19
Bluetooth® audio	5-30
CD player operation	5-14
Control button	5-27
FM/AM radio operation	5-10
iPod® operations	5-22

Power and sound controls	5-7
Set	5-4
USB storage device operations	5-22
Auto Start Stop system	7-44
Indicator light	3-34
OFF indicator light	3-34
Warning light	3-34
Automatic headlight beam leveler	3-93
Warning light	3-25
Automatic rain sensing windshield wipers	
Sensor	3-101
Sensor sensitivity control	3-101
Automatic transmission	
Fluid	12-9
Oil temperature warning light (AT OIL TEMP)	3-19
Automatic/Emergency Locking Retractor (A/ELR)	1-14
Auxiliary input jack	5-19

B

Battery	11-44
Disposal and recycling	8
Drainage prevention function	2-5
Jump starting	9-8
Replacement (access key)	11-54
Replacement (transmitter)	11-55
Bluetooth® audio	5-30
Booster seat	1-36
Bottle holder	6-8
Brake	
Assist	7-27
Booster	7-26, 11-29

Fluid	11-27, 12-9
Pad and lining	11-31
Parking	7-36, 11-32
Pedal	11-29
System	7-26
Brake pedal	
Free play	11-29
Reserve distance	11-29
Brake system	7-26
Warning light	3-22
Braking	7-26
Tips	7-26
Breaking-in of new brake pads and linings	11-31
Bulb	
Chart	12-16
Replacing	11-47
C	
Cargo area	
Cover	6-14
Light	6-2
Tie-down hooks	6-16
Catalytic converter	8-3
Center	
Console	6-6
Changing	
Coolant	11-21
Flat tire	9-5
Oil and oil filter	11-17
Charge warning light	3-18

Checking	
Brake pedal free play	11-29
Brake pedal reserve distance	11-29
Clutch function	11-30
Clutch pedal free play	11-30
Coolant level	11-20
Fluid level (brake fluid)	11-27
Fluid level (clutch fluid)	11-28
Fluid level (washer fluid)	11-38
Oil level (engine oil)	11-15
Child restraint systems	1-23
Installation of a booster seat	1-36
Installation with seatbelt	1-30
ISOFIX anchor bars	1-37
Top tether anchorages	1-39
Child safety	4
Locks	2-22
Chime	
Key	3-5
Light	3-89
Seatbelt	3-13
Cigarette lighter	6-10
Cleaning	
Aluminum wheels	10-4
Interior	10-5
Ventilation grille	4-10
Climate control system	4-3
Automatic	4-6
Manual	4-7
Clock	3-40

Clutch	
Fluid.....	11-28, 12-9
Pedal.....	11-30
Coat hook.....	6-12
Console.....	6-6
Continuously variable transmission.....	7-16
Fluid.....	11-26, 12-9
Coolant.....	11-20, 12-10
Temperature high warning light.....	3-17
Temperature low indicator light.....	3-17
Cooling system.....	11-19
Corrosion protection.....	10-4
Cruise control.....	7-40
Indicator light.....	3-31
Set indicator light.....	3-32
Cup holder.....	6-7
Front passenger's.....	6-7
Rear passenger's.....	6-7

D

Daytime running light system.....	3-92
Declaration of conformity in accordance with the radio and telecommunications terminal equipment directive 1999/5/EC.....	13-4
Defogger.....	3-106
Defrosting.....	4-10
Deicer.....	3-106
Diesel fuel.....	7-3
Diesel particulate filter.....	8-4
Warning light.....	3-33

Differential gear oil	
Front.....	11-26, 12-8
Rear.....	11-27, 12-8
Dimensions.....	12-2
Disc brake pad wear warning indicators.....	7-27
Dome light.....	6-2
Door	
Locks.....	2-4
Open warning light.....	3-24
Double locking system.....	2-19
Double trip meter.....	3-10
Drive belts.....	11-25
Driving	
All-Wheel Drive model.....	8-8
All-Wheel Drive warning light.....	3-24
Car phone/cell phone.....	6
Drinking.....	5
Drugs.....	6
Foreign countries.....	8-5
Pets.....	7
Snowy and icy roads.....	8-13
Tips.....	7-16, 7-22, 8-2, 8-8
Tired or sleepy.....	6
Winter.....	8-12

E

ECO gauge.....	3-11
Electrical system.....	12-10
Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system.....	7-29
Warning.....	3-22
Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR).....	1-14

EN590	7-3
Engine	
Compartment overview	11-12
Coolant	11-20, 12-10
Exhaust gas (carbon monoxide)	5, 8-2
Hood	11-10
Low oil level warning light	3-18
Oil	11-15, 12-4
Overheating	9-11
Starting & stopping	7-7, 7-10
Exterior care	10-2

F

Flat tires	9-5
Floor mat	6-11
Fluid level	
Brake	11-27
Clutch	11-28
Continuously variable transmission	11-26
Folding mirror switch	3-106
Front	
Differential gear oil	11-26, 12-8
Seatbelt pretensioners	1-21
Turn signal light	11-49
Front fog light	3-96, 11-50
Bulb	11-50, 12-16
Indicator light	3-32
Switch	3-96
Front seats	1-2
Forward and backward adjustment	1-4
Head restraint adjustment	1-5

Power seat	1-5
Reclining	1-4
Seat height adjustment (driver's seat)	1-4
Fuel	7-3
Consumption and CO ₂ -emissions (EU only)	13-3
Consumption indicator	3-34, 3-44
Economy hints	8-2
Filler lid and cap	7-4
Filter warning light	3-32
Gauge	3-11
Requirements	7-3, 12-3
Fuel filter warning light (diesel engine models)	3-32
Fuses	11-46
Fuses and circuits	12-12

G

Glove box	6-5
-----------------	-----

H

Hands-free system	5-33
Hazard warning flasher	3-8, 9-2
Head restraint adjustment	
Front seat	1-5
Rear seat	1-8
Headlight	
Beam leveler	3-93
Bulb replacing	11-48
Bulb wattage	12-16
Control switch	3-89
Flasher	3-91
Indicator light	3-32

Washer	3-104
HID headlights	1, 11-48
High beam indicator light	3-31
High/low beam change (dimmer)	3-91
Hill descent control	7-33
Indicator light	3-32
Hill start assist	7-37, 11-30
OFF indicator light	3-23
To activate/deactivate	7-38
Warning light	3-23
Hook	
Cargo tie-down	6-16
Coat	6-12
Convenient	6-13
Shopping bag	6-13
Towing and tie-down	9-12
Horn	3-109
Hose and connections	11-20

I

Ignition switch	3-4
Light	3-5
Illumination brightness control	3-93
Immobilizer	2-2
Indicator light	3-30
Indicator light	
Auto Start Stop	3-34
Auto Start Stop OFF	3-34
Coolant temperature low	3-17
Cruise control	3-31
Cruise control set	3-32

Front fog light	3-32
Headlight	3-32
High beam	3-31
Hill descent control	3-32
Hill start assist OFF	3-23
Immobilizer	3-30
Preheating	3-32
Rear fog light	3-32
Rear seatbelt	3-15
Security (immobilizer)	3-30
Select lever/Gear position	3-31
Shift-up	3-30
SI-DRIVE	3-30
Turn signal	3-31
Vehicle Dynamics Control OFF	3-22
Vehicle Dynamics Control operation	3-21
X-mode	3-32
Information display	3-34
Inside mirror	3-105
Interior lights	6-2
iPod® operations	5-22
ISOFIX anchor bars	1-37

J

Jack and jack handle	9-4
Jack-up point	9-5
Jump starting	9-8

K

Key	2-2
Number	2-2

Reminder chime.....	3-5
Replacement	2-3
Keyless access entry function.....	2-11
Keyless access with push-button start system	2-7
Disabling keyless access functions.....	2-15
Locking and unlocking doors	2-11
Opening rear gate	2-13
Warning chimes and warning light.....	3-25
When access key does not operate properly	9-16
Keyless entry system	2-16

L

Leather seat materials	10-5
License plate light.....	11-53
Light	
Back-up.....	11-52
Cargo area.....	6-2
Control switch.....	3-89
Daytime running.....	3-92, 11-50
Dome	6-2
Fog (front).....	3-96, 11-50
Fog (rear)	3-97, 11-52
Front position	3-90, 11-49
Ignition switch.....	3-5
License plate	11-53
Map	6-2
Rear combination.....	11-52
Stop	11-52
Stop light	11-52
Tail.....	11-52
Tail light.....	11-52

Turn signal	3-92, 11-49, 11-52
Loading your vehicle.....	8-16
Low fuel warning light	3-23

M

Maintenance	
Precautions	11-7
Schedule	11-3
Seatbelt.....	1-21
Tips	11-9
Tools.....	9-3
Malfunction indicator light (Check Engine light).....	3-16
Manual	
Climate control.....	4-6
Mode (continuously variable transmission).....	7-19
Seat.....	1-4
Transmission	7-13
Transmission oil	11-26, 12-8
Map light	6-2
Meters and gauges.....	3-8
Mirror defogger	3-106
Mirrors	3-105
Multi function display.....	3-40

N

New vehicle break-in driving	8-2
------------------------------------	-----

O

Odometer	3-9
Oil filter	11-17

Oil level	
Engine.....	11-15
Front differential gear	11-26
Manual transmission.....	11-26
Rear differential gear	11-27
Warning light	3-18
Oil pressure warning light.....	3-18
On-road and off-road driving.....	7, 8-10
Outside	
Mirror defogger	3-106
Mirrors.....	3-105
Temperature indicator	3-35
Overhead console.....	6-6
Overheating engine.....	9-11

P

Parking	
Brake	7-36
Brake stroke.....	11-32
Tips.....	7-36
Periodic inspections	8-5
Petrol fuel	7-3
Power	
Door locking switch	2-6
Outlets.....	6-9
Outside mirrors.....	3-105
Rear gate.....	2-27, 9-18
Seat	1-5
Steering.....	7-25
Steering fluid.....	12-9
Steering warning light.....	3-24

Windows	2-22
Precautions against vehicle modification.....	1-23, 1-64
Preheating indicator light	3-32
Preparing to drive	7-6
Priming pump	9-20, 11-14
Push-button	
Ignition switch	3-6
Starting and stopping engine.....	7-10

R

Rear	
Combination lights	11-52
Differential gear oil.....	11-27, 12-8
Fog light switch	3-97
Gate	2-25, 9-17
Turn signal light.....	11-52
Rear differential	
Oil temperature warning light	3-19
Rear fog light	3-97
Indicator light	3-32
Rear seat	1-7
Folding down	1-10
Head restraint adjustment.....	1-8
Reclining	1-12
Rear view camera	6-17
Rear window	
Defogger	3-106
Wiper and washer switch.....	3-103
Wiper blades.....	11-42
Recommended	
Automatic transmission fluid.....	12-9

Brake fluid.....	12-9
Clutch fluid.....	11-28, 12-9
Engine oil.....	12-4
Front differential gear oil	12-8
Manual transmission oil	12-8
Power steering fluid.....	12-9
Rear differential gear oil.....	12-8
Spark plugs.....	12-10
Refueling	7-4
Remote keyless entry system	2-16
Replacement	
Brake pad and lining	11-31
Wiper blades	11-40
Replacing	
Access key battery.....	11-54
Air cleaner element	11-22
Remote keyless entry transmitter battery.....	11-55
Replacing bulbs	11-47, 12-16
Back-up light	11-52
Brake/tail light.....	11-52
Daytime running light.....	11-50
Front fog light.....	11-50
Front position light.....	11-49
Front turn signal light.....	11-49
Headlight	11-48
License plate light	11-53
Rear combination light.....	11-52
Rear side marker light	11-52
Rear turn signal light	11-52
Side turn signal light.....	11-51
Stop light	11-52

Tail light.....	11-52
Rocking the vehicle	8-15
Roof molding and load carrier	8-16
Roof rails.....	8-18
Running out of fuel	9-20

S

Safety

Precautions when driving.....	3
Symbol.....	2
Warnings	2

Seat

Fabric	10-5
Front.....	1-2
Heater.....	1-6
Height adjustment.....	1-4
Power	1-5
Rear	1-7

Seatbelt.....	3, 1-13
Fastening	1-15
Maintenance	1-21
Pretensioners.....	1-21
Safety tips	1-13
Warning light and chime	3-13

Security

Immobilizer	2-2
Indicator light (immobilizer)	3-30

Select lever

Position indicator	3-31
Shift lock function	7-21
Shift-up indicator light.....	3-30

Shopping bag hook	6-13
SI-DRIVE	7-22
Indicator light	3-30
Skid suppression function	7-30
Snow tires	8-14, 11-32
Snowy and icy roads	8-13
Spark plugs	11-25, 12-10
Specifications	12-2
Speed limit, maximum torque and maximum power at rpm (Middle East models only)	13-2
Speedometer	3-9
SRS	
Frontal airbag	1-50
SRS airbag (Supplemental Restraint System airbag) ...	3, 1-40
SRS airbag system	
Monitors	1-62
Servicing	1-63
Warning light	3-15
Starting & stopping engine	7-7, 7-10
Steering wheel	
Power	7-25
Tilt/telescopic	3-108
Stop light	11-52
Storage compartment	6-5
Sun shade	2-33
Sun visors	6-4
Sunroof	2-32
Supplemental Restraint System airbag (SRS)	1-40
Synthetic leather upholstery	10-6

T

Tachometer	3-10
Temperature warning light	
AT OIL TEMP	3-19
Coolant	3-17
Rear differential oil	3-19
Temporary spare tire	9-2, 12-11
Tether (child restraint system)	1-39
Tie-down hooks	9-12
Tire	
Chains	8-15
Inspection	11-32
Pressures and wear	11-33
Replacement	11-36
Rotation	11-36
Size and pressure	12-11
Types	11-32
Tires and wheels	11-32
Tools	9-3
Top tether anchorages	1-39
Towing	9-12
All wheels on the ground	9-15
Flat-bed truck	9-14
Hooks	9-12
Weight	8-19
Traction control function	7-30
Trailer	
Hitch	8-19
Towing	8-18
Towing tips	8-21
Trip meter	3-10

Turn signal	
Indicator lights	3-31
Lever	3-92

U

Under-floor storage compartment	6-17
USB storage device operations	5-22

V

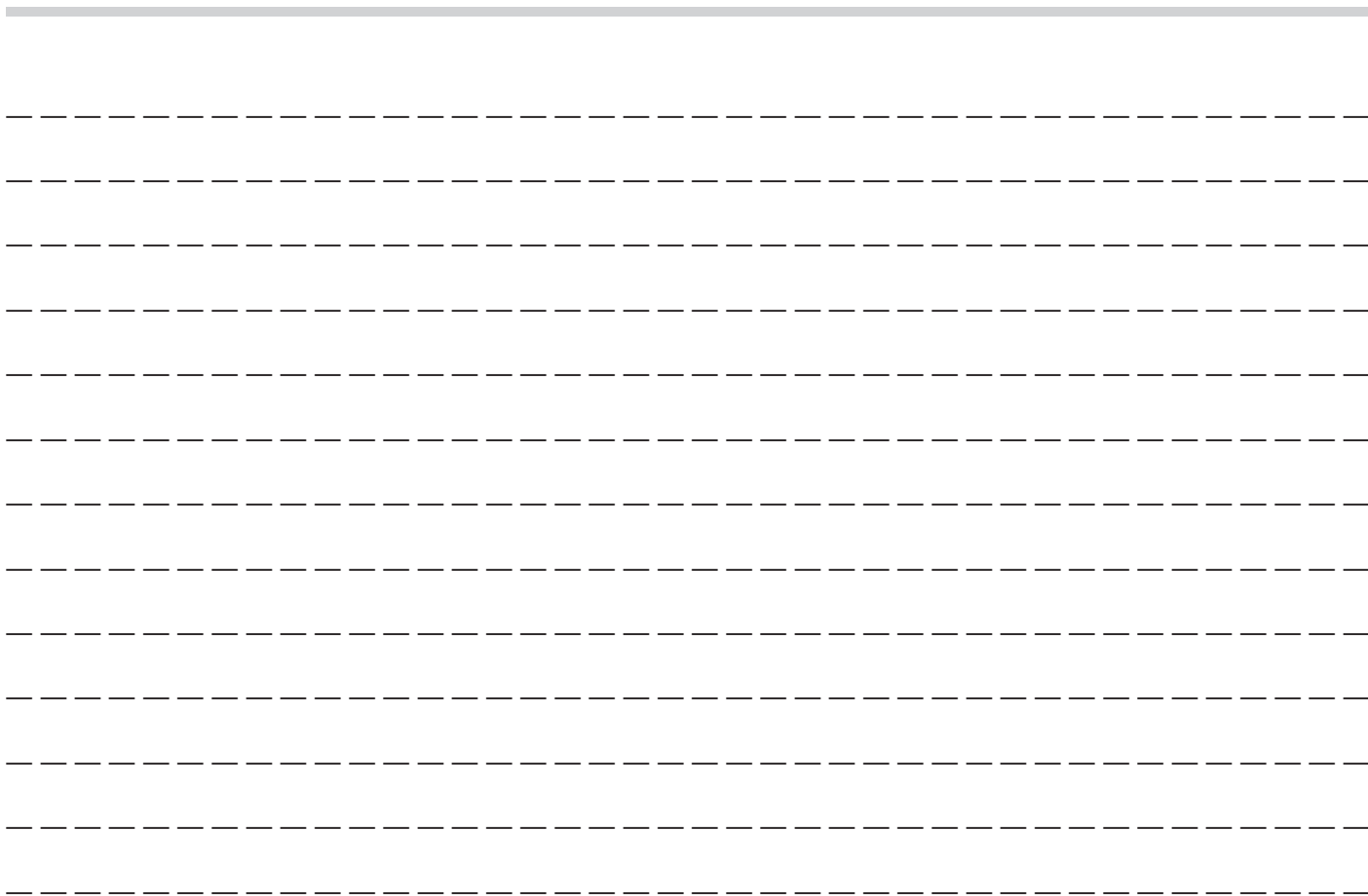
Vanity mirror	6-5
Vehicle	
Identification	12-20
Symbols	3
Vehicle Dynamics Control	
OFF indicator light	3-22
OFF switch	7-32
Operation indicator light	3-21
System	7-30
Warning light	3-20
Ventilator	4-2

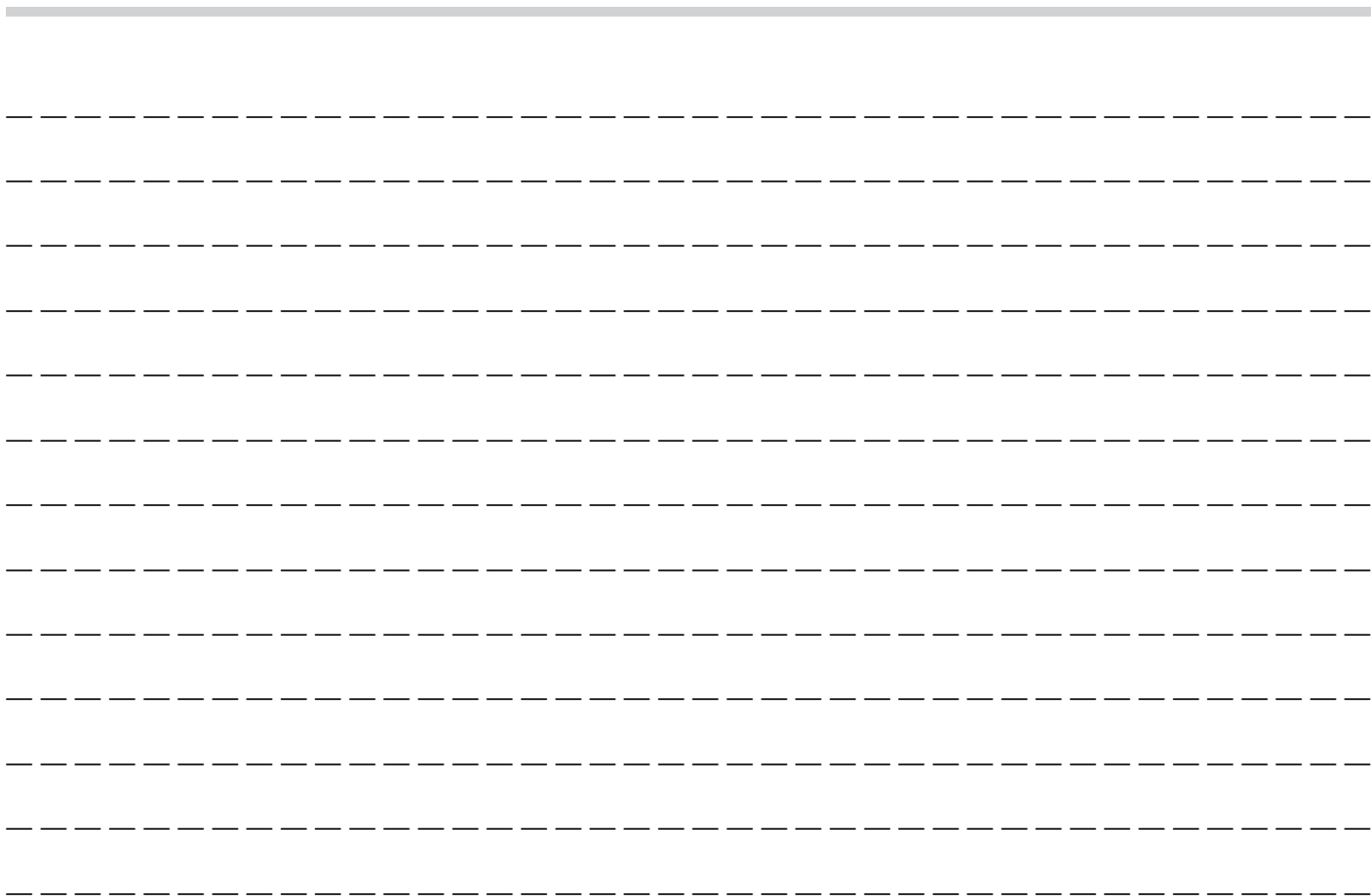
W

Warning and indicator lights	3-12
Warning chimes	
Keyless access with push-button start system	3-25
Seatbelt	3-13
Warning light	
ABS	3-20
Access key	3-25
All-Wheel Drive	3-24
AT OIL TEMP	3-19

Auto Start Stop	3-34
Automatic headlight beam leveler	3-25
Brake system	3-22
Charge	3-18
Coolant temperature high	3-17
Diesel particulate filter	3-33
Door open	3-24
Engine low oil level	3-18
Fuel filter	3-32
Hill start assist	3-23
Keyless access with push-button start system	3-25
Low fuel	3-23
Oil pressure	3-18
Over-rev	3-33
Power steering	3-24
Rear differential oil temperature	3-19
Seatbelt	3-13
SRS airbag system	3-15
Vehicle Dynamics Control	3-20
Windshield washer fluid	3-23
Warranties	1
Washing	10-2
Waxing and polishing	10-3
Wear indicators	11-35
Wheel	
Alignment	12-11
Aluminum	11-38
Balance	11-34
Covers	11-37
Nut tightening torque	9-5
Replacement	11-37

Windows.....	2-22
Windshield	
Washer fluid	11-38
Wiper and washer switches.....	3-100
Wiper blades	11-40
Wiper deicer.....	3-106
Winter	
Diesel.....	7-4
Driving.....	8-12
Tires.....	8-14, 11-32
Wiper and washer	3-98
Wiper deicer.....	3-106
 X	
X-mode.....	7-33
Indicator light.....	3-32
 Y	
Year of manufacture (Middle East models only)	13-2





GAS STATION REFERENCE

■ Fuel:

▼ Non-turbo petrol engine models

2.5 L models and Australia models:

Use only **unleaded petrol** with **90 Octane or higher**. This octane rating is the Research Octane number. For optimum engine performance and driveability, it is recommended that you use premium grade unleaded petrol.

Other models:

Use only **unleaded petrol**. The use of unleaded petrol with **95 Octane or higher** is recommended. This octane rating is the Research Octane number. If unleaded petrol with 95 Octane or higher is not available, unleaded petrol with 90 Octane or higher may be used.

▼ Turbo petrol engine models

Use only **unleaded petrol** with **95 Octane or higher**. This octane rating is the Research Octane number.

▼ Diesel engine models

Use only **diesel** fuel with a specification of **EN590 or an equivalent**.

■ Fuel capacity:

60 liters (15.9 US gal, 13.2 Imp gal)

■ Engine oil:

▼ Petrol engine models

Use only the following oils.

- API classification SM or SN with the words “ENERGY CONSERVING” or “RESOURCE CONSERVING”
- or ILSAC GF-4 or GF-5, which can be identified with the

ILSAC certification mark (Starburst mark)

- or ACEA specification A3 or A5

For the complete viscosity requirements, refer to “Engine oil” 12-4.

▼ Diesel engine models

Use only ACEA specification C2 or C3.

For the complete viscosity requirements, refer to “Diesel engine models” 12-7.

■ Engine oil capacity:

Non-turbo models: 4.8 liters (5.1 US qt, 4.2 Imp qt)

Turbo petrol engine models: 5.1 liters (5.4 US qt, 4.6 Imp qt)

Diesel engine models: 5.9 liters (6.2 US qt, 5.2 Imp qt)

The indicated oil quantity is only a guideline and is estimated based on a case when the engine oil is changed with an oil filter. After refilling the engine with oil, the oil level should be checked using an oil level gauge. For more details about maintenance and service, refer to “Engine oil” 11-15.

■ Cold tire pressure:

See the label located under the driver's door latch.